

Beja Pedagogical Grammar

Klaus and Charlotte Wedekind and Abuzeinab Musa, Aswan 2004 - Asmara 2005

Introduction

About this Grammar

<1>

Primarily, this book is for students who want to *know Beja*. In addition, it contains useful information for linguists who want to *know about Beja*.

<2>

Therefore, the language data are plentiful, but language related terms like vowel, noun, gender etc. are sparse and limited to the basic concepts. The non-linguist may safely ignore them - trusting that these linguistic terms will gradually become self-evident as more and more data are encountered in the course of the study. Language related terms are defined and exemplified in the phonology and the morphology sections in the beginning of the book; but except for the section on pronunciation, all linguistic explanations can be skipped.

<3>

Linguists will note that the theoretical orientation is functional. Van Valin's *Role and Reference Grammar* serves as the underlying theory. Consequently, no deep structures and no verb phrases are recognized; but the different types of verbs and auxiliaries, the different states of affairs, and the layered structures of NPs and clauses are considered important. Throughout the book an effort is made to also provide illustrations of the information structure of Beja sentences.

<4>

The progression is *learner-oriented*: The book proceeds from small, unstructured items to more and more complex structures:

<5>

The *initial* section on Language Basics offers simple, holistic items for immediate, unanalyzed basic communication - including contact noises, conversation fillers, greetings, addresses and automatic responses.

<6>

The *next* section, on Nouns and Phrases, deals with nominal words and noun phrases - starts with NPs which consist of only one item (noun, name, pronoun), and progresses to richer NPs with adjectives, genitives, or numbers. At the end of this section, there are short nominal clauses which allow the speaker to define or describe things, but which do not include any verbs yet.

<7>

The *third* section is on Verbs and Clauses. It starts with clauses which consist of only one verb, and progresses to clauses which also have objects, adverbs, auxiliaries or subordinate clauses - i.e. complex sentences.

<8>

In every section there are grammatical notes, tables, examples, paradigms, and conversations. The language learner can afford to ignore the notes and tables. But the numerous examples, paradigms and conversations should be studied seriously. They have been selected in such a way that - as far as possible - they always represent complete and natural pieces of language. This is true for every section of the book, even at the early stages when there isn't much substance yet to communicate *about*. Functional communication goes beyond predicating and informing.

<9>

The conversations always include more than what has been introduced in the preceding sections. In this way the book does not appeal to the analytical understanding alone. It also challenges the intuitive, naive use of the language in its communicative complexity. An analytical approach is possible, because all conversations and texts are accompanied by interlinear translations with morpheme-by-morpheme glosses.

<10>

The paradigms and examples are arranged with the Beja words first and the English glosses last. This arrangement should encourage an approach which focuses on the direct use of Beja rather than detours via glosses.

<11>

The annex consists of verb lists.

Abbreviations

<12>

Abbreviations are listed below. Those in brackets are used only in the interlinear texts, usually in combinations such as ARTSGF, 'Article Singular Feminine' or NEGIMPFPL3PF 'Negative Imperfect Plural Third Person Prefix'.

<13>

The minus sign '-' indicates morpheme boundaries such as y'-i 'come-FUT' (come, Future marker). The plus sign '+' separates the grammatical category from the meaning of a word, such as oodoor 'ADV+when' (Adverb of the meaning 'when'). The dot sign '.' separates words in the translation which equal one single Beja word, such as jabanaat 'coffee.pot'. Further note that, apart from the glossing, singular has only been noted in rare cases, where it might lead to confusion. Thus ambiguous terms such as 'you' are usually only marked, if they are plural and/or either specifically masculine or feminine.

1	first person
(13)	first or third person
2	second person
3	third person
(+)	adds lexical meaning
(-)	separates parts (morphemes) of a word
(ADV)	adverb
AR	Arabic
(ART)	article
C	consonant
(CAS)	case
(CON)	connector, conjunction
e.o.	each other
F	feminine
(FAR)	far demonstrative
(FUT)	future

(GEN)	genitive
H	consonants h and hamzah
(ID)	identity verb, copula
(IMPF)	imperfect / present tense / aspect
(IMPV)	imperative
INTR	intransitive
LIT	literal translation
M	masculine
(NEAR)	near demonstrative
(NEG)	negative
NP	noun phrase
O	object
(OBJ)	object
(PAST)	past / habitual tense / aspect
(PERF)	perfect / past tense / aspect
(PERM)	permissive tense / aspect
(PF)	prefix
PL	plural
(POSS)	possessive
Ps	person
PTA	person, tense, aspect, and mood marker merged into one
(PTCP)	participle
(REL)	relative (as in relative clauses or relative verbs)
REP	repetitive (action)
S	subject
sb.	somebody (transitive verb)
SG	plural
sth.	something (transitive verb)
(SUB)	subordinate verb
(SUBJ)	subject
TAM	tempus, aspect and mood markers merged into one
V	verb
V	vowel
(VOCAT)	vocative
w.e.o.	with each other
(WH)	relative which, who

(ZERO)	zero morpheme
/	alternative translation
<	derived from
, (comma separation)	alternative translation
. (dot separation)	seperates words in a translation, which equal one single Beja morpheme

A Note to the Language Learner

<14>

If the language learner has no particular interest in linguistic aspects of Beja, he or she is advised to start with the Section Sounds and skip the next sections so as to continue with Section Basic Communication. The linguistic information contained in the Section Morphophonology and Morphology can be consulted later, as questions may arise about the Arabic loan words, dialect differences, sound changes or the shape of Beja words.

1. A language assistant should be consulted. Where no language assistant is available, the audio data must be used more intensively, but they are no substitute for a mother tongue speaker of the language. The assistant's ear is needed to control and correct the learner's pronunciation - especially during the early stages of the language acquisition.
2. In any case the phonology section on pronunciation must be studied first, so that the data can be read adequately. The other linguistic notes can be skipped, because the data are self-explanatory.
3. With the language assistant, all dialect differences should be checked out, and the systematic differences should be noted.
4. When reading the book, the focus should always be on the Beja data, i.e. the left hand side of the page. An attempt should be made to always understand the Beja data directly - even before glancing at the glosses.
5. All conversations should be practiced in dialogue form. All exercises should be adapted to the actual context, so that they refer to things and events which are more relevant and intuitively more natural than the items supplied in the book.
6. The paradigms should be modified and extended creatively, e.g. by substituting different paradigms (present instead of past), by substituting different dialogue roles ('I' instead of 'you'), or by substituting different contexts (e.g., 'here' instead of 'there'). Verb paradigms are presented rather late. But some of the verbs marked as 'frequent' should be selected to be memorized at an early stage.
7. There are Beja radio programs, Beja internet sites, and - more important - Beja music cassettes available to enrich the language learning program.

References / further reading

<15>

It is recommended to consult the existing grammars, especially those of Almkvist (the most meticulous) and Hudson (the most concise). The transcriptions in the grammar sketches by Hudson and Morin are based on the same phonological principles as the present grammar.

Almkvist, Herman N. 1881

- Die Bischari-Sprache in Nord-Ost Afrika (vol. 1)*. Upsala: Königliche Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften
- Almkvist, Herman N. 1885
Bischari-deutsches und deutsch-bischarisches Wörterbuch (vol. 2). Upsala: Königliche Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften
- Hudson, Richard A. 1976
'Beja'. In M. L. Bender (ed.) *The Non-Semitic Languages of Ethiopia*, 97-132. Carbondale
- Morin, Didier 1995
Des paroles douces comme la soie. Paris: Peeters
- Reinisch, Leo 1893
Die Bedauyesprache in Nordostafrika. Wien: Hölder
- Reinisch, Leo 1895
Wörterbuch der Bedauyesprache. Wien: Hölder
- Roper, E. (M.) 1928
Tu Bedawie: An Elementary Handbook for the Use of Sudan Government Officials. Hertford: Stephen Austin
- Van Valin, Robert D. and Randy J. La Polla 1997
Syntax. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press
- Voigt, Rainer (M.) 1987
'Einige Überlegungen zum 'Aspektsystem' des Bedauye'. In: H. Jungrathmayr and W. Müller (eds.), *Proceedings of the 4th International Hamito-Semitic Congress (Marburg, 20 - 22 September, 1983)*. Amsterdam: Benjamins
- Wedekind, Klaus 2007
'An Update on Beja'. In: Rainer Voigt (ed.), *Akten des 7. internationalen Semito- hamitistenkongresses Berlin 2004*, pp. 165-183. Aachen: Shaker
- Zaborski, Andrzej 1999
'Selected Beja Bibliography', Provisional version presented at the *first Conference on the Beja Language*, August 1999, Cairo

Language Basics

About the Language

<16>

[Beja](#) (Bidhaawyeet, Tu-Bdhaawi) is a member of the Afro-Asiatic family of languages which includes, among others, the Cushitic and the Semitic languages.

<17>

Beja holds a special position within the Afro-Asiatic languages, since it is the only Cushitic language classified as North Cushitic. Other Cushitic languages - including languages like Afar, Blin, Oromo and Somali - are spoken far to the south of the Beja area. Semitic languages - including Arabic, Tigre and Tigrigna - are neighboring languages north and south of the Beja area.

<18>

Cushitic languages as well as the Semitic languages of East Africa typically have the order Subject-Object-Verb (SOV), and are head final. Beja also prefers to have important items last, such as the verbs, the postpositions, or the affixes.

<19>

But not always: As far as the clause is concerned, the verb is the last element, as in *Ali tak imaasiw* 'Ali man heard'. As far as the noun phrase is concerned, the noun comes last, as in *dis tak* 'small man'. And as far as adverbial phrases and affixes are concerned, the adverbial element and the suffix comes last, as in *Aliyi gwad*, 'Ali with', *takii-da* 'man-for'. But as far as the verb is concerned, Semitic languages typically attach the subject pronoun before the verb, while in Cushitic languages typically it comes last. One major challenge for the language learner is that Beja has both kinds of verbs, e.g.: *Ee-ta* 'came-she', and *ti-bi* 'she-went' (where *-ta* and *ti-* stand for 'she.PAST/PERFECT'). In this book, the verb will therefore receive special attention.

<20>

Beja speakers number about 1 million - but ethnic Beja people may be as many as 2 or 3 million. They live in Southern Egypt, Eastern Sudan and Northern Eritrea. Most of them live in the Sudan, with Port Sudan, Suakin and Kasala as major centers. The Atman dialect - one of the major Beja varieties which is mainly spoken in the Sudan - serves as the basis for this book.

<21>

There are several grammars of the Beja language. By size and by year of publication - starting with the shortest and the most recent grammar - they are the following: Morin 1995 (French), Hudson 1976 (English), Roper 1928 (English), Reinisch 1893 (German), and Almkvist 1881 (German). In addition, there are various linguistic articles about the language, most of them by Zaborski and Voigt, for which Zaborski 1999 gives a bibliography.

Phonology

Sounds

<22>

The following section needs to be studied first, if a correct pronunciation of the Beja examples is desired.

<23>

The transcription which is used throughout this book is systematically phonological, and very close to the orthography of Beja which was established in Eritrea. The main difference between the Beja orthography and the transcription used in this book is the use of bold vowel letters. They indicate the pitch-accent.

<24>

There also is an Arabic transliteration of the Beja data. Among the various Arabic transliterations which were in use, this particular one has been promoted in the internet for several years. It distinguishes *uu* and *ii* from *oo* and *ee*, but its disadvantage is that it uses diacritics to do so. Recently, however, its main website (*sakanab*) stopped supporting it.

<25>

Since there still are Beja individuals who occasionally use Arabic letters for their language (cf. the "bejaculture" website), the Arabic transliteration - although defunct - has not been deleted from this book.

<26>

The following table is an alphabetical list of the orthographic symbols and their pronunciation (i.e. the IPA values). Some of the sound files are arranged in a different order, such as the files for *dh*, *gh*, and *kh*.

Table 1: Transcriptions and Pronunciation

Latin Grapheme:	Pronunciation (IPA):	Arabic Grapheme:	Examples:	Gloss:	
' (hamzah)	ʔ	ء اِئِ	m'at	women	مئت
a / aa	a / a:	ا اِا	Ama / aamaa!	Ride / devour!	أمة / أما!
b	b	ب	baas	burial	باس
d	d	د	daat	container	دات
deh = d + h	dh	ده	dehay	people	دهي
dh	ɖ	ڏ	tubdhaawi	the beja	تُبْدَاوِے
ee	e:	ئِ	een	these	ئین
f	f	ف	faas	axe	فاس
g	g	ق	gaal	one	قال
gh	ɣ	غ	ghurfa	room (AR)	غُرْفَه
gw	g ^w	قُو	gwad	with	قُوْد
h	h	ه	haaf	belly	هاف
i / ii	I / i:	اِے / اِی	ibari / iibiri	has / had	اِبْرِے / اِبْرِے
j	j	ج	Jaar!	Shoo!	جارا!
k	k	ك	kaam	camel	كام
kh	x	خ	khalaas	finally (AR)	خَلَّاس
keh = k + h	kh	كه	baruuke-han	you-then	بَرُوْكُهَن
kw	k ^w	كُو	kwaat	sister	كُوَات
l	l	ل	laaw	burning	لاو
m	m	م	maan	shaving	مان
n	n	ن	naat	something	نات
oo	o:	و	oon	this	وَن
r	r	ر	raat	question	رات
s	s	س	saab	skinning	ساب
she = s + h	sh	سه	sehaal	sharpness	سهال
sh	ʃ	ش	shaat	meat	شات
t	t	ت	taan	these (F)	تان
teh = t + h	th	ته	Tehaa!	Touch!	تھا!
th	t̪	ث	Thathaa!	Sit down!	تھا
u / uu	u / u:	أُ / أُو	Uraa! / uuraaw	Bury! / the other	أُرا! / أُوراو
w	w	و	waak	cutting	واك

y	j	ي	yaas	dog	ياس
---	---	---	------	-----	-----

Suprasegmentals

Pitch Accent

<27>

Every Beja word will have at least one syllable which is louder and which has a higher pitch than the other(s). The louder syllable is said to carry the pitch-accent (or accent for short). In this book the accent is transcribed with bold letters.

<28>

[Example: pitch-accent on the first syllable / on the second syllable.](#)

Transcription:	Pronunciation (IPA) :	Example:	Gloss:	Example:
a / a	'ani / a'na:	ani / Anaa	I / Hello you!	أنا / أنا!
a / a	'hadhaab / ha'dhab	hadhaab / hadhaab	lions / lion	هَدَّاب / هَدَّاب

Length of Vowels and Length of Consonants (Gemination)

<29>

[Examples: Short and long vowels and consonants.](#)

Transcription:	Pronunciation (IPA) :	Example:	Gloss:	Example:
a / aa	a / a:	Ama / aamaa!	Ride / devour!	أمة / آما!
s / ss	s / s:	Asa / assaa!	Arise / do!	أسه / أسا!

Examples: Vowel Length

<30>

Here follow examples of long and short vowels in words which are not related to each other.

saab / sab, sabb	cloud / Saturday	سَاب / سَب سَبْت
saas / sas	sort / incite (causative of hasi)	سَاس / سَس
saar / sar	stomach content / artery	سَار / سَر
kaan / Kana!	whine / Know!	كَان / كَن!
haab / haba	red soil / stoop	هَاب / هَب
yaam / yam	belly / water	يَام / يَم
fiir / Fira	face / Sew!	فِير / فِر

Integrating Foreign Sounds and Words

<31>

It will be noticed that some words - including common greetings - are borrowed from Arabic. However, sounds which do not fit the Beja sound system will generally be rejected, yet, depending on the speaker, certain Arabic sounds will be preserved or integrated as table 2 shows.

<32>

As far as loan words are concerned, they will be re-shaped to be acceptable to the Beja language. The shape of loan words is predictable from the typical Beja patterns which will be presented in table 3 further below.

Table 2: Foreign Sounds

Sound:	Example:	Gloss:	
ث becomes t	talaata	Tuesday	تَلَاتَه
ح becomes h	Marhaba!	Hello!	مَرْهَبَه
خ is kh or becomes k or h	Ookhartuum / hamiist	Al Khartoum / Thursday	وَأَخْرَتْووم / هَمِييسْت
ج is j or becomes g	taajir / gineeh(i)	trader / Guinee	تَاجِر / قِينِيهِيه
ذ becomes d	Addanaa (adaan)	Call to prayer!	أَدْنَا أَدَان
ز is z or becomes d	mooz / tarabeeda	banana / table	مُوُز / تَرَبِييدَه
ص becomes s	asiir	juice	أَسِيير
ض becomes d	Gadabaa	Be angry!	قَدَابَا
ط becomes t	Tawwaraa	Develop!	تَوَّارَا
ظ becomes z or d	dehuur, zhuur	noon	دَهْوورَه زَهْوور
ع becomes ' or zero	w'asiir / asiir	the juice / juice	وَأَسِيير / أَسِيير
غ is gh or becomes g	sharigh, sharig (oomha)	east	شَرِيغْ، شَرِيغْ وَمِهَه
ق becomes k or g	funduk, fundug	hotel	فُنْدُكْ، فُنْدُغْ
ك is k or becomes kw	alaykwum	on you (PL) (AR)	أَلْيَكْوُوم

Syllable and Word Patterns

<33>

As far as the places of consonants (C) and vowels (V) in syllables are concerned, Beja words allow for exactly 18 syllable patterns in the word initial syllable, and 12 patterns in all other syllables.

<34>

The most frequent pattern is CV, i.e. a syllable which consists of a consonant followed by a short vowel. But syllables can also be closed with one or two consonants, where the second consonant can only be t. So far this gives 3 patterns, namely: CV as in na 'thing', CVC as in tak 'man', and CVct as in lamt 'soup'.

<35>

Less frequent are syllables with long vowels¹, which will be written as VV. This gives 3 additional syllables patterns: CVV as in tuu 'the', CVVC as in been 'that', and CVVCt as in diint 'thorn'.

<36>

Only word initial syllables can start with a vowel (or more exactly, with a suppressed hamzah), which gives the following additional patterns: V as in a.ni 'I (1.SG)', VC as in ar 'boys', VCt as in awt 'honey', VV as in aa.bu 'who (M)', VVC as in aab 'who', and VVCt as in aabt 'who (F)'.

<37>

As a specialty of the Beja phonology there also are syllables in which the initial consonant is followed either by h or by hamzah, abbreviated as H²: CHV as in t'a 'now', CHVV as in m'aa 'come!', CHVCt as in mhay 'three' and as in lhayt 'tomorrow', and CHVVCt as in n'aaht 'goat'. This last set of syllable patterns actually causes one of the systematic differences between northern and southern Beja dialects: What is pronounced as C'V in the North may be pronounced as CV' or as two syllables CV.'V in the South, e.g. s'a, sa', sa.'a 'sit! (M)'.

Table 3: Examples of Syllable and Word Patterns

Examples for Word Initial Syllables (Note that dots indicate syllable boundaries):			
he went	V (never alone)	<u>i</u> .bi	ايبي
one who holds	VC	<u>ab</u> .kaab	أب كاب
five and	VCt	<u>ayt</u> .wa	أيت وه
Who is he?	VV	<u>Aa</u> .bu?	اب؟
Who are you (M)?	VVC	<u>Aab</u> .wa?	آب وه؟
Who (F) and?	VVCt	<u>Aabt</u> .wa?	ابت وه؟
you (M OBJ)	CV (never alone)	<u>ba</u> .rook	به روك
she started	CVC	<u>yak</u> .ta	يك ته
even Saturday	CVCt	<u>sabt</u> .han	سبت هن
your (M) father	CVV	<u>baa</u> .book	با بوك
she deceived	CVVC	<u>soob</u> .ta	سؤب ته
a tree (F) (genus 'Terminalia') and	CVVCt	<u>daaft</u> .wa	دافت وه
Punish (M) him!	CHV	<u>Lha</u> .sa!	لهه سه!
even the sea	CHVC	<u>bhar</u> .han	بهر هن
tomorrow and	CHVCt	<u>lhayt</u> .wa	لهيت وه
Come (PL)!	CHVV	<u>M'aa</u> .na!	مآ نه!
even medicine	CHVVC	<u>mheel</u> .han	مهتل هن
licking and	CHVVcT	<u>lhuust</u> .wa	لهوست وه

<38>

Examples for Word Medial Syllables:			
Seize (M)!	CV	a. <u>bi</u> .ka!	ايبيكه!
Chase, send away (M)!	CVC	a. <u>lan</u> .doo.yaa!	ألندويا!
marriageable girl and	CVcT	aa. <u>girt</u> .wa	أقرتوه
Go (PL)!	CVV	<u>gii</u> .gaa.na!	قيقانه!
you (M) and	CVVC	ba. <u>rook</u> .wa	بروك وه
queen and	CVVCt	a. <u>miirt</u> .wa	أميرتوه
you (M) let lick	CHV	tis. <u>lha</u> .sa	تسلهسه
you (PL) let lick	CHVC	ti. <u>lhas</u> .na	تلهسه
eight (F) and	CHVCt	a.su. <u>mhayt</u> .wa	أشمهيتوه
you (M) ride	CHVV	tin.d' <u>ii</u> .ma	تندايمه
Thursday and	CHVVC	ar.b' <u>aat</u> .wa	أربآتوه
the heat and	CHVVcT	im.b' <u>uuyt</u> .wa	إمبويتوه

<39>

Examples for Word Final Syllables:

Seize (M)!	CV	a.bi. <u>ka</u> !	أَيْكِه!
young man (marriage age)	CVC	aa.g <u>ir</u>	أَقْر
young woman (marriage age)	CVCt	aa.g <u>irt</u>	أَقْرْت
Go (M)!	CVV	gii.g <u>aa</u> !	فَيْعَا!
desert	CVVC	ma.l <u>aal</u>	مَلَال
queen	CVVCt	da.g <u>waayt</u>	دَقْوَايْت
now	CHV	oon.d' <u>a</u>	وَنْدَاه
the sea (OBJ)	CHVC	oo.b <u>har</u>	وَبْهَر
eight (F)	CHVCt	a.su.m <u>hayt</u>	أَشْمَهَيْت
Bring (M)!	CHVV	haa.m' <u>aa</u> !	هَامَا!
Thursday	CHVVC	ar.b' <u>aat</u>	أَرْبَات
Who (F) gets up?	CHVVt	teet.b' <u>iirt</u> ?	تَيْتْبَايْرْت؟

Dialect Variations

<40>

The Atman variety of Beja - which serves as the basis for this book - is one of the major Beja dialects. It is spoken by large numbers of people in parts of Port Sudan and in Suakin. Other Beja dialects differ from it in systematic ways, and the differences are limited to certain sounds, certain conditions, and certain groups of words. To the Beja speakers themselves these differences do not present any communication problems - but they may cause some surprises to outsiders. The ways in which the other dialects may differ from the dialect of this book are the following:

1. Instead of pronouns with a word final h, pronouns with a word final s may be used (in the North or West); e.g. barooh > baroos 'him', bareeh > barees 'them'.
2. Instead of initial b, the consonant m may be used (in various areas or by individuals); e.g. badhamt > madhamt 'mat', Bariyam > Mariyam 'Mary'.
3. Instead of short a or u, unstressed, very short i may be used (in various areas); e.g. naatu > naat(i) 'thing-is'.
4. Instead of short i or u, the short vowel a may be used (in the North or South); e.g. ani > ana 'I', hinin > hanin 'we', or iru > ura 'yesterday', kiiki > kiika 'It is not'.
5. Instead of short u, the short vowel i may be used in certain verbs (in Bishaari or Beni Amir areas); e.g. usha > isha 'leave!' or kaabaru > kaabari 'I don't have'.
6. Instead of articles with short i or u, the form with long oo, ee may be used (in the North); e.g. tutakat > tootakat 'the-woman (OBJ)'.
7. Instead of demonstratives which assimilate to the article, like oot-tu- 'this-the', the basic forms of the demonstratives may be used (in Bishaari or Beni Amir areas); e.g. oot-tu'oor > toon tu'oor 'this the-girl (OBJ)'.
8. Instead of shortening or deleting vowels before h and hamzah, the full vowels may be used (in particular in the North), e.g. ka'areeyan > kaa'areeyan 'I don't like (it)', or kahariw > kaahariw 'I don't want'.

9. Instead of h or hamzah which follows a consonant and precedes a vowel, the h or hamzah may follow the vowel (Bishaari, Beni Amir); e.g. kal'a > kala' 'bell'.
10. Instead of indicating the plural by shifting the stress towards the beginning of the word, the same stress/accent pattern may be used for singular and plural nouns (in Bishaari), e.g. hadhaab / hadhaab > hadhaab / hadhaab 'lion (Sg) / lions (PL)'.
11. Instead of Arabic loan words, Tigre loan words may be used (in particular in the South); e.g. gaamuus (Arabic) > agaba (Tigre) 'buffalo'.
12. Instead of Arabic loan words, original Beja words may be used (in Bishaari, or rural areas); e.g. faas > m'ooma 'axe'.

<41>

These differences may cause some surprises at first. But since in a particular dialect the same difference will appear again and again, it will be helpful to keep these correspondences in mind. Table 4 below summarizes the main types of correspondences.

Table 4: Types of Dialect Correspondences

Correspondence:			Example:		Gloss:
	This book:	Elsewhere:	This book:	Elsewhere:	
1	h	> s	barooh	> baroos	him, them
2	b	> m	badhamt	> madhamt	mat
3	tu bu	> ti bi	naatu; hineetu	> naati; haneeti	thing-is, our-is
4	i	> a	hinin	> hanin	we
5	u	> i	kaabaru; usha!	> kaabari; isha!	I don't have; leave!
6	tu	> too	tutakat	> tootakat	the-woman (OBJ)
7	tt	> n t	oottu'oor	> toon tuu'oor	this the-girl (OBJ)
8	ah	> aah	kahariw	> kaahariw	I don't want
9	C'a	> Ca'	kal'a	> kala'	bell
10	Plural stress shift	> no Plural stress shift	hadhaab	> hadhaab	lions (PL)
11	Arabic loan	> Tigre	gaamuus	> agaba	buffalo
12	Arabic loan	> Beja	faas	> m'ooma, ma'ooma	axe

Morphophonology

<42>

This section on the Beja morphophonology describes the interactions of the phonology (sounds) with the morphology (words).

<43>

Certain Beja phonemes only change if they occur in a particular class of morphemes, such as articles, or demonstratives. E.g., the n often assimilates to t before t. But this

change does not happen with every n in the language. It only affects the n in demonstratives, where uun-tuu-naa changes to uut-tuu-naa 'this-the-thing'.

<44>

The sounds in these morphemes will only change if they are attached to each other very closely. The following examples represent all types of changes that have been observed where affixes and roots come together. On the left hand side of the arrow (>), the basic, unchanged form of the affixes and the roots are given. On the right hand side, the result of the change is shown.

Accent Rules

<45>

Briefly, the main rules concerning pitch-accent (accent for short) are as follows:

1. Every morpheme or word root has its inherent accent. The accent is part of the root - in the same way as the meaning, the gender, or the consonants and vowels are parts of it.
2. If a word consists of several morphemes, (only) the last accent will be articulated.
3. Plurals will shift the accent toward the beginning of the word by one syllable (This rule does not apply in the Bishaari dialect).

<46>

The word gwhara 'thief', which has the inherent accent on the first a, may illustrate how these rules apply:

1	thief (SG)	gwhara	قُوْهْرَه
2	thief (SGMOBJ)	gwharaab	قُوْهْرَاب
3	thieves (PLMOBJ)	gwharaab	قُوْهْرَاب

Sound Changes

Adding and Deleting Sounds

<47>

In this section about the addition and deletion of sounds, it is possible to argue in two ways: Either (1) the starting point is a dictionary where certain forms have no vowels, such as t- s- dwl 'you-cause.to-approach', or (2) the starting point is a dictionary with vowels, such as ti- si- dawil. In the first case, there must be rules which add certain vowels in the appropriate places, and in the second case, there must be rules which delete certain vowels in the appropriate places. The result should be the same. The rules here below allow for both perspectives.

Inserting word initial i

<48>

If two consonants (other than h or hamzah) are in word initial position, they will be split up by the short vowel i.

t-diya > tidiya	you (M) said
t-s-dawila > tisdawila	cause to approach

Inserting word medial i

<49>

If three consonants (other than h or hamzah) follow each other anywhere, they will be split up by the short vowel i.

k-t-diya > kitdiya	you (M) don't say
t-s-dawila > tisdawila	cause to be close

Deleting word medial i

<50>

If i has no stress and no CC neighbors, it may be deleted.

a-dilib > adlib	I traded
hariw-aab > harwaab	being wanted / having wanted

Deleting word medial a

<51>

If the sound a in the verb suffixes -a 'you (M SUBJ)' or -na 'you (PL SUBJ)' is followed by other verb suffixes, the a may be deleted (This rule does not apply in all dialects).

tikatiya-eek > tikatiyeek	if you (M) are
tikatiina-eek > tikatiineek	if you (PL) are

Shortening of Sounds

<52>

The rules about shortening do not apply in all dialects.

Shortening initial VV

<53>

The long vowels aa, ee, ii, oo, uu in unstressed definite articles will be shortened to i or u, in particular aa, ee, ii > i; and oo, uu > u.

aa-bissa > ibissa	the cats (M)
tuu-takat > tutakat	the woman
tee-tarabeedaa-ya > titarabeedaaya	the tables

Shortening final VV

<54>

The long vowels ee or oo in word final position will be shortened as follows: ee > i, oo > u

deet-oo > deetu	my mother
i-bhal-ee > ibhali	my words

Shortening VV before h or hamzah

<55>

The long vowels aa, ii, or uu, when followed by h or by hamzah will be shortened as follows: aa > a, ii > i, uu > u

ii-hiriw > ihiriw	I had wanted
-------------------	--------------

baa-'abiik-a > ba'abiika	Don't seize!
--------------------------	--------------

Assimilating and Dissimilating Sounds

<56>

With certain affixes, there is either assimilation or dissimilation, i.e. the sounds either merge into each other, or they become more different from one another.

Assimilating nasals before plosives

<57>

If m or n are followed by a dental or labial consonant, they will assimilate to the consonant:

ada-n-liib > adalliib	I trade
a-n-b'iir > amb'iir	I wake up

Assimilating t and k before h or hamzah

<58>

If t or k are followed by h or hamzah, they will be softened to d or g.

ee-t-'iim > eed'iim	I ride
oon-t-'aab > oond'aab	this the-time, now

Assimilating s to sh before dh or th

<59>

If s is attached to a root with dh or th or sh, it becomes sh.

i-si-shalik > ishiishalik	he caused to be small
i-si-dhhan > ishidhhan	he caused to live

Assimilating t and k near dentals

<60>

If the verb prefix t- '(2 SUBJ)' is followed by d or r or s of the verb, it will assimilate to the next sound. But before -k, the k- itself will become t.

kit-di > kiddi	she doesn't say
kit-kan > kittan	she doesn't know

Assimilating i to u near w

<61>

If i or u precede gw, kw or w, the spelling will be i. The spelling will represent the underlying phoneme, which is i. The pronunciation however is close to u, since the difference between i and u neutralized.

<62>

But it could as well be u, since the difference between them is neutralized: Both sound like u: kwi [kwu], gwi [gwu].

kwibira > [kwubira]	Go down!
kwihi > [kwuhi]	the egg

Assimilating a to oo near w

<63>

If a short a precedes gw or kw, the spelling will be a, but the sound appears to be [oo], and the [w] may disappear: kwa > [kwoo], [koo].

kwatiib > [kwootiib, kootiib]	good
-------------------------------	------

Dissimilating i before h or hamzah

<64>

If a person prefix i is followed by h or hamzah, it may be changed to y- or yi-

i-'ibik indi > y'ibik, yi'ibik indi	he will hold (Future)
i-hariw > yihariw, yhariw	he wanted

Dissimilating i or u before h or hamzah

<65>

If articles with i or u are followed by h or hamzah, they may be changed to y(i) or w(u).

i-'ar > y'ar, y'ar	the children
uu-haash > whaash, wuhaash	the land

More Examples: Vowel Length and Neutralization

<66>

As was shown above, under certain conditions the contrast short vowel / long vowel will be neutralized (see shortening above). In previous descriptions of Beja, it has always been noted that final vowels tend to be short, but that the same vowels may be long when they are in word medial position. The following lines start from an example noted by Roper (1928).

<67>

From the last lines of the table it is obvious that this kind of neutralization sometimes results in the disappearance of differences like subject vs. object. A similar neutralization affects the differences between subject and object articles, as will be shown later.

Table 5: Shortening and Neutralization of Case

riba	رِبَه	hill (underlying form)
ribaa-b	رِبَاه-ب	hill-OBJ (citation form)
oo-rba	و-رِبَه	ART-hill (definite form)
ree	رِئ	source (underlying form)
ree-t	رِئ-ت	source-F (citation form)
too-ri	تو-رِئ	ART-source (definite form)
oo	و	POSSG1 (underlying form)
baab-oo-wwa...	باب-و-وَه...	father-POSSG1-and (word medial)...

baab-u	باب-ؤ	father-PossSG1 (word final)
baab-oo-wwa...	باب-ؤ-ؤه...	father-PossSG1OBJ-and...
baab-uu-wwa...	باب-أؤ-ؤه...	father-PossSG1SUBJ-and...
Baab-u rhiya.	باب-ؤ رهيه	father-PossSG1SUBJ saw (sth.)
Baab-u rhiya.	باب-ؤ رهيه	(someone) father-PossSG1OBJ saw

Morphology

<68>

This section is about the Beja morphology, i.e. the internal shape of words, and it deals with classes and patterns of roots and affixes.

Morpheme Types: Roots and Affixes

Roots

<69>

Every word has a root, and the root will be considered the main part of a word. In this book, 11 classes of roots are recognized: 2 large classes and 9 small classes.

<70>

There are 2 large open classes, namely nouns and verbs, and they have hundreds and thousands of members. Examples are tak 'man' (Noun), yakaa 'Start!' (Verb).

<71>

There are 9 small closed classes, including pronouns, postpositions and others, and they have only a few dozen members each. Examples are ani '1SGSUBJ' (Pronoun), amsi 'Adv+today' (Adverb).

Affixes

<72>

In addition to the roots, Beja has two kinds of affixes:

1. Prefixes which are attached in front of roots, where there are two slots for the different kinds of prefixes.
2. Suffixes which are attached at the end of roots, where there are five or six slots for the different kinds of suffixes.

<73>

Note that infixes or vowel melodies could have been posited for verb pairs such as aktib 'I wrote' which is related to akantiib 'I write'. In this instance the infix would have been something like -an- indicating 'Present Tense'.

<74>

But it is preferable to view these differences as different forms of the verb root. Actually, this is common practice for languages of the Afro-Asiatic family of which Beja is a member.

Prefixes

<75>

There are about 90 prefixes altogether. They are written with a hyphen at the right hand side. Examples are uu- 'the', as in the word uu-(tak) 'the-(man)', or i- 'he', as in the word i- (ktib) 'he- (wrote)'.

Suffixes

<76>

There are about 130 suffixes altogether. They are written with a hyphen at the left hand side. Examples are -ooḥ ' -his' as in the word (tak)-ooḥ '(man) -his', or -ta ' -she', as in the word (rhi)-ta '(saw) -she'.

Word Classes

<77>

In this presentation of Beja, 11 word classes will be recognized. The terms noun, verb etc. will be used in their traditional sense, and they will be defined more closely in the tables and examples below.

<78>

[The 11 word classes are the following:](#)

1. Adjectives like adaroob 'red': This class includes participles like 'living' and ordinal numbers or fractions like 'third, a third'. Adjectives behave largely like Nouns.
2. Adverbs like amsi 'today': This class includes interrogative adverbs like 'when', and nouns of specialized adverbial functions like 'this-time, now'. Adverbs largely behave like Nouns.
3. Conjunctions like hana 'or': This class includes a few Arabic loan words.
4. Demonstratives like been 'that': This class includes far and near and interrogative demonstratives like 'which?'.
5. Interjections like anaa 'hello': This class also includes a few Arabic loan words which are commonly used by Beja people.
6. Names like Adaroob 'Adaru': This class includes names for persons, times and places. Names are either feminine (F) or masculine (M)
7. Nouns like tak 'man': Nouns are either feminine (F) or masculine (M), some are only used in the plural (PL), some are derived from verbs.
8. Numbers like ay 'five': This class includes only cardinal numbers. The ordinal numbers and fractions like 'third' are adjectives.
9. Pronouns like batooh 'she': This class includes interrogative pronouns like 'who?'. Pronouns are either feminine (F) or masculine (M), singular (SG) or plural (PL)
10. Postpositions like har'i 'after': This class includes specialized nouns of limited distribution like 'front-of'. Postpositions largely behave like Nouns.
11. Verbs like yakaa 'start, stand up!': This class includes 'strong' and 'weak' verbs, and 'auxiliary verbs'.

Word Classes and their Affixes

<79>

The Beja word classes differ from each other by the inflections which they take or which they pass on to other elements in the clause. The inflection takes the form of

different kinds of affixes, such as *yakan* 'I started', *yaktaa* 'you (M) started', *yaktaayi* 'you (F) started', etc.

<80>

Verbs take affixes for tense-aspect and mood, as well as person, gender and number. Each verb governs one, two or three noun phrases such as subject, first object or second object, to which it assigns the respective cases - (either 'subject' case or 'object' case).

<81>

Nouns, pronouns, and names are inflected for the cases which they take from the verb. They are also inflected for number (Singular or plural), and they inherently have a certain gender (Masculine or feminine) which they pass on to other words in the phrase. They take demonstrative prefixes and article prefixes, as well as possessive suffixes.

<82>

Adjectives, demonstratives, and numbers are inflected for gender, number, and case, which they take from the head noun of the phrase.

<83>

Adverbs and postpositions only take case and possessive suffixes.

<84>

Conjunctions and interjections are not inflected at all. They do not take any prefixes or suffixes.

<85>

The table (below) summarizes the different word classes and their inflections.

Table 6: Word Classes and Affixes

Word Class:	Remarks:	Takes Affixes for:	Takes Affixes for:	Takes Affixes for:	Takes Affixes for:
Verbs (with 1 or 2 or 3 Noun Phrases) e.g. <i>yak-</i> 'start' يَك	Verbal Participles behave like Adjectives, Verbal Nouns of Action behave like Nouns	Person / Tense / Aspect	Gender	Number	*
Nouns (M or F) e.g. <i>tak</i> 'man' تَك	take Demonstrative and Article prefixes, and Possessive suffixes	-	**	Number	Case
Pronouns (M or F) e.g. <i>batooh</i> 'she' بَتُوْه	take Demonstrative and Article prefixes, and Possessive suffixes	-	**	Number	Case
Names (M or F) e.g. <i>Adarooob</i> اَدْرُوْب	take Demonstrative and Article Prefixes, and Possessive suffixes ***	-	**	Number ***	Case
Adjectives e.g. <i>adaru</i> 'red' اَدْرُ	-	-	Gender	Number	Case
Demonstratives e.g. <i>been</i> 'that' بَيْن	-	-	Gender	Number	Case
Numbers e.g. <i>mhay</i> 'three' مَهْي	-	-	Gender	Number	Case

Adverbs e.g. amsi 'today' أمس	take Possessive suffixes	-	-	-	Case
Postpositions e.g. har'i 'after' هرا	take Possessive suffixes	-	-	-	Case
Conjunctions e.g. hana 'or' هنه	-	-	-	-	-
Interjections e.g. wooh 'hello' ووه	-	-	-	-	-

Notes on Affixes

<86>

(*) Verbs do not take case affixes, but they assign subject or object case to other words in the sentence.

<87>

(**) Nouns, pronouns and names do not take gender affixes, but they assign their own gender to other words in the sentence.

<88>

(***) Only names of nations or peoples can be inflected for number, as in Aa-Fuun 'ART-Fung.people (PL)', and only nicknames take demonstratives and articles, as in Uun-u-u-Reer 'NEAR-ART-Ooreer' (Name).

Nominal Affixes: Gender, Number, Case

Gender

<89>

Beja has 2 genders: masculine and feminine.

<90>

Gender not only refers to the natural gender which assigns masculine gender to tak 'man', and feminine gender to takat 'woman' - but every noun is either (M) or (F).

<91>

The feminine gender is used especially to refer to abstract notions like tu-daayiinaay 'the goodness', or to items of comparatively smaller size, like tu-aka 'the (small) palm nut fruit (F)' as opposed to w-aka 'the (large) palm nut tree (M)'

<92>

The masculine gender is frequent in nouns which indicate actions or their result, like u-kituum 'the arriving/arrival'.

Number

<93>

Beja has 2 numbers: singular and plural.

<94>

The plural number is used not only to distinguish the plural pronouns such as 'you (PL)' from 'you (SG)', but also to distinguish liquids and collectives from countable nouns.

<95>

Thus, all liquids and terms for species are plurals such as yam 'water(s), (PL)' or batehi 'melon(s) (PL)'.

Case

<96>

Beja has 3 cases: nominative, genitive, and accusative.

1. The nominative or subject case answers questions like 'Who did it?'
2. The genitive or possessive case answers questions like 'Whose?'
3. The accusative or object case answers not only the question 'Whom?', but also questions like 'Who is it?', 'To where?', 'To whom?', or 'For whom?'

<97>

The different forms of cases will be exemplified in the subsequent sections on articles, demonstratives and nouns.

Verbal Affixes: Person, Tense / Aspect / Mood

Person / Number

<98>

The Beja verbal system distinguishes a minimum of 8 combinations of person, number and gender. Therefore, most paradigms will consist of 8 different persons which require 8 different affixes.

<99>

These 8 persons will be encountered in many tables. Briefly, they can be listed as follows: (1) 'I', (2) 'you (SGM)' and (3) 'you (SGF)', (4) 'he', and (5) 'she', (6) 'we', (7) 'you (PL)', and (8) 'they'. Thus, gender is distinguished only for the second and third person's singular (2-5) in the verbal inflexion. But in participles and adjectives, gender is distinguished for all of the 12 possible combinations, including the first persons singular and plural ('I' and 'we') and the second and third person plural ('You (PL)' and 'They').

Tense / Aspect / Mood (TAM)

<100>

The Beja tenses include paradigms for past, present, and future. But the past and present tenses can also be regarded as perfect and imperfect aspects. The Beja moods include a mixture of paradigms like imperatives, optatives and others. The abbreviation TAM will be used to refer to these mergers of tenses, aspects, and moods.

<101>

Different TAM paradigms may use the same person affixes but different verb stems. The same Beja verb may have up to 7 different stems, each of them representing different TAMs. For instance, stem (1) is used for the perfect and imperative, stem (2) for negative forms, stem (3) for imperfect plural etc. The full paradigms will be given in the Section Verbs and Clauses.

<102>

For every strong verb of high frequency, these 7 different TAM stems are listed in the appendix.³ Weak verbs use the same stem throughout all 7 TAMs.

<103>

At this point, only the main distinction should be kept in mind: The distinction between past / perfect paradigms like a-di 'I said, I have said' and present / imperfect paradigms like a-ndi 'I say, I am saying'.

Roots and their Places for Affixes

<104>

The affixes of nouns and verbs are different, and each affix has its proper place. Theoretically, verbs or nouns would allow for as many as 7 or 8 affixes following each other - but normally there will just be 1 or 2.

Table 7: The Pattern of Noun Affixes

PREF2-	PREF1-	Stem	-SUFF1	-SUFF2	-SUFF3	-SUFF4	-SUFF5	-SUFF6
FAR- / NEAR-	ART-	Noun	-PL	-CAS	-POSS	-ADV	-CON	-ID

<105>

In the pattern for the inflection of nouns there are 2 places for the prefixes and 6 for the suffixes.

Examples for Noun Affixes

oot-tu-suuraat-iib	NEAR-ART-picture-ADV	in this picture
u-bashar-ii-yoo-da	ART-body-CAS-POSS-ADV	for my body

Table 8: The Pattern of Verb Affixes

PREF2-	PREF1-	Stem	-SUFF1	-SUFF2	-SUFF3	-SUFF4	-SUFF5
WH-	PTA-	Verb	-PTA	-OBJ	-WH	-ADV	-CON

<106>

In the pattern for the inflection of Verbs there are 2 places for prefixes and 5 for suffixes. Occasionally, SUFF1 und SUFF2 may change their places.

<107>

The suffixes for person, number, tense, aspect and mood often merge into one single affix.

Examples for Verb Affixes

You (F) left us (PTA-leave-PTA-OBJ).	Ti-ush-i-hoon.
or when they started (start-PTA-ADV-CON)	yak-iyaaan-hoob-han

Affixes which Change the Word Class of a Root

<108>

The language has a number of derivational mechanisms, as the next table shows. Verbs can be derived into Nouns, adjectives into nouns, etc. The mechanisms include both affixation and change of patterns.

<109>

Affixation, for instance, derives tam 'eat' into > tam-ti 'eating'.

<110>

Change of CV patterns, for instance, derives winin (CiCiC) 'be angry' into > wnuun 'anger' (CCuuC).

<111>

The table gives an overview of frequent derivation patterns. The original word class is given in the first column, the derived word class in the second. These derivational affixes, however, cannot be used by non-Beja speakers to create new words at will. Therefore, the table (below) only explains derivations - it is not a pattern for producing them.

Table 9: Derivation Patterns

Derivation Affix or CV pattern:	Root:	Gloss:	Original Word Class:	Derivation:	Derived Gloss:	Derived Word Class:
Verb A > Verb B:						
-s	tam-	eat	Verb, Weak	tam-s-	let eat, feed	Derived Verb
s-	abik-	hold	Verb, Strong	s-'abik-	let hold	Derived Verb
Verb > Noun:						
-ti	tam-	eat	Verb, Weak	tam-ti	the eating	Noun
-aab	tam-	eat	Verb, Weak	tam-aab	eaten (M)	Participle
CCuuC	winin-	be angry	Verb, Strong	wnuun	anger	Noun
Noun, Number > Adjective:						
-iiya	aawiit	morning	Noun	aawiit-iiyaayt	early	Adjective
-iiya	maloo-	two	Number	mal-iiya	second	Adjective

Basic Communication

<112>

The purposes of communication vary between asking for attention (vocatives), expressing feelings (interjections), making requests (commands), or - most of the time - exchanging information (questions and statements).

<113>

To exchange information, people refer to things in the world, and they talk about them. To refer to things, people use noun phrases (NPs) with nouns, names, or pronouns - and to say something about them (to predicate), they use verbs and clauses. Beja nouns and NPs are relatively simple. Beja verbs and clauses are more complex. The first sections are mainly about NPs. Verbs will be introduced later.

Addressing People

<114>

To begin with, here are some Beja vocatives and interjections. There is no need to analyze all words at this point. The analysis of these forms will be introduced step by step.

Interjections

<115>

To get the attention of someone, any of the following interjections can be used. The name may be added after the interjection.

<116>

The interjections of this first group do not take any affixes. They are always the same, whether addressed to males or females, to one person or many.

'Hello'

Wooh Ali!	Hello, Ali!	ووه ألي!
-----------	-------------	----------

Wooh Haliima!	Hello Halima!	ووه هَلِيمَه!
Anaa Ali!	Please Ali!	أنا أَلِي!
Anaa Haliima!	Please Halima!	أنا هَلِيمَه!
Yaa Ali!	Hello Ali!	يا أَلِي!
Yaa Haliima!	Hello Halima!	يا هَلِيمَه!
Wooh Adaru!	Hello Adaru!	ووه أَدْرَا!
Wooh Aasha!	Hello Aasha!	ووه آشَه!

Vocatives

<117>

To call or address someone by his / her name, the vocative is used. The vocative endings are -ay or -yi, and they may be attached to the names in two different forms. The ending is -ay if the word ends in a consonant like tak, takat; 'man, woman' and it is -yi if the word ends in a vowel, like Adaru-, Adaroo- 'Adaru (Name)⁴'. Note that the Beja vocative itself is not a case ending, but the vocative endings -ay / -yi can only be attached to words in the nominative case.)

Interjections and Vocatives

Anaa sanu!	Please my brother! (To anyone of the same age)	أنا سَنُ!
Anaa kwaatu!	Please my sister! (To anyone of the same age)	أنا كَوَاتُ!
Anaa duuruuyi!	Please my uncle! (To any older person)	أنا دُورُويِي!
Anaa diraatuuyi!	Please my aunt! (To any older woman)	أنا دِرَاتُويِي!
Sanuunay!	My brother! (To any of same age)	سَنُويِي!
Kwaatuunay!	My sister! (Rare, to any of same age)	كَوَاتُويِي!
Duuruunay!	My uncle! (To any older person)	دُورُويِي!
Diraatuunay!	My aunt! (To any older person)	دِرَاتُويِي!
Yaa takay!	Hello Sir!	يا تَكَي!
Yaa takatay!	Hello Madam!	يا تَكَي!
Yaa w'ooruuyi!	Hello my boy!	يا وُورُويِي!
Yaa t'ootuuyi!	Hello my girl!	يا تَوُوتُويِي!
Yaa Adaroooyi!	Hello Adaru!	يا أَدْرُويِي!

Interjections and Names

<118>

The following interjection has different endings for different kinds of people, and it can be used even when their names are not known. Actually, yihaa / yhaa is a verb form, and its literal meaning is 'give!'

<119>

It should be noted again that Beja distinguishes two genders, Masculine (M) and Feminine (F), as well as Singular (SG) and Plural (PL)

<120>

The verb endings typically are -a for Masculine, -i for Feminine, and -na for Plural.

Yihaa!	Hello you (M) (LIT give (M))!	يِهَا!
Yihaayi!	Hello you (F)!	يِهَايِ! / يِهَايِ!
Yihaana!	Hello you (PL)!	يِهَاانَه!
Ali yihaa!	Ali hello you (M)!	أَلِي يِهَا!
Haliima yihayi! / yihee!	Alima hello you (F)!	هَلِيمَه يِهَايِ! / يِهَايِ!
Aliiwwa Haliimaawwa, yihaana!	Ali and Halima, hello you (PL)!	أَلِيوَه هَلِيمَاوَه , يِهَاانَه!

Responses

[Filler particles](#)

Baabiya!...	I wish it were so!...	بَايِيَه!
Hindeeh...	Please!... (Introducing a request in the Atman dialect)	هِنْدِيَه...
Gay...	Well, and then... (Introducing a new topic in the Gash dialect)	غَي...
...bak kiiki?	...isn't it so?	...بَك كِيِكِي؟
...winneet!...	...very much!...	...وَيْنِيَت!...
...khalaas!...	...totally! (AR)...	...خَلَّاس!...
...malyaab?...	...and then?...	...مَلْيَاب?...
...yaaneeh...	...well, in other words (AR)...	...يَانِيَه...
...areeh...	...well, also (hesitation)...	...أَرِيَه...
...ahaa...	...aha, I see...	...أَهَا...
...baruukehan / batuukehan?	...and what about you (M) / (F)?	...بَرُووكَهَن / بَتُووكَهَن?

<121>

Note that statements and yes/no questions only differ in their intonation. There is no difference in the word order. The suffix -han? 'yes/no' can be used to underline a question:

Example	Gloss	Intonational Pattern
Bak kiiki.	It is not so.	The last stressed syllable is lower, i.e. falling intonation.
Bak kiiki?	Isn't it so?	The last stressed syllable is higher, i.e. rising intonation.

[Understanding](#)

Naan tidiya? / Naan tidii? / Naan tidiina?	What did you (M) / (F) / (PL) say?	نان تِديَه? / نان تِديِ? / نان تِديِنَه?
Afhamaab kaaki. / Afhamaat kaaki.	I (M) / (F) didn't understand.	أَفْهَمَاب كَاكِي. / أَفْهَمَات كَاكِي.
Afhamaab kinki. / Afhamaat kinki.	We (M) / (F) didn't understand.	أَفْهَمَاب كِيِنَكِي. / أَفْهَمَات كِيِنَكِي.

Shaawi diya! / Shaawi diyi! / Shaawi diina!	Say (M) / (F) / (PL) it again!	شاوے دیہ! / شاوے دیے! / شاوے دینہ!
Ibhali gwidaaba.	The language (the words) are many.	إبھالے قودابه.
Bhaliib abari.	I have something to say (LIT a word).	بھالیب اتریے.
Gaal bhali (gaat kalima) abari.	I have a word (one word AR).	قال بھالے (قات کلیمہ) اتریے.
Malu bhaliya / gwida bhaliya.	They are two words / they are many words.	ملُ بھالیہ / قودہ بھالیہ
Ani ibhaliyi faayisan.	That was all I have to say (LIT I have completed my words)	اُنے إبھالیے فایسن.
Weena hooy kitehay.	That's all (LIT another thing (F) there isn't for it).	وینہ ہوی کتھی.

Conversation Responses: Positive

Awooh!	Yes!	اُووہ!
Aaywaa!	Yes!	آیوا!
Waa!	Wow!	وا!
Daayiitu.	OK, fine! (LIT It is good)	داییت.
Daayiiib saktaa / daayiiib saktaayi / daayiiib saktaana.	Well done! (M) / (F) / (PL)	داییب سکتا / داییب سکتایے / داییب سکتانہ.
Haalooku / haalooku / haalooknaayu?	How are you, what is the matter? (M) / (F) / (PL)	ہالوک / ہالوک / ہالوکنائی؟
Baruuk tihiyisa / batuuk tihiyisi / baraakna tihiyisna.	You were better (M) / (F) / (PL) (returning a compliment).	تھیسہ / تھیسے / تھیسنہ.
Ahamidehook / ahamidehook / ahamidhookna.	Thank you (M) / (F) / (PL).	اھمیدھوک / اھمیدھوک / اھمیدھوکنا.
Hamuud baanaawa!	Reply (Welcome, LIT 'May you (M) not lack thanks!')	ھمُود باناوا!
Umdhhanook / Umdhhanook / Umdhhanookna.	Thank you for listening (M) / (F) / (PL)! (concludes a narrative, LIT 'Being alive')	اُمڈھنوک / اُمڈھنوک / اُمڈھنوکنا.
Midhhan baanaawa!	Reply (LIT 'Don't fail being alive!')	مڈھن باناوا!

Conversation Responses: Negative

Laa laa!	No no!	لا لا!
Aywalla!	Oh dear! (surprise)	اُیوَلہ!
Wooy!	Oh! (requesting help)	وُوی!
Waay!	Oh no! (rejection)	واي!
Wooy kwidhaa / wooy kwidhii / wooy kwidhaana!	Oh no, get lost (disgust) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	وُوی کُوڈہ / وُوی کُوڈے / وُوی کُوڈنہ!
Habaahoon!	Oh no! (disgust)	ھبھون!
Iss, Eess!	Shoo! Go away! (to goats)	اِس / اِس!

Jar, jaar!	Shoo! Go away! (to dogs)	جارا!
------------	--------------------------	-------

Greetings: Invariable

<122>

The following greetings are the same for any time or person.

Marhabaa!	Hello!	مرهبا!
Yaa marhabaa!	You there, hello!	يا مرهبا!
Eetaaneena!	Welcome! (to someone arriving)	يتانينه!
Tisniyeena!	Greetings at home! (when arriving)	تسنيينه!
Assalaam alaykwum!	Greetings! (AR)	أَسْلَامُ أَلَيْكُوم!
Alaykwum assalaam!	Same to you! (AR)	أَلَيْكُومُ أَسْلَام!

Requests

<123>

Here are a few requests or commands which are used frequently. All of them use verbs. Some of them have the endings -aa / -ii / -aana, others have the endings -a / -i / -na. Note that later on these different endings will be used to distinguish weak verbs from strong verbs.

Ma'aa / ma'ii, ma'ayi / ma'aana!	Come! (M) / (F) / (PL)	مآ / مآي / مآنه!
Haam'aa / haam'ii / haam'aana!	Bring (it)! (M) / (F) / (PL)	هامآ / هاماي / هامآنه!
Ma'aaheeb / ma'iiheeb / ma'aanaheeb!	Come to me! (M) / (F) / (PL)	مآهيب / مآيهيب / مآهيبون!
Ma'aahoon / ma'iihoon / ma'aanaahoon!	Come to us! Join us! (M) / (F) / (PL)	مآهون / مآيهون / مآهونون!
Thathaa / thathii / thathaana!	Sit! (M) / (F) / (PL)	ثثآ / ثثي / ثثآنه!
Ba'ashshigaa / bi'ashshigii / ba'ashshigaana!	Don't hurry! (M) / (F) / (PL)	باششقا / باششقي / باششقاننه!
Sa'a! / sa'i! / sa'ana!	Sit down! (M) / (F) / (PL)	سآه! / ساي! / سآانه!
Hagita / hagiti / hagitna!	Wait! (M) / (F) / (PL)	هقته / هقتي / هقتنه!
Hooy baashinhaya / hooy biishinhayi / hooy baashinhana!	Don't worry about it! (M) / (F) / (PL)	هوي باشينهيه / هوي بيشينهيه / هوي باشينهانه!

Offering and Taking

Miriya! / miriyi! / miriina!	Accept it! (M) / (F) / (PL)	مرييه / مرييه / مريينه!
Baanaawa! / biinaawi! / baanaawna!	Reply (Thanks May you not lack! (M) / (F) / (PL))	باناونه! / بيناوي! / باناونه!
Daayi na ahaa! / ahayi! / aheena!	Take (M) / (F) / (PL) something good! (e.g. food)	داييه نه اها! / اهاييه! / اهيينه!
Nafir na ahaa! / ahayi! / aheena!	Take (M) / (F) / (PL) something tasty!	نفييه نه اها! / اهاييه! / اهيينه!

	(e.g. food)	أهينه !
Hamiina bahaaya! / bihaayi! / bahaayna!	Reply (LIT don't take (M) / (F) / (PL) something bitter!)	هوينه نهايه! / بهايه! / نهايه!

Vocatives and Requests

<124>

The vocative may introduce requests such as in the examples below. Note that the object ('water') precedes the verb.

Anaa sanu, yam gw'asaahieb!	Oh my brother, give me water to drink!	أنا سنُّ ، يَم قُواساهيب!
Anaa kwaatu, yam gw'asiiheeb!	O my sister, give me water to drink!	أنا كُواثُ ، يَم قُواسيهيب!
Anaa kwati, yam gw'asaanaheeb!	O my sisters, give me water to drink!	أنا كُوتِ ، يَم قُواسانهيب!

Greetings

Questions and Responses

<125>

Note again that yes / no questions have the same grammatical structures as the corresponding answers or statements. The only difference is the rising intonation for questions (here marked by the acute accent), as against the falling intonation for statement, (here marked by a grave accent).

Daayīitu?	Is it OK? (yes/no question)	داييتُ؟
Daayīitu.	It is OK. (positive answer)	داييتُ.

Greetings: Meeting others (Questions)

<126>

Many Beja Greetings have the forms of questions and answers.

Kwatiib naataa / naataayi / naataana?	Did you (M) / (F) / (PL) sleep well?	كُوتِيب نانا / نانااي / ناناانا؟
Kwatiib naayan / naayan / naana.	I (M) / I (F) / we slept well.	كُوتِيب نايِن / نايِن / نانه.
Kwatiib mhataa / mhataayi / mhataana?	Did you (M) / (F) / (PL) spend the morning fine?	كُوتِيب مهتا / مهتااي / مهتاانا؟
Kwatiib mhan / mhan / mhana.	I (M) / I (F) / We spent the morning fine.	كُوتِيب مهن / مهن / مهنه.
Kwatiib t'aayima / t'aayimi / t'aayimna?	Did you (M) / (F) / (PL) spend the day fine?	كُوتِيب تايمة / تايمةاي / تايمةانا؟
Kwatiib a'aayim / a'aayim / ni'aayim.	I (M) / I (F) / we spent the day fine.	كُوتِيب آيِم / آيِم / نايِم.
Kwatiib tihawida / tihawidi / tihawidna?	Did you (M) / (F) / (PL) spend the evening well?	كُوتِيب تيهوده / تيهودهاي / تيهودهانا؟
Kwatiib ahawid / ahawid /	I (M) / I (F) / we spent the evening	كُوتِيب أهود / أهود /

nihawid.	well.	نِيهَوِد.
----------	-------	-----------

Greetings: Leaving (Wishes/Commands)

Kwatiib naayaa / naayii / naayaana!	Sleep well (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كُوْتِيْب نايَا / نايِي / نايَانَه!
Asigaab!	Reply.	أَسِيْقَاب!
Kwatiib mhaa / mhii / mhaana!	Spend the morning well (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كُوْتِيْب مَهَا / مَهِي / مَهَانَه!
Asigaab!	Reply.	أَسِيْقَاب!
Kwatiib aayima / aayimi / aayimna!	Spend the day well (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كُوْتِيْب آيْمَه / آيْمِي / آيْمِنَه!
Asigaab!	Reply.	أَسِيْقَاب!
Kwatiib hawida / hawidi / hawidna!	Spend the evening well (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كُوْتِيْب هَوْدَه / هَوْدِي / هَوْدِنَه!
Asigaab.	Reply.	أَسِيْقَاب.

Nouns and Phrases

Nominal Predicates

<127>

Predicates in Beja are the last part of a sentence. Nominal predicates are used to identify or describe things, and they employ nominal words like nouns or adjectives, as in 'Ali is a teacher' or 'Ali is strong'.

Greeting People

How are you?

<128>

In the next set of greetings, adjectives like 'fine, happy', etc. are used to ask about someone's well-being. Beja adjectives behave very much like nouns. Therefore 'I am happy' might also be translated as 'I am a happy (one).'

<129>

These nominal predicates have different endings, depending on the number, gender, and person of the subject: The -u is typical for Singular and the -a for Plural.

Likewise, the -t is typical for Feminine and the -b for Masculine gender - as the table shows. Note that the -b will only be attached if the word ends in a vowel, as in daayii -b-u 'good-he-is'. If the word already ends in a consonant, the -b will not be attached. This is true for the entire noun system.

Table 10: First and Second Person

SG:		
(akraa-) -(b)u / -tu	I (M) / (F) (I'm fine)	أَكْرَا بْ / تُ
(akraa-) -(b)wa / -tuwi	You (M) / (F) (you are fine)	أَكْرَا بُوَه / تُوَي

PL:		
(akraa-) -(b)a	We (are fine)	أَكْرَا بَه
(akraa-) -(b)aana	You (PL) (you are fine)	أَكْرَا بَانَه

How are you (M)? (Addressed to, and answered by, a male)

Akraawa?	Are you (M) strong?	أَكْرَاوْ أ؟
Akraabu.	I am strong.	أَكْرَا ب.
Dabaaywa?	Are you (M) OK?	دَبَايَوَه؟
Dabaayu.	I am OK.	دَبَايُ.
Kwatiibwa?	Are you (M) well?	كُوْتِيْبُوَه؟
Kwatiibu.	I am well.	كُوْتِيْبُ.
Libaabiwa?	Are you (M) happy?	لِيَابِيُوَه؟
Libaabiibu.	I am happy.	لِيَابِيْبُ.
Aafiimaawa?	Are you (M) healthy?	أَفِيْمَاوَه؟
Aafiimaabu.	I am healthy.	أَفِيْمَاْبُ.

<130>

Note that several of these greetings may be used in a row.

How are you (F)? (Addressed to, and answered by, a female)

Akraatuwi?	Are you (F) strong?	أَكْرَا تُوَي؟
Akraatu.	I (F) am strong.	أَكْرَا تُ.
Dabaaytuwi?	Are you (F) OK?	دَبَايُتُوَي؟
Dabaaytu.	I (F) am OK.	دَبَايُتُ.
Kwatiituwi?	Are you well?	كُوْتِيْتُوَي؟
Kwatiitu.	I (F) am well.	كُوْتِيْتُ.
Libaabiituwi?	Are you (F) happy?	لِيَابِيْتُوَي؟
Libaabiitu.	I (F) am happy.	لِيَابِيْتُ.
Aafiimaatuwi?	Are you (F) healthy?	أَفِيْمَا تُوَي؟
Aafiimaatu.	I am healthy.	أَفِيْمَا تُ.

How are you (PL)? (Addressed to, and answered by several people)

Akraabaana?	Are you (PL) strong?	أَكْرَا بَانَه؟
Akraaba.	We are strong.	أَكْرَا بَه.
Dabaayaana?	Are you (PL) OK?	دَبَايَانَه؟
Dabaaya.	We are OK.	دَبَايَه.
Kwatiibaana?	Are you (PL M) well?	كُوْتِيْبَانَه؟
Kwatiiba.	We are well.	كُوْتِيْبَه.

Libaabiibaana?	Are you (PL) happy?	ليبايببانه؟
Libaabiiba.	We are happy.	ليبايببه.
Aafiimaabaana?	Are you (PL) healthy?	آفيماابانه؟
Aafiimaaba.	We are healthy.	آفيماابه.

Conversation 1: 'A Visitor' (Examples of Interjections and Greetings)

<131>

A: the host, B: the visitor

#1	
A: Aabwa?	aab-wa
A: Who are you (M)?	whoOBJM-IDSG2M
#2	
B: Ani Aliibu.	ani aliib-u
B: I am Ali.	SG1 Ali-IDSG13M
#3	
A: Anaa sanu! Yaa marhaba, yaa marhaba.	anaa san-u yaa marhaba yaa marhaba
A: My brother! Hello, hello.	hey brother-POSSG1 hello hello hello hello
#4	
Eetaaneena!	ee-taan-ee-na
Welcome (LIT you (PL) come)!	come-PERFPL2-WH-thing
#5	
B: Tisniyeena!	ti-sni-yee-na
B: Good to await me (LIT you (PL) await)!	PERFSG2MPF-stay-PERFSG2M-WH-thing
#6	
A: Suur baya! Ma'aahoon!	suur bay-a ma'-aa-hoon
A: Go ahead! Come to us!	before go-IMPVM come-IMPVM-OBJPL1
#7	
Shuumaa!	shuum-aa
Come in!	enter-IMPVM
#8	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: Good.	good-IDSG13F
#9	
A: Sa'a!	sa'-a
A: Sit down!	sit-IMPVM

#10	
Oon'oomhiin sa'a!	oon-'oo-mhiin sa'-a
Sit down here!	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place sit-IMPVM
#11	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: Good.	good-IDSG13F
#12	
A: Dabaaywa?	dabaay-wa
A: Are you (M) OK?	well-IDSG2M
#13	
B: Dabaayu.	dabaay-u
B: I am OK.	well-IDSG13M
#14	
Batuukehan dabaaytuwi?	batuuk-ehan dabaayt-uwi
What about you, are you (F) OK?	SG2F-also well-IDSG2F
#15	
A: Ani daayiitu. Baruuk libaabiwa?	A: ani daayiit-u baruuk libaabii-wa
A: I am fine (F). Are you (M) happy?	SG1 good-IDSG13F SG2M happy-IDSG2M
#16	
B: Gwirhaab kaabaru,	gwirhaab kaa-baru
B: I don't have any trouble,	problem NEGIMPFSG1PF-have
#17	
batuukehan libaabiituwi?	batuuk-ehan libaabiit-uwi
are you (F) also happy?	SG2F-also happy-IDSG2F
#18	
A: Ani daayiit iha.	ani daayiit iha
A: I am fine (good).	SG1 good PERFSG1PF-be
#19	
Naan gw'ata?	naan gw'-ata
What do you want to drink?	what drink-SUBM
#20	
Shaahiib gw'atahan, hana jabanaat ⁵ ?	shaahiib gw'-ata-han hana jabanaat
Do you want to drink some tea, or coffee?	tea drink-SUBM-also or coffee.pot
#21	

B: Naat gw'i kaadi.	naat gw'-i kaa-di
B: I won't drink anything.	thing drink-FUTSG NEGIMPFSG1PF-say
#22	
Dawil door buun gw'aabu.	dawil door buun gw'-aab-u
I just drank coffee.	closeness time coffee drink-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#23	
Laakiin, anaa kwaatu, yam gw'asiiheeb!	laakiin anaa kwaat-u yam gw'as-ii-heeb
But, my sister, give (F) me (some) water!	but hey sister-POSSSG1 water let.drink-IMPVF-OBJSG1
#24	
A: Daayiiitu. Yihaa!	daayiiit-u yiha-a
A: Fine. Take (M)!	good-IDSG13F take-IMPVM
#25	
B: Ahamidehook. Uusheek keeya?	a-hamid-ehook uusheek kee-ya
B: Thank you. Where is Oosheek?	PERFSG1PF-praise-OBJSG2 Oosheek be.where-PERFSG3M
#26	
A: Ushanhooh abaayu.	A: u-shanh-ooh abaay-u
A: He has gone (went) to his work.	ARTSGM-work-POSSSG3 go-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#27	
B: Naadoor eeyiini?	naadoor ee-yiini
B: When does he (usually) come?	what.time come-IMPFSG3M
#28	
A: Nabhoob eeyiini.	nabhoob ee-yiini
A: He comes in the afternoon.	afternoon come-IMPFSG3M
#29	
Haalooku?	haal-ook-u
What is the (your) matter?	condition-POSSSG2-IDSG13M
#30	
B: Dibiloot halaagaay hooy abari.	dibiloot halaagaay hooy a-bari
B: I have a little request for him.	small business for PERFSG1PF-have
#31	
A: Hagita! Dawil door y'i indi.	hagit-a dawil door y'-i i-ndi
A: Wait! He will come soon.	wait-IMPVM closeness time come-FUTSG IMPFSG3MPF-say
#32	

B: Oond'aab, ani shawaay kaaki.	oond'aab ani shawaay kaa-ki
B: (Right) now, I am not free.	this.time SG1 free NEGIMPFSG1PF-be
#33	
Ashshigani.	ashshig-ani
I'm in a hurry.	hurry-IMPFSG1
#34	
Laakiin weer door y'i andi.	laakiin weer door y'-i a-ndi
But (some) other time I will come.	but other time come-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#35	
A: Ba'ashshigaa! Hooy baashinhaya!	ba-'ashshig-aa hooy baa-shinha-ya
A: Don't (M) hurry! Don't worry about it!	NEGIMPVMPF-hurry-NEGIMPVM at NEGIMPVMPF-worry-NEGIMPVM
#36	
Sooyi andi.	sooyi-i a-ndi
I will inform him.	tell-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#37	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: That is good.	good-IDSG13F
#38	
L'aab aayimi!	l'-aab aayim-i
Have (F) a good (LIT cool) day!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVF
#39	
A: Asigaab! L'aab aayima!	asigaab l'-aab aayim-a
A: The same to you! Have (M) a good day!	peaceful be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVM

<132>

۱ آيوه؟ ۲ انے اَلِيْب. ۳ انا سن! يا مرهب، يا مرهبه. ۴ تمانينه! ۵ تسينينه! ۶ شور تيه! ۷ ماهون! ۸ شوما! ۹ ساه! ۱۰ ونؤومھين ساه! ۱۱ داييت. ۱۲ دبايوه؟ ۱۳ دباي. ۱۴ بتوكھن دبايئوے؟ ۱۵ انے داييت. بڑوك لبايوه؟ ۱۶ قورهاب كايزو، ۱۷ بتوكھن لبايئوے؟ ۱۸ انے داييت إهه. ۱۹ نان قواته؟ ۲۰ شاھيب قواتهن. هنه جبنات؟ ۲۱ نات قوا كادے. ۲۲ دُول دؤر بون قوا ب. ۲۳ لاکين، انا كوا ب، نيم قواسيهتب! ۲۴ داييت. يها! ۲۵ اهميدھوك. او شيك كيبه؟ ۲۶ اشنهوه اباي. ۲۷ نادؤر يمينے؟ ۲۸ نهؤب يمينے. ۲۹ هالوك؟ ۳۰ دبلوت هلاقاي هوي اُبرے. ۳۱ هقته! دُول دؤر يا اندے. ۳۲ وندآب، انے شواي كاے. ۳۳ اششقمے. ۳۴ لاکين وئر دؤر يا اندے. ۳۵ باششقا! هوي باشنهيه! ۳۶ سوے اندے. ۳۷ داييت. ۳۸ لآب آيمے! ۳۹ اسقاب! لآب آيمه!

Who is it? Copula

<133>

To identify people or things, words like 'Who?' and 'What' are used together with a copula like the English word 'is'. The answers will be identification clauses where names, nouns, or pronouns are used, such as 'It is Ali.' 'It is me' or 'We are guests.'

<134>

The endings which identify things have already been introduced with the adjectives (above). They are not only used for adjectives, but for all nominals (nouns, pronouns,

names, adjectives, numerals). Two genders (M / (F) are distinguished, and two numbers (SG / (PL).

<135>

When people or things are named or listed or identified, Beja uses the Object case. This is common in Cushitic languages, but strange for Indo-European languages. So the identifying suffixes -(b)u, -(t)u, -(b)wa, -tuwi etc. (see the table above) can only be attached to words which are in the Object case.

<136>

There is an additional condition here: The Object case requires that a word ends in a consonant. So if a masculine name or noun doesn't already end in a consonant, the consonant -b must be attached. Therefore a person called Ali- will identify himself as Alii-b-u 'I am Ali'.

<137>

The same condition applies with feminine words: The Object case requires a consonant at the end of the word. But to a feminine name and noun - whether it already ends in a consonant or not - the consonant -t must always be attached. Therefore a person called Haliima or Zaynab will identify herself as Haliimaab-t-u, or Zaynab-t-u 'I am Halima', 'I am Zaynab'.

Interrogative Pronouns

<138>

Beja has question pronouns for as many as 10 or 12 persons, from 'I' to 'they'. But in real life, only some of them are used frequently: Aabu, aabtu? 'Who is it (M) / (F)?' and Aaba, aabta? 'Who are they (M) / (F)?'

Table 11: Interrogative Pronouns

Aabu?	Who am I (M)?	آبُ؟
Aabtu?	Who am I (F)?	آبْتُ؟
Aabuwa?, aabwa?, aawwa?	Who are you (M)?	آبُوهُ، آوَهُ؟
Aabtuwi?	Who are you (F)?	آبْتُوِي؟
Aabu?	Who (LIT whom (M)) is he?	آبُ؟
Aabtu?	Who (LIT whom (F)) is she?	آبْتُ؟
Aaba?	Who are we?	آبُهُ؟
Aabaana?	Who are you (PL M)?	آبَانَهُ؟
Aaba?	Who (LIT whom) are they (M)?	آبُهُ؟
Aabta?	Who (LIT whom) are they (F)?	آبْتُهُ؟

Interrogative Pronouns and Names

Aabu? / Aliibu.	Who is it (M)? / It is Ali.	آبُ؟ / أَلِيْبُ.
Aabtu? / Zaynabtu.	Who is it (F)? / It is Zaynab.	آبْتُ؟ / زَيْنَبْتُ.
Aaba? / Aliiwwa Hasanwaaya.	Who are they (M)? / They are Ali and Hassan.	آبُهُ؟ / أَلِيْوَهُ هَسَنُوَايَهُ.
Aabta? / Zaynabwa Haliimaabwaata. ⁶	Who are they (F)? / They are Zaynab and Halima.	آبْتُهُ؟ / زَيْنَبُوَهُ هَالِيْمَاوَاتَهُ. ❖

It is me / you

Aabu? / aabtu?	Who (LIT whom) is it? (M) / (F)	آبُ؟ / آبْتُ؟
Aneebu, aneebu.	It is me (M OBJ).	أُنَيْبُ.
Aneebtu.	It is me (F OBJ).	أُنَيْبْتُ.
Barooku.	It is you (M OBJ).	بَرُوكُ.
Batooktu.	It is you (F OBJ).	بَتُوكْتُ.
Baroohu.	It is him.	بَرُوهُ.
Batoohtu.	It is her.	بَتُوهْتُ.
Aaba? / aabta?	Who (LIT whom) are they? (M) / (F)	آبُه؟ / آبَتُه؟
Hinina, hinina.	It is us.	هِنِينَه.
Bareeknaaya.	It is you (PL M OBJ).	بَرُوكِنَايَه.
Bateeknaata.	It is you (PL F OBJ).	بَتُوكِنَاتَه.
Bareeh(naay)a.	It is them (M OBJ).	بَرُتُهِنَايَه.
Bateeh(naa)ta.	It is them (F OBJ).	بَتُتُهِنَاتَه.

Identifying Things

<139>

Many nominal predicates have the form of equations like A = B, where the second part is a noun, as in 'Ali is a teacher'.

What is it?

<140>

To identify things or to ask about things - like 'What is it?' - the numbers (SG) and (PL) need to be distinguished:

Interrogative Pronouns

Naa naatu?	What (thing) is it? (SG)	نا ناْتُ؟
Naa naata?	What (things) are they? (PL)	نا ناَتَه؟

Identifying Days 1

Amsi naa b'eeyu?	What day is it today?	أَمْسَه نَا بَعِيْه؟
Amsi hattu, hadtu.	Today it is Sunday (LIT first day).	أَمْسَه هَتْ ; هَدْتُ.
Amsi litneentu.	Today is Monday.	أَمْسَه لَيْتْنَيْتُ.
Amsi talataatu.	Today is Tuesday.	أَمْسَه تَلَاتَاتُ.
Amsi arb'aatu.	Today is Wednesday.	أَمْسَه أَرْبَاتُ.
Amsi khamiistu, hamiistu	Today is Thursday.	أَمْسَه خَمَيْسْتُ، هَمَيْسْتُ.
Amsi jim'aatu, jum'aatu.	Today is Friday.	أَمْسَه جِمَاتُ.
Amsi sabtu, subtu	Today is Saturday.	أَمْسَه سَبْتُ، سُبْتُ.

Identifying Days 2

Iru bitkaayt naa b'eeyu?	What day was the day before yesterday?	إِرُّ بِتْكَايْتِ نَا بَيْتِي؟
Iru bitkaayt jim'aatu.	The day before yesterday was Friday.	إِرُّ بِتْكَايْتِ جِمَاتُّ.
Iru naa b'eeyu?	What day was yesterday?	إِرُّ نَا بَيْتِي؟
Iru sabtu.	Yesterday was Saturday.	إِرُّ سَبْتُ.
Amsi naa b'eeyu?	What day is it today?	أَمْسِي نَا بَيْتِي؟
Amsi hattu.	Today is Sunday.	أَمْسِي هَتْ.
Lhayt naa b'eeyu?	What day is it tomorrow?	لَهَيْتِ نَا بَيْتِي؟
Lhayt litneentu.	Tomorrow is Monday.	لَهَيْتِ لَيْتِنَيْتُّ.
Lhayt baakaayt naa b'eeyu?	What day is it after tomorrow?	لَهَيْتِ بَاكَايْتِ نَا بَيْتِي؟
Lhayt baakaayt talataatu.	The day after tomorrow is Tuesday.	لَهَيْتِ بَاكَايْتِ تَلْتَاتُّ.

Plural Formation of Nouns

Plural of Nouns 1

<141>

Beja has various ways of forming the plural of a noun. The most common ones will be presented first.

<142>

The first, straightforward way is to attach the plural suffix -a (it is -ya after vowels).

Examples

gaw / gawa	house / houses	قَوَه / قَوَه
galam / galama	pen / pens	قَلَمَه / قَلَمَه
kwursi / kwursiia	chair / chairs	كُورْسِيَه / كُورْسِيِيَه

<143>

Note that in Beja, word final vowels typically are short (or shortened), like a in gawa 'houses', or i in kwursi 'chair'. But when a suffix syllable is attached, these vowels will be long, like ii in kwursii-ya 'chairs'.

Examples

(Uunbaruuh) naa naatu? / Gawu.	(This), What (thing) is it? / It is a house (M).	أُونْبَرُووه نَا نَاتُّ؟ قَوُو.
Naa naata? / Gawaaba.	What (things) are they? / They are houses (PL M).	نَا نَاتَه؟ قَوَوَابَه.
Naa naatu? / Galamu.	What (thing) is it? / It is a pen (M).	نَا نَاتُّ؟ قَلَمُّ.
Naa naata? / Galamaaba.	What (things) are they? / They are pens (PL M).	نَا نَاتَه؟ قَلَمَابَه.
Naa naatu? / Kwursiibu.	What (thing) is it? / It is a chair (M).	نَا نَاتُّ؟ كُورْسِيِيَه.
Naa naata? / Kwursiiaaba.	What (things) are they? / They are chairs (PL M).	نَا نَاتَه؟ كُورْسِيِيَابَه.

<144>

Like other final vowels, the plural -a, will also be long when a suffix follows - as in gaw-a / gaw-aa-ba, 'houses / they are houses', kwursii-ya / kwursii-yaa-ba 'chairs / they are chairs'.

Plural of Nouns 2

<145>

Another way of forming the plural is to shorten the last vowel of the noun.

kaam / kam	camel / camels	كام / كم
kaamt / kamt, kamit	she-camel / she-camels	كامت / كمت كومت
n'aayt / n'ayt	goat / goats	نأيت / نأيت
hataay / hatay	horse / horses	هتاي / هتي
(Uunbatuuh) naa naatu? / Kaamu.	(This.) What (thing) is it? / It is a camel.	(أونبوتوه) نا ناٲ? / كام.
Naa naata? / Kama.	What (things) are they? / They are camels (PL M).	نا ناٲه? / كمه.
Naa naatu? / Kaamtu.	What (thing) is it? / It is a camel (F).	نا ناٲ? / كامٲ.
Naa naata? / Kamta, kamitta.	What (things) are they? / They are camels (PL F).	نا ناٲه? / كمته, كمتته.
Naa naatu? / N'aaytu.	What (thing) is it? / It is a goat (F).	نا ناٲ? / نأيتٲ.
Naa naata? / N'ayta.	What (things) are they? / They are goats (PL F).	نا ناٲه? / نأيتيه.
Naa naatu? / Hataayu.	What (thing) is it? / It is a horse (M).	نا ناٲ? / هتايٲ.
Naa naata? / Hataya.	What (things) are they? / They are horses (PL M).	نا ناٲه? / هتاييه.

Plural of Nouns 3

<146>

A third way of expressing the plural is to front-shift the pitch-accent, as the next examples show. All of these nouns are given in the object case.

bissaab / bissaab	cat (SG M) / (PL)	بسات / بسات
bissaat / bissaat	cat (SG F) / (PL)	بسات / بسات
eer'iib, eer'iib / iireeb, iireeb	eagle (SG M) / (PL)	تيرايب, تيرايب / إي رييب, إيريب
b'ashoob / b'ashoob	fox (SG M) / (PL)	باشوب / باشوب
b'ashoot / b'ashoot	fox (SG F) / (PL)	باشوت / باشوت
hadhaab / hadhaab	lion (SG M) / (PL)	هذاب / هذاب
hadhaat / hadhaat	lioness (SG F) / (PL)	هذات / هذات
biileeb / biileeb	bag (SG) / (PL)	بيليب / بيبليب
hadhiib / hadhiib	bread (SG) / (PL)	هذيب / هذيب

dheefaab / dheefaab	door (SG) / (PL)	دُيْفَاب / دُيْفَاب
ayeeb / ayeeb	hand (SG) / (PL)	أَيْب / أَيْب
ribaab / ribaab	mountain (SG) / (PL)	رِبَاب / رِبَاب
akaat / akaat	palm tree fruit (SG) / (PL)	أَكَات / أَكَات
gwibeeb / gwibeeb	shield (SG) / (PL)	قَوَيْب / قَوَيْب
aweeb / aweeb	stone (SG) / (PL)	أَوَيْب / أَوَيْب
gwharaab / gwharaab	thief (SG) / (PL)	قُوْهْرَاب / قُوْهْرَاب
hindiib / hindiib	tree, wood (SG) / (PL)	هَنْدِيْب / هَنْدِيْب

Plural of Nouns 4

<147>

There are words which do not use any affixes to form the plural - especially those words whose last vowel is already -a, and some loan words.

riba / riba	hill (M) / hills	رِبَه / رِبَه
tarabeedaat / tarabeedaat	table (F) / tables	تَرْبِيْدَات / تَرْبِيْدَات

<148>

The context - or something else - will take care of these (apparent) ambiguities.

Ribaabu / ribaaba.	It is a hill (M) / They are hills.	رِبَابُ / رِبَابَه.
Tarabeedaatu / tarabeedaata.	It is a table (F) / They are tables.	تَرْبِيْدَاتُ / تَرْبِيْدَاتَه.

Table 12: Summary of Plural Formations

Plural Formation:	Example (SG):	Example (PL):
1. Suffix -a		
house / pen	gaw / galam	قَو / قَلَم
		gawa / galama
		قَوَه / قَلَمَه
2. Shortening of the last syllable		
camel / horse	kaam / hataay	كَم / هَتَاي
		kam / hatay
		كَم / هَتَاي
3. Front-Shifting of the Pitch-Accent		
cat / hand	bissaab / ayeeb	بِسَاب / أَيْب
		bissaab / ayeeb
		بِسَاب / أَيْب
4. Zero Marking		
hill / table	riba / tarabeezaat	رِبَه / تَرْبِيْزَات
		riba / tarabeezaat
		رِبَه / تَرْبِيْزَات
5. Different root		
man / woman	tak / takat	تَك / تَكَّت
		da / M'at
		دَه / مَات
6. No singular (or rarely used)		
water / face	-	-
		yam / Fiir
		يَم / فَيْر

Frequent Plural Nouns: People

<149>

The plural form of a noun is not predictable. Therefore it should always be considered an important property of the noun. Some of the most frequent *irregular* plurals, such

as 'men', 'women', 'boys' and 'girls' have already been given in the previous sections. Here is a summary of important unpredictable plurals.

tak / da	man (SG) / (PL)	تَك / ده
takat / m'a	woman (SG) / (PL)	تَكْت / مأه
oor / ar	boy (SG) / (PL)	ؤر / أر
oot / arit	girl (SG) / (PL)	ؤت / أرت

More Examples of Plural Forms

Plural Forms of Things

raat / rat	leaf (SG) / (PL)	رات / رت
faas / fas	axe (SG) / (PL)	فاس / فس
kaar / kar	hill (SG) / (PL)	كار / كر
yaay / yay	rope (SG) / (PL)	ياي / يي
siyaam / siyam	grass (SG) / (PL)	سيام / سيم

Plural Forms: Animals 1

yaas / yas	dog (SG M) / (PL)	ياس / يس
yaast / yast	bitch (SG F) / (PL)	ياست / يست
kaam / kam	camel (SG M) / (PL)	كام / كم
n'aayt / n'ayt	goat (SG F) / (PL)	نأيت / نأيت
hataay / hatay	horse (SG M) / (PL)	هتاي / هتي

Plural Forms: Animals 2

argin / arginaab	sheep (SG M) / (PL)	أرقن / أرقناب
sh'aab / sh'aab	ox (SG M) / (PL)	شآب / شآب
sh'aat / sh'aat	cow (SG F) / (PL)	شآت / شآت
meek / mak	donkey (SG M) / (PL)	ميك / مك
meekt / makt	donkey (SG F) / (PL)	ميكت / مك
anoot / anoot, anut	ewe (SG F) / (PL)	أنوت / أنوت, أنت
bissaab / bissaab	cat (SG M) / (PL)	بساب / بساب
bissaat / bissaat	cat (SG F) / (PL)	بسات / بسات
hadhaab / hadhaab	lion (SG M) / (PL)	هدآب / هدآب
hadhaat / hadhaat	lioness (SG F) / (PL)	هدآت / هدآت

Plural Forms: Body Parts 1

ayeeb / ayeeb	hand (SG) / (PL)	أييب / أييب
ginuuf / ginif	nose (SG) / (PL)	قنوف / قنوف

ragad / ragadaab	foot (SG) / (PL)	رَقْد / رَقْدَاب
tiikas / tiikasaab	heel (SG) / (PL)	تِيكْس / تِيكْسَاب
gw'aj / gw'aj	eye (SG) / (PL)	قَوَاج / قَوَاج
angwiil / angwil	ear (SG) / (PL)	أَنْقَوِيل / أَنْقَوِيل
liiliit / liiliit	pupil of the eye (SG) / (PL)	لِيلِيْت / لِيلِيْت

Plural Forms: Body Parts 2

tiibalaayt / tiibalayt	finger (SG F) / (PL)	تِيْبَالَيْت / تِيْبَالَيْت
tiibalaay / tiibalay	thumb (SG M) / (PL)	تِيْبَالِي / تِيْبَالِي
kwireet / kwireet	tooth (SG) / (PL)	كُوْرِيْت / كُوْرِيْت
girma / girmaab	head (SG) / (PL)	قِرْمَه / قِرْمَاب
gin'a / gin'aab	heart (SG) / (PL)	قِنَاب / قِنَاب
yaf / yafaab	mouth (SG) / (PL)	يَف / يَفَاب
haaf / haf	stomach (SG) / (PL)	هَاف / هَاف

Plural Forms: Nouns without Singular

<150>

Nouns which are only used in the plural include body parts, liquids and mass nouns.

fir	face (PL M)	فِير
hamoot	hair (PL F)	هَمُوْت
yam	water (and other liquids) (PL M)	يَم
sikkwart	sugar (and other mass nouns) (PL F)	سِكْوَكُوْرْت
mhallagaab	money (PL M)	مَهْلَقَاب

Identifying People

<151>

The interrogative pronoun for identifying things is naa (naatu)? 'What?' The interrogative pronouns for identifying persons are Aaw, aab? 'Who, whom?' And as responses to these questions, Beja has a rich set of person suffixes and personal pronouns.

Person Suffixes

<152>

The answers to the question aabu 'Who is it?' use the same copula suffixes as for adjectives. Some of them (marked with *) have already been introduced in the context of greetings. Below follows the full list with all person suffixes (table 13). This should be compared with table 11.

Table 13: Person Suffixes

SG:	
-bu / -(y)u	*I (M) am
-tu	*I (F) am

-buwa / -wa	*you (M) are
-tuwi	*you (F) are
-bu / -(y)u	he is
-tu	she is
PL:	
-ba / -(y)a	we (M) are
-ta	we (F) are
-baana / -(y)aana	you (PL M) are
-taana	you (PL F) are
-ba / -(y)a	they (M) are
-ta	they (F) are

Subject Pronouns

<153>

Beja pronouns take case. The two cases subject case (responding to the question 'who?') and object case (responding to the question 'whom?') have already been introduced above. Beja has different interrogative pronouns for these two: The pronoun which asks for the subject case - like 'Who' in 'Who came?' - is different from the pronoun which asks for the object case - like 'Whom' in 'Who (M) did he see?'

Interrogative Pronouns

Aaw?	Who?	آو؟
Aab?	Whom ?	آب؟
Aaw eeya? / Baruuu eeya.	Who came? / He came.	آو ئيه؟ / برؤوه ئيه.
Aab rhiya? / Barooh rhiya.	Whom did he see? / Him he saw.	آب رهيه؟ / برؤوه رهيه.

<154>

Here follows the full set of subject and object case independent pronouns. They are used for subjects (who) and objects (whom) respectively. Their vowels differ:

<155>

The subject case typically uses the vowels -uu (SG) and -aa (PL). The object case typically uses the vowels -oo (SG) and -ee (PL).

Table 14: Subject / Object Personal Pronouns

SG:		
ani / aneeb	I / me	أني / أنيب
baruuk / barook	you (M SUBJ) / (M OBJ)	برؤوك / برؤوك
batuuk / batook	you (F SUBJ) / (F OBJ)	بتؤوك / بتؤوك
baruuh / barooh	he / him	برؤوه / برؤوه
batuuh / batooh	she / her	بتؤوه / بتؤوه
PL:		

hinin / hinin.	we / us	هينين / هينين
baraakna / bareekna.	you (PL M SUBJ) / (PL M OBJ)	بَرَاكْنَه / بَرَاكْنَه
bataakna / bateekna.	you (PL F SUBJ) / (PL F OBJ)	بَتَاكْنَه / بَتَاكْنَه
baraah / bareeh.	they / them (M)	بَرَاه / بَرَاه
bataah / bateeh.	they / them (F)	بَتَاه / بَتَاه

Subject Pronouns

<156>

The first part of the following sentences also involves subject pronouns. Note that the plural forms are distinguished by pitch-accent.

Subject Pronouns and Identities

Aaw gawkinaabu?	Who is (the owner) of the house?	أَو قَوَكِينَابْ؟
SG:		
Ani gawkinaabu / gawkinaatu.	I (M) / (F) am (the owner) of the house.	أَنِي قَوَكِينَابْ / قَوَكِينَابْ.
Baruuk gawkinaawa.	You (M) are (the owner) of the house.	بَرُووك قَوَكِينَاوَه.
Batuuk gawkinaatuwi.	You (F) are (the owner) of the house.	بَتُووك قَوَكِينَاوِي.
Baruuh gawkinaabu.	He is (the owner) of the house.	بَرُوَه قَوَكِينَابْ.
Batuuh gawkinaatu.	She is (the owner) of the house.	بَتُوَه قَوَكِينَابْ.
PL:		
Hinin gawkinaaba / gawkinaata.	We (M) / (F) are (the owner) of the house.	هينين قَوَكِينَابَه / قَوَكِينَابَه.
Baraakna gawkinaabaana.	You (PL M) are (the owner) of the house.	بَرَاكْنَه قَوَكِينَابَانَه.
Bataakna gawkinaataana.	You (PL F) are (the owner) of the house.	بَتَاكْنَه قَوَكِينَاتَانَه.
Baraah gawkinaaba.	They (M) are (the owner) of the house.	بَرَاه قَوَكِينَابَه.
Bataah gawkinaata.	They (F) are (the owner) of the house.	بَتَاه قَوَكِينَابَه.

Subject Pronouns with Verbs

<157>

To introduce the subject pronouns, a few common verbs will be used, such as 'to come, to start' etc. but is not necessary to study the verb endings at this point. The full verb system will be introduced later.

<158>

If subject pronouns like baruuh 'he' are found in sentences which also have a verb like eeyaa 'he-came', then the focus is on the pronoun. Therefore a sentence like baruuh eeyaa 'he came' really means 'It is he who came, not someone else.'

Verb 'to come'

Aaw eeyaa?*	<u>Who came?</u>	أَو يَّيَّهْ؟ *
SG:		
Ani y'an.	I came.	أَنِي يَّانْ
Baruuk eetaa.	You (M) came.	بَرُووك يَّتَا

Batuuk eetaayi.	You (F) came.	بَتُوک تَيَايِي
Baruuh eeya.*	He came.	بَرُوهُ تِيه . *
Batuuh eeta.	She came.	بَتُوهُ تِيه
PL:		
Hinin eena.	We came.	هِنِن تِيه
Baraakna eetaana.	You (PL) came.	بَرَاكْنِه تَيَاانِه
Bataakna eetaana.	You (PL) came.	بَتَاكْنِه تَيَاانِه
Baraah eeyaan.*	They (M) came.	بَرَاه تِيَان . *
Bataah eeyaan.*	They (F) came.	بَتَاه تِيَان . *

<159>

* Instead of eeya, eeyaan, full forms such as eeyiya, eeyiyaan may also be used.

Verb 'to start, get up'

Aaw yakiya?	Who started?	أَو يَكِيه؟
SG:		
(Ani) yakan.	I started	(أَنِي) يَكْن .
(Baruuk) yaktaa.	You (M) started.	(بَرُوک) يَكْتَا .
(Batuuk) yaktaayi.	You (F) started.	(بَتُوک) يَكْتَايِي .
(Baruuh) yakiya.	He started.	(بَرُوهُ) يَكِيه .
(Batuuh) yakta.	She started.	(بَتُوهُ) يَكْتِه .
PL:		
(Hinin) yakna.	We started.	(هِنِن) يَكْنِه .
(Baraakna) yaktaana.	You (PL M) started.	(بَرَاكْنِه) يَكْتَاانِه .
(Bataakna) yaktaana.	You (PL F) started.	(بَتَاكْنِه) يَكْتَاانِه .
(Baraah) yakiyaan.	They (M) started.	(بَرَاه) يَكِيَان .
(Bataah) yakiyaan.	They (F) started.	(بَتَاه) يَكِيَان .

Verb 'to see'

Aaw rhiya?	Who saw (it)?	أَو رَهِيه؟
SG:		
(Ani) rhan.	I saw (it).	(أَنِي) رَهْن .
(Baruuk) rhitaa.	You (M) saw.	(بَرُوک) رَهْتَا .
(Batuuk) rhitaayi.	You (F) saw.	(بَتُوک) رَهْتَايِي .
(Baruuh) rhiya.	He saw.	(بَرُوهُ) رَهِيه .
(Batuuh) rhita.	She saw.	(بَتُوهُ) رَهْتِه .
PL:		
(Hinin) rhina.	We saw.	(هِنِن) رَهْنِه .

(Baraakna) rhitaana.	You (PL M) saw.	(بَراَكْنَه) رَهْتَانَه .
(Bataakna) rhitaana.	You (PL F) saw.	(بَتَاكْنَه) رَهْتَانَه .
(Baraah) rhiyaan.	They (M) saw.	(بَراَه) رَهْيَان .
(Bataah) rhiyaan.	They (F) saw.	(بَتَاه) رَهْيَان .

Definiteness

Indefinite / Definite

<160>

Indefinite Beja nouns are nouns *without* a definite article. So the word tak could be translated as 'man' or 'a man' - but not as 'man in general'.

<161>

Definite or general Beja nouns are nouns *with* a definite article. So the word oo-tak could be translated as 'the man, man in general'. (Note that the object case is used when a noun is just mentioned or listed, such as here above.)

Indefinite Nouns

<162>

There are only few occasions where indefinite nouns will be used, and the main use is to identify or introduce someone or something, as in the following examples.

SG:		
tak / Taku.	man / It is a man.	تَاك / تَاكُ .
takat / Takattu.	woman / It is a woman.	تَاكَات / تَاكَاتُ .
oor / Ooru.	boy / It is a boy.	وُور / وُورُ .
oot / Ootu.	girl / It is a girl.	وُوت / وُوتُ .
PL:		
da / Daaba.	men / They are men.	دَه / دَابَه .
m'a / M'ata.	women / They are women.	مَاه / مَاتَه .
ar / Ara.	boys / They are boys.	أَر / أَرَه .
arit / Aritta.	girls / They are girls.	أَرِت / أَرِتَه .

Definite Nouns

<163>

Most of the time, nouns are used in their definite form, i.e. with an article. This is true even for general statements such as 'water will run its course' or 'advice is a good thing':

Aayam oodham sakeen.	[The] waters follow [the] course.	آيَم وَدَّم سَاكِين .
Uumkir daayi naatu.	[The] advice is a good thing.	أُوْمَكِر دَايِي نَاثُ .

<164>

The definite article and the plural form should be considered part of a noun. To take an example: It is not enough to consider tak 'man' as one lexical item, and da 'men' as another lexical item. Instead, one should consider ootak, eenda 'the man / the men' as belonging together. Thus, for a language learner it is not recommended to

just remember the indefinite forms such as **tak**, **da-** 'man, men (INDEF)' - but the following forms should be stored in memory:

ootak / eenda	man / men (DEF)	وَتَكَ / بِنْدَه
tutakat / teem'a	woman / women (DEF)	تُتَكَتْ / تَيْمَاهُ
w'oor / y'ar	boy / boys (DEF)	وَوُورْ / يَارْ
tu'oor / ti'arit	girl / girls (DEF)	تُوُورْ / تَارْتْ

<165>

It is not correct to use an indefinite noun if the item is already in everybody's mind. There actually are only few occasions where indefinite nouns can be used. Examples such as those below might be found at the beginning of a conversation, or when a new turn is introduced in a story - but hardly anywhere else.

Indefinite NPs

Indefinite Nouns

Hataay eeya.	A horse (M) came.	هَتَاي يِيَه.
Hatay eeyaan.	Some horses (M) came.	هَتَي تِيَان.
Hataay rhan.	I saw a horse (M).	هَتَاي رَهْن.
Hatay rhan.	I saw some horses (M).	هَتَي رَهْن.
Kaam eeya.	A camel (M) came.	كَام يِيَه.
Kam eeyaan.	Some camels (M) came.	كَم تِيَان.
Kaam rhan.	I saw a camel (M).	كَام رَهْن.
Kam rhan.	I saw some camels (M).	كَم رَهْن.
Kaamt eeta.	A camel (F) came.	كَامْت يِيَه.
Kamit eeyaan.	Some camels (F) came.	كَمِيت تِيَان.
Kaamt rhan.	I saw a camel (F).	كَامْت رَهْن.
Kamit rhan.	I saw some camels (F).	كَمِيت رَهْن.
Tak eeya.	A man came.	تَكَ يِيَه.
Da eeyaan.	Some men came.	دِه تِيَان.
Tak rhan.	I saw a man.	تَكَ رَهْن.
Daab rhan.	I saw some men.	دَاب رَهْن.

Definite NPs

<166>

As has been said above, nouns usually come with a definite article. The definite article would even be used in general statements such as W-hataay daayi naatu 'A horse (LIT the-horse) is a good thing'.

<167>

The following sentences introduce different forms of the definite article.

Nouns with Definite Article

Uukaam eeya.	The camel (M) came.	أوكام تيه.
Ookaam rhan.	I saw the camel (M).	ؤكام رهن.
Tuukaam eeta.	The camel (F) came.	توكام تيه.
Tookaam rhan.	I saw the camel (F)	توكام رهن.
Aakam eeyaan.	The camels (M) came.	آكم تيان.
Eekam rhan.	I saw the camels (M).	يكم رهن.
Taakam eeyaan.	The camels (F) came.	تاكم تيان.
Teekam rhan.	I saw the camels (F)	تيكم رهن.
Uutak eeya.	<u>The man came.</u>	أوتك تيه.
Ootak rhan.	I saw the man.	ؤتك رهن.
Aanda eeyaan.	The men came.	آنده تيان.
Eenda rhan.	I saw the men.	ينده رهن.
Whataay eeya.	The horse came (M).	ؤهتاي تيه.
Whataay rhan.	I saw the horse (M).	ؤهتاي رهن.
Yhatay eeyaan.	The horses came (M).	يهتي تيان.
Yhatay rhan.	I saw the horses (M).	يهتي رهن.

Definite Article

<168>

The definite article has different forms. They are conditioned by four properties of the noun:

1. The initial consonant of the noun - this can be either a Glottal consonant (h or hamzah) or non-Glottal.
2. The gender of the noun - this can be either masculine or feminine.
3. The number of the noun - this can be either singular or plural.
4. And the case of the noun - and this can be either subject or object case.

<169>

Note that Beja words which start with a vowel behave as if they start with a hidden hamzah [']. This hamzah will appear as soon as a syllable is attached in front of it (prefixed).

Table 15: Definite Article

Monosyllabic words ⁷ which do not start with h or hamzah take the following articles:		
uu-, oo- / tuu-, too-	SG M / SG F	أو- ؤ- / ئو- تو-

aa-, ee- / taa-, tee-	PL M / PL F	آء، ئ / - تا، - تیں -
Examples (SG):		
uu-kaam / uu-nfis / uu-smuuh	camel (M SUBJ) / appetite(SUBJ) / his name(SUBJ)	اُو - کام / اُو - نفیس / اُو - سموه
oo-kaam / oo-nfis / oo-smooh	camel (M OBJ) / appetite (OBJ) / his name (OBJ)	و - کام / و - نفیس / و - سموه
tuu-kaam / tuu-ndi / tuu-drim	camel (F SUBJ) / mother (SUBJ)/ cattle (SUBJ)	تُو - کام / تُو - ندے / تُو - دریم
too-kaam / too-ndi / too-drim	camel (F OBJ) / mother (OBJ)/ cattle (OBJ)	تو - کام / تو - ندے / تو - دریم
Examples (PL):		
aa-kam / aa-nda	camels (M SUBJ) / men (SUBJ)	آء - کم / آء - نده
ee-kam / ee-nda	camels (M OBJ) / men (OBJ)	ئء - کم / ئء - نده
taa-kam / taa-m'a	camels (F SUBJ) / women (SUBJ)	تا - کم / تا - ماہ
tee-kam / tee-m'a	camels (F OBJ) / women (OBJ)	تیں - کم / تیں - ماہ
Both monosyllabic words and other words which start with h or hamzah take the following articles:		
w(u)-, w(u)- / t(u)-, t(u)-	SG M / SG F	
y(i)-, y(i)- / t(i)-, t(i)-	PL M / PL F	
Examples (SG):		
w(u)-'oor / w-hiss / w-halak	the boy (SUBJ) / voice (SUBJ) / dress (SUBJ)	و (اُ) - وُور / و - هیس / و - هَلَك
w(u)-'oor / w-hiss / w-halak	the boy (OBJ) / voice (OBJ) / dress (OBJ)	و (اُ) - وُور / و - هیس / و - هَلَك
t(u)-'oor / tu-haasim / tu-humni	the girl (SUBJ) / spider (F SUBJ)/ afternoon (SUBJ)	ت (اُ) - تُوور / ت - هاسیم / ت - هُمنے
t(u)-'oor / tu-haasim / tu-humni	the girl (OBJ) / spider (F OBJ) / afternoon (OBJ)	ت (اُ) - تُوور / ت - هاسیم / ت - هُمنے
Examples (PL):		
y(i)-'ar / y-hissa	the boys (SUBJ) / voices (SUBJ)	ئ (اُ) - اُر / ئ - ی - هیسہ
y(i)-'ar / y-hissa	the boys (OBJ) / voices (OBJ)	ئ (اُ) - اُر / ئ - ی - هیسہ
t(i)-'ar / ti-haasma (haasimi)	the girls (SUBJ) / spiders (F SUBJ)	ت (اُ) - اُر / تے - هاسمه (هاسیمے)
t(i)-'ar / ti-haasma	the girls (OBJ) / spiders (F OBJ)	ت (اُ) - اُر / تے - هاسمه
Words with more than one syllable which do not start with h or hamzah take the following articles:		
u-, u- / tu-, tu ⁸	SG M / SG F	
i-, i- / ti-, ti-	PL M / PL F	
Examples (SG):		

u-bissa / u-ganaay / u-sakana	cat (M SUBJ) / gazelle (M SUBJ) / news (SUBJ)	أ- بَسَّه / أ- قَنَاي / أ- سَكَنَه
u-bissa / u-ganaay / u-sakana	cat (M OBJ) / gazelle (M OBJ) / news (OBJ)	أ- بَسَّه / أ- قَنَاي / أ- سَكَنَه
tu-bissa / tu-ganaay / tu-jabana	cat (F SUBJ) / gazelle (F SUBJ) / coffee pot (SUBJ)	تُ - بَسَّه / تُ - قَنَاي / تُ - جَبَنَه
tu-bissa / tu-ganaay / tu-jabana	cat (F OBJ) / gazelle (F OBJ) / coffee pot (OBJ)	تُ - بَسَّه / تُ - قَنَاي / تُ - جَبَنَه
Examples (PL):		
i-bissa / i-nisrika	cats (M SUBJ) / children (M SUBJ)	إ- بَسَّه / إ- نِسْرِكَه
i-bissa / i-nisrika	cats (M OBJ) / children (M OBJ)	إ- بَسَّه / إ- نِسْرِكَه
ti-bissa / ti-nisrika	cats (F SUBJ) / children (F SUBJ)	تے - بَسَّه / تے - نِسْرِكَه
ti-bissa / ti-nisrika	cats (F OBJ) / children (F OBJ)	تے - بَسَّه / تے - نِسْرِكَه

Interrogatives and Demonstratives

<170>

Here are more examples for definite articles. The examples will be given in the form of questions like 'Where is...?'

Interrogative Demonstratives / Local Verbs

Keeya?	Where / which one (M) is it?	كَيْيَه؟
Keeta?	Where / which one (F) is it?	كَيْيَه؟
Keeyaan?	Where / which ones are they?	كَيْيَان؟

Where is 1

Examples (M):		
Uukaam / uutak keeya?	Where is the camel (M) / man?	أُوْكَام كَيْيَه؟
Aakam / anda keeyaan?	Where are the camels (M) / men?	أَكَم كَيْيَان؟
Uumeek keeya?	Where is the donkey (M)?	أُوْمِيَك كَيْيَه؟
Aamak keeyaan?	Where are the donkeys (M)?	أَمَك كَيْيَان؟
Examples (F):		
Tuukaam / tutakat keeta?	Where is the camel (F) / woman?	تُوْكَام كَيْيَه؟
Taakam / taam'a keeyaan?	Where are the camels (F) / women?	تَاكَم كَيْيَان؟
Tuumeek keeta?	Where is the donkey (F)?	تُوْمِيَك كَيْيَه؟
Taamak keeyaan?	Where are the donkeys (F)?	تَامَك كَيْيَان؟
Tuun'aay keeta?	Where is the goat (F)?	تُوْنَاي كَيْيَه؟
Taan'ay keeyaan?	Where are the goats (F)?	تَانَاي كَيْيَان؟

Where is 2

Examples (SG):

Ugaw keeya?	Where is the house?	أَوْقُو كَيْيَه؟
Ugalam keeya?	Where is the pencil?	أَقْلَم كَيْيَه؟
Umaktab keeya?	Where is the office?	أَمَكْتَب كَيْيَه؟
Utambiil keeya?	Where is the car?	أَتَمْبِيل كَيْيَه؟
Ukwursi keeya?	Where is the chair?	أَكُورْسِي كَيْيَه؟
Tumastara keeta?	Where is the ruler?	تُمْسْتَرِه كَيْيَه؟
Examples (PL):		
Igawa keeyaan?	Where are the houses?	إِقْوَه كَيْيَان؟
Igalama keeyaan?	Where are the pencils?	إَقْلَمَه كَيْيَان؟
Imaktaba keeyaan?	Where are the offices?	إِمَكْتَبَه كَيْيَان؟
Itambil keeyaan?	Where are the cars?	إِتْمِيل كَيْيَان؟
Ikwursi keeyaan?	Where are the chairs?	إِكُورْسِيَه كَيْيَان؟
Timastara keeyaan?	Where are the rulers?	تِمْسْتَرِه كَيْيَان؟

Demonstratives

<171>

The answer to the question 'Which?' or 'Where' usually requires demonstratives or deictics. These are special pronouns which point to the particular item in question.

<172>

In Beja, only those items can be pointed to which are considered definite. Therefore, demonstratives can only be attached to pronouns, since they are considered definite (e.g. uun-baruuh 'this-he'), or to names (e.g. uun-Ali 'this Ali'), or to nouns which have a definite article (uun-uu-tak 'this-the-man').

<173>

Beja has two different sets of demonstratives: One for items nearby, which includes uun 'this', aan 'these', and another set for items far away, which includes been 'that', baliin 'those'.

<174>

The near demonstrative pronouns 'this / these' have different forms, depending on number and gender: uun / aan 'these (SG M / PL M)', or tuun / taan 'these (SG F / PL F)'. In addition, the object case will require the usual object vowels: oon / een (SG M / PL M), or toon / teen (SG F / PL F)

<175>

Many speakers will change tuun- / toon- into > tuut- / toot- or even into > uut- / oot-, especially when the t- F follows, as in tuut tikati 'this she-is', or uut- tu- takat 'this-the-woman'.

Table 16: Demonstratives Near and Far

NEAR SUBJ:		
Uun / tuun	This (M) / (F)	أُون / تُون
Aan / taan	These (M) / (F)	آن / تان
NEAR OBJ:		
Oon / toon	This (M) / (F)	وون / تون

Een / teen	These (M) / (F)	ہیں / تین
FAR SUBJ:		
Been / beet	That (M) / (F)	ہیں / بیت
Baliin / baliit	Those (M) / (F)	ہلین / ہلیت
FAR OBJ:		
Been / Beet	That (M) / (F)	ہیں / بیت
Baliin / baliit	Those (M) / (F)	ہلین / ہلیت

Demonstratives Referring To Near Objects

This (M)

Keeya? Uun ikati.	Where is he? He is here (Lit Which one is it? It is this one).	کیہہ؟ / اُون اِکْتیہ.
Keeyaan? Aan ikatiin.	Where are they (M)? They (M) are here.	کییان؟ / آن اِکْتین.
Keeta? Tuut (tuun) tikati.	Where is she? She is here.	کیہہ؟ / تُوْت (تُون) تِکْتیہ.
Keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are they (F)? They (F) are here.	کییان؟ / تان اِکْتین.
Uukaam keeya? Uun ikati.	Where is the camel (M)? It (M) is here.	اُوکام کیہہ؟ / اُون اِکْتیہ.
Aakam keeyaan? Aan ikatiin.	Where are the camels (M)? They (M) are here.	اَکَم کییان؟ / آن اِکْتین.
Tuun'aay keeta? Tuut tikati.	Where is the goat (F)? It (F) is here.	تُونَاہی کیہہ؟ / تُوْت تِکْتیہ.
Taan'ay keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are the goats (F)? They (F) are here.	تَانَاہی کییان؟ / تان اِکْتین.

This (F)

Tughurfaatu keeta? Tuut tikati.	Where is my room? It is here.	تُغُرْفَاتُ کیہہ؟ / تُوْت تِکْتیہ.
Tus'aatu keeta? Tuut tikati.	Where is my watch? It is here.	تُسَاتُ کیہہ؟ / تُوْت تِکْتیہ.
Tis'aati keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are my watches? They are here.	تِسَاتیہ کییان؟ / تان اِکْتین.
Tutarabeedaatu keeta? Tuut tikati.	Where is my table? It is here.	تُتْرَبِیدَاتُ کیہہ؟ / تُوْت تِکْتیہ.
Titarabeedaati keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are my tables? They are here.	تِتْرَبِیدَاتیہ کییان؟ / تان اِکْتین.
Tukwubbaaytu keeta? Tuut tikati.	Where is my cup (mug)? It is here.	تُکُوْبَاہِیْتُ کیہہ؟ / تُوْت تِکْتیہ.
Tikwubbayti keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are my cups (mugs)? They are here.	تِکُوْبَاہِیْتیہ کییان؟ / تان اِکْتین.

Tigidh'aati keeyaan? Taan ikatiin.	Where are my sandals (shoes)? They are here.	يَقْدَاتِي كَيْيَان؟ / تَان إِكْتِيْن .
------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

Demonstratives with Pronouns

<176>

Pronouns often have demonstrative prefixes. In some Beja areas this is the preferred form for all pronouns.

uunbaruuh / oonbarooh	this (M SUBJ) / (M OBJ)	أُونْبَرُوْه / وَنْبَرُوْه
uunbatuuh / oonbatooh	this (F SUBJ) / (F OBJ)	أُونْبَتُوْه / وَنْبَتُوْه
aanbaraah / eenbareeh	these (M SUBJ) / (M OBJ)	آَنْبَرَاه / يَنْبَرِيْه
aanbataah / eenbateeh	these (F SUBJ) / (F OBJ)	آَنْبَاه / يَنْبِيْه

Demonstratives Referring To Far Objects

<177>

The far demonstratives 'that, those' have the same forms for all cases and numbers - distinguishing only (M) and (F) gender: been / beet 'that, those (M) / (F)'.

<178>

Some speakers use special forms for the plural: baliin / baliit 'those (PL M) / (PL F)'.

Beenbaruuh / beenbarooh.	That (M SUBJ) / (M OBJ)	بِيَنْبَرُوْه / بِيَنْبَرُوْه .
Beenbatuuh / beenbatooh.	That (F SUBJ) / (F OBJ)	بِيَنْبَتُوْه / بِيَنْبَتُوْه .
Beenbareeh / baliinbaraah, baliinbareeh.	Those (M SUBJ / M OBJ)	بِيَنْبَرِيْه / بَلِيْئَبَرَاه , بَلِيْئَبَرِيْه .
Beenbateeh / baliitbataah, baliitbateeh (baliin bataah / baliin bateeh).	Those (F SUBJ / F OBJ)	بِيَنْبِيْه / بَلِيْئَبْتَاه , بَلِيْئَبْتِيْه (بَلِيْن بْتَاه / بَلِيْن بْتِيْه) .

Demonstratives with Pronouns, Referring To Near Objects

<179>

In some dialects and with some speakers, the demonstratives will not be attached and assimilated to the articles. They will be used as separate words, as shown in the parentheses here below.

(Uun baruuh) Uunbaruuh aabu?	Who is this (M)?	(أُون بَرُوْه) أُونْبَرُوْه أَهْ؟
(Uun baruuh) Uunbaruuh Aliibu.	This is Ali.	(أُون بَرُوْه) أُونْبَرُوْه أَلِيْب .
(Tuun batuuh) Uunbatuuh aabtu?	Who is this (F)?	(تُون بَتُوْه) أُونْبَتُوْه أَهْ؟
(Tuun batuuh) Uunbatuuh Zaynabtu.	This is Zaynab.	(تُون بَتُوْه) أُونْبَتُوْه زَيْنَبْت .
(Aan baraah) Aanbaraah aaba?	Who are these (M)?	(آَنْ بَرَاه) آَنْبَرَاه أَهْ؟
(Aan baraah) Aanbaraah Aliiwwa Hasanwaaya.	These are Ali and Hassan.	(آَنْ بَرَاه) آَنْبَرَاه أَلِيْوَه هَسَنْوَايَه .
(Taan bataah) Aanbataah aabta?	Who are these (F)?	(تَان بْتَاه) آَنْبَاه أَهْ؟
(Taan bataah) Aanbataah Zaynabwa Haliimaabwaata.	These are Zaynab and Halima.	(تَان بْتَاه) آَنْبَاه زَيْنَوَه هَلِيْمَاوَاتَه .

Demonstratives with Pronouns, Referring To Far Objects

Beenbaruuh aabu?	Who is that (M)?	بَيْنَرُوهُ آبُ؟
Beenbaruuh Abuuzaynabu.	That is Abuzaynab.	بَيْنَرُوهُ أَبُو زَيْنَبُ.
Beenbatuuh aabtu?	Who is that (F)?	بَيْنَتُوهُ آبْتُ؟
Beenbatuuh Zaynabtu.	That is Zaynab.	بَيْنَتُوهُ زَيْنَبُ.
(Baliinbaraah) Beenbaraah aaba?	Who are those (M)?	(بَلِيِنْبَرَاه) بَيْنَبَرَاه آبُه؟
(Baliinbaraah) Beenbaraah Aliiwwa Hasanwaaya.	Those are Ali and Hassan.	(بَلِيِنْبَرَاه) بَيْنَبَرَاه أَلِيَّوَه هَسَنَوَايَه.
(Baliitbataah) Beenbataah aabta?	Who are those (F)?	(بَلِيِنْبِتَاه) بَيْنَبِتَاه آبْتَه؟
(Baliitbataah) Beenbataah Zaynabwa Haliimaabwaata, Haliimaawwaata.	Those are Zaynab and Halima.	(بَلِيِنْبِتَاه) بَيْنَبِتَاه زَيْنَبَوَه، هَلِيِمَاوَاتَه. هَلِيِمَاوَاتَه.

Demonstratives with Nouns

Uun'uutak aabu?	Who is this man?	أُوْنُوْتَكُ آبُ؟
Aliibu.	He is Ali.	أَلِيْبُ.
Uuttutakat aabtu?	Who is this woman?	أُوْتْتُكُتُ آبْتُ؟
Haliimaabtu.	She is Halima.	هَلِيِمَايْبُ.

Demonstratives and Nouns (SG)

Uunbaruuh naa naatu?	What is this (M)?	أُوْنَبَرُوهُ نَا نَاتُ؟
Uunbaruuh galamu.	This is a pen.	أُوْنَبَرُوهُ قَلَمٌ.
Uunbatuuh naa naatu?	What is this (F)?	أُوْنَبَتُوهُ نَا نَاتُ؟
Uunbatuuh mastaraatu.	This is a ruler.	أُوْنَبَتُوهُ مَسْتَرَاتُ.
Beenbaruuh naa naatu?	What is that (M)?	بَيْنَبَرُوهُ نَا نَاتُ؟
Beenbaruuh gawu.	This is a house.	بَيْنَبَرُوهُ قَوُو.
Beenbatuuh naa naatu?	What is that (F)?	بَيْنَبَتُوهُ نَا نَاتُ؟
Beenbatuuh n'aaytu.	That is a goat (F).	بَيْنَبَتُوهُ نَايْتُ.

Demonstratives and Nouns (PL)

Aanbaraah naa naata?	What are these (M)?	آنَبَرَاه نَا نَاتَه؟
Aanbaraah gawaaba.	These are houses.	آنَبَرَاه قَوَايَه.
Aanbataah naa naata?	What are these (F)?	آنَبِتَاه نَا نَاتَه؟
Aanbataah tarabeezaata.	These are tables.	آنَبِتَاه تَرَبِيْزَاتَه.
Baliinbaraah naa naata?	What are those (M)?	بَلِيِنْبَرَاه نَا نَاتَه؟
Baliinbaraah kwursiiaaba.	Those are chairs.	بَلِيِنْبَرَاه كُوْرَسِيْيَايَه.
Baliitbataah naa naata?	What are those (F)?	بَلِيِنْبِتَاه نَا نَاتَه؟
Baliitbataah mastaraata.	Those are rulers.	بَلِيِنْبِتَاه مَسْتَرَاتَه.

Demonstrative Objects with Verbs

Aab rhita? / Naan rhita?	Whom did you (M) see? / What did you (M) see?	آب رهته? / نان رهته?
Oonbarooh rhan.	I saw this (M).	ؤنبروه رهن.
Oonbatooh rhan.	I saw this (F).	ؤنبتوه رهن.
Eenbareeh rhan.	I saw these (M).	ينبريه رهن.
Eenbateeh rhan.	I saw these (F).	ينبتيه رهن.
Beenbarooh rhan.	I saw that (M).	بينبروه رهن.
Beenbatooh rhan.	I saw that (F).	بينبتوه رهن.
Beenbareeh rhan.	I saw those (M).	بينبريه رهن.
Beenbateeh rhan.	I saw those (F).	بينبتيه رهن.

Demonstratives and 'to call'

Oonbarooh aab eeyadna?	What (whom) do they call him?	ؤنبروه آب ييدنه?
Oonbarooh Abuuzaynab eeyadna.	They call him Abuzaynab.	ؤنبروه أبو زَيْنَب ييدنه.
Oonbatooh aab eeyadna?	What do they call her?	ؤنبتوه آب ييدنه?
Oonbatooh Zaynab eeyadna.	They call her Zaynab.	ؤنبتوه زَيْنَب ييدنه.
Oon'ootak aab eeyadna?	What do they call this man?	ؤنوؤتاك آب ييدنه?
Oon'ootak Abuuzaynab eeyadna.	They call him Abuzaynab.	ؤنوؤتاك أبو زَيْنَب ييدنه.
Oottutakat aab eeyadna?	What do they call this woman?	ؤتتكت آب ييدنه?
Oottutakat (toon tutakat, toottutakat) Zaynab eeyadna.	They call her Zaynab.	ؤتتكت (تون توتكت, توؤتكت) زَيْنَب ييدنه.

Describing Things: Noun Phrases (NPs)

<180>

Noun phrases are about things in the world. To name the qualities of these things or to describe them, adjectives and other attributes can be put next to the noun.

Adjectives and Participles

<181>

Descriptions answer the questions such as 'What is X like?' To describe things, as in 'X is red', the adjective must follow the noun, and a copula (comparable to the English word 'is') must be attached at the end.

<182>

The copula has already been introduced with the greetings, since it is common in forms like ani dabaay-u - baruuk dabaay-wa? 'I am fine - are you fine?' The copula in Beja is a suffix which has different forms, depending on the number and the gender of the noun. As has been presented earlier, the most frequent forms of the copula are -u / -tu 'is (SG M) / (SG F)', and -a / -ta 'are (PL M) / (PL F)'. In such sentences the adjective must be in the object case.

Adjectives

<183>

The answer to 'what is... like?' is a description in which an adjective may be used. To the adjective a copula is attached. The copula has different forms, depending on whether the adjective ends in:

1. A glottal consonant (this includes h and hamzah)
2. any other consonant
3. or a vowel.

Adjectives of Colors

Naan tan'i?	What is he, she like?	نان تڻيا؟
Uuttuuna, naan tan'i?	This thing, what is it like?	اوتوننه، نان تڻيا؟
Hadaltu / hadalu.	She / he is black	هَدَلْتُ / هَدَلُ.
Eeraatu / eeraabu.	She / he is white.	يَرَاْتُ / يَرَابُ.
Adarootu / adarootu.	She / he is red.	اَدْرُوْتُ / اَدْرُوْبُ.
Sootaaytu / sootaayu.	She / he is blue-green.	سَوْتَايْتُ / سَوْتَايُ.

Adjectives ending in C

<184>

The pattern for attaching suffixes is most easily observed in adjectives which end in a simple consonant (i.e. a consonant other than h or hamzah.)

Ani hadalu.	I (M) am black.	أَنِي هَدَلُ.
Ani hadaltu.	I (F) am black.	أَنِي هَدَلْتُ.
Baruuk hadalwa.	You (M) are black.	بَرُوْكَ هَدَلُوْه.
Batuuk hadaltuwi.	You (F) are black.	بَتُوْكَ هَدَلْتُوْي.
Baruuh hadalu.	He is black.	بَرُوْهُ هَدَلُ.
Batuuh hadaltu.	She is black.	بَتُوْهُ هَدَلْتُ.
Hinin hadalaaba.	We (M) are black.	هَيِّنْ هَدَلَابَه.
Hinin hadalaata.	We (F) are black.	هَيِّنْ هَدَلَاتَه.
Baraakna hadalaabaana.	You (PL M) are black.	بَرَاكْنَه هَدَلَابَانَه.
Bataakna hadalaataana.	You (PL F) are black.	بَتَاكْنَه هَدَلَاتَانَه.
Baraah hadalaaba.	They (M) are black.	بَرَاه هَدَلَابَه.
Bataah hadalaata.	They (F) are black.	بَتَاه هَدَلَاتَه.

Adjectives ending in aa

Ani eeraabu.	I (M) am white.	أَنِي يَرَابُ.
Ani eeraatu.	I (F) am white.	أَنِي يَرَاْتُ.
Baruuk eeraawwa.	You (M) are white.	بَرُوْكَ يَرَاوَه.
Batuuk eeraatuwi.	You (F) are white.	بَتُوْكَ يَرَاْتُوْي.
Baruuh eeraabu.	He is white.	بَرُوْهُ يَرَابُ.

Batuuh eeraatu.	She is white.	بَتُوهُ يَرَاثُ.
Hinin eeraaba.	We (M) are white.	هَيْنِن يَرَابِه.
Hinin eeraata.	We (F) are white.	هَيْنِن يَرَاتِه.
Baraakna eeraabaana.	You (PL M) are white.	بَرَاكْنِه يَرَابَانِه.
Bataakna eeraataana.	You (PL F) are white.	بَتَاكْنِه يَرَاتَانِه.
Baraah eeraaba.	They (M) are white.	بَرَاه يَرَابِه.
Bataah eeraata.	They (F) are white.	بَتَاه يَرَاتِه.

Adjectives ending in ii

Ani dhhaniibu.	I (M) am alive, well.	أَنْي دَهْنِيْبُ.
Ani dhhaniitu.	I (F) am alive, well.	أَنْي دَهْنِيْتُ.
Baruuk dhhaniiwa.	You (M) are alive, well.	بَرُوْكَ دَهْنِيْوِه.
Batuuk dhhaniituwi.	You (F) are alive, well.	بَتُوْكَ دَهْنِيْتُوِي.
Baruuh dhhaniibu.	He is alive, well.	بَرُوْه دَهْنِيْبُ.
Batuuh dhhaniitu.	She is alive, well.	بَتُوْه دَهْنِيْتُ.
Hinin dhhaniiba.	We (M) are alive, well.	هَيْنِن دَهْنِيْبِه.
Hinin dhhaniita.	We (F) are alive, well.	هَيْنِن دَهْنِيْتِه.
Baraakna dhhaniibaana.	You (PL M) are alive, well.	بَرَاكْنِه دَهْنِيْبَانِه.
Bataakna dhhaniitaana.	You (PL F) are alive, well.	بَتَاكْنِه دَهْنِيْتَانِه.
Baraah dhhaniiba.	They (M) are alive, well.	بَرَاه دَهْنِيْبِه.
Bataah dhhaniita.	They (F) are alive, well.	بَتَاه دَهْنِيْتِه.

Adjectives ending in oo

Ani adaroobu.	I (M) am red.	أَنْي أَدْرُوْبُ.
Ani adarootu.	I (F) am red.	أَنْي أَدْرُوْتُ.
Baruuk adaroowwa.	You (M) are red.	بَرُوْكَ أَدْرُوْوِه.
Batuuk adarootuwi.	You (F) are red.	بَتُوْكَ أَدْرُوْتُوِي.
Baruuh adaroobu.	He is red.	بَرُوْه أَدْرُوْبُ.
Batuuh adarootu.	She is red.	بَتُوْه أَدْرُوْتُ.
Hinin adarooyaaba.	We (M) are red.	هَيْنِن أَدْرُوْبِه.
Hinin adarooyaata.	We (F) are red.	هَيْنِن أَدْرُوْتِه.
Baraakna adarooyaabaana.	You (PL M) are red.	بَرَاكْنِه أَدْرُوْبَانِه.
Bataakna adarooyaataana.	You (PL F) are red.	بَتَاكْنِه أَدْرُوْتَانِه.
Baraah adarooyaaba.	They (M) are red.	بَرَاه أَدْرُوْبِه.
Bataah adarooyaata.	They (F) are red.	بَتَاه أَدْرُوْتِه.

Adjectives ending in h 1

<185>

(See alternative forms below)

Ani shabhayu.	I (M) am gentle, average.	أَنْعَ شَبَّهَيْ.
Ani shabhatu.	I (F) am gentle, average.	أَنْعَ شَبَّهْتُ.
Baruuk shabhawa.	You (M) are gentle, average.	بَرُّوكْ شَبَّهَوَه.
Batuuk shabhatuwi.	You (F) are gentle, average.	بَتُّوكْ شَبَّهْتُوَعِي.
Baruuh shabhayu.	He is gentle, average.	بَرُّوَهْ شَبَّهَيْ.
Batuuh shabhatu.	She is gentle, average.	بَتُّوَهْ شَبَّهْتُ.
Hinin shabhaya.	We (M) are gentle, average.	هَيْنِنْ شَبَّهَيَه.
Hinin shabhata.	We (F) are gentle, average.	هَيْنِنْ شَبَّهَتَه.
Baraakna shabhayaana.	You (PL M) are gentle, average.	بَرَّاكْنَهْ شَبَّهَيَانَه.
Bataakna shabhataana.	You (PL F) are gentle, average.	بَتَّاكْنَهْ شَبَّهَيَاتَانَه.
Baraah shabhaya.	They (M) are gentle, average.	بَرَّاهْ شَبَّهَيَه.
Bataah shabhata.	They (F) are gentle, average.	بَتَّاهْ شَبَّهَتَه.

Adjectives ending in h 2

Ani shabahu.	I (M) am gentle, average.	أَنْعَ شَبَّهْ.
Ani shabahtu.	I (F) am gentle, average.	أَنْعَ شَبَّهْتُ.
Baruuk shabahwa.	You (M) are gentle, average.	بَرُّوكْ شَبَّهَوَه.
Batuuk shabahtuwi.	You (F) are gentle, average.	بَتُّوكْ شَبَّهْتُوَعِي.
Baruuh shabahu.	He is gentle, average.	بَرُّوَهْ شَبَّهْ.
Batuuh shabahtu.	She is gentle, average.	بَتُّوَهْ شَبَّهْتُ.
Hinin shabaha.	We (M) are gentle, average.	هَيْنِنْ شَبَّهَه.
Hinin shabahta.	We (F) are gentle, average.	هَيْنِنْ شَبَّهَتَه.
Baraakna shabahaana.	You (PL M) are gentle, average.	بَرَّاكْنَهْ شَبَّهَيَانَه.
Bataakna shabahtaana.	You (PL F) are gentle, average.	بَتَّاكْنَهْ شَبَّهَيَاتَانَه.
Baraah shabaha.	They (M) are gentle, average.	بَرَّاهْ شَبَّهَه.
Bataah shabahta.	They (F) are gentle, average.	بَتَّاهْ شَبَّهَتَه.

Adjectives ending in hamzah (glottal stop) 1

<186>

(See alternative forms below)

Ani nab'ayu.	I (M) am warm.	أَنْعَ نَبَّأَيْ.
Ani nab'atu.	I (F) am warm.	أَنْعَ نَبَّأْتُ.
Baruuk nab'awa.	You (M) are warm.	بَرُّوكْ نَبَّأَوَه.
Batuuk nab'atuwi.	You (F) are warm.	بَتُّوكْ نَبَّأْتُوعِي.
Baruuh nab'ayu.	He is warm.	بَرُّوَهْ نَبَّأَيْ.

Batuuh nab'atu.	She is warm.	بَتُوهُ نَبَأْتُ.
Hinin nab'aya.	We (M) are warm.	هِنِين نَبَأِيه.
Hinin nab'ata.	We (F) are warm.	هِنِين نَبَأْتِه.
Baraakna nab'ayaana.	You (PL M) are warm.	بَرَاكْنِه نَبَأَيَانِه.
Bataakna nab'ataana.	You (PL F) are warm.	بَتَاكْنِه نَبَأَاتَانِه.
Baraah nab'aya.	They (M) are warm.	بَرَاه نَبَأِيه.
Bataah nab'ata.	They (F) are warm.	بَتَاه نَبَأْتِه.

Adjectives ending in hamzah (glottal stop) 2

Ani naba'u.	I (M) am warm.	أَنْعِي نَبَأُ.
Ani naba'tu.	I (F) am warm.	أَنْعِي نَبَأْتُ.
Baruuk naba'wa.	You (M) are warm.	بَرُووك نَبَأُ وَه.
Batuuk naba'tuwi.	You (F) are warm.	بَتُووك نَبَأُ تُوِي.
Baruuh naba'u.	He is warm.	بَرُوُه نَبَأُ.
Batuuh naba'tu.	She is warm.	بَتُوُه نَبَأُ تُ.
Hinin naba'a.	We (M) are warm.	هِنِين نَبَأُ.
Hinin nab'ata.	We (F) are warm.	هِنِين نَبَأْتِه.
Baraakna nab'aana.	You (PL M) are warm.	بَرَاكْنِه نَبَأَانِه.
Bataakna nab'taana.	You (PL F) are warm.	بَتَاكْنِه نَبَأَاتَانِه.
Baraah naba'a.	They (M) are warm.	بَرَاه نَبَأُ.
Bataah nab'ata.	They (F) are warm.	بَتَاه نَبَأْتِه.

Participles

<187>

Participles are derived from verbs, but at this point they can be treated as if they were adjectives: Literally, hargwaab 'hungry' for instance means '(the one who) hungers, hungered'; but it has the positions, endings and functions of an adjective: 'hungry'.

<188>

It will be seen that transitive verbs (like to see) and intransitive verbs (like to come) differ slightly in the form and meaning of their participles:

<189>

Participles of transitive verbs have the endings -aab / -aat 'the one who (actively)...-ed (M) / (F)' as in abkaab / abkaat 'the one who (actively) held (M) / (F)', and these endings are attached after the last root consonant.

<190>

Participles of intransitive verbs, however, take the last root consonant -aaC / -aaCt 'the one who (is / was)... -ed (M) / (F)' as in fayaaku / fayaaktu 'the one who (is / was) loaded (M) / (F)'.

Participles of transitive verbs, ending in aa 1

Ani, ani ⁹ n'uraabu.	I (M) am cured.	أَنْعِي, أَنْعِي نُوْرَابُ.
Ani n'uraatu.	I (F) am cured.	أَنْعِي, أَنْعِي نُوْرَاتُ.

Baruuk n'uraawwa.	You (M) are cured.	بَرُوك نْءُرَاوَه.
Batuuk n'uraatuwi.	You (F) are cured.	بَتُوك نْءُرَاَتُوَے.
Baruuh n'uraabu.	He is cured.	بَرُوه نْءُرَاب.
Batuuh n'uraatu.	She is cured.	بَتُوَه نْءُرَات.
Hinin n'uraaba.	We (M) are cured.	هِنِن نْءُرَابَه.
Hinin n'uraata.	We (F) are cured.	هِنِن نْءُرَاتَه.
Baraakna n'uraabaana.	You (PL M) are cured.	بَرَاكْنَه نْءُرَابَانَه.
Bataakna n'uraataana.	You (PL F) are cured.	بَتَاكْنَه نْءُرَاتَانَه.
Baraah n'uraaba.	They (M) are cured.	بَرَاه نْءُرَابَه.
Bataah n'uraata.	They (F) are cured.	بَتَاه نْءُرَاتَه.

Participles of transitive verbs, ending in aa 2

Ani hargwaabu.	I (M) am hungry.	أَنِي هَرْقَوَاب.
Ani hargwaatu.	I (F) am hungry.	أَنِي هَرْقَوَات.
Baruuk hargwaawa.	You (M) are hungry.	بَرُوك هَرْقَوَاوَه.
Batuuk hargwaatuwi.	You (F) are hungry.	بَتُوك هَرْقَوَاَتُوَے.
Baruuh hargwaabu.	He is hungry.	بَرُوه هَرْقَوَاب.
Batuuh hargwaatu.	She is hungry.	بَتُوَه هَرْقَوَات.
Hinin hargwaaba.	We (M) are hungry.	هِنِن هَرْقَوَابَه.
Hinin hargwata.	We (F) are hungry.	هِنِن هَرْقَوَاتَه.
Baraakna hargwabaana.	You (PL M) are hungry.	بَرَاكْنَه هَرْقَوَابَانَه.
Bataakna hargwataana.	You (PL F) are hungry.	بَتَاكْنَه هَرْقَوَاتَانَه.
Baraah hargwaba.	They (M) are hungry.	بَرَاه هَرْقَوَابَه.
Bataah hargwata.	They (F) are hungry.	بَتَاه هَرْقَوَاتَه.

<191>

Participles of intransitive verbs, however (see below), take the last root consonant -aaC / -aaCt 'the one who (is / was)... -ed (M) / (F)' as in fayaaku / fayaaktu 'the one who (is / was) loaded (M) / (F)'.

Participles of intransitive verbs, ending in C 1

Ani fayaaku.	I (M) am loaded, responsible.	أَنِي فَيَاكُ.
Ani fayaaktu.	I (F) am loaded, responsible.	أَنِي فَيَاكُت.
Baruuk fayaakwa.	You (M) are loaded, responsible.	بَرُوك فَيَاكُوَه.
Batuuk fayaaktuwi.	You (F) are loaded, responsible.	بَتُوك فَيَاكُتُوَے.
Baruuh fayaaku.	He is loaded, responsible.	بَرُوه فَيَاكُ.
Batuuh fayaaktu.	She is loaded, responsible.	بَتُوَه فَيَاكُت.
Hinin fayaka.	We (M) are loaded, responsible.	هِنِن فَيَاكَه.
Hinin fayakta.	We (F) are loaded, responsible.	هِنِن فَيَاكُتَه.

Baraakna fayakaana.	You (PL M) are loaded, responsible.	بَراَكْنَه فَيَاكَاَنَه.
Bataakna fayaktaana.	You (PL F) are loaded, responsible.	بَتَاكْنَه فَيَاكْتَاَنَه.
Baraah fayaka.	They (M) are loaded, responsible.	بَراَه فَيَاكَه.
Bataah fayakta.	They (F) are loaded, responsible.	بَتَاه فَيَاكْتَه.

Participles of intransitive verbs, ending in C 2

Ani hasaaru.	I (M) am sorry, sad.	أَنِي فَيَاكُ.
Ani hasaartu.	I (F) am sorry, sad.	أَنِي فَيَاكْتُ.
Baruuk hasaarwa.	You (M) are sorry, sad.	بَرُووك فَيَاكُوَه.
Batuuk hasaartuwi.	You (F) are sorry, sad.	بَتُووك فَيَاكْتُوَي.
Baruuh hasaaru.	He is sorry, sad.	بَرُوَه فَيَاكُ.
Batuuh hasaartu.	She is sorry, sad.	بَتُوَه فَيَاكْتُ.
Hinin hasara.	We (M) are sorry, sad.	هَيِّن فَيَاكَه.
Hinin hasarta.	We (F) are sorry, sad.	هَيِّن فَيَاكْتَه.
Baraakna hasaraana.	You (PL M) are sorry, sad.	بَراَكْنَه فَيَاكَاَنَه.
Bataakna hasartaana.	You (PL F) are sorry, sad.	بَتَاكْنَه فَيَاكْتَاَنَه.
Baraah hasara.	They (M) are sorry, sad.	بَراَه فَيَاكَه.
Bataah hasarta.	They (F) are sorry, sad.	بَتَاه فَيَاكْتَه.

Adjectives: More Examples

Adjectives in Questions and Answers 1

Baruuk gabaawa? Ani gabaabu.	Are you (M) satisfied, full? I am satisfied, full.	بَرُووك قَبَاوَه؟ أَنِي قَبَابُ.
Batuuk gabaatuwi? Ani gabaatu.	Are you (F) satisfied, full? I am satisfied, full.	بَتُووك قَبَاوَي؟ أَنِي قَبَابُ.
Baruuh gabaabu? Baruuh gabaabu.	Is he satisfied, full? He is satisfied, full.	بَرُوَه قَبَابُ؟ بَرُوَه قَبَابُ.
Batuuh gabaatu? Batuuh gabaatu.	Is she satisfied, full? She is satisfied, full.	بَتُوَه قَبَابُ؟ بَتُوَه قَبَابُ.
Baraakna gabaabaana? Hinin gabaaba.	Are you (PI) satisfied, full? We are satisfied, full.	بَراَكْنَه قَبَابَاَنَه؟ هَيِّن قَبَابَه.
Baraah gabaaba? Baraah gabaaba.	Are they (M) satisfied, full? They (M) are satisfied, full.	بَراَه قَبَابَه؟ بَراَه قَبَابَه.
Bataah gabaata? Bataah gabaata.	Are they (F) satisfied, full? They are satisfied, full.	بَتَاه قَبَابَه؟ بَتَاه قَبَابَه.

Adjectives in Questions and Answers 2

Baruuk yiweewa? Ani yiweebu.	Are you (M) thirsty? I am thirsty.	بَرُووك يَوِيوَه؟ أَنِي يَوِيْبُ.
Batuuk yiweetuwi? Ani yiweetu.	Are you (F) thirsty? I am thirsty.	بَتُووك يَوِيوَي؟ أَنِي يَوِيْبُ.

Baruuh yiweebu? Baruuh yiweebu.	Is he thirsty? He is thirsty.	بَرُوهُ يُوَيْبُ؟ بَرُوهُ يُوَيْبُ.
Batuuh yiweetu? Batuuh yiweetu.	Is she thirsty? She is thirsty.	بَتُوهُ يُوَيْبُ؟ بَتُوهُ يُوَيْبُ.
Baraakna yiweebaana? Hinin yiweeba.	Are you (PL M) thirsty? We are thirsty.	بَرَاكْنَه يُوَيْبَانَه؟ هِينِن يُوَيْبَه.
Baraah yiweeba? Baraah yiweeba.	Are they (M) thirsty? They (M) are thirsty.	بَرَاه يُوَيْبَه؟ بَرَاه يُوَيْبَه.
Bataah yiweeta? Bataah yiweeta.	Are they (F) thirsty? They (F) are thirsty.	بَتَاه يُوَيْبَه؟ بَتَاه يُوَيْبَه.

Color Adjectives (SG) / (PL)

SG:		
Uun'uush'a hamishu.	This ox (M) is brown.	أُوُونُوشَاةُ هَمِشُ.
Uun'uumeek hamishu.	This donkey (M) is brown.	أُوُونُومِيَكُ هَمِشُ.
Aan'aamak hadalaaba.	These donkeys (M) are black.	أَنَامَكُ هَدَلَابَه.
Aan'aash'a hamishaaba.	These oxen (M) are brown.	أَنَاشَاةُ هَمِشَابَه.
PL:		
Aan'aamak eeraawwa hamshaawwaaya.	These donkeys (M) are white and brown.	أَنَامَكُ يَرَاوَه هَمِشَاوَايَه.
Aan'aamak hamishaawwa eeraawwaaya.	These donkeys (M) are brown and white.	أَنَامَكُ هَمِشَاوَه يَرَاوَاه.
Aan'aash'a eeraawwa hamishaawwaaya.	These oxen (M) are white and brown.	أَنَاشَاةُ يَرَاوَه هَمِشَاوَايَه.
Aan'aash'a hamishaawwa eeraawwaaya.	These oxen (M) are brown and white.	أَنَاشَاةُ هَمِشَاوَه يَرَاوَاه.

Color Adjectives (SG / PL)

<192>

Adjectives take the same articles as nouns, and in this regard may be treated as nouns, like in 'red / the red one' etc. Note that the short vowels in brackets can be left out. This is *always* the case where i or u are followed by h or hamza, but it will not be indicated in all paradigms.

w(u)hadal / y(i)hadala.	black (DEF) (M) / (PL M)	وُهَدَلُ / يَهَدَلَه.
t(u)hadal / t(i)hadala.	black (DEF) (F) / (PL F)	تُهَدَلُ / تَهَدَلَه.
w(u)eera / y(i)eera.	white (DEF) (M) / (PL M)	وُئِيرَه / يِئِيرَه.
t(u)eera / t(i)eera.	white (DEF) (F) / (PL F)	تِئِيرَه / تِئِيرَه.
w(u)adaru / y(i)adarooya.	red (DEF) (M) / (SG F)	وَأَدَرُ / يَأَدَرُوَيَه.
t(u)adaru / t(i)adarooya.	red (DEF) (F) / (PL F)	تَأَدَرُ / تَأَدَرُوَيَه.

Adjectives: Opposites and Negation

<193>

Many adjectives and participles have obvious opposites as far as the meaning is concerned.

Opposites: Human Qualities

Eegriimu / adhamiibu.	He is old / young.	بِقَرِيمُ / أَذْمِيْبُ .
Akraabu / nhawiiibu.	He is strong / weak.	أَكْرَابُ / نَهْوِيْبُ .
Daawriibu / nifriibu.	He is beautiful / ugly.	دَاوْرِيْبُ / نِفْرِيْبُ .
Aafiimaabu / lhaabu.	He is healthy / sick.	أَفِيْمَابُ / لِهَابُ .
Winu / dibiloobu.	He is big / small.	وْنُ / دِيْلُوْبُ .
Fagaru / afrayu.	He is good / bad.	فَقْرُ / أَفْرِيْبُ .
Saraaraabu / disu.	He is long / short.	سَرَارَابُ / دِسُ .

Opposites and Negation: Human Qualities

<194>

For some adjectives, the negative word kiiki 'it is not' is used to express the opposite or negative meaning.

Ashshigaabu / ashshigaab kiiki.	He is fast / not fast.	أَشْشِيْقَابُ / أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيِكِي .
Libaabiibu / libaabiib kiiki.	He is happy / not happy.	لِيَابِيْبُ / لِيَابِيْبُ كِيِكِي .

<195>

In the table below, the most frequent words for expressing negation have been marked A full presentation of negation words will be given in the Section Verbs and Clauses. Note that the Bishaari dialect frequently uses final a instead of i, as in kaaka, kiika, kitta etc., as has been indicated in the phonological introduction.

Table 17 Adjectives and Negative Verbs

Ashshigaab kaaki.	I am not in a hurry (frequent).	* أَشْشِيْقَابُ كَاكِي .
Ashshigaab kittaa.	You (M) are not in a hurry.	أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيْتَا .
Ashshigaat kittaayi.	You (F) are not in a hurry.	أَشْشِيْقَاتُ كِيْتَايِي .
Ashshigaab kiiki.	He is not in a hurry / fast (frequent).	* أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيِكِي .
Ashshigaat kitti.	She is not in a hurry / fast (frequent).	* أَشْشِيْقَاتُ كِيِكِي .
Ashshigaab kinki.	We are not in a hurry.	أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيِنِكِي .
Ashshigaab kitteena.	You (PL) are not in a hurry.	أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيْتِيْنِي .
Ashshigaab kiikeen.	They are not in a hurry / fast (frequent).	* أَشْشِيْقَابُ كِيِكِيْنِي .

Opposites: Human Qualities

Baruuh deeyaraabu / ani deeyaraab kaaki.	He is tired / I am not tired.	بَرُوْهُ دِيْتْرَابُ / أَنِي دِيْتْرَابُ كَاكِي .
Baruuh nariitiibu / ani akraabu, nariitiib kaaki.	He is tired / I am strong, not tired.	بَرُوْهُ نَرِيْتِيْبُ / أَنِي أَكْرَابُ. نَرِيْتِيْبُ كَاكِي .
Baruuh lhaabu / ani aafiimaabu, lhaab kaaki.	He is sick / I am healthy, not sick.	بَرُوْهُ لِهَابُ / أَنِي أَفِيْمَابُ. لِهَابُ كَاكِي .
Baruuh yiweebu / ani l'oobu.	He is thirsty / I am not thirsty.	بَرُوْهُ يُوْئِيْبُ / أَنِي لُوْؤِيْبُ .
Baruuh hargwaabu / ani gabaabu.	He is hungry / I am not hungry (full).	بَرُوْهُ هَرْقُوَابُ / أَنِي قَبَابُ .

Baruuh eegriimu / ani adhamiibu.	He is old / I am young.	بَرُوهُ يَغْرِيْمُ / اَنْهْ اَدْحَمِيْبُ.
----------------------------------	-------------------------	-------------------------------------------

Opposites: Other Qualities

Unbaruuh aliyaabu / beenbaruuh rhasaabu.	This (M) is expensive / that (M) is cheap.	اُونْبَرُوهُ اَلِيَاْبُ / بِيْنْبَرُوهُ رَهْسَاْبُ.
Unbaruuh daayiibu / beenbaruuh amaagu.	This (M) is good / that (M) is bad.	اُونْبَرُوهُ دَايِيْبُ / بِيْنْبَرُوهُ اَمَاْقُ.
Unbaruuh gaayiibu / beenbaruuh sh'iyaabu.	This (M) is new / that (M) is old.	اُونْبَرُوهُ غَايِيْبُ / بِيْنْبَرُوهُ شَايَاْبُ.
Unbaruuh nhasu / beenbaruuh yiwaashiibu.	This (M) is clean / that (M) is dirty.	اُونْبَرُوهُ نَهْسُ / بِيْنْبَرُوهُ يُوَاشِيْبُ.
Unbaruuh winu / beenbaruuh dibiloobu.	This (M) is big / that (M) is small.	اُونْبَرُوهُ وِنُ / بِيْنْبَرُوهُ دِيْبَلُوْبُ.

Opposites: Qualities of Things

Sh'iyaabu / gaayiibu.	It (M) is old / new (speaking of things).	شَايَاْبُ / غَايِيْبُ.
Sagiibu / dawilu.	It is far / close.	سَاغِيْبُ / دَاوِلُ.
Daayiibu / afrayu, amaagu.	It is good / bad.	دَايِيْبُ / اَفْرَايُ، اَمَاْقُ.
Aliyaabu / rhasaabu.	It is expensive / cheap.	اَلِيَاْبُ / رَهْسَاْبُ.
Ataabu / faadiibu.	It is full / empty.	اَتَاْبُ / فَاَدِيْبُ.
Nafiru / hamiibu.	It is sweet / bitter.	نَفْرُ / هَمِيْبُ.
Nhasu / yiwaashiibu.	It is clean / dirty.	نَهْسُ / يُوَاشِيْبُ.
Naba'u, nab'ayu / l'aabu.	It is hot / cool.	نَبَا'ُ، نَبَا'َايُ / لَأَاْبُ.
Gwidaabu / shaliku.	It is much / little.	قُوْدَاْبُ / شَلِيْكُ.

Special Plural Adjectives: Reduplication

<196>

A few adjectives are reduplicated to express plural. The first syllable is repeated according to the pattern CVC > CaCVC, in win- > wawin- 'big / big (PL)', and likewise in dis- > dadis- 'small / small (PL)'.

Reduplicated Adjectives: 'big'

SG:		
Ani winu.	I (M) am tall, big.	اَنْهْ وِنُ.
Ani wintu.	I (F) am tall, big.	اَنْهْ وِنْتُ.
Baruuk winwa.	You (M) are tall, big.	بَرُوْك وِنُو.
Batuuk wintuwi.	You (F) are tall, big.	بَتُوْك وِنْتُووِي.
Baruuh winu.	He is tall, big.	بَرُوهُ وِنُ.
Batuuh wintu.	She is tall, big.	بَتُوهُ وِنْتُ.
PL:		
Hinin wawina.	We (M) are tall, big.	هِنِن وَوِيْنَه.

Hinin wawinta.	We (F) are tall, big.	هين ووتنه.
Baraakna wawinaana.	You (PL M) are tall, big.	براكنه ووانانه.
Bataakna wawintaana.	You (PL F) are tall, big.	بتاكنه ووتنانه.
Baraah wawina.	They (M) are tall, big.	براه وونه.
Bataah wawinta.	They (F) are tall, big.	بتاه ووتنه.

Reduplicated Adjectives: 'small'

SG:		
Ani disu.	I (M) am small.	أني ديس.
Ani distu.	I (F) am small.	أني ديسْت.
Baruuk diswa.	You (M) are small.	بروك ديسوه.
Batuuk distuwi.	You (F) are small.	بتوك ديسْتوِي.
Baruuh disu.	He is small.	بروه ديس.
Batuuh distu.	She is small.	بتوه ديسْت.
PL:		
Hinin dadisa.	We (M) are small.	هين ديسه.
Hinin dadista.	We (F) are small.	هين ديسْته.
Baraakna dadisaana.	You (PL M) are small.	براكنه ديسانه.
Bataakna dadistaana.	You (PL F) are small.	بتاكنه ديسْتانه.
Baraah dadisa.	They (M) are small.	براه ديسه.
Bataah dadista.	They (F) are small.	بتاه ديسْته.

NPs with Adjectives as Attributes

<197>

Adjectives not only function as predicates, as in 'the goat is black' - adjectives may also function as attributes, as in 'the black goat...'

Attributes in Indefinite NPs as Subject

<198>

If the noun is indefinite, the adjective precedes the noun, such as 'a brown ox, a small man' etc. Here follow various examples of indefinite NPs with attributes: masculine / feminine, subject / object, singular / plural. (The verbs 'to come', 'to see' are used, but the structure of these verbs may be ignored at this point.)

Attributes in Indefinite NPs (M)

Hamish sh'a eeya.	A brown ox came.	هميش شاه تيه.
Dibilu tak eeya.	A small man came.	ديبلُ تك تيه.
Hamish sh'a rhan.	I saw a brown ox.	هميش شاه رهن.
Dibilu (dis) tak rhan.	I saw a small / short / little man.	ديبلُ (دس) تك رهن.

Attributes in Indefinite NPs (F)

Hadalt n'aay eeta.	A black goat (F) came.	هَدَلت نَأَي يَتِه.
Hamisht sh'a eeta.	A brown cow (F) came.	هَمِشَت شَأَه يَتِه.
Hadalt n'aay rhan.	I saw a black goat (F).	هَدَلت نَأَي رَهَن.
Hamisht sh'a rhan.	I saw a brown cow.	هَمِشَت شَأَه رَهَن.

Attributes in Indefinite NPs

Eera tak eeya.	A white man came.	يَرِه تَك يَتِه.
Eera tak rhan.	I saw a white man.	يَرِه تَك رَهَن.
Eeraat takat eeta.	A white woman came.	يَرَات تَكَّت يَتِه.
Eeraat takat rhan.	I saw a white woman.	يَرَات تَكَّت رَهَن.

Attributes in Definite NPs

<199>

If the noun is definite, the adjective follows the noun, and both take the definite article, which may be glossed as 'The goat the black (one)'.

<200>

Indefinite noun phrases (above) are not as common as definite noun phrases (below).

<201>

Since this section of the Beja grammar is considered more complicated than other sections, a large number of examples have been provided here in order to cover all possible combinations of gender, number, case, and initial consonant. The different forms of the article should be noticed.

NPs as Subject and Object (M / F)

Uutak w'eera eeya.	The white man came.	أُوْتَك وُيْرِه يَتِه.
Ootak w'eera rhan.	I saw the white man.	وُتَك وُيْرِه رَهَن.
Tutakat tu'eera eeta.	The white woman came.	تُتَكَّت تُيْرِه يَتِه.
Tutakat tu'eera rhan.	I saw the white woman.	تُتَكَّت تُيْرِه رَهَن.

NPs as Subject and Object (SG F)

Tuun'aay tuhadal eeta.	The black goat (F) came.	تُونَأَي تَهْدَل يَتِه.
Tuush'a tuhamish eeta.	The brown cow came.	تُوشَأَه تَهْمِش يَتِه.
Tubissa tu'eera eeta.	The white cat (F) came.	تُبِسَه تُيْرِه يَتِه.
Toon'aay tuhadal rhan.	I saw the black goat (F).	تُونَأَي تَهْدَل رَهَن.
Toosh'a tuhamish rhan.	I saw the brown cow.	تُوشَأَه تَهْمِش رَهَن.
Tubissa tu'eera rhan.	I saw the white cat (F).	تُبِسَه تُيْرِه رَهَن.

NPs as Subject and Object (PL F)

Taan'ay tihadala eeyaan.	The black goats (F) came.	تَانَأَي تَهْدَلِه يَتَان.
Taakam ti'eera gw'iyaan.	The white camels (F) drank.	تَاكَم تَيْرِه قُوَيَان.

Taakam tihadala kwidhiyaan.	The small camels (F) got lost.	تاكم تَهْدَلَه كَوْدِيَان.
Taakam ti'eera eeyaan.	The white camels (F) came.	تاكم يَتِيْرَه تِيَان.
Teen'ay tihadala rhan.	I saw the black goats (F).	تِيْنَائِي تَهْدَلَه رَهْن.
Teesh'a tihamisha rhan.	I saw the brown cows.	تِيْشَاهُ يَهْمِشَه رَهْن.
Tibissa ti'eera rhan.	I saw the white cats (F).	تِيْسَه تَتِيْرَه رَهْن.

NPs as Subject and Object (SG M)

Uush'a whamish eeya.	The brown ox came.	أُوشَاهُ وَهْمِشَ تِيَه.
Uukaam w'eera kwidhiya.	The white camel (M) got lost.	أُوْكَامُ وَئِيْرَه كَوْدِيَه.
Uutak udibilu eeya.	The small man came.	أُوْتَكُ أُدْبِلُ تِيَه.
Ubissa w'eera eefi.	The white cat (M) is there.	أُبِسَّه وَئِيْرَه يَفْرَح.
Oosh'a whamish rhan.	I saw the brown ox.	وَشَاهُ وَهْمِشَ رَهْن.
Ookaam w'eera anaw.	I missed the white camel (M).	وُكَامُ وَئِيْرَه أَنْو.
Ootak udibilu rhan.	I saw the small man.	وُتَكُ أُدْبِلُ رَهْن.

NPs as Subject and Object (PL M)

Aash'a yhamisha, yhamsha eeyaan.	The brown oxen came.	أَشَاهُ يَهْمِشَه، يَهْمِشَه تِيَان.
Ibissa y'eera eefeen.	The white cats (M) are there.	إِبِسَّه يَتِيْرَه يَفْنِن.
Aakam yhadala eeyaan.	The black camels (M) came.	أَكَمُ يَهْدَلَه تِيَان.
Aakam idibiloowa (yhiiwa) gw'iyaaan.	The small camels (M) (the foals) drank.	أَكَمُ إِدْبِلُوْه (يَهْيُوْه) قُوْإِيَان.
Aanda idibiloowa eeyaan.	The small men came.	أَنْدَه إِدْبِلُوْه تِيَان.
Eesh'a yhamisha rhan.	I saw the brown oxen.	تِيْشَاهُ يَهْمِشَه رَهْن.
Eekam y'eera gw'asan.	I gave the white camels (M) to drink.	يُكَمُ يَتِيْرَه قُوْأَسْن.
Eenda idibiloowa rhan.	I saw the small men.	تِيْنَدَه إِدْبِلُوْه رَهْن.
Ibissa y'eera rhan.	I saw the white cats (M).	إِبِسَّه يَتِيْرَه رَهْن.

NPs as Subject (SG and PL)

Uutak w'eera eeya.	The white man came.	أُوْتَكُ وَئِيْرَه تِيَه.
Aanda y'eera eeyaan.	The white men came.	أَنْدَه يَتِيْرَه تِيَان.
Tutakat tu'eera eeta.	The white woman came.	تُتَكَّتْ تُتِيْرَه تِيَه.
Taam'a ti'eera eeyaan.	The white women came.	تَامَاهُ تَتِيْرَه تِيَان.
Uutak w'adaru eeya.	The red man came.	أُوْتَكُ وَأَدْرُ تِيَه.
Aanda y'adaroowa, y'adarooya, y'adaru eeyaan.	The red men came.	أَنْدَه يَأْدَرْوُوْه، يَأْدَرْوِيَه، يَأْدَرُ تِيَان.
Tutakat tu'adaru eeta.	The red woman came.	تُتَكَّتْ تُأْدَرُ تِيَه.
Taam'a ti'adaroowa, ti'adarooya eeyaan.	The red women came.	تَامَاهُ تَأْدَرْوُوْه، تَأْدَرْوِيَه تِيَان.

NPs as Object (SG and PL)

Ootak udibilu rhan.	I saw the small man.	وَتَاكُ أُدِبِلُ رَهْن.
Eenda idibiloowa, idibilooya rhan.	I saw the small men.	ئِنْدَه إِدِبِلُووه، إِدِبِلُوِيه رَهْن.
Tutakat tudibilu rhan.	I saw the small woman.	تُتَكَّتْ تُدِبِلُ رَهْن.
Teem'a tidibiloowa, tidibilooya rhan.	I saw the small women.	تَيْمَاهُ تِدِبِلُووه، تِدِبِلُوِيه رَهْن.
Ootak w'eera rhan.	I saw the white man.	وَتَاكُ وُئِيْرَه رَهْن.
Tutakat tu'eera rhan.	I saw the white woman.	تُتَكَّتْ تُئِيْرَه رَهْن.
Eenda y'eera rhan.	I saw the white men.	ئِنْدَه يَنْئِيْرَه رَهْن.
Teem'a ti'eera rhan.	I saw the white women.	تَيْمَاهُ تَيْئِيْرَه رَهْن.

NPs with Genitives as Attributes

<202>

Another way of expanding a noun phrase is to add a genitive attribute which typically indicates the possessor, as in 'Ali's son'. This phrase has two parts:

1. The first part is the owner or possessor such as 'Ali's'. This always has a genitive case suffix which consists of the vowels -ii for Genitive (SG) and -ee for Genitive (PL), but in word final position, both of them become -i, so that the distinction between SG and PL is lost.
2. The second part is the item owned or possessum, such as 'son'. This is the main part of the phrase, and it takes the case which is required by the total clause.

<203>

For (F) possessors, a -t is suffixed which indicates the gender of the possessor. It really is part of the noun which expresses the possessor, and so it will precede the genitive suffix.

<204>

For (F) items possessum, a -t is suffixed which indicates the gender of the possessum. It is attached after the genitive which precedes the possessum. This -t can be viewed as the definite article of the possessum.

Table 18: Genitive Suffixes

The Possessor is (M):	
Word Medial:	
-ii...	The possessum is (M).
-ee...	The possessum is (PL M).
-iit...	The possessum is (F).
-eet...	The possessum is (PL F).
Word Final:	
-i	The possessum is (M).
-i	The possessum is (PL M).
-iit	The possessum is (F).
-eet	The possessum is (SG F).

The Possessor is (F):	
Word Medial:	
-tii...	The possessum is (M).
-tee...	The possessum is (PL M).
-tiit...	The possessum is (F).
-teet...	The possessum is (PL F).
Word Final:	
-ti	The possessum is (M).
-ti	The possessum is (PL M).
-tiit	The possessum is (F).
-teet	The possessum is (SG F).

Genitive Attributes: Interrogative Pronouns

<205>

The question word which asks for the possessor is the interrogative pronoun 'Whose (is it)?'. Beja uses four different forms of 'Whose', depending on gender and number of the item possessed.

Table 19: 'Whose' Interrogative Pronouns

Aayi?	Whose?	آئیے؟
Aayu? (< Aayii-yu)	Whose (SG M) is he?	آئی؟ (> آئی - ی)
Aaytu? (< Aayii-tu)	Whose (SG F) is she?	آیت؟ (> آئی - ت)
Aaya? (< Aayii-ya)	Whose (PL M) are they?	آیہ؟ (> آئی - یہ)
Aayta? (< Aayii-ta)	Whose (PL F) are they?	آیتہ؟ (> آئی - تہ)

Genitive Attributes in Indefinite NPs

<206>

It is unusual for an indefinite noun such "a horse" to be connected with a possessor such as "boy's". Therefore the following examples are somewhat strange - even though they are perfectly grammatical.

Aayi hataay eeya?	Whose horse came?	آیے ہٹای یتہ؟
SG -i / (PL) -i	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
Oori hataay eeya.	A boy's horse came.	ۆرے ہٹای یتہ.
M'ati hatay eeyaan.	Women's horses came.	ماتے ہٹئی یتان.
Daayi hatay eeyaan.	People's horses came.	دایے ہٹئی یتان.
Aliiyi hataay rhan.	I saw a horse of Ali's.	الییے ہٹای رھن.

Genitive Attributes in Definite NPs

<207>

Definite noun phrases with genitives are the norm, and they are very frequent. There are many different combinations of case, number, and gender. They will be found in the examples below, in the following order: (1) Masculine possessor, masculine possessum, (2) Masculine possessor, feminine possessum, (3) Feminine possessor, masculine possessum, (4) Feminine possessor, feminine possessum.

NPs with Genitives as Subject

(M) possessor / (M) possessum

-i	Genitive (SG):	
Utaki hataay eeya.	The man's horse (M) came.	أُتَكَي هَتَاي تِيه.
Utaki yaas eeya.	The man's dog (M) came.	أُتَكَي يَاس تِيه.
w'oori hataay eeya.	The boy's horse (M) came.	وؤورَي هَتَاي تِيه.
w'oori yaas eeya.	The boy's dog (M) came.	وؤورَي يَاس تِيه.
-i	Genitive (PL):	
Indaayi hatay eeyaan.	The men's horses (PL M) came.	إِنْدَايَي هَتَي تِيَان.
Indaayi yas eeyaan.	The men's dogs (PL M) came.	إِنْدَايَي يَس تِيَان.
Y'ari hatay eeyaan.	The boys' horses (PL M) came.	يَآرَي هَتَي تِيَان.
Y'ari kitab kwidhiyaan.	The boys' books (PL M) got lost.	يَآرَي كِتَاب كُودِيَان.

(M) possessor / (F) possessum

-iit / -eet	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
Utakiit yaas eeta.	The man's dog (F) came.	أُتَكَيْت يَاس تِيَه.
Utakiit hataay eeta.	The man's horse (F) came.	أُتَكَيْت هَتَاي تِيَه.
W'ooriit hataay eeta.	The boy's horse (F) came.	وؤورَيْت هَتَاي تِيَه.
W'ooriit yaas tiyiya.	The boy's dog (F) died.	وؤورَيْت يَاس تِيِيَه.
Indaayeet hatay eeyaan.	The men's horses (F) came.	إِنْدَايَيْت هَتَي تِيَان.
Indaayeet yas eeyaan.	The men's dogs (F) came.	إِنْدَايَيْت يَس تِيَان.
Y'areet hatay eeyaan.	The boys' horses (F) came.	يَآرَيْت هَتَي تِيَان.
Y'areet tarabeeza, tarabeeda ¹⁰ kat'amiyaan.	The boys' tables (F) broke.	يَآرَيْت تَرَبِيْزَه كَتَاْمِيَان.

(F) possessor / (M) possessum

-ti / -ti	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
Tutakatti yaas eeya.	The woman's dog (M) came.	تُتَاكَتَي يَاس تِيَه.
Tutakatti hataay eeya.	The woman's horse (M) came.	تُتَاكَتَي هَتَاي تِيَه.
Tu'ooti hataay eeya.	The girl's horse (M) came.	تُوؤُوتَي هَتَاي تِيَه.
Tu'ooti yaas iyiya.	The girl's dog (M) died.	تُوؤُوتَي يَاس إِيِيَه.
Tim'ati hatay eeyaan.	The women's horses (M) came.	تِيْمَاتَي هَتَي تِيَان.

Tim'ati yas eeyaan.	The women's dogs (M) came.	تِماٽے یس تیان.
Ti'arti hatay eeyaan.	The girls' horses (M) came.	تِارتے ہتی تیان.
Ti'arti kitab kwidhiyaan.	The girls' books (M)got lost.	تِارتے کتب کھوڈیان.

(F) possessor / (F) possessum

-tiit / -teet	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
Tutakattiit yaas eeta.	The woman's dog (F) came.	تُتکٽیت یاس یتہ.
Tutakattiit hataay eeta.	The woman's horse (F) came.	تُتکٽیت ہتای یتہ.
Tu'ootiit hataay eeta.	The girl's horse (F) came.	تُوؤتیت ہتای یتہ.
Tu'ootiit yaas tiyiya.	The girl's dog (F) died.	تُوؤتیت یاس تیہہ.
Tim'ateet hatay eeyaan.	The women's horses (F) came.	تِماٽیت ہتی تیان.
Tim'ateet yas eeyaan.	The women's dogs (F) came.	تِماٽیت یس تیان.
Ti'arteet hatay eeyaan.	The girls' horses (F) came.	تِارتیت ہتی تیان.
Ti'arteet tarabeeza kat'amiyaan.	The girls' tables (F) broke.	تِارتیت تریزہ کٹامیان.

More NPs with Genitives in the Subject

Aayi hataay eeya?	Whose horse (M) came?	آیے ہتای یتہ؟
-i / -i	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
W'oori hataay eeya.	The boy's horse (M) came.	وؤورے ہتای یتہ.
Tim'ati hatay eeyaan.	The women's horses (M) came.	تِماٽے ہتی تیان.
Indaayi hatay eeyaan.	The people's horses (M) came.	یندایے ہتی تیان.

NPs with Genitives as Object

(M) possessor / (F) possessum

-i / -i	Genitive (SG) / (PL):	
Utaki hataay amiru.	I found the man's horse (M).	اٽکے ہتای امرُ.
Ugawi baab kat'an.	I broke the door (M) of the houses.	اٽوے باب کٽان.
Igawaayi bab kat'an.	I broke the doors (M) of the houses.	اٽوایے بَب کٽان.
Tu'ooti yaas amiru.	I found the girl's dog (M).	تُوؤتے یاس امرُ.
Tutakatiit hataay amiru.	I found the woman's horse (F).	تُتکٽیت ہتای امرُ.
Tu'ootiit hataay amiru.	I found the girl's horse (F).	تُوؤتیت ہتای امرُ.

Genitives in Kinship Terms (SG) / (PL)

<208>

More examples of genitives in Kinship terms are given below. The verb structure may be ignored for the time being.

Duuri oor / duuri ar abari.	I have an uncle's son / sons.	دورے وُر / دورے اُر اٽرے.
Diraati oor / diraati ar abari.	I have an aunt's son / sons.	دراٽے وُر / دراٽے اُر اٽرے.

Oori oor / ari ar abari.	I have a son's son / sons.	ۆرے ۆر / ارے ار اُبرے.
Ootti oor / arti ar abari.	I have a daughter's son / sons.	ۆتے ۆر / ارتے ار اُبرے.
Duuriit oor / duureet arit abari.	I have an uncle's daughter / daughters.	دُوریت ۆر / دُوریت اُرت اُبرے.
Diraatiit oor / diraateet ar abari.	I have an aunt's daughter / daughters.	دِرَاتیت ۆر / دِرَاتیت ار اُبرے.
Ooriit oor / areet ar abari.	I have a son's daughter / daughters.	ۆریت ۆر / اُرتیت ار اُبرے.
Ootiit oor / arteet ar abari.	I have a daughter's daughter / daughters.	ۆیت ۆر / اُرتیت اُرت اُبرے.
Win dhiwa abari.	I have a large family.	وِن دُوه اُبرے.

Modified Genitive Attributes

<209>

Usually the genitive or possessor is a simple name or noun, as in 'Ali's brother', or 'boy's brother' (see the examples here below).

<210>

But it does happen that the possessor itself is modified by an adjective, e.g. 'big boy's brother'. If this is the case, the possessor must be followed by a form of the word naayi 'thing-of'.

Table 20: Modified Genitive Suffixes

naayi	(M) Possessor, (SG M) or (PL M) item	نايے
naati	(F) Possessor, (SG M) or (PL M) item	نااتے
naayiit, naayeet	(M) Possessor, (SG F) or (PL F) item	نايیت, نايیت
naatiit, naateet	(F) Possessor, (SG F) or (PL F) item	نااتیت, نااتیت

[Modified Genitives \(rare\)](#)

W'oor-i san disu.	The boy's brother is small.	وُؤۆر - اِسَن دِسُ.
W'oor oowin naayi san disu.	The tall boy's brother is small.	وُؤۆر وُؤون نايے سَن دِسُ.
Tu'oot-i san disu.	The girl's brother is small.	تُؤۆت - اِسَن دِسُ.
Tu'oor tuwinti naati san disu.	The tall girl's brother is small.	تُؤۆر تُؤونتے نااتے سَن دِسُ.
W'oor oodis naayiit kwa wintu.	The small boy's sister is tall.	وؤؤر وُؤدس نايیت كُوه وِنْتُ.
Tu'oor toodis naaytiit kwa wintu.	The small girl's sister is tall.	تؤؤر تُؤدس ناايیت كُوه وِنْتُ.
W'oor oowin naayi sana dadisa.	The tall boy's brothers are small.	وؤؤر وُؤون نايے سَنه دَدِسَه.
Tu'oor toowin naati sana dadisa.	The tall girl's brothers are small.	تؤؤر تُؤون نااتے سَنه دَدِسَه.

W'oor oodis naayiit kwa wawinta.	The small boy's sisters are tall.	وؤور ۆدس ناپیت كۆه وۆنته.
Tu'oor toodis naaytiit kwa wawinta.	The small girl's sisters are tall.	تؤور تۆدس ناپیت كۆه وۆنته.

More Examples of Modified Genitives (rare)

Aliiyi dhiwa	Ali's relative	أليىي دۆه
Aliib eeyadni naayi dhiwa...	the relative of someone called Ali...	أليب تيدنن نايى دۆه
baladi saalhi tak	a devout man of a country	بَلَدى سالهه تَك
balad gaal naayi saalhi tak	a devout man of one country	بَلَد قَال نايى سالهه تَك
udari sikkwart	sugar from the side	أدرى سِكْوَكْوَرْت
oodar oongaal naayi sikkwart	sugar from the one side	ؤَدْر ۆنْقَال نايى سِكْوَكْوَرْت
ooriit gabiila	a son's tribe	ؤرِيت قَبِيلَه
Hummadiin Iisa Oori naayiit gabiila	Hummadiin Isa son's tribe	هُمَّادِيْن اِيْسَه ؤرِى نايِيت قَبِيلَه

Conversation 2: 'In a Restaurant' (Examples of Genitives)

<211>

A: the host, B: the guest, C: the waiter, D: the restaurant owner

#1	
A: Yhaa! Amsi gwadu mhasaa!	yiha-a amsi gwad-u mhas-aa
A: Hey you (M), today have lunch together with me!	take-IMPVIM today with-POSSSG1 have.lunch-IMPVIM
#2	
B: Yaa salaam, winneet daayiitu!	yaa salaam winneet daayiit-u
B: Oh dear, it is really good!	hello greet-PTCPPAST very good-IDSG13F
#3	
Ugawiiyook?	u-gaw-ii-yook
In your (M) house?	ARTSGM-house-CASGEN-POSSSG2
#4	
A: Laa laa laa,	laa laa laa
A: No no no,	no no no
#5	
Amsi tutakattu kitihayi.	amsi tu-takatt-u kiti-hay-i
Today my wife is not there.	today ARTSGF-woman-POSSSG1 NEGIMPFSG3FPF-be-NEGIMPFSG3F
#6	
Dibiloot halaagaaytiib indhiwaayeeh	dibiloot halaagaayt-iib indhiwaa-yeeh ab-aayt-u

abaaytu.	
To take care of some business she has gone to her family.	small business-ADV+at family-POSSSG3 go-PTCPAST-IDSG3
#7	
B: Aflaa, naamhiinaan mhasnay?	aflaa naamhiinaan mhas-nay
B: Then, which place do we eat lunch?	so.then which.place have.lunch-IMPFPL1
#8	
A: Usuugiib!	u-suug-iib
A: In the market!	ARTSGM-market-ADV+at
#9	
B: Naamhiinaan nimmarari?	naamhiinaan ni-mmarari
B: Where shall we meet?	which.place IMPFPL1PF-gather
#10	
A: Ujaam'iib nimmarari!	u-jaam'-iib ni-mmarari
A: Let us meet at the mosque.	ARTSGM-mosque-ADV+at IMPFPL1PF-gather
#11	
B: Daayiitu. Naadoor?	daayiit-u naadoor
B: Good. When?	good-IDSG13F what.time
#12	
A: Toos'a gaat, baabaadhiina!	too-s'a gaat baa-baadhiin-a
A: At one o'clock. Don't forget!	ARTSGFOBJ-hour one NEGIMPVMPF-forget-NEGIMPVM
#13	
B: Kak eebdhiin!	kak ZERO-eebdhiin
B: How can I forget!	how IMPFSG1PF-forget
#14	
Bariiyook gwad tumhasay -	bariiyook gwad tu-mhasay
To eat together with you (M)	POSSSG2M with ARTSGF-lunch
#15	
nafirka na teefi?	nafir-ka na t-eefi
is there anything nicer than that?	sweet-than thing IMPFSG3FPF-be
#16	
A: Baruuk tihiyisa!	baruuk t-ihiyis-a
A: You (M) are better! (Idiom signifying praise or compliment)	SG2M PASTSG2MPF-be.better-PASTSG2M
#17	
Yakaa! Daayiit matbakh tikteena?	yak-aa daayiit matbakh ti-kteen-a

A: Let us go (LIT arise)! Do you know a good restaurant?	arise-IMPVIM good kitchen IMPFSG2MPF-know-IMPFGS2M
#18	
B: Yaa takay, ani amnaabu.	yaa tak-ay ani amnaab-u
B: Oh man, I am a guest.	hello man-VOCAT SG1 guest-IDSG13M
#19	
Oon'ubaldiib,	oon-'u-bald-iib
In this place,	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-land-ADV+at
#20	
usuugoooh daayiib kaakan.	u-suug-oooh daayiib kaa-kan
I don't know the market well.	ARTSGM-market-POSSSG3 good NEGIMPFGS1PF-know
#21	
A: Aflaa, bak ikatiyeek, yakaa!	aflaa bak i-kati-yeek yak-aa
A: So then, if you don't know, come (get up)!	so.then so IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if arise-IMPVIM
#22	
Daayi matbakh akteen.	daayi matbakh a-kteen
I know a good restaurant.	good kitchen IMPFSG1PF-know
#23	
B: Sagiibu?	sagiib-u
B: Is it far?	far-IDSG13M
#24	
A: Winneet sagiib kiiki.	winneet sagiib ki-aki
A: It is not very far.	very far NEGIMPFGS3MPF-be
#25	
A: Shuumaa!	shuum-aa
A: Go (M) in!	enter-IMPVIM
#26	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: Good.	good-IDSG13F
#27	
A: S'a! Naan tami tindiya?	s'-a naan tam-i ti-ndi-ya
A: Sit (M) down! What will you (M) eat?	sit-IMPVIM what eat-FUTSG IMPFSG2MPF-say-IMPFGS2M
#28	
B: Baraah naan ibariin?	baraah naan i-bari-in

B: What do they (M) have?	PL3M what PERFPL3PF-have-PERFPL3
#29	
A: Hindeeh, hagita, raatni!	hindeeh hagit-a raat-ni
A: Please, wait (M), let us ask.	please wait-IMPVM ask-FUTPL
#30	
Ooray yhaa! Naan tibiiriina?	oor-ay yha-a naan ti-bari-ina
Hello waiter (M)! What do you (PL) have?	boy-hey take-IMPVM what PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#31	
C: Shaatwa, bataatiswa,	shaat-wa bataatis-wa
C: We have meat, potatoes,	meat-and potato-and
#32	
waykaatwa, faasuliyaawwa nibari.	waykaat-wa faasuli-yaa-wwa ni-bari
occra and white beans.	occra-and white.beans-PL-and PERFPL1PF-have
#33	
A: Naan tami tindiya?	naan tam-i ti-ndi-ya
A: What will you (M) eat?	what eat-FUTSG IMPFSG2MPF-say-IMPFSG2M
#34	
B: Shaat.	shaat
B: Meat.	meat
#35	
A: Maloot sha hiyagoon!	maloot sha hi-ya-hoon
A: Give us two (portions of) meat.	two meat give-IMPVM-OBJPL1
#36	
C: Winneet daayiitu!	winneet daayiit-u
C: Very good!	very good-IDSG13F
#37	
Weena tihariwna?	weena ti-hariw-na
Do you (M) want anything else?	other.thing IMPFPL2PF-want-IMPFPL2
#38	
A: Awwal toosha haam'aa!	awwal too-sha haam'-aa
A: First bring the meat!	first ARTSGFOBJ-meat bring-IMPVM
#39	
Malyaab niishbibay.	malyaab n-iishbib
Then let us see.	secondly look-FUTPL
#40	

B: Tushaatuukna na shaatu?	tu-shaat-uukna na shaat-u
B: What kind of meat is your meat?	ARTSGF-meat-POSSPL2 thing meat-IDSG13F
#41	
C: Tushaatoon, arginaayeet shaatu,	tu-shaat-uun argin-aa-yeet shaat-u
C: Our meat is mutton meat,	ARTSGF-meat-POSSPL1 sheep-PL-CASGEN
#42	
sh'ayeet shaatu, n'ayteet shaatu. beef meat, goat meat.	sh'a-yeet shaat-u n'ayt-eet shaat-u cow-CASGEN meat-IDSG13F goat-CASGEN meat-IDSG13F
#43	
B: Arginaayeet sha tikatiyeek,	argin-aa-yeet sha ti-kati-yeek
B: If there is mutton meat,	sheep-PL-CASGEN meat IMPFSG3FPF-be-ADV+if
#44	
hiyahoon. Give us [that].	hi-ya-hoon give-IMPVM-OBJPL1
#45	
A: Naanhooy shaliktu?	naanhooy shalikt-u
A: Why is it so little?	why little-IDSG13F
#46	
C: Y'argina winneet aliyaaba. C: The sheep are very expensive.	y-'argin-a winneet ali-yaab-a ARTPLM-sheep-PL very be.dear-PTCPPAST- IDPL13M
#47	
B: Hooy baashinhaya!	hooy baa-shinha-ya
B: Don't (M) worry!	at NEGIMPVMPF-worry-NEGIMPVM
#48	
Kassuuh gaalu. It's all the same.	kass-uuh gaal-u all-POSSSG3 one-IDSG13M
#49	
A: Tushaatuukna winneet daayiitu. A: Your (PL) meat really is good.	tu-shaat-uukna winneet daayiit-u ARTSGF-meat-POSSPL2 very good-IDSG13F
#50	
Hummaday! Neeshwi? Hummad, hey, shall we order anything in addition (LIT do we add)?	hummad-ay n-eeshwi Hummad-VOCAT IMPFPL1PF-add
#51	
B: Ani winneet gaban.	ani winneet gab-an

B: I was (became) really full (had enough).	SG1 very be.full-PERFSG1
#52	
Baruuk iishwa tindiyeek, shaawa!	baruuk iishwa-ZERO ti-ndi-yeek shaaw-a
If you (M) will have more (LIT add), then have more (LIT add)!	SG2M add-FUTSG IMPFSG3FPF-say-ADV+if add-IMPVM
#53	
A: Naan eeshwi?	naan ZERO-eeshwi
A: What do I order in addition (LIT add)?	what IMPFSG1PF-add
#54	
Ani winneet ataabu.	ani winneet ataab-u
I am really satisfied.	SG1 very filled-IDSG13M
#55	
Naan gw'ata?	naan gw'-ata
What did (do) you (M) drink?	what drink-SUBM
#56	
B: Naan ibariin?	naan i-bari-in
B: What do they have?	what PERFPL3PF-have-PERFPL3
#57	
A: Naan tibiina?	naan ti-bari-ina
A: What do you (PL) have?	what PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#58	
C: Shaahiib nibari, buun nibari.	shaahiib ni-bari buun ni-bari
C: We have tea, we have coffee.	tea PERFPL1PF-have coffee PERFPL1PF-have
#59	
B: Buun tibiina?	buun ti-bari-ina
B: You (Pl) have coffee?	coffee PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#60	
C: Awooh, nibari.	awooh ni-bari
C: Yes, we have.	yes PERFPL1PF-have
#61	
B: Aflaa, wint jabana mheeliit haam'ahoon!	aflaa wint jabana mheel-iit haam'-aa-hoon
B: Then, bring us a big pot of coffee with ginger!	so.then big coffee.pot ginger-CASGEN bring-IMPVM-OBJPL1
#62	
C: Daayiitu!	daayiit-u

C: Good!	good-IDSG13F
#63	
B: Tujabanaatuukna winneet daayiitu.	tu-jabanaat-uukna winneet daayiit-u
B: Your (PL) coffee is very good.	ARTSGF-coffee.pot-POSSPL2 very good-IDSG13F
#64	
A: (Matbakh-i ankwana gwad:)	matbakh-i ankwana gwad
A: (To the restaurant owner:)	kitchen-CASGEN owner with
#65	
Whissaab naakaaba?	w-hissaab naakaab-a
How much is the bill?	ARTSGM-calculation how.many-IDPL13M
#66	
D: Naan tibiiriina?	naan ti-bari-ina
D: What did you (PL) have?	what PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#67	
A: Maloot shaawwa,	maloot shaa-wwa
A: We had two [portions of] meat,	two meat-and
#68	
Wint jabanaawwa nibari.	wint jabanaa-wwa ni-bari
and one big coffee.	big coffee.pot-and PERFPL1PF-have
#69	
D: Kassu whissaab	kass-u w-hissaab
D: All the bill	all-POSSSG1 ARTSGM-calculation
#70	
mhaytamuntwa aytwa Nakfaata / Gineehiwaata.	mhaytamunt-wa ayt-wa nakfaat-a gineehi-waa-ta
is thirty-five Nakfa / Guinees ¹¹ .	thirty-and five-and nakfa-IDPL13F guinee-and-IDPL13F
#71	
A: Abika!	abik-a
A: Take!	take-IMPVVM
#72	
Uunbatuuh aytamunt waragaatu.	uun-batuuh aytamunt waragaat-u
This is fifty notes.	NEARSGFSUBJPF-SG3F fifty paper-IDSG13M
#73	
D: Aanbataah tamna ayta.	aan-bataah tamna ayt-a
D: These (items) are fifteen (Nakfas,	NEARPLFSUBJPF-PL2F ten five-IDPL13F

Guinees).	
#74	
Ahammiidehookna!	a-hammiid-ehookna
I thank you (PL)!	IMPFSG1PF-praise-OBJPL2
#75	
Hamuud baanaawa! Uumhiin mhiinooknaayu.	hamuud baa-naaw-a uu-mhiin mhiin-ooknaa-yu
May you not lack thanks (LIT praise)! The place is yours (PL).	praise NEGIMPVMPF-lack-NEGIMPVM ARTSGMSUBJ-place place-POSSPL2-IdSG13M
#76	
A: Winneet nikteen.	winneet ni-kteen
A: We know (it) much (well).	very IMPFPL1PF-know
#77	
Baruukehan fagar takwa!	baruuk-ehan fagar tak-wa
And you (M) are a nice man.	Sg2M-also brave man-IdSG2M
#78	
B: Tumhasay winneet daayiitu.	tu-mhasay winneet daayiit-u
B: The lunch is very good.	ARTSGF-lunch very good-IdSG13F

<212>

<p>۱ یھا! اُمسے قودُ مہسا! ۲ یا سلام، وئیت داپیت! ۳ اُفویوک؟ ۴ لا لا لا، ۵ اُمسے تکتک کیتھے۔ ۶ دبلوت ہلا قایتیب انڈوایینہ اباہٹ۔ ۷ افلا، نامہینان مہستی؟ ۸ اُشوقیب! ۹ نامہینان نمڑے؟ ۱۰ اجامایب نمڑے! ۱۱ داپیت۔ نادور؟ ۱۲ توسا قات، باباؤینہ! ۱۳ کلک نیڈین! ۱۴ بریوک قودُ مہستی ۱۵ نفرکہ نہ تیفے؟ ۱۶ برؤک تھیسہ! ۱۷ یکا! داپیت متیخ تکتینہ؟ ۱۸ یا تکی، اُنے اماناب۔ ۱۹ ون بُلدیب، ۲۰ اُشوقوہ دایب کاکن۔ ۲۱ افلا، بک اکتینک، یکا! ۲۲ دایے متیخ آکتین۔ ۲۳ سقیب؟ ۲۴ وئیت سقیب کیکے۔ ۲۵ شوما! ۲۶ داپیت۔ ۲۷ ساہ! نان تے تندیہ؟ ۲۸ براہ نان اترین؟ ۲۹ ہندیہ، ہقت، راتے! ۳۰ وڑی یھا! نان تیرینہ؟ ۳۱ شاتو، بتاتسو، ۳۲ ویکاتو، فاشلیاؤہ تیرے۔ ۳۳ نان تے تندیہ؟ ۳۴ شات۔ ۳۵ ملوت شہ ہیہون! ۳۶ وئیت داپیت! ۳۷ وینہ تھرونہ؟ ۳۸ اول توشہ ہاما! ۳۹ ملیاب پینیب۔ ۴۰ تشاتوکنہ نہ شات؟ ۴۱ تشاتون ارقانیت شات، ۴۲ شائیت شات، ناپیت شات۔ ۴۳ ارقانیت شہ تکتینک، ۴۴ ہیہون۔ ۴۵ نانہوی شلیکٹ؟ ۴۶ یارقہ وئیت الیاہ۔ ۴۷ ہوی باشنہیہ! ۴۸ کسٹوہ فال۔ ۴۹ تشاتوکنہ وئیت داپیت۔ ۵۰ ہمدی! نیشوے؟ ۵۱ اُنے وئیت قین۔ ۵۲ برؤک ایشوہ تندیکنک، شاوہ! ۵۳ نان تیشوے؟ ۵۴ اُنے وئیت اتاب۔ ۵۵ نان قواٹہ؟ ۵۶ نان اترین؟ ۵۷ نان تیرینہ؟ ۵۸ شاہیب تیر، بون تیرے۔ ۵۹ بون تیرینہ؟ ۶۰ اووہ، تیرے۔ ۶۱ افلا، ونت جبنے مہیلیت ہاماھون! ۶۲ داپیت! ۶۳ تَجَبَناتوکنہ وئیت داپیت۔ ۶۴ (متیخے اُنکو نہ قود :) ۶۵ وُہساب ناکابہ؟ ۶۶ نان تیرینہ؟ ۶۷ ملوت شاوہ، ۶۸ ونت جَبناوہ تیرے۔ ۶۹ کسٹ وُہساب ۷۰ مہیتْمنتوہ ایتوہ نکفاتہ۔ ۷۱ ایکہ! ۷۲ اوتتوہ ایتْمنت وِرقات۔ ۷۳ ایتناہ تَمنہ ایتہ۔ ۷۴ اھمیدھوکنہ! ۷۵ ہمود باناواہ! او مہین مہینوکنای۔ ۷۶ وئیت نکتین۔ ۷۷ برؤکھن فَر تکوہ! ۷۸ تْمہستی وئیت داپیت۔</p>

Genitive: Possessive Pronominal Suffixes

<213>

In the following sections, possessive suffixes will be introduced, starting with the most frequent one: 'my', like 'My father (LIT father-my)'.

<214>

The suffix 'my' has different forms, depending on three items: (1) number of possessors, (2) case, and (3) position of the suffix - which can be word final or non-final. But the gender of the possessor does not matter.

<215>

To illustrate the possessive pronouns, some vocatives will be given with their possessive suffixes, such as Usanuuyi! 'Oh my brother!'. It has already been noted that all vocatives require a noun in the subject case. So the examples are in the

subject case of the possessive suffix, which is -uu 'my' followed by the vocative suffix -yi.

Vocatives with Possessive Suffix 'my'

Baabuuyi!	Oh my father!	بابوئے!
Usanuuyi!	Oh my brother!	أسنوئے!
Tukwaatuuyi!	Oh my dear sister!	تُكواثوئے!
Tutakatuuyi!	Oh my dear wife!	تُتَكَوئے!

Kinship Terms with Possessive Suffix 'my'

<216>

Possessive affixes are especially important in Kinship terms: Since relatives always are related to someone else, these terms are used with the possessive suffix. In these constructions, the possessive suffix cannot be dropped. They are obligatory.. In addition, these terms are normally used with a definite article - with one exception: Kinship terms referring to generations older than the speaker, such as father, mother, uncle and aunt, can be used without the definite article. For the other relationship terms, such as brother, sister, son etc., the definite article has to be used.

<217>

A large number of illustrations - including kinship terms and a repetition of the demonstratives - are included here below.

Kinship Terms

<218>

Here is a system of Beja kinship terms, where different forms of the genitive suffix -ii 'of' are used, along with different forms of the possessive pronoun -u / -i 'my (SG) / my (PL)'.
 Here is a system of Beja kinship terms, where different forms of the genitive suffix -ii 'of' are used, along with different forms of the possessive pronoun -u / -i 'my (SG) / my (PL)'.

Kinship Terms (M)

Baruuh naat ayaay hook ibari?	What relation does he have to you?	بَرُوهُ نَاتِ أَيَايِ هُوكِ إِبَارِي؟
Answer:		
Baruuh ahoobiiyu hoobaayu.	He is my grandfather's grandfather.	بَرُوهُ أَهْوَبِييُ هُوْبَايُ.
Baruuh ahoobooyu.	He is my grandfather.	بَرُوهُ أَهْوَبِيُ.
Baruuh baabooyu.	He is my father.	بَرُوهُ بَابِيُ.
Baruuh duurooyu.	He is my father's brother.	بَرُوهُ دُرُورِيُ.
Baruuh hamooyu.	He is my father-in-law.	بَرُوهُ هَمُوِيُ.
Baruuh m'aliyooyu.	He is my brother-in-law.	بَرُوهُ مَالِييُوِيُ.
Hinin tiitaaba.	We (M) are twins.	هِنِنِ تِيْتَابَه.
Baruuh sanooyu.	He is my brother.	بَرُوهُ سَنُوِيُ.
Baruuh takooyu.	He is my husband.	بَرُوهُ تَكَوِيُ.
Baruuh oorooyu.	He is my son.	بَرُوهُ وُرُوِيُ.
Baruuh duuriyu ooru.	He is my father's brother's son.	بَرُوهُ دُرِيِيُ وُرُ.
Baruuh ooriiyu ooru.	He is my son's son.	بَرُوهُ وُرِيِيُ وُرُ.

Baruuh ootiiyu ooru.	He is my daughter's son.	بَرُوهُ وَتِييُ وَرُ.
----------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------

Kinship Terms (F)

Batuuh naat ayaay hook tibari?	What relation does she have to you?	بَتُوهُ نَات أَيَاي هُوك تَبَرِي؟
Answer:		
Batuuh ahootiitu hootu, ahootu.	She is my grandmother's grandmother.	بَتُوهُ أَهْوَتِيْتُ هُوْتُ.
Batuuh ahootootu.	She is my grandmother.	بَتُوهُ أَهْوَتُوْتُ.
Batuuh deetootu.	She is my mother.	بَتُوهُ دِيْتُوْتُ.
Batuuh diraatootu.	She is my father's sister.	بَتُوهُ دِرَاتُوْتُ.
Batuuh m'aliitootu.	She is my sister-in-law.	بَتُوهُ مَالِيْتُوْتُ.
Hinin tiitaata.	We (F) are twins.	هِنِن تِيْتَاتَه.
Batuuh kwaatootu.	She is my sister.	بَتُوهُ كُوَاتُوْتُ.
Batuuh takattootu.	She is my wife.	بَتُوهُ تَكْتُوْتُ.
Batuuh ootootu.	She is my daughter.	بَتُوهُ وَتُوْتُ.
Batuuh diraatiitu ootu.	She is my mother's sister's daughter.	بَتُوهُ دِرَاتِيْتُ وَتُوْتُ.
Batuuh ooriitu ootu.	She is my son's daughter.	بَتُوهُ وَرِيْتُ وَتُوْتُ.
Batuuh ootiitu ootu.	She is my daughter's daughter.	بَتُوهُ وَتِيْتُ وَتُوْتُ.

Possessive Suffix 'my'

Uun'uutak aabu?	Who is this man?	أُونُوْتَكْ آبُ؟
Araawooyu.	He is my (M) friend.	أَرَاوُوْيُ.
Uuttutakat aabtu?	Who is this woman?	أُوْتْتَكْتْ آبْتُ؟
Araawtootu.	She is my (F) friend.	أَرَاوُوْتُ.
Aan'aanda aaba?	Who are these men?	آآنَانْدَهْ آبَهْ؟
Araweeya.	They are my (M) friends.	أَرُوْتِيَه.
Taattaam'a aabta?	Who are these women?	تَاتَامَاهْ آبْتَهْ؟
Arawteeta.	They are my (F) friends.	أَرُوْتِيَه.
Indhiwaayaak aaba?	Who are your relatives?	إِنْدِيْوَايَاكْ آبَهْ؟
Ootoowwa ooroowwaaya.	They are my daughter and my son.	وَتُوُوَهْ وَرُوُوَايَه.
Deetoowwa baaboowwaaya.	They are my mother and my father.	دِيْتُوُوَهْ بَابُوُوَايَه.

Possessive Suffix and Kinship terms

Uunbaruuh aabu?	Who is this (M)?	أُونَبَرُوُهْ آبُ؟
Uunbaruuh baabooyu.	He is my father.	أُونَبَرُوُهْ بَابُوْيُ.
Uunbaruuh duurooyu.	He is my uncle.	أُونَبَرُوُهْ دُوْرُوْيُ.
Uunbaruuh sanooyu.	He is my brother.	أُونَبَرُوُهْ سَنُوْيُ.

Uunbaruuh takooyu.	He is my husband.	أُونَبَرُوهُ نَكُوِي.
Uunbaruuh oorooyu, w'oorooyu.	He is my son.	أُونَبَرُوهُ وَّرُوِي، وُّوَرُوِي.
Uunbatuuh aabtu?	Who is this (F)?	أُونَبَتُوهُ آَبْتُ؟
Uunbatuuh deetootu.	She is my mother.	أُونَبَتُوهُ دِينْتُوْتُ.
Uunbatuuh diraatootu.	She is my aunt.	أُونَبَتُوهُ دِرَاتُوْتُ.
Uunbatuuh kwaatootu.	She is my sister.	أُونَبَتُوهُ كُوَاتُوْتُ.
Uunbatuuh takatootu.	She is my wife.	أُونَبَتُوهُ نَكْتُوْتُ.
Uunbatuuh ootootu, tu'ootootu.	She is my daughter.	أُونَبَتُوهُ تُوُوْتُ، تُوُوْتُوْتُ.

Kinship Terms referring to Generations older than the speaker: Without Article

Baabu keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my father? / He is here.	بَابُ كِيِيَه؟ / أُونُ اِكْتِيَه .
Baabi keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my fathers, elders? / They are here.	بَابِي كِيِيَان؟ / آن اِكْتِيِيِن.
Deetu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my mother? / She is here.	دِينْتُ كِيِيَه؟ / تُوْتُ يَكْتِيَه .
Duuru keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my uncle? / He is here.	دُوْرُ كِيِيَه؟ / أُونُ اِكْتِيَه .
Duuri keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my uncles? / They are here.	دُوْرِي كِيِيَان؟ / آن اِكْتِيِيِن .
Diraatu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my aunt? / She is here.	دِرَاتُ كِيِيَه؟ / تُوْتُ يَكْتِيَه .
Diraati keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my aunts? / They are here.	دِرَاتِي كِيِيَان؟ / تَان اِكْتِيِيِن .

Kinship terms referring to other generations: With Article

Tutakattu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my wife? / She is here.	تُتَكَاْتُ كِيِيَه؟ / تُوْتُ يَكْتِيَه .
Tim'ati keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my wives? / They are here.	تِيْمَاتِي كِيِيَان؟ / تَان اِكْتِيِيِن .
Utaku keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my husband? / He is here.	أُتَاكُ كِيِيَه؟ / أُونُ اِكْتِيَه .
Tu'ootu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my daughter? / They are here.	تُوُوْتُ كِيِيَه؟ / تُوْتُ يَكْتِيَه .
Ti'arti keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my daughters / They are here.	تِيَارْتِي كِيِيَان؟ / تَان اِكْتِيِيِن .
W'ooru keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my son? / He is here.	وُّوْرُو كِيِيَه؟ / أُونُ اِكْتِيَه .
Y'ari keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my sons? / They are here.	يَارِي كِيِيَان؟ / آن اِكْتِيِيِن .

[Possession of Goods : Items \(M\) With Article](#)

Ukaamu keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my camel? / It is here.	أُكَاْمُ كِيِيَه؟ / أُونُ اِكْتِيَه .
Ikami keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my camels? / They are here.	اِكْمِي كِيِيَان؟ / آن اِكْتِيِيِن .

Umeeeku keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my donkey? / It is here.	أَمِيكُ كِيهه? / أُونِ إِكْتِيه.
Imaki keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my donkeys? / They are here.	إِمَكِيه كِييَان? / آَن إِكْتِييِن.
Ugawu keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my house? / It is here.	أَقْوُ كِيهه? / أُونِ إِكْتِيه.
Igawaayi keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my houses? / They are here.	إِقْوَايِيه كِييَان? / آَن إِكْتِييِن.
Ugalamu keeya? / uun ikati.	Where is my pencil? / It is here.	أَقْلَمُ كِيهه? / أُونِ إِكْتِيه.
Igalamaayi keeyaan? / aan ikatiin.	Where are my pencils? / They are here.	إِقْلَمَايِيه كِييَان? / آَن إِكْتِييِن.

Possession of Goods: Items (F) With Article

Tun'aaytu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my goat? / It is here.	تُنَائْتُ كِيهه? / تُوتُ تِكْتِيه.
Tin'ayti keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my goats? / They are here.	تِنَائْتِيه كِييَان? / تَانِ إِكْتِييِن.
Tumeektu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my donkey? / It is here.	تُمِيكْتُ كِيهه? / تُوتُ تِكْتِيه.
Timakti keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my donkeys? / They are here.	تِمَكْتِيه كِييَان? / تَانِ إِكْتِييِن.
Tumastaraatu keeta? / tuut tikati.	Where is my ruler? / It is here.	تُمَسْتَرَاتُ كِيهه? / تُوتُ تِكْتِيه.
Timastaraati keeyaan? / taan ikatiin.	Where are my rulers? / They are here.	تِمَسْتَرَاتِيه كِييَان? / تَانِ إِكْتِييِن.

Possessive Suffixes

<219>

The possessive suffixes for all persons are given in the table below. The four different vowels are those of the different cases and numbers (SUBJ / OBJ SG), (SUBJ / OBJ PL).

<220>

The suffixes are used with -y only when they follow a vowel. There is no -y when they follow a consonant.

<221>

The forms for the first person ('of me') have already been given above. If no suffix follows, only -(y)u / -(y)i can be used, rather than -(y)oo / -(y)ee.

<222>

The possessive suffixes for all third persons - i.e. 'of him / of her / of them' - are the same.

Table 21: Possessive Suffixes

Possessum is (SG):		
Kaamuuk eeya / kaamook rhan.	Your camel (M) came. / I saw your camel (M).	كَاْمُوْكُ يِيه / كَاْمُوْكُ رِهِن.
-(y)uu / -(y)oo	my (SUBJ / OBJ)	
[-(y)u / -(y)u]	[my (SUBJ / OBJ) (in word final position)]	

-(y)uuk / -(y)ook	your (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)uuh / -(y)ooh	his or her (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)uun / -(y)oon	our (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)uukna / -(y)ookna	your (PL (SUBJ) / PL OBJ)	
-(y)uuh / -(y)ooh	their (SUBJ / OBJ)	
Possessums are (PL):		
Kamaak eeyaan / kameek rhan.	Your camels (M) came / I saw your camels (M).	ڪماڪ نيان / ڪميڪ رهن.
-(y)ii / -(y)ee	my (SUBJ / OBJ)	
[-(y)i / -(y)i]	[my (SUBJ / OBJ) (in word final position)]	
-(y)aak / -(y)eek	your (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)aah / -(y)eeh	his or her (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)aan / -(y)een	our (SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)aakna / -(y)eekna	your (PL SUBJ / OBJ)	
-(y)aah / -(y)eeh	their (SUBJ / OBJ)	

Kinship Terms (SG) / (PL)

Diraatu rhita? / diraatook rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my aunt? I didn't see your aunt.	ڊراتو رهته؟ / ڊراتوڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Diraati rhita? / diraateek rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my aunts? I didn't see your aunts.	ڊراتي رهته؟ / ڊراتيڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Deetu rhita? / deetook rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my mother? I didn't see your mother.	ديٽو رهته؟ / ديٽوڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Deeti rhita? / deeteek rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my mothers? I didn't see your mothers.	ديٽي رهته؟ / ديٽيڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Tu'ootu rhita? / tu'ootook rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my daughter? I didn't see your daughters.	ٽوٽو رهته؟ / ٽوٽوڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Ti'arti rhita? / ti'arteek rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my daughters? I didn't see your daughters.	ٽارٽي رهته؟ / ٽارٽيڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Tutakattu rhita? / tutakatook rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my wife? I didn't see your wife.	ٽوڪٽو رهته؟ / ٽوڪٽوڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.
Tim'ati rhita? / tim'ateek rhaab kaaki.	Did you see my wives? I didn't see your wives.	ٽيماٽي رهته؟ / ٽيماٽيڪ رهاب ڪاڪي.

Kinship Terms as Subject

<223>

In the next examples, the possessive suffix 'your (SG)' is first introduced with subject nouns such as baabuuk 'your father (SUBJ)' and then with object nouns such as baabook 'your father (OBJ)'. The case suffix vowels -uu / -oo are those typically used for the subject / object cases respectively. As has been said earlier, the definite articles are not used when referring to generations older than the speaker. The verb structure can be ignored for the time being.

Without Definite Article:		
Baabuuk naan tan'i?	What is your father like?	باپوك نان تئا؟
Deetuuk naan tan'i?	What is your mother like?	ديتوك نان تئا؟
With Definite Article:		
Usanuuk naan tan'i?	What is your brother like?	اسنوك نان تئا؟
Tukwaatuuk naan tan'i?	What is your sister like?	توكواتوك نان تئا؟
W'ooruuk naan tan'i?	What is your son like?	ووزوك نان تئا؟
Tu'ootuuk naan tan'i?	What is your daughter like?	توتوك نان تئا؟
Without Definite Article:		
Baabuuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your father resemble?	باپوك آب تئا؟
Deetuuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your mother resemble?	ديتوك آب تئا؟
With Definite Article:		
Usanuuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your brother resemble?	اسنوك آب تئا؟
Tukwaatuuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your sister resemble?	توكواتوك آب تئا؟
W'ooruuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your son resemble?	ووزوك آب تئا؟
Tu'ootuuk aab tan'i?	Whom does your daughter resemble?	توتوك آب تئا؟

Kinship Terms as Object

Without Definite Article:		
Ani baabook kaakan.	I don't know your father.	أني بابوك كاكن.
Ani deetook kaakan.	I don't know your mother.	أني ديتوك كاكن.
Ani duurook kaakan.	I don't know your uncle.	أني دوروك كاكن.
Ani diratook kaakan.	I don't know your aunt.	أني دراتوك كاكن.
Ani ahoobook kaakan.	I don't know your grandfather.	أني أهوبوك كاكن.
Ani ahootook kaakan.	I don't know your grandmother.	أني أهوتوك كاكن.
With Definite Article:		
Ani usanook kaakan.	I don't know your brother.	أني أسنوك كاكن.
Ani tukwaatook kaakan.	I don't know your sister.	أني توكواتوك كاكن.
Ani utakook kaakan.	I don't know your husband.	أني أتكوك كاكن.
Ani tutakattook kaakan.	I don't know your wife.	أني تكتتوك كاكن.
Ani w'oorook kaakan.	I don't know your son.	أني ووزوك كاكن.
Ani tu'ootook kaakan.	I don't know your daughter.	أني توتوك كاكن.

[Conversation 3: 'Visit of a Relative' \(Examples of Kinship Terms\)](#)

<224>

D: the daughter, U: the uncle, M: the mother

#1	
D: Aabwa, oobaab inth'i?	aab-wa oob-aab i-nth'i
D: Who are you (M), knocking at the door?	whoOBJM-IDSG2M track-PTCPPAST IMPFSG3MPF-knock
#2	
U: Ani Abrhiimu.	ani abrhiim-u
U: I am Abraham.	SG1 Abraham-IDSG13M
#3	
D: Eetaaneena, eetaaneena!	ee-taan-ee-na
D: Welcome, Welcome!	come-PERFPL2-WH-Thing
#4	
Rhinaneetookna!	rhi-na-neet-ookna
Good to see you (PL)!	see-PERFPL1-WH-POSSPL2
#5	
U: Tisniyeena!	ti-sni-yee-na
U: Hello (you at home)!	PERFSG2MPF-stay-PERFSG2M-WH-Thing
#6	
Rhanayt rhaat baanaawna!	rhanayt baa-naaw-na
Don't fail to be seen!	seeing NEGIMPVPLPF-lack-NEGIMPVPL
#7	
Deetuuk teefee?	deet-uuk t-eefee
Is your mother there?	mother-POSSSG2 IMPFSG3FPF-be
#8	
D: Awooh, teefi.	awooh t-eeffi
D: Yes, she is there.	yes IMPFSG3FPF-be
#9	
Suur baya! Shuumaa!	suur bay-a shuum-aa
Go (M) ahead! Come in!	before go-IMPVM enter-IMPVM
#10	
U: Baabuuk naat abaayu?	baab-uuk naat abaay-u
U: Where has your father gone?	father-POSSSG2 thing go-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#11	
D: Baabu ushanhooh abaayu.	baab-u u-shanh-ooh abaay-u
D: My father has gone to his work.	father-POSSSG1 ARTSGM-work-POSSSG3 go-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#12	

Deetuuyi, deetuuyi!	deet-uu-yi deet-uu-yi
Mother, mother!	mother-POSSSG1-VOCAT mother-POSSSG1-CASVOCAT
#13	
Duuru Abrhiim eeya.	duur-u abrhiim ee-ya
My uncle Abraham has come.	uncle-POSSSG1 Abraham come-PERFSG3M
#14	
M: Yaa eeyaaneena! Keeya, keeya?	yaa ee-taan-ee-na keey-a kee-ya
M: Oh, welcome! Where is he, where is he?	hello come-PERFSG3M-WH-Thing be.where-PERFSG3M be.where-PERFSG3M
#15	
D: Ushafatiib eefi.	u-shafat-iib ZERO-eefi
D: He is in the men's house.	ARTSGM-men's.house-ADV+at IMPFSG3MPF-be
#16	
M: "Suur baya!" diyi! Uugaw gawuuhu.	suur bay-a diy-i uu-gaw gaw-uuh-u
M: Tell him "Go ahead!!" The house is his house.	before go-IMPVM say-IMPVF ARTSGMSUBJ-house house-POSSSG3-IDSG13M
#17	
D: Duuruuyi! Deetu waliiktinihook.	duur-uu-yi deet-u waliik-tini-hook
D: My uncle! My mother calls you.	uncle-POSSSG1-VOCAT mother-POSSSG1 call-IMPFG3F-OBJSG2
#18	
U: Daayitu. Y'i andi.	daayit-u y'-i a-ndi
U: OK. I will come.	good-IDSG13F come-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#19	
M: Libaabiibaana?	libaabiib-aana
M: Are you (PL) happy?	happy-IDPL2M
#20	
U: Gwirhaab kinbaru.	gwirhaab kin-baru
U: We don't have a problem.	problem NEGIMPFL1PF-have
#21	
Baraak kak tihayna, tiheena?	baraak kak ti-hay-na
How are you (PL)?	PL2M how PERFPL2PF-be-PERFPL2
#22	
M: Hininhan gwirhaab kinbaru.	hinin-han gwirhaab kin-baru
M: We also don't have problems.	PL1-also problem NEGIMPFL1PF-have

<225>

١ أبو، و باب إنتا؟ ٢ أنى أبرهيم، ٣ يتانين، ٤ رهنتيوكه! ٥ تسينيه! ٦ رهنتيت باناونه! ٧ ديتوك تيفى؟ ٨ أووه، تيفى. ٩ شور يه! شوما! ١٠ باوك نات أباي؟
 ١١ باب أشنهوه أباي، ١٢ ديتوي، ديتوي، ١٣ دور أبرهيم يه. ١٤ يا يتانينه! كني، كنيه؟ ١٥ أشفتيب تيفى. ١٦ شور يه! 'ديه! أو قو قوه. ١٧ دوروي، ديت
 وليكتيهوك، ١٨ دايت. يا أندى. ١٩ ليايبانه؟ ٢٠ قورهاب كير. ٢١ براك كك تيهينه؟ ٢٢ هينهن قورهاب كير.

Possessive Suffixes (SG)

You / I:		
Oosmook aab eeyadna?	What is your (M) name?	وسموك آب تيدنه؟
Oosmu Oosheek eeyadna.	My name is Oosheek.	وسم وشيك تيدنه.
Oosmook aab eeyadna?	What is your (F) name?	وسموك آب تيدنه؟
Oosmu Zaynab eeyadna.	My name is Zaynab.	وسم زينب تيدنه.
He / she:		
Oosmooh aab eeyadna?	What is his name?	وسموه آب تيدنه؟
Oosmuuh Ali eeyadna.	His name is Ali.	وسموه آلى تيدنه.
Oosmooh aab eeyadna?	What is her name?	وسموه آب تيدنه؟
Oosmuuh Haliimaab eeyadna.	Her name is Halima.	وسموه هليمااب تيدنه.

Possessive Suffixes (PL)

Ismaayeeekna aab eeyadna?	How (LIT what names) do they call you (M)?	إسمائيكنه آب تيدنه؟
Ismaayeen Zaynabwa Aminaabwa, Aminaawwa eeyadna.	Our names they call them Zaynab and Amina.	إسمائين زينبوه أمناوبه / أمناوه تيدنه.
Ismaahina aab eeyadna?	How (LIT what names) do they call them?	إسماهينه آب تيدنه؟
Ismaahina Zaynabwa Aminaabwa eeyadna.	Their (F) names are Zaynab and Amina.	إسماهنه زينبوه أمناوبه تيدنه.

Possessive Suffixes with 'Self'

<226>

To express 'self', as in 'myself, yourself' etc, possessive suffixes will be used.

<227>

The possessive suffixes can be attached to different word stems, all of which express 'self'. The stems are the following: kina 'owner', abi 'self', garu 'body', or nifis 'soul'. The most common of these is kina 'owner'.

ani ukinaayu	I myself (SUBJ)	أنى أكناي
ani abiiyu	I myself (SUBJ)	أنى أبىي
ugarooyu	myself (OBJ)	أقرؤى
unifsu	myself (OBJ)	أنفسى
abiiyeeb	myself (OBJ)	أبييب

<228>

Pronouns like 'myself, yourself' etc. will be expressed with possessive suffixes, such as 'self-my, self-your' etc. The verb 'to see' will be used to illustrate this in the examples below (The verb 'to see' has already been introduced above).

<229>

In all phrases such as 'I myself' (LIT 'I self-my'), the noun kina 'owner' has the definite article. The reason is that words with possessive suffixes are considered definite and tend to have a definite article.

<230>

The sentences below require a subject in the subject case. First 'SG' will be exemplified, then 'PL'. So the item possessed (kina- 'owner') has as suffix the vowels -uu and -aa, which are typical for the subject case.

<231>

It should be no surprise that no possessive suffixes are attached to 'his', or 'her', or 'their'. It has already been noted that the third person suffixes usually are ZERO in many instances.

Paradigm kina- 'owner' (SUBJ)

Aaw rhiya?	Who saw (it)?	آو رهيه؟
Answer (SG):		
Ani uknaayu rhan.	I myself saw (it).	أُنِي أُكْنَايُ رَهَن.
Baruuk uknaayuuk rhitaa.	You (M) yourself saw (it).	بَرُوكُ أُكْنَايُوكُ رَهِنَا.
Batuuk tuknaatuuk rhitaayi.	You (F) yourself saw (it).	بَتُوكُ تُكْنَااتُوكُ رَهِنَايِي.
Baruuh uuukna rhiya.	He himself saw (it).	بَرُوهُ أُوكْنَه رَهِيه.
Batuuh tuukna rhita.	She herself saw (it).	بَتُوه تُوَكْنَه رَهِنَه.
Answer (PL):		
Hinin iknaayaan rhina.	We ourselves saw (it).	هِنِنِ إِكْنَايَانِ رَهِنَه.
Baraakna iknaayaakna rhitaana.	You (PL M) yourselves saw (it).	بَرَاكْنَه إِكْنَايَاكْنَه رَهِنَانَه.
Bataakna tiknaataakna rhitaana.	You (PL F) yourselves saw (it).	بَتَاكْنَه تِكْنَااتَاكْنَه رَهِنَانَه.
Baraah aakna rhiyaan.	They (M) themselves saw (it).	بَرَاهُ أَكْنَه رَهِيَان.
Bataah taakna rhiyaan.	They (F) themselves saw (it).	بَتَاهُ تَاكْنَه رَهِيَان.

Paradigm abii- 'self' (SUBJ)

<232>

In the case of ab- 'self', there is a possessive suffix even for 'his', 'her', and 'their'.

Aaw rhiya?	Who saw (it)?	آو رهيه؟
Answer (SG):		
Ani abiiyi rhan.	I myself (SUBJ) saw (it).	أُنِي أَبِييِي رَهَن.
Baruuk abiiyeek rhitaa.	You (M) yourself saw (it).	بَرُوكُ أَبِييِيكَ رَهِنَا.
Batuuk abiiyeek rhitaayi.	You (F) yourself saw (it).	بَتُوكُ أَبِييِيكَ رَهِنَايِي.
Baruuh abiiyeek rhiya.	He himself saw (it).	بَرُوهُ أَبِييِيَه رَهِيه.
Batuuh abiiyeek rhita.	She herself saw (it).	بَتُوه أَبِييِيَه رَهِنَه.

Answer (PL):		
Hinin abiiyaan rhina.	We ourselves saw (it).	هين ابييان رهنه.
Baraakna abiiyaakna rhitaana.	You (PL M) yourselves saw (it).	براكنه ابيياكنه رهتانه.
Bataakna abiiyaakna rhitaana.	You (PL F) yourselves saw (it).	بتاكنه ابيياكنه رهتانه.
Baraah abiiyaah rhiyaan.	They (M) themselves saw (it).	برا ابيياه رهيان.
Bataah abiiyaah rhiyaan.	They (F) themselves saw (it).	بتاه ابيياه رهيان.

Paradigm abii- 'self (OBJ)'

<233>

The possessive suffixes are different for the object case. Here the words 'myself, yourself' etc. are the objects of the sentences. In the following paradigm, the gloss 'self' should be understood as placing emphasis on the particular pronoun.

<234>

Note that the possessive suffixes of abii- 'self' are echoed in the verb suffixes, e.g. -heeb, -hook etc. such as, for instance, the suffix of abii-yeeb 'self-mine' is echoed in the suffix of the verb rhiya-heeb 'saw-me'. These object suffixes will be discussed later, in the context of the verb system.

Aab rhiya?	Whom did he see?	آب رهييه؟
Answer (SG):		
Aneeb abiiyeeb rhiyaheeb.	He saw me (myself).	أنتب ابييتب رهييهيب.
Barook abiiyeek rhiyahook.	He saw you (M) (yourself).	بروك ابييتك رهييهوك.
Batook abiiyeek rhiyahook.	He saw you (F) (yourself).	بتوك ابييتك رهييهوك.
Barooh abiiyeeh rhiya.	He ₁ saw him ₂ (himself ₂).	بروه ابييته رهييه.
Batooh abiiyeeh rhiya.	He saw her (herself).	بتوه ابييته رهييه.
Answer (PL):		
Hinin abiiyeen rhiyahoon.	He saw us (ourselves).	هين ابيين رهييهون.
Bareekna abiiyeekna rhiyahookna.	He saw you (PL M) (yourselves).	براكنه ابييكنه رهييهوكنه.
Bateekna abiiyeekna rhiyahookna.	He saw you (PL F) (yourselves).	بتاكنه ابييكنه رهييهوكنه.
Bareeh abiiyeeh rhiya.	He saw them (M) (themselves).	بريه ابييته رهييه.
Bateeh abiiyeeh rhiya.	He saw them (F) (themselves).	بتيه ابييته رهييه.

Possessive Suffixes (SUBJ)

<235>

Here are more examples for the different case and number forms of the possessive suffixes. In this list, there are third person suffixes.

<236>

Note that the plural term 'families' is used by a husband to refer to his own wife.

Indhiwaayi antooy kihayna.	My families (SUBJ) (i.e. my wife) are not here.	إنڊواييه أنتوي كيهينه.
Indhiwaayaak antooy kihayna.	Your families (SUBJ) are not here.	إنڊواياك أنتوي كيهينه.
Indhiwaayaah antooy kihayna.	His / her families (SUBJ) are not here.	إنڊواياه أنتوي كيهينه.

Indhiwaayaan antooy kihayna.	Our families (SUBJ) are not here.	إنڊوايان أنتوي كهيئه.
Indhiwaayaakna antooy kihayna.	Your (PL) families (SUBJ) are not here.	إنڊواياكنه أنتوي كهيئه.
Indhiwaahina antooy kihayna.	Their families (SUBJ) are not here.	إنڊوايهه أنتوي كهيئه.

Possessive Suffixes (OBJ)

Indhiwaayi antooy haam'aa!	Bring my family (OBJ) (i.e. my wife) them (i.e. her) here!	إنڊواييه أنتوي هامآ!
Indhiwaayeek antooy haam'aa!	Bring (M) your family (OBJ) here!	إنڊواييكه أنتوي هامآ!
Indhiwaayeeh antooy haam'aa!	Bring (M) his / her family (OBJ) here!	إنڊواييهه أنتوي هامآ!
Indhiwaayeen antooy haam'aa!	Bring (M) our family (OBJ) here!	إنڊوايين أنتوي هامآ!
Indhiwaayeekna antooy haam'aa!	Bring (M) your (PL) family (OBJ) here!	إنڊواييكنه أنتوي هامآ!
Indhiwaahina antooy haam'aa!	Bring (M) their family (OBJ) here!	إنڊوايههه أنتوي هامآ!

Independent Possessive Pronouns

<237>

Beja has a rich set of independent possessive pronouns, with several forms for 'mine', 'yours', 'his' etc. The following table gives a preliminary overview. The possessive pronouns have different forms for singular and plural, for masculine and feminine. The pronouns are given in the form of complete sentences, such as aniibu 'he is mine' aniitu 'she is mine' etc.

<238>

Note that the pronoun which precedes the copula -u / -a 'is / are' must always be in the object form (object case). For the purpose of understanding these complex pronouns, a morpheme-by-morpheme gloss may be helpful. For instance, aniibu 'it is mine' can be glossed as follows:

an	-ii	-b	-u
SG1	-of	-MOBJ	-IDSG13M

<239>

And bateeyeeknaata can be glossed as follows:

bat	-ee	-eeknaa	-t	-a
personF	-of	PL2	-FOBJ	-IDPL13M

Table 22: Possessive Pronouns

He (it) (M) is ... :			They (it) (M) are ... :		
aniibu	mine	أنيب	aniiba	mine	أنيبه
bariiyooku	yours (M)	بارييووك	bariiyeeka	yours (M)	باريبيكه
batiyooku	yours (F)	باتييووك	batiyeeka	yours (F)	باتيبيكه

bariyoohu	his	بَرِييُوهُ	bariyeeha	his	بَرِييَهه
batiyoohu	hers	بَاتِييُوهُ	batiyeeha	hers	بَاتِييَهه
hineeбу	our	هِنِيْب	hineeба	our	هِنِيَه
bareeyooknaayu*	yours (PL M)	* بَرِييُو كِنَايُ	bareeyeeknaaya*	yours (PL M)	* بَرِييَه كِنَايَه
bateeyooknaayu*	yours (PL F)	* بَاتِييُو كِنَايُ	bateeyeeknaaya*	yours (PL F)	* بَاتِييَه كِنَايَه
bareehoonaaуu*	theirs (M)	* بَرِييَهو نَايُ	bareehoonaaaya*	theirs (M)	* بَرِييَهْتِنَايَه
bateehoonaaуu*	theirs (F)	* بَاتِييَهو نَايُ	bateehoonaaaya*	theirs (F)	* بَاتِييَهْتِنَايَه
She (it) (F) is ... :			They (F) are ... :		
aniitu	mine	أَنِيتُ	aniita	mine	أَنِتَه
bariitooktu	yours (M)	بَرِييُو كُتُ	bariiteekta	yours (M)	بَرِييَه كُتَه
batiitooktu	yours (F)	بَاتِييُو كُتُ	batiiteekta	yours (F)	بَاتِييَه كُتَه
bariiehtootu	his	بَرِييَهتُو تُو	bariiehteeta	his	بَرِييَهْتِيَه
batiiehtootu	hers	بَاتِييَهتُو تُو	batiiehteeta	hers	بَاتِييَهْتِيَه
hineetu	our	هِنِيْب	hineeta	our	هِنِيَه
bareeteeknaatu*	yours (PL M)	* بَرِييُو كِنَا تُو	bareeteeknaata*	yours (PL M)	* بَرِييَه كِنَا تَه
bateeteeknaatu*	yours (PL F)	* بَاتِييُو كِنَا تُو	bateeteeknaata*	yours (PL F)	* بَاتِييَه كِنَا تَه
bareetehonaatu*	theirs (M)	* بَرِييَهتُو نَا تُو	bareeteheenaata*	theirs (M)	* بَرِييَهْتِنَا تَه
bateetehonaatu*	theirs (F)	* بَاتِييَهتُو نَا تُو	bateeteheenaata*	theirs (F)	* بَاتِييَهْتِنَا تَه

<240>

* For the pronouns marked with an asterisk there are alternative forms with -ii instead of -ee.

Possessive Pronouns: First (SG)

<241>

In the following examples, the possessive pronoun for the first person, i.e. 'mine', will be presented.

Uun'uugaw aayu?	Whose is this house?	أُونُو قَو آيُ؟
Uun'uugaw aniibu.	This house is mine.	أُونُو قَو أَنِيْب.
Uun'uugalam aayu?	Whose is this pencil?	أُونُو قَلَم آيُ؟
Uun'uugalam aniibu.	This pencil is mine.	أُونُو قَلَم أَنِيْب.
Uuttutarabeeda, tuuttutarabeeza aaytu?	Whose is this table?	أُونُو تَرَبِيْدَه، تُونُو تَرَبِيْزَه آيُ؟
Uuttutarabeeda, tuuttutarabeeza aniitu.	This table is mine.	أُونُو تَرَبِيْدَه، تُونُو تَرَبِيْزَه أَنِيْب.
Uuttu'oor, tuuttu'oor aaytu?	Whose is this girl?	أُونُو تُووْر، تُونُو تُووْر آيُ؟
Uuttu'oor, tuuttu'oor aniitu.	This girl is mine.	أُونُو تُووْر، تُونُو تُووْر أَنِيْب.

Possessive Pronouns: First and second person (SG / PL)

<242>

The full set of possessive pronouns will be presented below, proceeding from (SG) to (PL) items possessed, and from (M) to (F) - including all persons as possessors (mine, yours, etc.) for each set.

Uunbaruuh aayu?	Whose is this (M)?	أونبروه آي؟
Uunbaruuh bariyooku.	This (M) is yours (M).	أونبروه بريؤك.
Uunbatuuh aaytu?	Whose is this (F)?	أونبتوه آيت؟
Uunbatuuh batiitooktu.	This (F) is yours (F).	أونبتوه بتيتؤكت.
Aanbaraah aaya?	Whose are these (M)?	آنبراه آيه؟
Aanbaraah bariyeeka.	These (M) are yours (M).	آنبراه برييكة.
Aanbataah aayta?	Whose are these (F)?	آنباه آيته؟
Aanbataah batiiteekta.	These (F) are yours (F).	آنباه بتيتيكته.

Possessive Pronouns: First and second person (M / F)

Uunbaruuh aayu?	Whose is this (M)?	أونبروه آي؟
Uunbaruuh aniibu.	This (M) is mine.	أونبروه أنيب.
Uunbaruuh bariyooku.	This (M) is yours (M).	أونبروه بريؤك.
Uunbaruuh batiyooku.	This (M) is yours (F).	أونبروه بتيؤك.
Uunbatuuh aaytu?	Whose is this (F)?	أونبتوه آيت؟
Uunbatuuh aniitu.	This (F) is mine.	أونبتوه أنيت.
Uunbatuuh bariitooktu.	This (F) is yours (M).	أونبتوه بريؤكت.
Uunbatuuh batiitooktu.	This (F) is yours (F).	أونبتوه بتيتؤكت.

Possessive Pronouns: First and second person (PL M / F)

Aanbaraah aaya?	Whose are these (M)?	آنبراه آيه؟
Aanbaraah aniiba.	These (M) are mine.	آنبراه أنيبه.
Aanbaraah bariyeeka.	These (M) are yours (M).	آنبراه برييكة.
Aanbaraah batiyeeka.	These (M) are yours (F).	آنبراه بتييكة.
Aanbataah aayta?	Whose are these (F)?	آنباه آيته؟
Aanbataah aniita.	These (F) are mine.	آنباه أنيته.
Aanbataah bariiteekta.	These (F) are yours (M).	آنباه بريتيكته.
Aanbataah batiiteekta.	These (F) are yours (F).	آنباه بتيتيكته.

Possessive Pronouns: Singular Masculine Item Possessed

Uun'uukaam aayu?	Whose is this camel (M)?	أونوكام آي؟
------------------	--------------------------	-------------

Aniibu.	It (M) is mine.	أنيب .
Bariyooku.	It (M) is yours (M).	بَريوُك .
Batiyooku.	It (M) is yours (F).	بَتيوُك .
Bariyoohu, bariyoosu.	It (M) is his, It (M) is his (in Gash Barka dialect).	بَريوُه, بَريوُس .
Batiyoohu, batiyoosu.	It (M) is hers.	بَتيوُه, بَتيوُس .
Uun'uukaam Hasaniibu?	Is this camel (M) Hassan's?	أُووُكام هَسَنيب؟
Hineebu.	It (M) is ours.	هَنيب .
Bareyooknaayu, bariyooknaayu.	It (M) is yours (PL M).	بَريوُكناي, بَريوُكناي .
Bateyooknaayu, batiyooknaayu.	It (M) is yours (PL F).	بَتيوُكناي, بَتيوُكناي .
Barehooaayu, barihooaayu.	It (M) is theirs (M).	بَريهوُناي, بَريهوُناي .
Batehooaayu, batihooaayu.	It (M) is theirs (F).	بَتيهوُناي, بَتيهوُناي .

Possessive Pronouns: Plural Masculine Item Possessed

Aan'aakam aaya?	Whose are these camels (M)?	أناكم آيه؟
Aniiba.	They (M) are mine.	أنيبه .
Bariyeeka.	They (M) are yours (M).	بَرييَكة .
Batiyeeka.	They (M) are yours (F).	بَتييَكة .
Bariyeeha.	They (M) are his.	بَرييَهاه .
Batiyeeha.	They (M) are hers.	بَتييَهاه .
Aan'aakam Aliiba?	Are these camels (M) Ali's?	أناكم أليبه؟
Hineeba.	They (M) are ours.	هَنيبه .
Bareyeeknaaya.	They (M) are yours (PL M).	بَرييَكانايه .
Bateyeeknaaya.	They (M) are yours (PL F).	بَتييَكانايه .
Bareheenaaya.	They (M) are theirs (M).	بَرييَهَنايه .
Bateheenaaya.	They (M) are theirs (F).	بَتييَهَنايه .

Possessive Pronouns: Singular Feminine Item Possessed

Uuttuukaam aaytu, aayiitu?	Whose is this camel (F)?	أُووُكام آيت, آيت؟
Aniitu.	It (F) is mine.	أنيث .
Bariitooktu.	It (F) is yours (M).	بَريوُكت .
Batiitooktu.	It (F) is yours (F).	بَتيوُكت .
Bariihootu, bariitoostu.	It (F) is his.	بَريهوُت, بَريهوُست .
Batiihootu, batiitoostu.	It (F) is hers.	بَتيهوُت, بَتيهوُست .

Uuttuukaam, tuuttuukaam Zaynabiitu?	Is this camel (F) Zaynab's?	أَوْتُوكَامِ، تُوْتُوكَامِ زَيْنَبِيتُ؟
Hineetu? / hineetu.	Is it (F) ours? / It (F) is ours.	هِنَيْتُ? / هِنَيْتُ.
Bareetooknaatu.	It (F) is yours (PL M).	بَرَيْتُوكُنَاثُ.
Bateetooknaatu.	It (F) is yours (PL F).	بَتَيْتُوكُنَاثُ.
Bareehtoonaaatu.	It (F) is theirs (M).	بَرَيْهَتُونَاثُ.
Bateehtoonaaatu.	It (F) is theirs (F).	بَتَيْهَتُونَاثُ.

Possessive Pronouns: Plural Feminine Item Possessed

Aattaakam aayta, aayiita?	Whose are these camels (F)?	أَتَاكَمِ آيْتِه، آيْتِه؟
Aniita.	They (F) are mine.	أُنَيْتِه.
Bariiteekta.	They (F) are yours (M).	بَرَيْتَيْكْتِه.
Batiiteekta.	They (F) are yours (F).	بَتَيْتَيْكْتِه.
Bariihteeta, bariiteesta.	They (F) are his.	بَرَيْهَيْتَيْتِه، بَرَيْتَيْسْتِه.
Batiihteeta, batiiteesta.	They (F) are hers.	بَتَيْهَيْتَيْتِه، بَتَيْتَيْسْتِه.
Aattaakam Zaynabiitwa Aliitwaata?	Are the camels (F) Zaynab's and Ali's?	أَتَاكَمِ زَيْنَبِيْتِهَوِ الْإِيْتَاوَاتِه؟
Hineeta.	They (F) are ours.	هِنَيْتِه.
Bareeteeknaata.	They (F) are yours (PL M).	بَرَيْتَيْكُنَاتِه.
Bateeteeknaata.	They (F) are yours (PL F).	بَتَيْتَيْكُنَاتِه.
Bareehteenaaata.	They (F) are theirs (M).	بَرَيْهَيْتَيْنَاتِه.
Bateehteenaaata.	They (F) are theirs (F).	بَتَيْهَيْتَيْنَاتِه.

[Conversation 4: 'Are You Married?' \(Examples of Possessives\)](#)

<243>

#1-26 male responses, #27-35 female responses

#1	
Baruuk d'uuraawa?	baruuk d'uuraa-wa
Are you (M) married?	SG2M married-IDSG2M
#2	
Ani d'uuraabu.	ani d'uuraab-u
I am married.	SG1 married-IDSG13M
#3	
Ar tibariya?	ar ti-bari-ya
Do you have children?	children PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M
#4	
Awooh, ar abari.	awooh ar a-bari

Yes, I have children.	yes children PERFSG1PF-have
#5	
Naaka ar tibiya?	naaka ar ti-bari-ya
How many children do you (M) have?	how.many children PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M
#6	
Malu ar abari.	malu ar a-bari
I have two children.	two children PERFSG1PF-have
#7	
Ismaahina aab eeyadna?	i-sm-aa-hina aab eeyad-na
What are their names?	ARTPLM-name-PL-POSSPL3 whoOBJM IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFL3
#8	
Ismaahina Oomarwa Zaynabwa eeyadna.	i-sm-aa-hina oomar-wa zaynab-wa eeyad-na
Their names are Omar and Zaynab.	ARTPLM-name-PL-POSSPL3 Omar-and Zaynab-and IMPFL3PF-say-IMPFL3
#9	
Gwadook eefeen?	gwad-ook eefee-n
Are they with you?	with-POSSSG2 IMPFL3PF-be-IMPFL3
#10	
Gwadu kihayna.	gwad-u ki-hay-na
They are not with me.	with-POSSSG1 NEGIMPFL3PF-be-NEGIMPFL3
#11	
Naamhiin eefeen?	naamhiin eefee-n
Where are they?	which.place IMPFL3PF-be-IMPFL3
#12	
Iritriiya / Masireeb eefeen.	iritriiya masir-eeb ZERO-eefee-n
They are in Eritrea / Egypt.	Eritrea Egypt-ADV+at IMPFL3PF-be-IMPFL3
#13	
Naan daayeen?	naan daa-yeen
What are they doing?	what do-IMPFL3
#14	
Tuungaal agriitni, uuraaw shagaamiini.	tuu-ngaal agrii-tni uu-raaw shagaam-iini
The one learns (LIT reads), the other works.	ARTSGFSUBJ-one read-IMPFG3F ARTSGMSUBJ-other work-IMPFG3M
#15	

W'ooruuk d'uraabu?	w-'oor-uuk d'ur-aab-u
Is your boy married?	ARTSGM-boy-POSSSG2 marry-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#16	
Awooh, d'uraabu.	awooh d'ur-aab-u
Yes, he is married.	yes marry-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#17	
Ar ibari?	ar i-bari
Does he have children?	children PERFSG3MPF-have
#18	
Malu ar ibari.	malu ar i-bari
He has two children.	two children PERFSG3MPF-have
#19	
Gaal dibiloobu, uuraaw winu.	gaal dibiloob-u uu-raaw win-u
One is small, the other is big.	one small-IDSG13M ARTSGMSUBJ-other big-IDSG13M
#20	
Batuuk ad'uuraatuwi?	batuuk ad'uuraat-uwi
Are you (F) married?	SG2F married-IDSG2F
#21	
Ani ad'uuraatu.	ani ad'uuraat-u
I am married.	SG1 married-IDSG13F
#22	
Ar tibarii / tibariyi?	ar ti-bari-yi
Do you have children?	children PERFSG2FPF-have-PERFSG2F
#23	
Awooh, abari.	awooh a-bari
Yes, I have.	yes PERFSG1PF-have
#24	
Naaka ar tibarii?	naaka ti-bari-i
How many children do you (F) have?	how.many children PERFSG2FPF-have-PERFSG2F
#25	
Gaal oorwa gaat oorwa abari.	gaal oor-wa gaat oor-wa a-bari
I have one boy and one girl.	one boy-and oneF child-and PERFSG1PF-have
#26	
Ismaahina aab eeyadna?	i-sm-aa-hina aab eeyad-na
What are their names?	ARTPLM-name-PL-POSSPL3 whoOBJM IMPFPL3PF-say-

	IMPFPL3
#27	
Ismaahina Aliiwwa Haliimaawwa eeyadna.	i-sm-aa-hina alii-wwa haliimaab-wa eeyad-na
Their names are Ali and Halima.	ARTPLM-name-PL-POSSPL3 Ali-and Halima-and IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3
#28	
Gwadook eefeen?	gwad-ook eefee-n
Are they with you?	with-POSSSG2 IMPFPL3PF-be-IMPFPL3
#29	
Gwadu eefeen.	gwad-u eefee-n
They are with me.	with-POSSSG1 IMPFPL3PF-be-IMPFPL3
#30	
Naan daayeen?	naan daa-yeen
What do they do?	what do-IMPFPL3
#31	
Agriiyeen.	agrii-yeen
They learn (LIT read).	read-IMPFPL3
#32	
Baraah dibiloowaaba.	baraah dibiloowaab-a
They are small.	PL2M small-IDPL13M
#33	
Kashagaamiyaan.	ka-shagaam-iyaa
They don't work.	NEGIMPFPL3PF-work-NEGIMPFPL3
#34	
Batuukehan, naan shaga shagaamtinii?	batuuk-ehan naan shaga shagaam-tinii
And you (F), what work do you (F) do?	SG2F-also what work work-IMPFSG2F
#35	
Ani maktabiib shagaamani.	ani maktab-iib shagaam-ani
I work in an office.	SG1 office-ADV+at work-IMPFSG1

<244>

۱ بڑوڪ ڏوراوه؟ ۲ انے ڏوراڻ. ۳ آر ٿيريه؟ ۴ اووه، آرترے. ۵ ناڪه آر ٿيريه؟ ۶ مل آر اترے. ۷ اسماهنه آب ٿيدنه؟ ۸ اسماهنه وٽروه زينبوھ ٿيدنه. ۹ ڦوڏوڪ ٿين؟ ۱۰ ڦوڏ ڪهينه. ۱۱ نامھين ٿين؟ ۱۲ اڀر ٿيه / منبريٽ ٿين. ۱۳ نان داين؟ ۱۴ تونقال اڀرين، او راو شقامينے. ۱۵ ووڙوڪ دغراڻ؟ ۱۶ اووه، دغراڻ. ۱۷ آر اترے؟ ۱۸ مل آر اترے. ۱۹ قال ديلوڻ، او راو ون. ۲۰ بٽوڪ اڏوراڻوے؟ ۲۱ انے اڏوراڻ. ۲۲ آر ٿيريه؟ ۲۳ اووه، اترے. ۲۴ ناڪه آر ٿيريه؟ ۲۵ قال وروھ قات وروھ اترے. ۲۶ اسماهنه آب ٿيدنه؟ ۲۷ اسماهنه اليوه هليماوه ٿيدنه. ۲۸ ڦوڏوڪ ٿين؟ ۲۹ ڦوڏ ٿين. ۳۰ نان داين؟ ۳۱ اڀرين. ۳۲ براھ ديلوواھ. ۳۳ ڪشقاميان. ۳۴ بٽوڪھن. نان شقه شقاميني؟ ۳۵ انے مڪتپ شقامنے.

Quantity: Numerals and Plurals

<245>

Nouns are not only characterized by expressions of quality and ownership, but also by their quantity - such as 'one (big boy), two (big boys), half (a month)' etc. Apart from the plural formation, exact quantity is also expressed by numerals such as 'one', or 'two'.

<246>

Since numerals always refer to the entire noun phrase, their place is at the beginning or the end of the phrase.

Interrogatives 'How much / many?'

<247>

The interrogatives which ask for quantities vary with the gender, number and case of the quantified.

Table 23: Interrogative Numerals

Naaka ... ?	How many?	ناکه ... ?
Naakaab ... ?	How many (M)?	ناکاب ... ?
Naakaat ... ?	How many (F)?	ناکات ... ?
Naakaatu?	How much is it (F)? (i.e. what is the cost?)	ناکاٹو؟
Naakaaba?	How much are they (M)?	ناکابه؟
Naakaata?	How much are they (F)?	ناکاته؟
Naaka doora?	How many times?	ناکه دؤره؟
Naaka naayeeh?	How much of (the things)? / For how much?	ناکه ناییه؟

Interrogative Numerals 1

<248>

Here follow some common examples of sentences with the questions 'how much, how many?'

Tuus'a naakaatu?	How much (i.e. what) is the time?	توساھ ناکاٹو؟
Ibirtukaani kiilu naakaaba?	How much is (are) a kilo (of) oranges?	ایرتکانے کیلو ناکابه؟
Tumadrasaatiiyookna ti'arit naakaata?	How many are the girls of your (PL) school?	تومدرساتیویوکنا تیرت ناکاته؟

Interrogative Numerals 2

<249>

If the question includes the noun (e.g. how many men?), the question word has its position at the beginning of the NP.

Naaka nda eeyaan?	How many men came?	ناکه نده تیان؟
Naaka ingadna?	How many remained?	ناکه اینقلدین؟
Naaka doora jarrabiya?	How often, how many times did he try?	ناکه دؤره جرییه؟
Naaka naayeeh nidlib	For how much (LIT how-many things-of) did we	ناکه ناییه ندلیب

niyha?	buy (it)?	نِيَهه؟
Naakaab hooy harriiwa?	How much do you want for it?	ناكاب هووي هررئوه؟
Naaka sana tibariya?	How many brothers do (M) you have?	ناكه سنه تيريه؟
Naakaat massi tibariya?	How many years do you have (have you lived)?	ناكات مسسه تيريه؟

Numerals

<250>

The numerals are different for gender and case. When the numerals are used in the subject case, the gender / object suffix -b will not be expressed, and the final vowels of numerals like maloo- / asaramaa- 'two / seven' will be reduced phonologically: malu / asarama (aa > a, ee > i, oo > u). The smaller numbers behave like adjectives, and the larger ones like nouns.

Table 24: Numerals

Naakaaba? / naakaata?	How many are they? (M) / (F)	ناكابه؟ / ناكاته؟
Number 1:		
gaal / gaat	one (M) / (F)	قال / قات
uungaal	the only one (M), one of two (M)	أونقال
tuungaal, tuungaat	the only one (F), one of two (F)	تُونقال, تُونقات
gaalib / gaalit	some (M) / (F)	قالب / قالت

<251>

Numbers 1-10:		
gaal / gaat	one (M) / (F)	قال / قات
maloo / maloot	two (M) / (F)	ملوب / ملوت
mhay / mhayt	three (M) / (F)	مهّي / مهيت
fadhig / fadhigt	four (M) / (F)	فلّيق / فلّقت
ay / ayt	five (M) / (F)	أي / أيت
asagwir / asagwitt	six (M) / (F)	أسقور / أسقوت
asaramaab / asaramaat	seven (M) / (F)	أسرماب / أسرمات
asumhay / asumhayt	eight (M) / (F)	أشمهي / أشمهيت
ashshadhig / ashshadhigt	nine (M) / (F)	أششلق / أششلقوت
tamin / tamint	ten (M) / (F)	تامن / تمنت

<252>

Numbers 11-20:		
tamnagwir / tamnagwitt	eleven (M) / (F)	تمنقور / تمنقوت
tamnamaloo / tamnamaloot	twelve (M) / (F)	تمنملوب / تمنملوت
tamna mhay / tamna mhayt	thirteen (M) / (F)	تمنه مهّي / تمنه مهيت
tamna fadhig / tamna fadhigt	fourteen (M) / (F)	تمنه فلّيق / تمنه فلّقت
tamna ay / tamna ayt	fifteen (M) / (F)	تمنه أي / تمنه أيت

tamna asagwir / tamna asagwitt	sixteen (M) / (F)	تَمْنَه أُسْقُورِ / تَمْنَه أُسْقُوتِ
tamna asaramaab / tamna asaramaat	seventeen (M) / (F)	تَمْنَه أُسْرَمَاتِ / تَمْنَه أُسْرَمَاتِ
tamna asumhay / tamna asumhayt	eighteen (M) / (F)	تَمْنَه أُسْمَهَيْ / تَمْنَه أُسْمَهَيْتِ
tamna ashshadhig / tamna ashshadhigt	nineteen (M) / (F)	تَمْنَه أُشْشَادِيقِ / تَمْنَه أُشْشَادِيقِ
tagwuugw / tagwuugwt	twenty (M) / (F)	تَقُوقُورِ / تَقُوقُوتِ

<253>

Numbers 30-100, 200, 1.000, 1.000.000:		
mhay tamun / mhay tamunt	thirty (M) / (F)	مَهْي تَمُنْ / مَهْي تَمُنْتِ
fadhig tamun / fadhig tamunt	forty (M) / (F)	فَادِيقِ تَمُنْ / فَادِيقِ تَمُنْتِ
ay tamun / ay tamunt	fifty (M) / (F)	أَي تَمُنْ / أَي تَمُنْتِ
asagwir tamun / asagwir tamunt	sixty (M) / (F)	أَسْقُورِ تَمُنْ / أَسْقُورِ تَمُنْتِ
asarama tamun / asarama tamunt	seventy (M) / (F)	أُسْرَمَه تَمُنْ / أُسْرَمَه تَمُنْتِ
asumhay tamun / asumhay tamunt	eighty (M) / (F)	أُسْمَهَيْ تَمُنْ / أُسْمَهَيْ تَمُنْتِ
ashshadhig tamun / ashshadhig tamunt	ninety (M) / (F)	أَشْشَادِيقِ تَمُنْ / أَشْشَادِيقِ تَمُنْتِ
sheeb	hundred (M)	شَيْبِ
malu shi	two hundred (M)	مَلُ شَيْبِ
alif	thousand (M)	أَلْفِ
milyoon	million (M)	مَيْلْيُونِ

Conversation 5: 'Radio News' (Examples of Numerals)

<254>

Radio speaker

#1	
Tumnazzama, ootrig umhayaaywa ootrig w'ayaaywa,	tu-mnazzama oo-trig u-mhayaay-wa oo-trig w-ayaay
The organization, in the third month and the fifth month,	ARTSGF-office ARTSGMOBJ-month ARTSGM-third-and ARTSGMOBJ-month ARTSGM-fifth
#2	
oosh'ab y'iweeniit tushamaamtiib	oo-sh'ab i-sham-neet tu-shamaamt-iib
in line with the support with which they supported the people	ARTSGMOBJ-people PERFPL3PF-help-PERFPL3-WH ARTSGF-help-ADV+at
#3	
alifwa asagwirt tamun meetrik toon shirnaaywa	alif-wa asagwitt tamun meetrik toon shirnaay-wa
(they distributed) thousand and sixty metric tons sorghum and	thousand-and six ten metric tons sorghum-and
#4	
sheebwa mhay tamuun meetrik toon sikkwartwa	sheeb-wa mhay tamuun meetrik toon sikkwart-wa

hundred and thirty metric tons sugar	hundred-and three tens metric tons sugar-and
#5	
masi gadi asriifiyaaneet toona	masi gad-i asriif-iyaan-eet too-na
which they distributed to them	yet stand-SUB distribute-PERFPL3-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing
#6	
tumnazzamaati maktabii eeyaan ihabaar isookinnaahoon.	tu-mnazzamaat-i maktab-ii ee-yaan y-habaar i-sookin-na
they made known this news which was issued from the office of the organization.	ARTSGF-office-CASGEN office-ADV+off come-PERFPL3 ARTPLM-news PERFPL3PF-let.know-PERFPL3

<255>

<p>۱ تَمَنَزَم، ۲ تَرَقْ اُمُهَيَايُوهُ وَتَرَقْ وَايَاي، ۳ وَايَاي اِسْمَنِيْت تَشْمَامِيْتِيب ۳ اَلْفُوهُ اَسْقُوْتِ تَمَن مِيْتَرِك تَوْن شِرْنَايُوهُ ۴ شِيْبُوهُ مَهِي تَمُون مِيْتَرِك تَوْن بِيْكُو كُوْر تُوهُ هَمَسْر قَدَس اَسْرِيْفِيَانِيْت تَوْن ۶ تَمَنَزَمَاتِي تِيَان يَهْبَار اِسْوَكِيْنَه.</p>

Numerals and People

Numerals with plurals of 'man' / 'woman'

Naaka nda?	How many men (people)?	ناكه نده؟
gaal tak / (n)gaat takat ¹²	one man / woman	قال تك / (ن) قات تكت
malu (n)da / maloot m'a (m'at) ¹³	two men / women	مَلُ (ن) ده / مَلُوْت مَاهُ (مَات)
mhay (n)da / mhayt m'a	three men / women	مَهِي (ن) ده / مَهِيْت مَاهُ
fadhig (n)da / fadhigt m'a	four men / women	فَدِيْق (ن) ده / فَدِيْقْت مَاهُ
ay (n)da / ayt m'at	five men / women	أَي (ن) ده / أَيْت مَات
asagwir da / asagwitt m'a	six men / women	اَسَقُوْر ده / اَسَقُوْت مَاهُ
asarama da / asaramaat m'a	seven men / women	اَسْرَمَه ده / اَسْرَمَات مَاهُ
asumhay da / asumhayt m'a	eight men / women	اَسْمَهِي ده / اَسْمَهِيْت مَاهُ
ashshadhig da / ashshadhigt m'a	nine men / women	اَشْشَادِيْق ده / اَشْشَادِيْقْت مَاهُ
tamin da / tamint m'a	ten men / women	تَمِن ده / تَمِيْنْت مَاهُ
tamnagwir da / tamnagwitt m'a	eleven men / women	تَمَنَقُوْر ده / تَمَنَقُوْت مَاهُ
tamnamalu da / tamnamaloot m'a	twelve men / women	تَمَنَمَلُ ده / تَمَنَمَلُوْت مَاهُ

What Time?

Full Hours

Tuus'a naakaatu?	What is the time?	تُوْسَاهُ نَاكَاتُ؟

Tuus'a gaatu.	The time is 1:00.	توساه قات.
Tuus'a malootu.	The time is 2:00.	توساه ملوت.
Tuus'a mhaytu.	The time is 3:00.	توساه مهيت.
Tuus'a fadhigtu.	The time is 4:00.	توساه فادقت.
Tuus'a aytu.	The time is 5:00.	توساه ايت.
Tuus'a asagwittu.	The time is 6:00.	توساه اسقوت.
Tuus'a asaramaatu.	The time is 7:00.	توساه اسرما.
Tuus'a asimhaytu / asumhaytu.	The time is 8:00.	توساه اسمهيت / اسمهيت.
Tuus'a ashshadhigtu.	The time is 9:00.	توساه اششادقت.
Tuus'a tamintu.	The time is 10:00.	توساه تمنت.
Tuus'a tamnagwittu.	The time is 11:00.	توساه تمنقوت.
Tuus'a tamnamalootu.	The time is 12:00.	توساه تمنملوت.
Naadoor?	When (LIT What time)?	نادور؟
Toos'a tamnagwitt ma'aahoon!	Come (SG) to us at eleven!	توساه تمنقوت مآهون!
Toos'a gaat, baabaadhiina!	At one, don't (SG) forget!	توساه قات، بابااڤينه!
Toos'a mhayt th'ana!	Phone (PL) at three!	توساه مهيت ثانه!

Hours and Minutes

The following two are used frequently:		
Tuus'a gaatwa tarabwa.	The time is half past one.	توساه قاتوه ترابه.
Tuus'a malootwa tarabwa.	The time is half past two.	توساه ملوتوه ترابه.
The following are used less frequently:		
Tuus'a gaatwa aytwaata, aytwaatu.	The time is 1:05.	توساه قاتوه ايتواته، ايتوات.
Tuus'a gaatwa tamintwaata, tamintwaatu.	The time is 1:10.	توساه قاتوه تمنتواته، تمنتوات.
Tuus'a gaatwa rib'uwwaata.	The time is 1:15.	توساه قاتوه ربءواته.
Tuus'a gaatwa tagwgwitwaata.	The time is 1:20.	توساه قاتوه تقوقوتواته.
Tuus'a gaatwa tagwgwa aytwaata.	The time is 1:25.	توساه قاتوه تقوقوه ايتواته.
Tuus'a gaatwa tarabwaatu.	The time is 1:30.	توساه قاتوه ترابوات.
Tuus'a maloot tagwgwa ayt anootu.	The time is 25 to 2:00.	توساه ملوت تقوقوه ايت انوت.
Tuus'a maloot tagwuugwt anootu.	The time is 20 to 2:00.	توساه ملوت تقوقوت انوت.
Tuus'a maloot rib'u anootu.	The time is 15 to 2:00.	توساه ملوت ربء انوت.
Tuus'a maloot tamint anootu.	The time is 10 to 2:00.	توساه ملوت تمنت انوت.
Tuus'a maloot ayt anootu.	The time is 5 to 2:00.	توساه ملوت ايت انوت.

Fractions

<256>

For numerals which express fractions, Arabic loan words or adjectival derivations may be used.

timmiima / Timmiimaabu.	complete, full, whole / It is complete.	تَمِيمَة / تَمِيمَابُ .
tarab	half	نَرْب
tilit	third	تِلْت
rub'u, ribu'u / Rub'oohu.	quarter / It is a quarter.	رُبُّءُ، رِبُّءُ / رُبُّوءُ .
khumus / Khumus.	fifth / It is a fifth.	خُمُسُ / خُمُسُنُ .
sudus / Sudusu.	sixth / It is a sixth.	سُدُسُ / سُدُسُنُ .
tumun / Tumunu.	tenth / It is a tenth.	تُمُنُ / تُمُنُنُ .

Numerals: Ordinal

<257>

Ordinal numerals are adjectives. Some are also used as adverbs. The term malyaab 'second', for instance, also serves as an adverb meaning 'after that, secondly, again'.

awwal / w'awwal / uutak udabaayi / Baruu suuriya.	first / the first (M) / the first man / He was first.	أَوَّلُ / وُأَوَّلُ / أَوْتَكْ أَذْبَابِي / تَبْرُوهُ سُورِيَه .
maliya / umaliya / tumaliya	second / the second (M) / the second (F)	مَلِيَه / أَمَلِيَه / تُمَلِيَه
mhaya / umhaya / tumhaya	third / the third (M) / the third (F)	مَهِيَه / أَمَهِيَه / تُمَهِيَه
aakhar / w'aakhar / tu'aakhar / tu'aakhariinaa	last / the last (M) / the last (F)	آخِرُ / وَآخِرُ / تَأَخِرُ / تَأَخِرِيِنَاي
awwalhoob / w'awwaliya	firstly / the first (M)	أَوَّلَهَوْبُ / وَأَوَّلِيَه
malyaab / umaliya	then / the second (M)	مَلِيَابُ / أَمَلِيَه
mhaya / umhaya	third / the third (M)	مَهِيَه / أَمَهِيَه
fadhiga / ufadhiga	fourth / the fourth (M)	فَذِقَه / أَفَذِقَه
ayiya / w'ayiya	fifth / the fifth (M)	أَيِيَه / وَأَيِيَه
w'agiiya / w'aakhariib / tu'aakhariit	finally / last (M)	وَأَقِيَه / وَآخِرِيَبُ / تَأَخِرِيَت

Conversation 6: 'At the Fruit Market' (Examples of Numerals)

<258>

C: customer, T: trader

#1	
Ti-Nafir Naati Suugiib.	ti nafir naat-i suug-iib
On the Fruit Market	ARTPLFREL sweet thing-CASGEN market-ADV+at
#2	
C: Salaam alaykwum!	salaam alaykwum
C: Greetings!	greeting (AR)
#3	
T: Alaykwum assalaam!	alaykwum assalaam
T: Greetings!	greeting (AR)

#4	
C: Libaabi mhataana?	libaabi mha-taana
C: Did you spend the morning, night well?	happy spend.morning-PERFPL2
#5	
T: Daayiib mhana.	daayiib mha-na
T: We did spend the morning, night well.	good spend.morning-PERFPL1
#6	
T: Baraak(-na) kak mhataana?	baraak barakna kak mha-taana
T: How did you spend the morning, night ?	PL2M PL2M how spend.morning-PERFPL2
#7	
C: Gwirhaab kinbaru.	gwirhaab kin-baru
C: We don't have any problems.	problem NEGIMPFPL1PF-have
#8	
Amsi usuuguukna kak tan'i?	amsi u-suug-uukna kak ZERO-tan'i
How is your market today?	today ARTSGM-market-POSSPL2 how IMPFSG3MPF-be.similar
#9	
T: Shabahu. Naan harriwi?	shabah-u naan ZERO-harriw-i
T: It is OK. What do you (F) look for?	moderate-IDSG13M what IMPFSG2FPF-want-IMPFSG2F
#10	
C: Ani ti-aharriw-i birtukaanwa moozwaaya.	ani ti a-harriw i birtukaan-wa mooz-waa-ya
C: What I need is oranges and bananas.	SG1 ARTPLFREL IMPFSG1PF-want ARTPLMREL orange-and banana-CON+and-IDPL13M
#11	
T: Eenbareeh kaseeh nibari.	een-bareeh kass-eeh ni-bari
T: We have all of these.	NEARPLMOBJPF-PLMOBJ all-POSSG3 PERFPL1PF-have
#12	
C: Ibirtukaani kiilu naakaaba?	i-birtukaan-i kiilu naakaab-a
C: How much is a kilo oranges?	ARTPLM-orange-CASGEN kilo how.many-IDPL13M
#13	
Umoozhan naan katimu?	u-mooz-han naan katim-u
And how much are the bananas (LIT reach up to what)?	ARTSGM-banana-also what reach-IDSG13M

#14	
T: Ibirtukaani kiilu tamin Gineehiita / Nakfaata.	i-birtukaan-i kiilu tamin gineehiit-a nakfaat-a
T: Of oranges, one kilo is ten Guinees / Nakfas.	ARTPLM-orange-CASGEN kilo ten Guinee-IDPL13F Nakfa-IDPL13F
#15	
Umoozhan ayt Gineehi / Nakfa kantiim.	u-mooz-han ayt gineehi nakfa ZERO-kantiim
And the bananas are (LIT reach) five Guinees / Nakfas.	ARTSGM-banana-also five Guinee Nakfa IMPFSG3MPF-arrive
#16	
C: Yaa takay!	yaa tak-ay
C: Oh man!	hello man-VOCAT
#17	
Usuuguukna amsi winneet aliyaabu!	u-suug-uukna amsi winneet aliyaab-u
Your wares (LIT the market) are really expensive today!	ARTSGM-market-POSSPL2 today very expensive- IDSG13M
#18	
Naat hooy dhibata?	naat hooy dhib-ata
Will you not reduce this?	thing at reduce-SUBM
#19	
T: Anaa kwaatu!	anaa kwaat-u
T: You sister!	hey sister-POSSSG1
#20	
Naat hooy baadhibayu.	naat hooy baa-dhib-ay-u
There is nothing I can reduce.	thing at NEGSSG1PF-reduce-NEGSSUBM-IDSG13M
#21	
Laakiin, batiyook jillaayi,	laakiin batiyook jillaa-yi
But, for your (F) sake,	but POSSSG2F reason-CASGEN
#22	
ubirtukaani kiilu ashshadhigt kwaasat.	u-birtukaan-i kiilu ashshadhigt kwaas-at
let me say then the kilo oranges is nine (Guinees).	ARTSGM-orange-CASGEN kilo nine create-SUB
#23	
Umoozhan, fadhigtwa tarabt kwaasat.	u-mooz-han fadhigt-wa tarabt kwaas-at
And the bananas, let me say it is	ARTSGM-banana-also four-and half create-SUB

four and half	
#24	
C: Bak ikatiyeek, daayiib sakta!	bak i-kati-yeek daayiib sak-ta
C: If that is so, you did well!	so IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if good do-PERFSG3F
#25	
Aflaa, mhay kiilu birtukaaniiwwa	aflaa mhay kiilu birtukaan-ii-wwa
Well then, (give me) three kilo oranges	so.then three kilo orange-CASGEN-and
#26	
malu kiilu muuziiwwa hiyaheeb!	malu kiilu muuz-ii-wwa hi-ya-heeb
and give me two kilo bananas!	two kilo banana-CASGEN-and give-IMPVM-OBJSG1
#27	
T: Abiki!	abik-i
T: Take (F)!	take-IMPVF
#28	
C: Miriya!	miri-ya
C: Thanks (M) (LIT find it)!	find-IMPVM
#29	
T: Biishinhayi!	bii-shinha-yi
T: Don't worry (F) (LIT don't bother)!	NEGIMPVFPF-worry-NEGIMPVF
#30	
C: Kassa hiddaab naakaab ikatiin?	kassa hiddaab naakaab i-kati-in
C: How much is all this together?	all together how.many IMPFPL3PF-be-IMPFPL3
#31	
T: Hindeeh hagiin! Shibbatay!	hindeeh hagit-ii-n shibb-atay
T: Please wait (F)! Let me see!	please wait-IMPVF-CON+please look-PERMSG1
#32	
Ubirtukaan tagwgwa asaramaata.	u-birtukaan tagwgwa asaramaat-a
The oranges are twenty-seven.	ARTSGM-orange twenty seven-IDPL13F
#33	
Oomooz ashshadhigta.	oo-mooz ashshadhigt-a
The bananas are nine.	ARTSGMOBJ-banana nine-IDPL13F
#34	
Kasta hiddaab mhay tamun(t)wa asagwitt jineehiiwwaata.	kast-a hiddaab mhay tamunt-wa asagwitt jineehii-wwaat-a
All together (these) are thirty-six Guinees.	all-PL together three tens-and six guinee-and-IDPL13F

#35	
C: Aanbataah ay tamun jineehiita.	aan-bataah ay tamun jineehiit-a
C: Here are fifty Guinees.	NEARPLFSUBJPF-PL2F five ten guinee-IDPL13F
#36	
T: Aflaa, batook ti-eebiituuk tamna fadhigt jineehiita.	aflaa batook ti eebi-i-t-uuk tamna fadhigt jineehiit-a
T: Well then, you (F) what you get is fourteen Guinees.	so.then SG2FOBJ ARTPLFREL IMPFSG2FPF-go-IMPFSG2F-WH-POSSSG2 ten four guinee-IDPL13F
#37	
T: Ahamidehook!	a-hamid-ehook
T: I thank you!	PERFSG1PF-praise-OBJSG2
#38	
C: Hamuud biinaawi!	hamuud bii-naaw-i
C: Please (LIT may you (F) not lack praise)!	praise NEGIMPVFPF-lack-NEGIMPVF
#39	
T: L'aab aaymi!	l'-aab aaym-i
T: Spend (F) the day well (LIT cool)!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVF
#40	
C: L'aab aayma!	l'-aab aaym-a
C: Spend (M) the day well!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVM
T: Asigaab!	asigaab
T: Fine! (the idiomatic reply, LIT peaceful)	peaceful
C: Umdhhanookna!	u-mdhhan-ookna
C: May you live!	ARTSGM-living-POSSPL2

<259>

۱ تفر ناتے شوقیب. ۲ سلام الیکوم! ۳ الیکوم اسلام! ۴ لیاہے مہتانه؟ ۵ دایب مہنہ. ۶ تراك (تراكه) كك مہتانه؟ ۷ فورہاب كینر. ۸ امسے اُسوقوکنہ كك تبا؟ ۹ شبہ. نان ہریوے؟ ۱۰ اے تھرئیوے پرتکانوہ موزوایہ. ۱۱ نیرتہ کستیہ نیرے. ۱۲ ابرٹکانے کیل ناکابہ؟ ۱۳ اموزہن نان کیم؟ ۱۴ ابرٹکانے کیل تَمَن قینہیتہ / نکفانہ. ۱۵ اموزہن ایت قینہے / نکفہ کتیم. ۱۶ یا تکی! ۱۷ اُسوقوکنہ امسے ویت الیاب! ۱۸ نات ہوی ڈبہ؟ ۱۹ انا کواٹ! ۲۰ نات ہوی باڈی. ۲۱ لاکین. ۲۲ ابرٹکانے کیل اُسشدقت کواست. ۲۳ اموزہن. فڈقوہ تربت کواست. ۲۴ بک اکتینک. دایب سکنہ! ۲۵ افلا، مہی کیل پرتکانیوہ ۲۶ مل کیل موزیوہ ہیہیب! ۲۷ ایکے! ۲۸ مریہ! ۲۹ پیشنہے! ۳۰ کسہ ہڈاب ناکاب اکتین؟ ۳۱ ہندیہ ہفتین! شبتی! ۳۲ ابرٹکان تَقوفوہ اَسرمانہ. ۳۳ موزر اُسشدقتہ. ۳۴ کسہ ہڈاب مہی تَمنتوہ اَسفوت چنہیوانہ. ۳۵ آنتاہ ای تَمَن چنہیتہ. ۳۶ افلا، بتوک تینیتوک تَمَنہ فڈقت چنہیتہ. ۳۷ اہمدھوک! ۳۸ ہمود پیناوے! ۳۹ لآب آیمے! ۴۰ لآب آیمہ! (اسقاب) / آیمہ! امدھنوکہ!

Indefinite Numeral

<260>

Words like eeneenaaka 'any' and naat 'something' refer to indefinite quantities, and they are only used in questions and negations. They will be exemplified together with singular and plural forms of nouns.

Indefinite Numeral: 'Any' 1

Gwirhaab eeneenaaka tibariya?	Do you have any problems?	قورهاب ٲينناكه ٲيريه؟
Kaam / kam eeneenaaka tibariya?	Do you (M) have any camel (M) / camels (M)?	كام / كم ٲينناكه ٲيريه؟
Mhallagaab eeneenaaka tibariya?	Do you have any money?	مهلقاب ٲينناكه ٲيريه؟
Kwat / kwaat eeneenaaka tibariya?	Do you have any sisters / sister?	كوت / كوات ٲينناكه ٲيريه؟
Sanaab / san eeneenaaka tibariya?	Do you have any brothers / brother?	سنااب / سن ٲينناكه ٲيريه؟

Indefinite Numeral: 'Any' 2

Mhallagaab eeneenaaka kaabaru.	I don't have any money.	مهلقاب ٲينناكه كاٲر.
M'ariit eeneenaaka tamaab kaaki.	I didn't eat any food.	ماٲرٲ ٲينناكه تمااب كااڪر.
Buun eeneenaaka gw'aab kaaki.	I haven't had any coffee.	ٲون ٲينناكه قواب كااڪر.
Naat eeneenaaka kaabaru.	I don't have anything.	ناٲ ٲينناكه كاٲر.
Naat ad'a kaadi.	I won't, don't want to do anything.	ناٲ اءاه كااڪر.
Amsi shanha eeneenaaka daayaab, d'iyaab kaaki.	I haven't done any work yesterday.	امس شنهه ٲينناكه دايااب. دايااب كااڪر.

Plural Formation Object 1

Kaam / kam tibariya?	Do you (M) have a camel (SG) / (PL)?	كام / كم ٲيريه؟
Jabanaat / jabanaat tibariya?	Do you (M) have a coffee pot (SG) / (PL)?	جبنات / جبنات ٲيريه؟
Kwubbaayt / kwubbayt tibariya?	Do you (M) have a cup (SG) / (PL)?	كوٲايت / كوٲايت ٲيريه؟
Kwoobaat / kwoobaat tibariya?	Do you (M) have a bowl (SG) / (PL)?	كوٲوات / كوٲوات ٲيريه؟
Hadhiib / hadhiib tibariya?	Do you (M) have bread (SG) / (PL)?	هٲيب / هٲيب ٲيريه؟

Plural Formation of Kinship Terms 1

<261>

Some of the most frequently used kinship terms have unpredictable forms. Note especially tak / da 'man / men', and takat / m'a 'woman/women'.

Sanaab / san abari.	I have a brother / brothers.	سنااب / سن اٲرر.
Kwaat / kwat (kwaat) abari.	I have a sister / sisters.	كوات / كوات (كوات) اٲرر.
Duuraab / duuraab abari.	I have an uncle / uncles.	ءوراب / ءوراب اٲرر.
Diraat / diraat abari.	I have an aunt / aunts.	ءرات / ءرات اٲرر.
Oor / ar abari.	I have a son / sons.	ور / ار اٲرر.
Oot / arit abari.	I have a daughter / daughters.	وت / ارت اٲرر.

Ahooba (hooba) / hoobaab abari.	I have a grandfather / grandfathers.	أهوية (هوية) / هوياب أترے.
Ahoot (hoot) / hoot abari.	I have a grandmother / grandmothers.	أهوت (هوت) / هوت أترے.

Plural Formation of Kinship Terms 2

Naaka sana tibariya?	How many brothers do (M) you have?	ناکه سنه تباريه؟
Gaal san / malu sana abari.	I have one / two brother(s).	قال سن / مل سنه أترے.
Gaat kwa / maloot kwa abari.	I have one / two sister(s).	قات كوه / ملوت كوه أترے.
Gaal duura / malu duura abari.	I have one / two uncle(s).	قال دوره / مل دوره أترے.
Gaat duura / maloot dira abari.	I have one / two aunt(s).	قات دوره / ملوت دره أترے.
Gaal oor / malu ar abari.	I have one / two son(s).	قال ور / مل ار أترے.
Gaat oor / maloot arit abari.	I have one / two daughter(s).	قات ور / ملوت اريت أترے.
Gaal hoob / malu hooba abari.	I have one / two grandfather(s).	قال هوب / مل هوبه أترے.
Gaat ahu / maloot hu abari.	I have one / two grandmother(s).	قات أه / ملوت هه أترے.

Conversation 7: 'At the Grain Shop' (Examples of Numerals and Plurals)

<262>

C: customer, T: trader

#1	
Uharrooyi Suugiib.	u-harroo-yi suug-iib
At the Grain Shop	ARTSGM-grain-CASGEN market-ADV+at
#2	
C: Salaam alaykwum!	salaam alaykwum
C: Greetings!	greeting (AR)
#3	
T: Alaykwum assalaam!	alaykwum assalaam
T: Greetings!	greeting (AR)
#4	
C: Libaabi mhataana?	libaabi mha-taana
C: Did you (PL) spend the day well?	happy spend.morning-PERFPL2
#5	
T: Daayiib mhana.	daayiib mha-na
T: We spent the day well.	good spend.morning-PERFPL1
#6	
Baraak kak mhataana?	baraak kak mha-taana

How did you (PL) spend the day?	PL2M how spend.morning-PERFPL2
#7	
C: Gwirhaab kinbaru.	gwirhaab kin-baru
C: We do not have any problem.	problem NEGIMPFPL1PF-have
#8	
Biltuub tibariya?	biltuub ti-bari-ya
Do you (M) have (any) sorghum?	sorghum PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M
#9	
T: Awooh, abari.	awooh a-bari
T: Yes, I have.	yes PERFSG1PF-have
#10	
C: Hindeeh rhisaanheeb!	hindeeh rhis-aa-n-heeb
C: Please show me (some)!	please show-IMPVM-please-OBJSG1
#11	
T: Ahi, ahayi! Shibibi!	ah-i shibib-i
T: Take (F) (some)! Look (F) (at it)!	take-IMPVF look-IMPVF
#12	
C: Gaayiiuhan sh'iyaabu?	gaayiiib-u-han sh'i-yaab-u
C: Is it fresh or old?	new-IDSG13M-also be.old-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#13	
T: Awooh, gaayiiibu.	awooh gaayiiib-u
T: Yes it is fresh.	yes new-IDSG13M
#14	
Kak sh'iya biltu giigisnay?	kak sh'iya biltu giigis-nay
How could we sell old millet?	how old millet let.go-IMPFPL1
#15	
Laakiin batuuk, gaayiiib hana sh'iyaab ikatiyeet toona,	laakiin batuuk gaayiiib hana sh'i-yaab i-kati-yeet too-na
But you (F), whether it is fresh or old,	but SG2F new or be.old-PTCPPAST IMPFSG3MPF-be-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing
#16	
kak teekani?	kak t-eekan-i
how do you know (that)?	how IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#17	
C: D'amsiit ashanbiib.	d'ams-ii-t a-shanbiib
C: I taste and I look.	taste-PERMSG3M-and IMPFSG1PF-look

#18	
Nanfiireek (nafir ikatiyeek),	nanfiir-eek nafir i-kati-yeek
If it is tasty,	be.sweet-IMPFSG2M-ADV+if sweet IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if
#19	
Gaayiib ikatiyeet toona eekani.	gaayiib i-kati-yeet too-na ZERO-eekani
I know that it is fresh.	new IMPFSG3MPF-be-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing IMPFSG1PF-know
#20	
Hammiyeek (hamiib ikatiyeek),	ZERO-hammi-yeek hamiib i-kati-yeek
If it is bitter,	IMPFSG3MPF-bitter-ADV+if bitter IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if
#21	
sh'yaab ikatiyeet toona eekani.	sh'i-yaab i-kati-yeet too-na ZERO-eekani
I know that it is old.	old-PTCPPAST IMPFSG3MPF-be-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing IMPFSG1PF-know
#22	
T: Yaa takatay!	yaa takat-ay
T: Oh you woman!	hello woman-VOCAT
#23	
Batuuk dir'aatkinaatuwi?	batuuk dir'aatkinaat-uwi
Are you (F) from a farm (LIT a farmer woman)?	SG2F farmer-IDSG2F
#24	
C: Awooh, dir'aatkinaatu.	awooh dir'aatkinaat-u
C: Yes I am from a farm (LIT a farmer woman).	yes farmer-IDSG13F
#25	
Aneeb ushat heeb,	aneeb ush-at heeb
If you leave me out,	OBJSG1 leave-SUB OBJSG1
#26	
Ahootiitu tu'ahu dir'aatkinaatu.	ahoot-iit-u tu-'ahu dir'aatkinaat-u
My grandmother's grandmother was from a farm (LIT a farmer woman).	grandmother-CASGEN-POSSSG1 ARTSGF-grandmother farmer-IDSG13F
#27	
"Whindi ugadamihooda dhibiini" eeyadna.	w-hindi u-gadam-ii-hoo-da dhib-iini eeyad-na
"The tree falls on its roots" they say.	ARTSGM-tree ARTSGM-root-CASGEN-POSSSG3-ADVGEN+for fall-IMPFSG3M IMPFPL3PF-say-

	IMPFPL3
#28	
T: Sidkiituwi.	sidkiit-uwi
T: You are right.	true-IDSG2F
#29	
C: Turoob'iyaay toongaal naakaaba?	tu-roob'iyaay too-ngaal naakaab-a
C: How much are they, one quarter (of them)?	ARTSGF-quarter ARTSGFOBJ-one how.many-IDPL13M
#30	
T: Tagwgwa ayt Gineehiita / Nakfaata.	tagwgwa ayt gineehiit-a nakfaat-a
T: They cost (LIT are) twenty-five Guinees / Nakfa.	twenty five Guinee-IDPL13F Nakfa-IDPL13F
#31	
C: Naan tidiya?!	naan ti-di-ya
C: What do you (M) say?!	what PERFSG2MPF-say-PERFSG2M
#32	
T: "Tagwgwa ayt Gineeheeta / Nakfaata" adi.	tagwgwa ayt gineeheet-a nakfaat-a a-di
T: I said "They are twenty-five Guinees / Nakfa".	twenty five Guinee-IDPL13F Nakfa-IDPL13F PERFSG1PF-say
#33	
C: Bak tidiyeek, s'aliyaab kittaa?	bak ti-di-y-eek s'ali-yaab kit-ta-a
C: If you say so, haven't you (M) made (it) more expensive?	so PERFSG2MPF-say-PERFSG2M-ADV+if make.expensive-PTCPPAST NEGIMPFSG2MPF-be- NEGIMPFSG2M
#34	
T: S'aliyaab akatiyeet toona kahiisan.	s'ali-yaab a-kati-yeet too-na ka-hiis-an
T: I do not think that I am making it more expensive.	make.expensive-PTCPPAST IMPFSG1PF-be-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing NEGIMPFSG1PF-think- NEGIMPFSG1
#35	
C: Aflaa, maloot roob'iyaay hiyaheeb!	aflaa maloot roob'iyaay hi-ya-heeb
C: Well then, give me two quarters (containers)!	so.then two quarter give-IMPVM-OBJSG1
#36	
T: Tumhalaatook / ubiileeyook haaksi!	tu-mhalaat-ook u-biilee-yook haaks-ii
T: Open your bag / basket!	ARTSGF-bag-POSSSG2 ARTSGM-container- POSSSG2 open-IMPVF
#37	

C: Ubiltooyiiyookna daayiib sinhasaabaana?	u-biltoo-yii-yookna daayiib sinhas-aab-aana
C: Is your sorghum well cleaned?	ARTSGM-sorghum-CASGEN-POSSPL2 good clean-PTCPAST-IDPL2M
#38	
Awi eeneenaaka hooy kihayna?	awi eeneenaaka hooy ki-hay-na
Are there no stones in it?	stone any at NEGIMPFPL3PF-be-NEGIMPFPL3
#39	
T: Sinhasaab nikatiyeet toona hiisnay.	sinhas-aab ni-kati-yeet too-na hiis-nay
T: I think we cleaned them well.	clean-PTCPAST IMPFPL1PF-be-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing think-IMPFPL1
#40	
Laakiin batuuk ugawiiyook hana tutahoonatiib	laakiin batuuk u-gaw-ii-yook hana tu-tahoonatiib
But you, in your house or in the mill,	but SG2F ARTSGM-house-CASGEN-POSSG2 or ARTSGF-mill-ADV+at
#41	
daayiib sinhasi!	daayiib sinhas-i
clean them well!	good clean-IMPVF
#42	
Rayhamtinii kaatuwi.	rayham-tinii kaat-uwi
To be satisfied yourself (F).	satisfy-IMPFSG2F more.than-IDSG2F
#43	
C: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
C: OK.	good-IDSG13F
#44	
Whissaabuuk naakaaba?	w-hissaab-uuk naakaab-a
How much is (LIT are) the bill?	ARTSGM-calculation-POSSG2 how.many-IDPL13M
#45	
T: Ay tamunt Nakfaata / Gineehiita.	ay tamunt nakfaat-a gineehiit-a
T: (They are) fifty Nakfa / Guinees.	five ten Nakfa-IDPL13F Guinee-IDPL13F
#46	
C: Abika!	abik-a
C: Take (M)!	take-IMPVM
#47	
T: Miriyi!	miri-yi
T: Thank you (F)!	find-IMPVF

#48	
C: Baashinhaya!	baa-shinha-ya
C: Don't (M) mention (it)!	NEGIMPVMPF-worry-NEGIMPVM
#49	
T: L'aab, libaabi aaymi!	I'-aab libaabi aaym-i
T: Spend (F) the day well!	be.cool-PTCPPAST happy spend.day-IMPVF
#50	
C: L'aab, libaabi aayma! (Umdhhanookna).	I'-aab libaabi aaym-a u-mdhhan-ookna
C: Spend (M) the day well! (This was my talk / I have completed my speech).	be.cool-PTCPPAST happy spend.day-IMPVM ARTSGM-living-POSSPL2

<263>

<p>۱ اهرؤي شوقيب. ۲ سلام اليكؤم! ۳ اليكؤم اسلام! ۴ لياي مھتانه؟ ۵ دايب مھنه. ۶ براك كك مھتانه؟ ۷ قورھاب كئير. ۸ بلتوب تيريه؟ ۹ اوؤه، اترے. ۱۰ هنديه رھسانھيب! ۱۱ اھے! شيبے! ۱۲ قايبھن شاپاب؟ ۱۳ اوؤه، قايب. ۱۴ كك شايه بلٹ فيقسني؟ ۱۵ لايين بتوك، قايب هنه شاپاب اكييت تون، ۱۶ كك تيكنے؟ ۱۷ دامسيت اشنيپ. ۱۸ نفييرك (نفر اكييتك)، ۱۹ قايب اكييت تونه يكنے. ۲۰ هميينك (هميب اكييتك)، ۲۱ شاپاب اكييت تونه يكنے. ۲۲ يا نكئي! ۲۳ بتوك درآكناؤے؟ ۲۴ اوؤه، درآكناؤ. ۲۵ اتيب ائت هيب، ۲۶ اھوتيت ئاؤ درآكناؤ. ۲۷ 'وھندے اقدميهؤده ڈيبے' تيدنه. ۲۸ سيدكيتوے. ۲۹ تروپايي تونقال ناكابه؟ ۳۰ تقوقوه ايت قينھپته / نكفاته. ۳۱ نان تديه؟ ۳۲ 'تقوقوه ايت قينھپته / نكفاته' اءے. ۳۳ بك تدييك، سالياب كئا؟ ۳۴ سالياب اكييت تونه كھيسن. ۳۵ افلا، ملوت روپايي هيھيب! ۳۶ تمھلاتوك / ايلينيوك هاكسے! ۳۷ ايلتوييوكه دايب سنھسابانہ؟ ۳۸ اوے نينناكه هوي كھينه؟ ۳۹ سنھساب نكييت تونه هيسني. ۴۰ لايين بتوك اقولينيوك هنه تھوناتيپ ۴۱ دايب سنھسے! ۴۲ زيھميتي كاتوے. ۴۳ دايب. ۴۴ وھساؤوك ناكابه؟ ۴۵ اي تمنت نكفاته / قينھپته. ۴۶ ايكه! ۴۷ مريے! ۴۸ باشنھيه! ۴۹ لآب / لياي آيمے! ۵۰ لآب / لياي آيمه! (امدھنوكه).</p>

Circumstances: Postpositional Phrases (PPs)

<264>

To talk about the ways and circumstances in which something happens such as the place, time, or manner Beja uses adverbials. To ask about the ways and circumstances of an event, Beja uses the following adverbial question words or adverbial interrogatives.

[Table 25: Adverbial Interrogatives](#)

Local:		
Naamhiin?	Where (LIT which place)?	نامھين؟
Naamhiinaanii?	Where from?	نامھينائي؟
Naat?	To what (place)?	نات؟
Naat mari?	Toward what (place)?	نات مرے؟
Naa haddiit?	Up to what (Up to where)?	نا هديت؟
Temporal:		
Naahoob?	When, which moment?	ناھوب؟
Naadoor?	When, which time?	نادور؟
Naamha?	When, which day?	نامھه؟
Other:		
Kak?	How?	كك؟
Naanhooy?	Why?	ناھوي؟

Naanaatii?	Why (LIT what from)?	ناناٽي؟
Naa naatii?	With what?	نا ناٽي؟
Naa haddiit?	To what extent (LIT up to where)?	نا هَدَّيْت؟

Adverbial Expressions

<265>

Beja expresses information about adverbials or circumstances in different ways: with adverbial suffixes, postpositional phrases, genitive phrases or adverbs.

Postpositional Phrases

<266>

The next section is about postpositional phrases. Since Beja is a language where the head of a construction always comes last (a so-called head final language) it does not use prepositions but postpositions. So rather than saying 'with father', 'until Monday' etc., in Beja one would say 'father with', 'Monday until' and such.

<267>

The relation between the noun (e.g. father) and the postposition (e.g. with) is often a genitive relation. So 'father-with' could be translated as 'father's nearness', or 'monday-until' as 'monday's limit'.

<268>

In the examples below, the adverbs are important - the verbal structures may be ignored for the time being.

Table 26: Adverbial Postpositions

har'i	behind	هَرَا
haddiib, haddiit	up to	هَدَّيْب, هَدَّيْت
gwad	with	قُوْد
jillaayi, jilla, gillaayi, gilla	because of	جَلَّايِي, جَلَّه, قَلَّايِي, قَلَّه
dabaay	in front of, before	دَبَاي
mari	towards	مَرِي
whii	under	وَهِي
kehii	on	كَهِي
geeb	beside	قَيْب
baakaay / baakaayt	except (M) / (F)	بَاكَاي / بَاكَايْت

Adverbial Postpositions: Local

<269>

Note that the postpositions can also be analyzed as nouns which take possessive suffixes. So in addition to saying bariiyook dabaay 'after you (lit. 'of you back)', one could also say dabaayook 'after you, behind you, your back'.

Ufasli har'i eefi.	He is behind the classroom.	أُفَسْلِي هَرَا يَفِي.
Ufasli dabaay eefi.	He is in front of the classroom.	أُفَسْلِي دَبَاي يَفِي.
Aneeb mari gwishasha!	Move towards me!	أَنْيَب مَرِي قُوْشَشَه!

Aneeb mari gwishisha!	Push it toward me!	أَنِيب مَرِّمَ قُوْشِشَه!
Aneeb mari rififa!	Move towards me!	أَنِيب مَرِّمَ رِفِفَه!

Adverbial Postpositions: Temporal

Tuuyiin dhibtini (hoob) whaddiit hagita!	Wait (M) until the sun sets!	تَوَيْين دُيْبَتِنِي (هَوْب) وَهَدِيْت هَقْتَه!
S'aati tarabi dabaay oon'oomhiin iifi.	Half an hour ago, he was here.	سَاتَرِي تَرَابِي دَبَاي وَنَوْمُهِيْن اِيْفِي.
Tumhasayti har'i buun gw'aana!	After lunch, drink (PL) coffee!	تُمْهَسَيْتِي هَرَا بُون قُوْآنَه!
Udiraari har'i buun gw'aana!	After dinner, drink (PL) coffee!	اُدِرَارِي هَرَا بُون قُوْآنَه!
Uftuuri har'i buun gw'aana!	After breakfast, drink (PL) coffee!	اُفْتُوْرِي هَرَا بُون قُوْآنَه!
Udarsi har'i buun gw'aana!	After the lesson, drink (PL) coffee!	اُدْرَسِي هَرَا بُون قُوْآنَه!
Tumhasayti dabaay, buun gw'aana!	Before lunch, drink (PL) coffee!	تُمْهَسَيْتِي دَبَاي. بُون قُوْآنَه!
Udiraari dabaay, buun gw'aana!	Before dinner, drink (PL) coffee!	اُدِرَارِي دَبَاي. بُون قُوْآنَه!
Uftuuri dabaay, buun gw'aana!	Before breakfast, drink (PL) coffee!	اُفْتُوْرِي دَبَاي. بُون قُوْآنَه!
Udarsi dabaay, buun gw'aana!	Before lesson, drink (PL) coffee!	اُدْرَسِي دَبَاي. بُون قُوْآنَه!

Adverbial Postpositions Comitative

Baruuk naanaati gwad hadhiib tamtaa?	With what did you (M) eat bread?	بَرُوْكَ نَانَاتِي قُوْد هَدِيْب تَمْتَا؟
Ani hadhiib aati gwad taman.	I ate bread with milk.	اَنِي هَدِيْب اَاتِي قُوْد تَمَن.
Ani hadhiib fuuli gwad taman.	I ate bread with beans.	اَنِي هَدِيْب فُوْلِي قُوْد تَمَن.
Ani hadhiib waykaati gwad taman.	I ate bread with occra.	اَنِي هَدِيْب وَيْكَاتِي قُوْد تَمَن.
Baraakna naanaati gwad hadhiib tamtaana?	With what did you (PL) eat bread?	بَرَاكْنَه نَانَاتِي قُوْد هَدِيْب تَمْتَانَه؟
Hinin hadhiib aati gwad tamna.	We ate bread with milk.	هِيْن هَدِيْب اَاتِي قُوْد تَمَنَه.
Hinin hadhiib fuuli gwad tamna.	We ate bread with beans.	هِيْن هَدِيْب فُوْلِي قُوْد تَمَنَه.
Hinin hadhiib waykaati gwad tamna.	We ate bread with occra.	هِيْن هَدِيْب وَيْكَاتِي قُوْد تَمَنَه.

Adverbial Postpositions: Causal

W'afrayook jillaayi itehisir tindiya?	Will you (M) be sorry because of, about your badness?	وَأَفْرَايُوْكَ جِلَايِي اِيْتِهِيْسِر تِنْدِيَه؟
Batiyook jillaayi, ubirtukaani kiilu ashshadhiht kwaasat.	For your (M / F) sake, let me say (LIT make) the kilo of oranges is 9 (pound).	بَاتِيْيُوْكَ جِلَايِي، اُبِرْتُوْكَانِي كِيْلُ اَشْشَادْهِيْت كُوْاسْت.

Conversation 8: 'Drinking Coffee' (Examples of Adverbs)

<270>

U: uncle, M: mother, D: daughter

#1	
U: Amsi ugirmu lhiiniheeb.	amsi u-girm-u lh-iini-heeb
U: Today I have a headache (LIT my head hurts me).	today ARTSGM-head-POSSSG1 be.ache-IMPFSG3M-OBJSG1
#2	
M: Haalooku?	haal-ook-u
M: What is the matter with you (SG)?	condition-POSSSG2-IDSG13M
#3	
U: Ani naat hooy kaakan (usabbooh kaakan).	ani naat hooy kaa-kan u-sabb-oooh kaa-kan
U: I don't know anything about it (the reason).	SG1 thing at NEGIMPFSG1PF-know ARTSGM-reason-POSSSG3 NEGIMPFSG1PF-know
#4	
Laakiin tu-sh'aniyeetiib wanaaneeka buun nigraabu.	laakiin tu sh'-ani-yeet-iib wanaanee-ka buun nigraab-u
But from what I remember I miss coffee ever since this morning.	but ARTSGFREL remember-IMPFSG1-WH-ADV+at before.morning-ADV+since coffee thirsty.not.for.water-POSSSG1
#5	
M: Buun ikatiyeek, shalik naatu.	buun i-kati-yeek shalik naat-u
M: If it is coffee, that is a small problem (LIT thing).	coffee IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if little thing-IDSG13F
#6	
Nafisa (tu'oor) yhayi!	nafisa tu-'oor yha-yi
Nafisa, hey you (F)!	Nafisa ARTSGF-girl take-IMPVF
#7	
Ukaanuun sidawiliheeb!	u-kaanuun sidawil-i-heeb
Bring the brazier to me!	ARTSGM-brazier bring-IMPVF-OBJSG1
#8	
Ubuuniit iddaahan dehooyu shawawi!	u-buun-iit iddaa-han dehoo-yu shawaw-i
Also gather the coffee pots (LIT coffee things) for me!	ARTSGM-coffee-CASGEN things-also to.-POSSSG1 assemble-IMPVF
#9	
D: Daayiitu. Taan ikatiinay, abiki!	daayiit-u taan i-kati-in-ay abik-i
D: OK. Here they are, so take (them)!	good-IDSG13F NEARPLFSUBJ IMPFPL3PF-be-IMPFPL3-CON+because take-IMPVF
#10	
M: Tukaloonay keeta?	tu-kaloonay kee-ta
M: Where is the roasting pan?	ARTSGF-pan be.where-PERFSG3F

#11	
D: Ani rhaat kaaki. Naat teefi?	ani rh-aat kaa-ki naat t-ee fi
D: I have not seen it. Where is it?	SG1 see-PTCPPAST NEGIMPFSG1PF-be what.place IMPFSG3FPF-be
#12	
M: Hindeeh, imoori whii harwiin!	hindeeh i-moor-i wh-ii hariw-ii-n
M: Please, look under the bed (string bed).	please ARTPLM-bed.of.palm.leaves-CASGEN under-ADV+off want-IMPVF-CON+please
#13	
Usanuuk wana haay hawaayiyaay.	u-san-uuk wana haay hawaa-yiya-ay
Because this morning your brother has been playing with it.	ARTSGM-brother-POSSSG2 before.morning with.it play-PERFSG3M-CON+because
#14	
D: Aaywaa, amiru.	aaywaa a-miru
D: Yes, I found it.	yes PERFSG1PF-find
#15	
M: Aflaa, anaa tu'ootu, tumisrafa (tuhabbaabi) hiyiheeb!	aflaa anaa tu-'oot-u tu-misrafa tu-habbaabi hi-yi- heeb
M: So then my daughter, give me the fan.	so.then hey ARTSGF-girl-POSSSG1 ARTSGF-fan ARTSGF-fan give-IMPVF-OBJSG1
#16	
D: Daayiitu, anaa deetu.	daayiit-u anaa deet-u
D: Yes, mother (LIT fine, my mother).	good-IDSG13F hey mother-POSSSG1
#17	
M: Udawilu s'iit, oobuun dehooyu kalooyii!	u-dawil-u s'-iit oo-buun dehooy-u kaloo-yii
M: Sit near me, and roast the coffee for me!	ARTSGM-closeness-POSSSG1 sit-PTCPADV ARTSGMOBJ-coffee to.-POSSSG1 roast-IMPVF
#18	
Kalooyi b'atniyeek, kwiti!	kaloo-yi b'at-ni-yeek kwit-i
When you have done the roasting, pound it!	roast-CASGEN lean-PASTPL1-ADV+if push-IMPVF
#19	
M & D: Asigaab.	asigaab
M & D: Peaceful.	peaceful
#20	
D: Aflaa, weena naan daayani?	aflaa weena naan daa-yani
D: Well then, what else shall I do?	so.then other.thing what do-IMPFSG1

#21	
M: Yaa tu'ootuuyi! Buun gw'astiyuun, imraadeek marri!	yaa tu-'oot-uu-yi buun gw'as-ti-yuun i-mraad-eek ZERO-marri
M: You my daughter! If you make (for) us coffee, you find what you desire!	hello ARTSGF-girl-POSSSG1-VOCAT coffee let.drink-PERMSG3F-OBJPL1 ARTPLM-wish-POSSSG2 IMPFSG3FPF-find
#22	
Duuruuk wanaaneeka buun gw'aab kiiki.	duur-uuk wanaan-ee-ka buun gw'-aab kii-ki
Your uncle has not had (drunk) coffee since (the) morning.	uncle-POSSSG2 before.morning-ADV+since coffee drink-PTCPPAST NEGIMPFG3MPF-be
#23	
Bak t'iiteeb, ugirmuuh lhiini.	bak t'i-it-eeb u-girm-uuh lh-iini
Therefore (LIT this being so), his head aches (him).	so be.similar-PASTSG3F-ADV+at ARTSGM-head-POSSSG3 ache-IMPFG3M
#24	
D: Awooh, buun gw'asanihookna.	awooh buun gw'as-ani-hookna
D: Yes, I will let you have (LIT drink) some coffee.	yes coffee let.drink-IMPFG1-OBJPL2
#25	
Bareekna buun baagw'asayuukna, aab gw'asani?	bareekna buun baa-gw'as-ay-uukna aab gw'as-ani
If I don't serve you (PL), then whom do I serve?	PL2MOBJ coffee NEGSSUBSG1PF-let.drink-NEGSSUBM-OBJPL2 whoOBJM let.drink-IMPFG1
#26	
M: Daayiib tidi.	daayiib ti-di
M: You (F) said that well.	good PERMSG3FPF-say
#27	
Hininhan bak s'ayaamniyay.	hinin-han bak s'ayaam-ni-yay
We also were expecting that (LIT thus).	we-also so expect-PASTPL1-CON+because
#28	
D: Naakaab gw'ani teeyadna?	naakaab gw'a-ni t-ee-yad-na
D: How many (cups) do you drink?	how.many drink-FUTPL IMPFPL2PF-say-IMPFL2
#29	
M: Mhay fijjaan mheenhoo.	mhay fijjaan mh-ee-n-hoon
M: Three cups are enough for us.	three cup suffice-IMPFL3-OBJPL1
#30	
D: Abika, duuruuyi!	abik-a duur-uu-yi
D: Take, my uncle!	take-IMPVM uncle-POSSSG1-VOCAT

#31	
A: Nafir na ahayi!	nafir na aha-yi
A: Take something good (LIT a sweet thing)!	sweet thing take-IMPVF
#32	
D: Hami na bahaaya!	hami na ba-haa-ya
D: Don't take something bitter!	bitter thing NEGIMPVMPF-take-NEGIMPVM
#33	
Tusikkwartuuh kak tan'i?	tu-sikkwart-uuh kak ZERO-tan'i
What about the sugar (LIT how is its sugar)?	ARTSGF-sugar-POSSG3 how IMPFSG3MPF-be.similar
#34	
U: Winneet daayiitu.	winneet daayiit-u
U: Really fine.	very good-IDSG13F
#35	
D: Dehook afandhihan, hana kaafdhi?	dehook a-fandhi-han kaa-fdhi
D: Shall I stir it (LIT do I stir it) for you, or not?	to.SG2M IMPFSG1PF-mix-also NEGIMPFSG1PF-mix
#36	
U: Biifadhi!	bii-fadhi-i
U: Don't (F) stir!	NEGIMPVFPF-mix-NEGIMPVF
#37	
Uuwilif tisikkwarteeb kihay.	uu-lif ti-sikkwart-eeb ki-hay
The addiction is not to the sugar.	ARTSGMSUBJ-thousand ARTPLF-sugar-ADV+at NEGIMPFSG3MPF-be
#38	
Uwaalfi oobuun sikkwart anuuhan gw'iini.	u-waalfi oo-buun sikkwart anuu-han gw'-iini
The addict drinks the coffee even without sugar.	ARTSGM-addicted ARTSGMOBJ-coffee sugar without-also drink-IMPFSG3M
#39	
D: Sidkiiwa.	sidkii-wa
D: You (M) are right.	true-IDSG2M
#40	
A: Ahamidehookna.	a-hamid-ehookna
A: I thank you (PL).	PERFSG1PF-praise-OBJPL2
#41	
Aliya hamuud tageegaab.	aliya hamuud tageegaab

I really thank you (LIT I give you elevated praise).	expensive praise high
#42	
M: Hamuud baanaawa.	hamuud baa-naaw-a
M: May you (F) not lack thanks.	praise NEGIMPVMPF-lack-NEGIMPVM
#43	
Anaa sanu, usikkaayi hasamtiyoonhoob,	anaa san-u u-sikkaay-i hasam-ti-yoon-hoob
My brother, when you pass by our house on your way,	hey brother-POSSSG1 ARTSGM-way-CASGEN pass.by-PERMSG3F-OBJPL1-ADV+what.moment
#44	
dehoon tara,	dehoon tar-a
make a detour to see us,	to.PL1 make.detour-IMPVM
#45	
eerheek areenayay.	ee-rh-eek aree-nay-ay
because we do enjoy seeing you.	ARTPLMOBJ-seeing-POSSSG2 like-IMPFP1-CON+because
#46	
U: Anihan bareeyeekna (bateeyeekna) eerhi winneet minniimani.	ani-han bareeyeekna ee-rhi winneet minniim-ani
U: I also hope very much to see you (PL).	SG1-also of.PL2 ARTPLMOBJ-seeing very wish-IMPFSG1
#47	
Allaa tankwiikweek, fajir fajir dehookna tartiit,	allaa ZERO-tankwiikw-eek fajir fajir dehookna tartiit
If Allah wishes, I will make a detour to you every morning, and	Allah IMPFSG3MPF-create-ADV+if morning morning to.PL2 make.detour-PTCPADV PAST
#48	
dabaay salaamihookna andi.	dabaay salaam-i-hookna a-ndi
I will greet you.	well greet-FUT-OBJPL2 IMPFSG1PF-say
#49	
M: Hinin tuduuniyaatiib oonbatohtu, bariisook nhariweet.	hinin tu-duuniyaat-iib oon-batoht-u bariisook n-hariw-eet
M: What we really would like from you (LIT would like in the world from you), it is this.	SG1 ARTSGF-world-ADV+at NEARSGFOBJPF-SG3FOBJ-IDSG13F off.SG2M PERFPL1PF-want-WH
#50	
U: L'aab aayimna / hawidna / naayaana!	l'-aab aayim-na hawid-na naa-yaana
U: Good afternoon / evening / sleep (PL) well!	be.cool-PTCP PAST spend.day-IMPVPL spend.evening-IMPVPL pass.night-IMPVPL

#51	
M: Asigaab.	asigaab
M: Peaceful.	peaceful

<271>

۱ اُمسے اُقرم لہینہیب. ۲ ھالوؤک؟ ۳ اُنے نات ھوی کاکن (اُسٹوہ کاکن). ۴ لاکین تُشائینیب و نائیکہ بون نقراب. ۵ بون اِکینیک, شَلک نات. ۶ نَفسہ (تُوڑ) پھیے!
۷ اُکائون سِدو لہینب! ۸ اُبونیت اِداھن دھوی شَموے! ۹ داہیت. نان اِکینیب, اُپکے! ۱۰ نکلونای کیتہ? ۱۱ اُنے رھات کاکے. نات تیفے? ۱۲ ھندہ, اُمورے وھی
ھروین! ۱۳ اُسٹوک ونہ ھای ھوایای. ۱۴ ایوا, اُمیر. ۱۵ افلا, انا تُووٹ, تُمسرفہ (تُھبایے) ھیبیب! ۱۶ داہیت, انا دیت. ۱۷ اُدول سلایت, و بون دھوی کلوی! ۱۸
کلویے باتینیک, کوترے! ۱۹ اسیقاب. ۲۰ افلا, وینہ نان داتے? ۲۱ یا تُووٹوے! بون قواسٹیون, اِمرادیک مَرے! ۲۲ دُوروک و نائیکہ بون قوآب کیکے. ۲۳ بک تابتیب.
اُقرمہ لہینے. ۲۴ اووہ, بون قواسٹیوکنہ. ۲۵ بریکنہ بون باقواسٹیوکنہ, ابقواسنہ? ۲۶ داہیب تَدے. ۲۷ ھینھن بک سایامینی. ۲۸ ناکاب قوائے تیندہ? ۲۹ مھی
فِجان مھینھون. ۳۰ اُپک, دُورویے! ۳۱ نقر نہ اھیے! ۳۲ ھمے نہ بھایہ! ۳۳ تُسکو کُورٹوہ کک تنا? ۳۴ وئیت داہیت. ۳۵ دھوک اُفندھن, کافدے? ۳۶ پیغدی! ۳۷
اُولف تِسکو کُور تیب کھی. ۳۸ اوالفے و بون سِکو کُور ت اُنوھن قوائے. ۳۹ سِدکیوہ. ۴۰ اُھمدھوکنہ. ۴۱ اُلیہ ھمُود تَقیقاب. ۴۲ ھمُود باناوہ. ۴۳ انا سن, اُسیقاب
ھَسْمیو نھو ب, ۴۴ دھون تر, ۴۵ ترھنک اُرینتی. ۴۶ اُنھن برتینکنہ (بتینکنہ) ئ رھے وئیت مینمنے. ۴۷ اُلا تَنکوی کونک, فِجر فِجر دھوکنہ تر تیت, ۴۸ دباي
سلامھوکنہ اُنڈے. ۴۹ ھین تَدونیا تیب و نبتوھٹ, بریسوک نھرویت. ۵۰ لآب اِیمہ / ھودنہ / نایانہ! ۵۱ اسیقاب.

Adverbs

Names of Places and Times

Adverbs: Local 1

<272>

Names of Places may be used to answer questions like 'where?' Here the place is treated as the object of the verb (Note the -b suffix attached to the place nouns).

Baruuh naat eefi?	<u>Where is he?</u>	بَرُوھ نات یفے؟
Karaneeb eefi.	He is in Keren.	کَرَنیَب یفے.
Bar'uuteeb eefi.	He is in Port Sudan.	بَرُو تیب یفے.
Bayruuteeb eefi.	He is in Beirut.	بَیرو تیب یفے.
Tasanaayeeb eefi.	He is in Teseney.	تَسَناییب یفے.
Agwoordaateeb eefi.	He is in Aqordat.	اَقوورداتیب یفے.
Masireeb eefi.	He is in Egypt.	مَسیریب یفے.
Soodaneeb eefi.	He is in Sudan.	سو دانیب یفے.
Ukhartuumiib eefi.	He is in (the) Khartoum.	اُخَر تُو مِیب یفے.

Adverbs: Local 2

Baruuk naat teebiya?	Where do you (M) go?	بَرُوک نات تیبیہ؟
Ani Masir eebi.	I go to Egypt.	اُنے مَسیر تیے.
Ani Oosook eebi.	I go to Suakin.	اُنے وِسوک تیے.
Ani Misawaab eebi.	I go to Massawa.	اُنے مَسوا ب تیے.
Ani ugawu eebi.	I go to my house.	اُنے اُقُو تیے.
Baruuk naat iiba tindiya?	Where will you (M) go?	بَرُوک نات اِیبہ تندیہ؟

Ani Masir iiba andi.	I will go to Egypt.	أُنْجِ مَسِيرِ إِيْبِهْ أُنْدِجِ.
Ani Oosook iiba andi.	I will go to Suakin.	أُنْجِ وُسُوْكَ إِيْبِهْ أُنْدِجِ.
Ani Misawaab iiba andi.	I will go to Massawa.	أُنْجِ مَسَوَابِ إِيْبِهْ أُنْدِجِ.
Ani ugawu iiba andi.	I will go to my house.	أُنْجِ أُغُوْ إِيْبِهْ أُنْدِجِ.

Conversation 9: 'At the Market' (Examples of Adverbs)

<273>

A: wife, B: husband

#1	
A: Oosheek, oosuug iiba tindiya?	oosheek oo-suug iiba ti-ndi-ya
A: Oosheek, do you go to the market?	Oosheek ARTSGMOBJ-market go-FUTSG IMPFSG2MPF-say-IMPFSG2M
#2	
Oosuug teebiyeeek, anaa taku,	oo-suug t-eebi-yeek anaa tak-u
If you go, my dear,	ARTSGMOBJ-market IMPFSG3FPF-go-ADV+if hey man-IDSG13M
#3	
hadhiib gwadook haam'aa!	hadhiib gwad-ook haam'-aa
bring bread with you!	bread with-POSSSG2 bring-IMPVM
#4	
Sikkwart gwadook haam'aa!	sikkwart gwad-ook haam'-aa
Bring sugar with you!	sugar with-POSSSG2 bring-IMPVM
#5	
B: Oond'a gwida shanha abari.	oond'a gwida shanha a-bari
B: Now I have much work.	this.time plenty work PERFSG1PF-have
#6	
Amsi ani shawaay kaaki.	amsi ani shawaay kaa-ki
Today I don't have time (LIT I am not free).	today SG1 free NEGIMPFSG1PF-be
#7	
A: Shawaay kittaa?	shawaay kit-ta-a
A: You don't have time (LIT are not free)?	free NEGIMPFSG2MPF-be-NEGIMPFSG2M
#8	
Shawaay bitkaayeeek, hooy baashinhaya!	shawaay bit-ka-ay-eeek hooy baa-shinha-ya
If you don't have time (LIT are not free), don't worry!	free NEGSUBSG2MPF-be-NEGSUBM-ADV+if at NEGIMPVMPF-worry-NEGIMPVM

<274>

١ ؤشنيك، ؤ شوق ايبه تنديه؟ ٢ ؤشوق تيبنيك، انا تك، ٣ هديب قودوك هاما! ٤ سيكوكونورت قودوك هاما! هونداه قوده شنهه ايرى. ٦ امسح ائى شواي كاكى. ٧ شواي كئا؟ ٨ شواي بتكاييك، هوئ باشنهه!

Adverbs: Local 3

<275>

Names of Places serve to answer the question 'Where?'.

Baruuk, naamhiinaan faraaywa?	You (M), where were you (M) born?	بروك، نامهيان فرايوه؟
Ani Masireeb faraayu.	I (M) was born in Egypt.	ائى مسيريب فراي.
Ani Bar'uuteeb faraayu.	I (M) was born in Port Sudan.	ائى بروتيب فراي.
Ani Bayruuteeb faraayu.	I (M) was born in Beirut.	ائى بيروتيب فراي.
Ani Tasanaayeeb faraayu.	I (M) was born in Teseney.	ائى تسنايب فراي.
Ani Agwoordaateeb faraayu.	I (M) was born in Aqordat.	ائى اقوورداتييب فراي.
Batuuk, naamhiinaan faraaytuwi?	You (F), where were you (F) born?	بتوك، نامهيان فرايوى؟
Ani Masireeb faraaytu.	I (F) was born in Egypt.	ائى مسيريب فرايت.

Conversation 10: 'Learning Beja' (Examples of Adverbs)

<276>

Beja speakers and Beja learners

#1	
Baruuk Tubdhaawi tikteena?	baruuk tu-bdhaawi ti-kteen-a
Do you (M) know Beja?	SG2M ARTSGF-Beja IMPFSG2MPF-know-IMPFSG2M
#2	
Ani shalikna hooy akteen.	ani shalik-na hooy a-kteen
I know a little (LIT a little of it).	SG1 little-thing at IMPFSG1PF-know
#3	
Batuuk Tubdhaawi tikteeni?	batuuk tu-bdhaawi ti-kteen-i
Do you (F) know Beja?	SG2F ARTSGF-Beja IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#4	
Ani shalikna hooy akteen.	ani shalik-na hooy a-kteen
A little.	SG1 little-thing at IMPFSG1PF-know
#5	
Baraakna Tubdhaawi tikteenna?	baraakna tu-bdhaawi ti-kteen-na
Do you (PL M) know Beja?	PL2M ARTSGF-Beja IMPFPL2PF-know-IMPFPL2
#6	
Hinin shalikna hooy nikteen.	hinin shalik-na hooy ni-kteen
We know a little.	PL1 little-thing at IMPFPL1PF-know

#7	
Udehay Tubdhaawi ikteenna?	uu-dehay tu-bdhaawi i-kteen-na
Do the people know Beja?	ARTSGMSUBJ-people ARTSGF-Beja IMPFPL3PF-know-IMPFL3
#8	
Baraah shalikna hooy ikteenna.	baraah shalik-na hooy i-kteen-na
They (M) know a little.	PL2M little-thing at IMPFPL3PF-know-IMPFL3
#9	
Udehay kassa Tubdhaawi ikteenna?	uu-dehay kassa tu-bdhaawi i-kteen-na
Do all people know Beja?	ARTSGMSUBJ-people all ARTSGF-Beja IMPFPL3PF-know-IMPFL3
#10	
Baraah shalikna hooy ikteenna.	baraah shalik-na hooy i-kteen-na
They know a little.	PL2M little-thing at IMPFPL3PF-know-IMPFL3

<277>

۱ بڑوڪ تېڏاڙو ٿڪيٽه؟ ۲ انءَ شليڪه هوي اڪتئين. ۳ بٽوڪ تېڏاڙو ٿڪيٽه؟ ۴ انءَ شليڪه هوي اڪتئين. ۵ بيراڪه تېڏاڙو ٿڪيٽه؟ ۶ هين شليڪه هوي نڪتئين. ۷ اودهي تېڏاڙو ٿڪيٽه؟ ۸ براه شليڪه هوي اڪتئين. ۹ اودهي ڪسه تېڏاڙو ٿڪيٽه؟ ۱۰ براه شليڪه هوي اڪتئين.

Adverbs: Temporal 1

<278>

Adverbs or names of days and hours are used in response to questions about time.

Naadoor?	When (LIT what time)?	نادوَر؟
Naadoor batuuk Karan tibayi?	When did you (F) go to Keren?	نادوَر بٽوڪ ڪرن تيبي؟
Amsi Karan abi.	I went to Keren today.	امسه ڪرن آبي.
Iru Karan abi.	I went to Keren yesterday.	اِر ڪرن آبي.
Iru bitkaayit Karan abi.	I went to Keren before yesterday.	اِر بيٽڪايٽ ڪرن آبي.
Naadoor Soodaan iiba tindiya?	When will you (F) go to Sudan?	نادوَر سوڊان ايبه تيندي؟
Oond'a Soodaan iiba andi.	I will go to Sudan now.	ونداه سوڊان ايبه اندي.
Amsi Soodaan iiba andi.	I will go to Sudan today.	امسه سوڊان ايبه اندي.
Lhayt Soodaan iiba andi.	I will go to Sudan tomorrow.	لهيت سوڊان ايبه اندي.
Lhayt baakaayt Soodaan iiba andi.	I will go to Sudan after tomorrow.	لهيت باڪايٽ سوڊان ايبه اندي.

Adverbs: Temporal 2

<279>

Names of times of the day serve to answer the question 'When?'.

Naadoor?	When (LIT what time)?	نادوَر؟

Baruuk naadoor fantiira?	When do you (M) eat breakfast?	بَرُوكْ نَادُورْ فَنْتِيرَه؟
Ani aawiit afantiir.	I eat breakfast in the morning, forenoon.	أَنْعِ آوَيْتْ أَفَنْتِيرِ.
Baruuk naadoor mhastiniya?	When do you eat lunch?	بَرُوكْ نَادُورْ مَهَسْتِينِيَه؟
Ani nabhoob mhasani.	I eat lunch at noon.	أَنْعِ نَبْهَوْبْ مَهَسْتَنْعِ.
Baruuk naadoor tiddariira?	When do you (M) eat supper?	بَرُوكْ نَادُورْ تَدَّرِيرَه؟
Ani akwhiit addariir.	I eat supper (M) in the (late) afternoon.	أَنْعِ أَكْوَهِيتْ أَدَّرِيرِ.
Baruuk aawiit naan tamtiniya?	What do you eat in the morning?	بَرُوكْ آوَيْتْ نَانَ تَمْتِينِيَه؟
Ani aawiit afantiir.	In the morning I eat breakfast.	أَنْعِ آوَيْتْ أَفَنْتِيرِ.
Baruuk nabhoob naan tamtiniya?	What do you eat at noon?	بَرُوكْ نَبْهَوْبْ نَانَ تَمْتِينِيَه؟
Ani nabhoob mhasani.	I eat lunch at noon.	أَنْعِ نَبْهَوْبْ مَهَسْتَنْعِ.
Baruuk akwhiit naan tamtiniya?	What do you eat in the (late) afternoon?	بَرُوكْ أَكْوَهِيتْ نَانَ تَمْتِينِيَه؟
Ani akwhiit addariir.	I eat supper in the (late) afternoon.	أَنْعِ أَكْوَهِيتْ أَدَّرِيرِ.

Adverbs: Temporal 3

<280>

The genitive of Place names may serve to answer the question 'From where?', and the names of times of the day serve to answer the question 'When?'.

Naadoor Karanii eeta?	When did you (F) come from Keren?	نَادُورْ كَرَنْبِي يَتَه؟
Afa Karanii y'an.	I came from Keren last night.	أَفَه كَرَنْبِي يَانَ.
Wana Karanii y'an.	I came from Keren in the early morning, forenoon.	وَئَه كَرَنْبِي يَانَ.
Aawiit Karanii y'an.	I came from Keren in the morning.	آوَيْتْ كَرَنْبِي يَانَ.
Nabhoob Karanii y'an.	I came from Keren at noon.	نَبْهَوْبْ كَرَنْبِي يَانَ.
Humniit Karanii y'an.	I came from Keren in the (late) afternoon.	هُمْنِيْتْ كَرَنْبِي يَانَ.

Adverbs: Temporal 4

Naadoor giigtaa?	When did you (M) go away?	نَادُورْ قِيغْتَا؟
Afa giigan.	I went away last night.	أَفَه قِيغَنْ.
Wana giigan.	I went away in the early morning, forenoon.	وَئَه قِيغَنْ.
Aawiit giigan.	I went away in the morning.	آوَيْتْ قِيغَنْ.
Nabhoob giigan.	I went away at noon.	نَبْهَوْبْ قِيغَنْ.
Humniit giigan.	I went away in the (late) afternoon.	هُمْنِيْتْ قِيغَنْ.

Adverbs: Temporal 5

<281>

Repetition of temporal expressions indicates repeated actions.

Naaka doora?	How often, how many times?	نَاكَه دُورَه؟
Yiint yiint.	Every day.	يِيْنْتْ يِيْنْتْ.

Fajir fajir.	Every morning.	فَجْرٌ فَجْرٌ.
Sabt sabt.	Every Saturday.	سَبْتٌ سَبْتٌ.
Abadan abadan abadan!	Never never!	أَبَدَنْ أَبَدَنْ أَبَدَنْ!

Adverbs: Temporal 6

Humniit humniit naan daatiniya?	What do you (M) do every (late) afternoon?	هُمْنِيْتٌ هُمْنِيْتٌ نَانَ دَاتِيْنِيَهْ؟
Nabhoob nabhoob naan daatiniya?	What do you (M) do every noon?	نَبْهَوْبٌ نَبْهَوْبٌ نَانَ دَاتِيْنِيَهْ؟
Akwhiit akwhiit naan daatiniya?	What do you (M) do every evening?	أَكْوَهِيْتٌ أَكْوَهِيْتٌ نَانَ دَاتِيْنِيَهْ؟
Nagaar nagaar (jirabt jirabt) naan daatiniya?	What do you (M) do every other (second) day?	نَعَارٌ نَعَارٌ نَانَ دَاتِيْنِيَهْ؟
Ani sab sab kwuuraat hawaayani.	Every Saturday I play football.	أَنْعِي سَبْتُ سَبْتُ كُوُوْرَاتِ هَوَايَانِي.

Adverbs: Times of the day

<282>

Here follows a list of temporal expressions, from early to late in the day.

wakt / waktu	time / times (of the day)	وَكْتٌ / وَكَيْتٌ
amas	last night, dusk	أَمْسٌ
afa	last night	أَفَهْ
wana / kuruumt	early (this) morning / dawn	وَنَهْ / كُرُوْمَتٌ
oomha	the morning, the dawn	وَمَهْه
tuyiinti mifir'i	the sun's rising	تُيِيْنِيْتِ مِفِرْإِ
fajir	morning (AR)	فَجْرٌ
aawiit	forenoon	أَوِيْتٌ
udehuri dabaay	before (the) noon	أُدْهُوْرِي دَبَايِ
tu'aawi / aawiit	the forenoon (9-12) / forenoon	تَاوِيْ / أَوِيْتٌ
nabhoob	midday	نَبْهَوْبٌ
udehuuri har'i	after (the) noon (AR)	أُدْهُوْرِي هَرَا
humniit	the late afternoon, afternoon	هُمْنِيْتٌ
akwhiit	evening	أَكْوَهِيْتٌ
hawaad	night	هَوَادٌ
tuyiin talaw	sunrise (the sun's rising)	تُيِيْنِيْتِ تَلَوُ
whawaad	the night	وُهَوَادٌ
whawaadi tarab	midnight	وُهَوَادِي تَرَابٌ
amasing'a	midnight	أَمْسِيْنِقَاْهْ

Adverb: Other Temporal Expressions

amrooh	ever	أمرؤه
abadan	never (AR)	أَبَدَنْ
bub'u	every day	بُبْءُ
nagaar	every second day	نَقَار
diima, daa'iman	always (AR)	دِيمَه، دَائِمَنْ
dehoob, gaal dehoob, firngis	suddenly	دهوب، قال دهوب، فِرْنَقِس
naafti	afterwards, in return	نافتي
oond'a, oond'aab	now	وُندَاهُ، وُندَاب
shaawi	again, additionally	شاوے
suuri	before, earlier	سُورے
tooyiin	today	تَوَيِين
umriiyook	ever in your life	أَمْرِيِيُوك
yooyt	every day	يُوَيْت

[Conversation 11: 'Farewell' \(Examples of Manner Adverbs\)](#)

<283>

Farewell greetings and responses

#1	
L'aab aayima!	l'-aab aayim-a
Bye, good afternoon (LIT spend the day cool)!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVM
#2	
Baruukehan l'aab aayima!	baruuk-ehan l'-aab aayim-a
You too!	SG2M-also be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVM
#3	
Shiboob aayima!	shiboob aayim-a
Spend the day fine!	fine spend.day-IMPVM
#4	
Baruukehan shiboob aayima!	baruuk-ehan shiboob aayim-a
You too!	SG2M-also good spend.day-IMPVM
#5	
Daayiib aayima!	daayiib aayim-a
Spend the day good (well)!	good spend.day-IMPVM
#6	
Baruukehan daayiib aayima!	baruuk-ehan daayiib aayim-a

You too!	SG2M-also good spend.day-IMPVM
#7	
Kwatiib aayima!	kwatiib aayim-a
Spend the day well!	fine spend.day-IMPVM
#8	
Baruukehan kwatiib aayima!	baruuk-ehan kwatiib aayim-a
You too!	SG2M-also fine spend.day-IMPVM
#9	
L'aab aayimi!	l'-aab aayim-i
Bye, good afternoon (LIT spend the day cool)!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVF
#10	
Batuukehan l'aab aayimi!	batuuk-ehan l'-aab aayim-i
You too!	SG2F-also be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVF
#11	
Shiboob aayimi!	shiboob aayim-i
Spend the day fine!	good spend.day-IMPVF
#12	
Batuukehan shiboob aayimi!	batuuk-ehan shiboob aayim-i
You too.	SG2F-also good spend.day-IMPVF
#13	
Daayiib aayimi!	daayiib aayim-i
Spend the day good (well)!	good spend.day-IMPVF
#14	
Batuukehan daayiib aayimi!	batuuk-ehan daayiib aayim-i
You too!	SG2F-also good spend.day-IMPVF
#15	
Kwatiib aayimi!	kwatiib aayim-i
Spend the day well!	fine spend.day-IMPVF
#16	
Batuukehan kwatiib aayimi!	batuuk-ehan kwatiib aayim-i
You too!	SG2F-also fine spend.day-IMPVF
#17	
L'aab aayimna!	l'-aab aayim-na
Bye, good afternoon (LIT spend the day cool)!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVPL

#18	
Baraaknahan l'aab aayimna!	baraakna-han l'-aab aayim-na
You too!	PL2M-also be.cool-PTCPAST spend.day-IMPVPL
#19	
Shiboob aayimna!	shiboob aayim-na
Spend the day fine!	good spend.day-IMPVPL
#20	
Baraaknahan shiboob aayimna!	baraakna-han shiboob aayim-na
You too!	PL2M-also good spend.day-IMPVPL
#21	
Daayiib aayimna!	daayiib aayim-na
Spend the day good (well)!	good spend.day-IMPVPL
#22	
Baraaknahan daayiib aayimna!	baraakna-han daayiib aayim-na
You too!	PL2M-also good spend.day-IMPVPL
#23	
Kwatiib aayimna!	kwatiib aayim-na
Spend the day well!	fine spend.day-IMPVPL
#24	
Baraaknahan kwatiib aayimna!	baraakna-han kwatiib aayim-na
You too!	PL2M-also fine spend.day-IMPVPL

<284>

۱ لآب آيمه! ۲ بڑوڪهن لآب آيمه! ۳ شيبوڙ آيمه! ۴ بڑوڪهن شيبوڙ آيمه! ۵ دايب آيمه! ۶ بڑوڪهن دايب آيمه! ۷ ڪوٽيب آيمه! ۸ بڑوڪهن ڪوٽيب آيمه! ۹ لآب آيمه!
۱۰ بٽوڪهن لآب آيمه! ۱۱ شيبوڙ آيمه! ۱۲ بٽوڪهن شيبوڙ آيمه! ۱۳ دايب آيمه! ۱۴ بٽوڪهن دايب آيمه! ۱۵ ڪوٽيب آيمه! ۱۶ بٽوڪهن ڪوٽيب آيمه! ۱۷
لآب آيمه! ۱۸ براكنهن لآب آيمه! ۱۹ شيبوڙ آيمه! ۲۰ براكنهن شيبوڙ آيمه! ۲۱ دايب آيمه! ۲۲ براكنهن دايب آيمه! ۲۳ ڪوٽيب آيمه! ۲۴ براكنهن ڪوٽيب
آيمه!

Adverb Suffixes

<285>

To express relations of time and space, adverbial suffixes may be attached to NPs.

Table 27: Adverbial Suffixes

Local Suffixes:	
-s	from
-say, -sii	away from
-ii	off from
-da	to
-iib	at

Temporal Suffixes:	
-iib	within, at
-ka	as from
Benefactive Suffixes:	
-da	to (someone)
Manner Suffixes:	
-ka	more than, total

Local and Related Suffixes

Local Suffixes: -ZERO

<286>

With certain verbs, no adverbial affix is required to express a location.

Baruuh Asmara ihee? Iha!	Is he in Asmara? He is!	بَرُوهُ أَسْمَرَه إِهِي؟ إِهَه!
Asmara iha, eefi.	He is in Asmara.	أَسْمَرَه إِهَه، نَفْعَه.
Saawaa iha.	He is in Sawa.	سَاوَا إِهَه.
Suuriya iha.	He is in Syria.	شُورِيَه إِهَه.
Liibiya iha.	He is in Libya.	لِيِبِيَه إِهَه.
Almaaniya iha.	He is in Germany.	أَلْمَانِيَه إِهَه.

<287>

Note that with this verb, there is a difference between the question (interrogative form) and the answer (affirmative form): ihee 'Is he?' / iha 'He is.'

Local Suffixes: -s

<288>

Several adverbial suffixes are used to express concepts of Place, such as source, direction etc.

Tunariitiisook b'ara!	Wake up from your sleepiness!	تُنَرِيْتِيْسُوْكَ بَارَه!
Tilhanayteesooh in'ur.	He is cured from his sickness.	تِلْهَنْتِيْسُوْه اِنْءُر.
Bariisoooh imkwas.	He revenged him (LIT of him).	بَرِيْسُوْه اِمَكْوَس.

<289>

Ani ugawiisu y'an, y'aabu.	<u>I came from my house.</u>	أَنْعِي أُقْوِيْسُ يَأْن / يَأْب.
Ugawiiisoooh giigaa!	Leave (M), go away from (M) his house!	أُقْوِيْسُوْه قِيْغَا!
Ugawiiisu fir'a!	Get out of my house!	أُقْوِيْسُ فِرْأَه!
Ugalamiisu baakatiiba!	Don't write with my pen (LIT off my pen)!	أَقْلَمِيْسُ بَاكْتِيْبَه!
Ufijjaaniisu baagw'aa!	Don't drink from my cup!	أَفِيْجَانِيْسُ بَاقْوَا!
Ukwursiyiisook yakaa!	Arise from your chair (stand up)!	أَكْوُرْسِيْسُوْكَ يَكَا!

Local Suffixes: -say

Antoosay fir'a!	Get out of there!	أَنْتُوْسِي فِرْأَه!
-----------------	-------------------	----------------------

Beentoosay fir'a!	Get out of (lit. from) there!	بیتنۆسی فرأه!
Urbaayi kehiisay ikwbar	He descended from the hill.	أربايعه كهييسي إكۆبر.

Local Suffixes: -ii

Baruuk naamhiinaanii eeta, y'aawa?	From which place did you (M) come?	تۆك نامهيئاني تته، پاوه؟
Ani Asmaraayii y'aabu.	I came from Asmara.	أنه أسمرائي يآب.
Ani Iritriiyaayii y'aabu.	I came from Eritrea.	أنه إرتريايي يآب.
Ani Ukhartuumii y'aabu.	I came from (the) Khartoum.	أنه أكرتومي يآب.
Ani Soodaanii y'aabu.	I came from Sudan.	أنه سؤداني يآب.
Ani Oosookii y'aabu.	I came from Suakin.	أنه وسؤكي يآب.
Naamhiinaanii idif?	From where did he go away?	نامهيئاني إدف؟
Naamhiinaanii ifir'a?	From where did he leave?	نامهيئاني إفراه؟
Naamhiinaanii isgi?	From where is it far?	نامهيئاني إسقه؟
Naamhiinaanii y'agar?	From where did he return?	نامهيئاني يآقر؟
Oon'umhiinaanii difa!	Go (M) away from this place!	ؤن ؤمهيئاني دفه!
Been'umhiinaanii igwshish.	He moved it from that place.	بين ؤمهيئاني إقوشيش.
Been'umhiinaanii irfif, ifir'a.	He moved it from that place.	بين ؤمهيئاني إرفف، إفراه.
Usoogii naan ha'anhook?	What do I bring for you (M) from the market?	أسؤقي نان هأنهوك؟
Agwoordatii y'agar.	He returned from Aqordat.	أقورداتي يآقر.
Karanii idgi.	He returned from Keren.	كرني إدقه.
Urabi ukaamii ikwbir.	He unloaded the camel.	أربه أكامي إكۆبر.
Tun'eetii tiftik.	She took it off (from) the fire.	تنتي تفتك.
Whindiiyii tikwaa!	Get (M) down from, off the tree!	ؤهنديي تكوا!

Local Suffixes: -ii

Aayii id'ur?	From who (of which group) did he marry?	آيي إدءر؟
Aayii igwhar?	From whom did he steal (it)?	آيي إقهر؟
Aayii tiyahaya?	From whom did you (M) take (it)?	آيي تييهه؟
Aayii timaasiwa?	From whom did you hear (it)?	آيي تماسيوه؟
Oon'usakana aayii timaasiwa?	From whom did you (M) get the news?	ؤن ؤسكنه آيي تماسيوه؟
Aniiyi iskw'a.	He felt shy in my presence (LIT of me).	أنيي إسكواه.
Naanaatii in'ur?	From what is he cured?	ناناتي إنءر؟

Local Suffixes: -da

Naamhiinaaniida imilha?	To where did he lead?	نامھینا نیڈہ املہہ؟
Naamhiinaaniida is'am?	To where did he (let) ride?	نامھینا نیڈہ اسام؟
Ugwharaayiida ifir'a.	He went out to the thief.	اقوھرا نیڈہ افرأه.
Bariihooda tidgi.	She gave it back to him.	بیریهۆده تدقے.
Soodaaneeda iibaabaa!	Travel (M) to, toward Sudan!	سوڈان نیڈہ اینابا!
Asmaraayiida agara!	Return to Asmara!	أسمراییدہ اقره!
Asmaraayiida digaya!	Return to Asmara!	أسمراییدہ دقیه!
Asmaraayiida libasa!	Travel to Asmara at night! (NB 'travel at night' is one single verb)	أسمراییدہ لیسه!
Yameeda iyiwi, iyiwa.	He was thirsty for water.	یمیدہ یوے، یوہ.
Aayiida, aab hangiit.	For whom is he waiting?	آییدہ هنتقیت.

Local Suffixes: -iib

Tuyiintiib ingida tindiya?	Do you (M) want to stand (M) in the sun?	تُیینتیب اِنقده تندیه؟
Ufasliib baaniinaa!	Don't (M) hum in class!	أفسلیب بانینا!
Ushanhiib aayima!	Spend the day, stay at your work!	أشنتهب آیمه!
Aaw umaktabiib kihay?	Who is not in the office?	آو أمکتیب کیھی؟
Ani umaktabiib kahay.	I am not in the office.	أني أمکتیب کیھی.
Baruuk umaktabiib kitehaya.	You (M) are not in the office.	بروک أمکتیب کیهيه.
Batuuk umaktabiib kitehayi.	You (F) are not in the office.	بتوک أمکتیب کیهيه.
Baruuh umaktabiib kihay.	He is not in the office.	بروه أمکتیب کیهي.
Batuuh umaktabiib kitehay.	She is not in the office.	بتوه أمکتیب کیهي.
Hinin umaktabiib kinhay.	We are not in the office.	هینن أمکتیب کیهي.
Baraakna umaktabiib kitehayna.	You (PL) are not in the office.	براکنه أمکتیب کیهينه.
Baraah umaktabiib kihayna.	They are not in the office.	براه أمکتیب کیهينه.
Baruuh ugawiib ihay, ihee?	Is he in the house?	بروه أُقویب اهي، اهي؟
Ugawiib kihay.	He is not in the house.	أقویب کیهي.
Umaktabiib kihay.	He is not in the office.	أمکتیب کیهي.
Udukwkwaaniib kihay.	He is not in the shop.	أدکوکوانیب کیهي.
Usuugiib kihay.	He is not in the market.	أسوقیب کیهي.

Tumadiinaatiib kihay.	He is not in the town.	تُمَدِينَايْتِيب كِهَي .
Whaashiib kihay.	He is not in the country.	وُهَاشِييب كِهَي .

Adverbial Suffixes for Nationalities 1

<290>

The tribal or national affiliations are expressed by an adverbial suffix.

Baruuk naa naayiiwa?	Whose are you (M)?	بَرُوك نا ناَيِيوَه؟
Baruuk naa gwadiibwa?	What is your (M) tribe (LIT side)?	بَرُوك نا قَوَدِيوَه؟
Baruuk naat gabiilaatiwa?	What is your (M) tribe (From which tribe are you (M))?	بَرُوك نا ت قَبِيلاَتِيوَه؟
Ani Abaabdaayiiibu.	I am (of) Abaabda.	أَنِي أَبَايِدَايِيْبُ .
Ani Atmaanaayiiibu.	I am Atman.	أَنِي أَتْمَانَايِيْبُ .
Ani Bishaariibu.	I am Bishaari.	أَنِي بِشَارِيْبُ .
Ani Handhiwaayiiibu.	I am Hadendowa.	أَنِي هَنْدُوَايِيْبُ .
Ani Nuuraayiiibu.	I am Nuurayi.	أَنِي نُورَايِيْبُ .

Adverbial Suffixes for Nationalities 2

Baraakna naa naayibaana?	Whose are you (PL M)?	بَرَاكْنَه نا ناَيِيْبَانَه؟
Hinin / Baraah Iritriiba.	We / They (M) are Eritreans.	هَيْن / بَرَاه إِرْتْرِيْبَه .
Hinin / Baraah Soodaaniiba.	We / They (M) are Sudanese.	هَيْن / بَرَاه سُودَانِيْبَه .
Hinin / Baraah Amriikiiba.	We / They (M) are Americans.	هَيْن / بَرَاه أَمْرِيْكِيْبَه .
Hinin / Baraah Ingiliiziiba.	We / They (M) are British.	هَيْن / بَرَاه إِنْقَلِيْزِيْبَه .

Conversation 12: 'Living in a Different Country' (Examples of Adverbial Suffixes)

<291>

Host and visitor

#1	
Baruuk naayiiwa?	baruuk naa-yii-wa
Of what tribe (LIT whose) are you (M)?	SG2M thing-CASGEN-IDSG2M
#2	
Baruuk naat takwa?	baruuk naat tak-wa
From which nationality, group (LIT thing) are you (M)?	SG2M thing man-IDSG2M
#3	
Ani Nuuraayiiibu.	ani nuuraayiiib-u
I am from (LIT of) the Nuura group.	SG1 Nuuraayi-IDSG13M

#4	
Nuuraayiib tikatiyeek, asgaab takwa.	nuuraayiib ti-kati-yeek asgaab tak-wa
If you (M) are from Nuura, you are a peaceful man.	Nuuraayi IMPFSG3FPF-be-ADV+if peaceful man- IDSG2M
#5	
Baruuk oon'oomhiin naaka tirga tibriya?	baruuk oon-'oo-mhiin naaka tirg-a ti-bari-ya
How many years have you (M) (lived) in this place?	SG2M NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place how.many month-PL PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M
#6	
Ani oon'oomhiin asimhayt massi abari.	ani oon-'oo-mhiin asimhayt massi a-bari
I have (lived) in this place three years.	SG1 NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place eight year PERFSG1PF-have
#7	
Batuuk naayiituwi?	batuuk naa-yiit-uwi
Whose are you (F)?	SG2F thing-CASGEN-IDSG2F
#8	
Batuuk naat takattuwi?	batuuk naat takatt-uwi
From which nationality, group (LIT thing) are you (F)?	SG2F thing woman-IDSG2F
#9	
Ani Almaaniitu.	ani almaaniit-u
I am (F) German (LIT of German).	SG1 German-IDSG13F
#10	
Almaaniit tikatiyeek, asgaat takattuwi.	almaaniit ti-kat-i-yeek asgaat takatt-uwi
If you (F) are German (LIT of German), you are a peaceful woman.	German IMPFSG3FPF-be-ADV+if peaceful woman- IDSG2F
#11	
Batuuk oon'oomhiin naakaat massi tibrii?	batuuk oon-'oo-mhiin naakaat massi ti-bari-i
How many years have you (F) (lived) in this place?	SG2F NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place how.many year PERFSG2FPF-have-PERFSG2F
#12	
Ani oon'oomhiin malu tirga abari.	ani oon-'oo-mhiin malu tirg-a a-bari
I have (lived) here two months.	SG1 NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place two month- PL PERFSG1PF-have

<292>

۱ بڑوك نايپوه؟ ۲ بڑوك نات تكوه؟ ۳ انر تورايب. ۴ تورايب تكينيك، اسقاب تكوه. ۵ بڑوك ونؤومهي ناكه ترقه تيره؟ ۶ انر ونؤومهي اسمهي مَسْر اَبْرے. ۷ بٹوك

ناپتوے؟ ۸ بتوںک نات تکتوے؟ ۹ ائے المانیٹ. ۱۰ المانیٹ تکتیک، أسقات تکتوے. ۱۱ بتوںک وئوومہین ناکات مسے تیری؟ ۱۲ ائے وئوومہین مل ترقہ اترے.

Suffix Expressing Reason: -ii

Hargwiitii / yiweetii ayiya (ayiyayi).	I died from hunger / thirst.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي / يُوِيِيِي اِيِيِه.
Hargwiitii tiyiyaa.	You (M) died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي تِيِيَا.
Hargwiitii tiyiyaaayi.	You (F) died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي تِيِيَايِي.
Hargwiitii iyiya.	He died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي اِيِيِه.
Hargwiitii tiyiyaa.	She died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي تِيِيَه.
Hargwiitii niyiyaa.	We died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي نِيِيَه.
Hargwiitii tiyiyaaana.	You (PL) died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي تِيِيَاَنَه.
Hargwiitii iyiyaaan.	They died from hunger.	هَرَقُوِيِيِي اِيِيَاَن.

Suffix Expressing Benefactive: -da

Naantaayiida ifiyak?	Where (LIT where to) did he carry?	ناَنَاطِيِيِدَه اِفِيَاك؟
Naantaayiida imilha?	Where did he lead?	ناَنَاطِيِيِدَه اِمِلِهَه؟
Tutakatiida gideha!	Descend for the woman's sake!	تُتَاكَاطِيِيِدَه قِدِهَه!
Tutakatiida kwibara!	Go down for the woman's sake!	تُتَاكَاطِيِيِدَه كُوِيِرَه!
Aniida talafoon iith'a tindiya?	Will you (M) telephone (to, for) me?	اُنِيِيِدَه تَلْفُوْن اِيِيَاَه اِنْدِيِه؟
Aniida jawaab iiktib tindiya?	Will you (M) write (to, for) me a letter?	اُنِيِيِدَه جَوَاب اِيِكْتِب اِنْدِيِه؟
Aayiida y'agag, idigi?	For whom did he return?	اَيِيِدَه يَاقِق؟
Aayiida y'ush?	For whom did he leave it?	اَيِيِدَه يِئُش؟
Aayiida ifiyak?	For whom did he load?	اَيِيِدَه اِفِيَاك؟
Aayiida imhi?	For whom did it, he remain?	اَيِيِدَه اِمِهِي؟
Aayiida tiyihaya?	For whom did you (M) take it?	اَيِيِدَه تِيِيَهِيَه؟
Aayiida imilha?	To whom did he lead?	اَيِيِدَه اِمِلِهَه؟
Aliida bak diya!	Tell (to, for) Ali so!	اَلِيِيِدَه بَاك دِيَه!
Bariihooda diya!	Tell him!	بَرِيِيَهوَدَه دِيَه!
Aniida baashinhaya!	Don't worry about, for me!	اُنِيِيِدَه بَاشِنِهِيَه!
Aniida ibi.	He went for me (representing me).	اُنِيِيِدَه اِيِيِي.
Aniida iwnan.	He was angry with (LIT toward) me.	اُنِيِيِدَه اُوْنَن.
Aniida yam shaawa!	Add water for me!	اُنِيِيِدَه يَم شَاوَه!
Baabiiyookda gada!	Stand up for your father!	بَابِيِيُووكَدَه قَدَه!
Baabiiyookda shibooba!	Be good to your father!	بَابِيِيُووكَدَه شِيْبُوْبَه!
Ikajareeda ifdhadh.	He confessed to the police.	اِيِكَجَرِيِيِدَه اِفْدَد.
Bariihooda baashinhaya, baashinaaha!	Don't worry about him!	بَرِيِيَهوَدَه بَاشِنِهِيَه، بَاشِنَاَه!

Barihooda bahasaaya!	Don't be angry because of him!	تَرِيهَوْدَه بَهْسَايَه!
Barihooda ifdhadh.	He confessed to him.	تَرِيهَوْدَه اِفْدَدَّ.

Temporal Suffixes

Temporal Suffix: -iib

gaal samuuniib	within one week	فَال سَمُوْنِيْب
gaal tirgiib	within one month	فَال تِرْغِيْب
gaat masseetiib	within one year	فَات مَسِّيْتِيْب
gaat s'atiib	within one hour	فَات سَاْتِيْب
amseeneeb	within this day	اَمْسِيْتِيْب

Temporal Suffix: -ka

Tuhattiika batook rhaayook kaaki.	I haven't seen you (F) since Sunday	تُهَاتِيْكَه بَتُوْكَ رَهَايُوْكَ كَاكِي.
Iru bitkaayteeka batook rhaayook kaaki.	I haven't seen you (F) since before yesterday.	اِرُوْ بِيْتَكَايْتِيْكَه بَتُوْكَ رَهَايُوْكَ كَاكِي.
Irooneeka batook rhaayook kaaki.	I haven't seen you (F) since yesterday.	اِرُوْنِيْكَه بَتُوْكَ رَهَايُوْكَ كَاكِي.
Irooneeka ushanhu abaay kaaki.	I didn't go to the work since yesterday.	اِرُوْنِيْكَه اُسْهَنُ اَبَاي كَاكِي.
Nabhoobeeka ugirmu lhiiniheeb.	My head aches (me) since midday.	نَبْهُوْبِيْكَه اُقْرِمُ لِهِيْنِيْهِيْب.
Wanaaneeka naan tamta?	What did you eat since this morning?	وَنَانِيْكَه نَانَ تَمْتَه؟
Wanaaneeka buun nigraabu.	I am craving for coffee since this morning.	وَنَانِيْكَه بُوْن نِيْغْرَابُوْ.
Amseeneeka ushanhu iiba kaadi.	As from today I won't go to my work.	اَمْسِيْتِيْكَه اُسْهَنُ اِيْبِه كَادِي.
Lhayteeka ushanhu iiba kaadi.	As from tomorrow I won't go to my work.	لَهَيْتِيْكَه اُسْهَنُ اِيْبِه كَادِي.
Lhayt baakaayeeeka ushanhu iiba kaadi.	As from after tomorrow I won't go to my work.	لَهَيْت بِيْتَكَايْتِيْكَه اُسْهَنُ اِيْبِه كَادِي.
Tulitneentiika ushanhu iiba kaadi.	As from Monday I won't go to my work.	تُلِيْتْنِيْتِيْكَه اُسْهَنُ اِيْبِه كَادِي.

Temporal Suffix: -ka 2

Doorka doorka, door doorka malaal eebi.	From time to time I have diarrhea.	دُوْر كَه دُوْر كَه، دُوْر دُوْر كَه مَلَال نِيْبِي.
Sanaatka dhani hagitna, siniina!	Always (LIT all the time) stay well!	سَنَاتَكَه دُهْنِيْ هَغِيْتْنَه، سِيْنِيْنَه!

Manner Suffixes: Comparative

<293>

The comparative uses the same form as the temporal phrase with 'since'. The same suffix -ka 'than, more than' is used in both instances. However, the item against

which something is compared will take the genitive case suffix -ii/-ee '(SG/PL)' as well as -ka 'than'.

Comparative Suffix: -ka 1

Ali bariisookka hanyiis.	Ali is better than him.	ألے پریسوکھ ہنییس.
Amsi irooneeka hanyiis.	Today is better than yesterday.	امسے ارونیکہ ہنییس.

Comparative Suffix: -ka 2

<294>

If two items are compared, the suffix -ka 'than' will be attached to both words: First the item against which the comparison is made, and second the attribute (i.e. the adjective) which is being compared.

Ani bariisookka winkaabu.	I (M) am bigger than you (M).	آنے پریسوکھ وینکااب.
Ani batiisookka diskaatu.	I (F) am smaller than you (F).	آنے بتیسوکھ دسکاٹ.
Baruuk aniika fagarkaawwa.	You (M) are more brave than me.	بڑوک انیکہ فقراکاوہ.
Batuuk aniika afhamaakaatuwi.	You (F) are more clever than me.	بتوک انیکہ افہماکاٹوے.
Baruuh batiisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than she.	بڑوہ بتیسوہکھ وینکااب.
Batuuh bariisookka diskaatu.	She is smaller than him.	بتوہ پریسوکھ دسکاٹ.
Hinin bareesooknaaka fagaraakaaba.	We are more brave than you (PL M).	ہین پریسوکناکھ فقراکاابہ.
Hinin bateesooknaaka afhamaakaaba.	We are more clever than you (PL F).	ہین بتیسوکناکھ افہماکاابہ.
Baraakna hineeka wawinkaabaana.	You (PL M) are taller than us.	براکنہ ہینیکھ وونکاابانہ.
Bataakna hineeka dadiskaataana.	You (PL F) are smaller than us.	بتاکنہ ہینیکھ ددسکاٹانہ.
Baraah bateesookka fagaraakaaba.	They (M) are more brave than her.	براہ بتیسوہکھ فقراکاابہ.
Bataah bareesookka afhamaakaata.	They (F) are cleverer than him.	بتاہ پریسوکھ افہماکاتہ.

<295>

The item against which the comparison is made may be left implicit, as in the following paradigms.

Comparative Paradigm 1

Ani winkaabu.	I (M) am taller.	آنے وینکااب.
Ani diskaatu.	I (F) am smaller.	آنے دسکاٹ.
Baruuk fagarkaawa.	You (M) are more courageous.	بڑوک فقراکاوہ.
Batuuk afhamaakaatuwi.	You (F) are more clever.	بتوک افہماکاٹوے.
Baruuh winkaabu.	He is taller.	بڑوہ وینکااب.
Batuuh diskaatu.	She is smaller.	بتوہ دسکاٹ.
Hinin fagaraakaaba.	We are more courageous (M).	ہین فقراکاابہ.
Hinin afhamaakaata.	We are more clever (F).	ہین افہماکاتہ.

Baraakna wawinkaabaana.	You (PL M) are taller.	بَراَكْنَه وَوِنْكَابَانَه.
Bataakna dadiskaataana.	You (PL F) are smaller.	بَتَاكْنَه دَدِسْكَاتَانَه.
Baraah fagaraakaaba.	They (M) are more courageous.	بَراَه فَغَرَاكَاَبَه.
Bataah afhamaakaata.	They (F) are more clever.	بَتَاه أَفْهَمَاكَاتَه.

Comparative Paradigm 2

Baruuh aniika winkaabu.	He is taller than me.	بَرُوَه أَنِيكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh bariisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than you (M).	بَرُوَه بَرِيْسُوْكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh batiisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than you (F).	بَرُوَه بَاتِيْسُوْكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh bariisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than him.	بَرُوَه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh batiisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than her.	بَرُوَه بَاتِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh hineeka winkaabu.	He is taller than us.	بَرُوَه هِينِكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh bareesooknaaka winkaabu.	He is taller than you (PL M).	بَرُوَه بَرِيْسُوْكَنَاَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh bateesooknaaka winkaabu.	He is taller than you (PL F).	بَرُوَه بَاتِيْسُوْكَنَاَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh barehsoonaaka winkaabu.	He is taller than them (M).	بَرُوَه بَرِيْهَسُوْناَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuh batehsoonaaka winkaabu.	He is taller than them (F).	بَرُوَه بَاتِيْهَسُوْناَكَه وَنْكَابُ.

Comparative Paradigm 3

Ani bariisookka winkaabu.	I (M) am taller than him.	أَنِي بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Ani bariisookka winkaatu.	I (F) am taller than him.	أَنِي بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Baruuk bariisookka winkaawwa.	You (M) are taller than him.	بَرُوُوكَ بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَاوَه.
Batuuk bariisookka winkaatuwi.	You (F) are taller than him.	بَتُوُوكَ بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَاتُوْوِي.
Baruuh bariisookka winkaabu.	He is taller than him.	بَرُوُه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Batuuh bariisookka winkaatu.	She is taller than him.	بَتُوُه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَنْكَابُ.
Hinin bariisookka wawinkaaba.	We are taller than him.	هِينِن بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَوِنْكَابَه.
Baraakna bariisookka wawinkaabaana.	You (PL M) are taller than him.	بَراَكْنَه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَوِنْكَابَانَه.
Bataakna bariisookka wawinkaataana.	You (PL F) are taller than him.	بَتَاكْنَه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَوِنْكَاتَانَه.
Baraah bariisookka wawinkaaba.	They (M) are taller than him.	بَراَه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَوِنْكَابَه.
Bataah bariisookka wawinkaata.	They (F) are taller than him.	بَتَاه بَرِيْسُوْهَكَه وَوِنْكَاتَه.

Manner Suffixes: Superlative

<296>

The superlative uses the same suffix -ka 'more, more than'. A definite article marks the superlative, and a genitive marks the item to which it is superior.

Superlative 1 (M) 'of all'

Ali kasseeyoon oowin-kaabu.	Ali is the tallest of us all.	أَلِي كَسِيْئُوْن وَوِنْ - كَابُ.
-----------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Ali kasseeyookna oowin-kaabu.	Ali is the tallest of you (PL M) all.	أَلِي كَسَيِيوَكْنَه وَّوِين - كَابُ .
Ali kasseehoona oowin-kaabu.	Ali is the tallest of them (M) all.	أَلِي كَسَيِيهَوْنَه وَّوِين - كَابُ .

Superlative 2 (F) 'of all'

Zaynab kasseeyoon toowin-kaatu.	Zaynab is the tallest of us all.	زَيْنَب كَسَيِيوْن تُوْنِكَا تُ .
Zaynab kasseeyookna toowin-kaatu.	Zaynab is the tallest of you (PL) all.	زَيْنَب كَسَيِيوَكْنَه تُوْنِكَا تُ .
Zaynab kasseehoona toowin-kaatu.	Zaynab is the tallest of them (M) all.	زَيْنَب كَسَيِيهَوْنَه تُوْنِكَا تُ .

Superlative 3 'of all'

Batuuk kasseeyoon toowin-kaatuwi.	You (F) are the tallest of us all.	بَتُوْكَ كَسَيِيوْن تُوْنِكَا تُوْ .
Batuuk kasseetookna toowin-kaatuwi.	You (F) are the tallest of you (PL F) all.	بَتُوْكَ كَسَيِيوَكْنَه تُوْنِكَا تُوْ .
Batuuk kasseeteheona toowin-kaatuwi.	You (F) are the tallest of them (F) all.	بَتُوْكَ كَسَيِيهَوْنَه تُوْنِكَا تُوْ .

Superlative 4 'of them'

Ani kasseeyookna ufagar-kaabu	I (M) am the bravest of you (PL M) all.	أَنِي كَسَيِيوَكْنَه أَفْقَر كَابُ
Ani kasseehoona w'afhamaa-kaabu	I (M) am the cleverest of them (M) all.	أَنِي كَسَيِيهَوْنَه وُأْفَهْمَا كَابُ
Baruuk kasseeyoon oowin-kaawwa	You (M) are the biggest of us all.	بَرُوْكَ كَسَيِيوْن أُوْنِكَا وُه
Batuuk kasseeyookna toodis-kaatuwi.	You (F) are the smallest of you all.	بَتُوْكَ كَسَيِيوَكْنَه تُوْدِس كَا تُوْ .
Baruuh kasseehoona oowin-kaabu.	He is the biggest of them all.	بَرُوْه كَسَيِيهَوْنَه أُوْنِكَا تُ .
Baruuh kasseehoona whamraa-kaabu.	He is the poorest, bitterest of them all.	بَرُوْه كَسَيِيهَوْنَه وُهْمَرَا كَابُ .
Baruuh kasseehoona w'eegrim-kaabu	He is the oldest of them all .	بَرُوْه كَسَيِيهَوْنَه وُئِيْرَا كَابُ
Batuuh kasseehoona tu'akaraa-kaatu	She is the strongest of them all.	بَتُوْه كَسَيِيهَوْنَه تُأْكِرَا كَا تُ

Superlative 5 'of them'

Bateeyookna Zaynab tudaawriikaatu.	Zaynab is the nicest of you (PL F OBJ).	بَتَيِيوَكْنَه زَيْنَب تُدَاوْرِي كَا تُ .
Bareehoona Ali udaawriikaabu.	Ali is the nicest of them (M).	بَرِيهَوْنَه أَلِي أُدَاوْرِي كَابُ .
Bateehoona Aasha tufagarkaatu.	Aasha is the bravest of them (F).	بَتِيهَوْنَه أَشَه تُفَقْر كَا تُ .
Y'areeb Ali ufagarkaabu.	Ali is the bravest of the boys.	يَأْرِيْب أَلِي أَفْقَر كَابُ .
Ti'arteeb Aasha tufagarkaatu.	Aasha is the bravest of the girls.	تِيَأْرْتِيْب أَشَه تُفَقْر كَا تُ .
Tim'ateeb Zaynab tudaawriikaatu.	Zaynab is the nicest of the women.	تِيْمَاتِيْب زَيْنَب تُدَاوْرِي كَا تُ .
Kasseehoona Haamid w'akaraakaabu.	Hammad is the strongest of them all.	كَسَيِيهَوْنَه هَامِد وُأْكِرَا كَابُ .
Kasseeyookna ani udaawriikaatu.	I (F) am the nicest of you all.	كَسَيِيوَكْنَه أَنِي أُدَاوْرِي كَا تُ .

Ilaamdi kasseeyooh Ali ufagarkaabu.	Ali is the bravest of all the students.	الإمدى كسئيوه ألى أفقر كاڤ.
Ilaamdiiyeeb Ali ufagarkaabu.	Ali is the bravest of the students.	الإمدى ييب ألى أفقر كاڤ.

Adverbs with Possessive Suffixes

<297>

Adverbs refer to the circumstances in which things happen, such as the place or the time of the event.

Table 28: Adverbs

kehii	above	كهي
har'i	after, behind	هرا
hooy	from, among	هوي
hiiy	in, inside	هي
suuri	in front, before	سورے
geeb	near, beside, close by	قيب
dehooy	to, for	دهوي
mari	toward	مرے
whii	under, underneath	وهي
gwad	with, together	قود

<298>

In expressions like 'near you', the adverb may refer to a person. In such cases, the person to which the place or time refers has the form of a possessive suffix, such as in the example geeb-ook 'nearness-yours', meaning 'near you'.

Adverb 'for' 1

dehu, dehooyu	to me, for me	دُه، دهوي
dehook	to, for you	دهوك
dehooh	to, for him, her	دهوه
dehoon	to, for us	دهون
dehookna	to, for you (PL)	دهوكنه
dehaay	to, for them	دهاي

Adverb 'for' 2

Dehook amad.	I made it (LIT was) easy (easy) for you (M).	دهوك امد.
Dehu timada.	You (M) made it (LIT were) easy for me.	دُه تيمده.
Dehu timadi.	You (F) made it (LIT were) easy for me.	دُه تيمدے.
Dehu imad.	He made it (LIT was) easy for me.	دُه امد.
Dehu timad.	She made it (LIT was) easy for me.	دُه تيمد.
Dehookna nimad.	We made it (LIT were) easy to, for you (PL).	دهوكنه نيمد.
Dehoon timadna.	You (PL) made it (LIT were) easy to, for us.	دهون تيمدنه.

Dehoon imadna.	They made it (LIT were) easy to, for us.	دهون إمدنه .
----------------	------------------------------------------	--------------

Adverb 'for, to'

Dehooyu agira!	Bring (M) (it) back to me!	دهويُّ أقره!
Dehoon agirna!	Bring (PL) (it) back to us!	دهون أقرنه!

Adverb 'near, beside'

geebu	near me	قَبْبُ
geebook	near you	قَبْبُوك
geeboon	near us	قَبْبُون
geebookna	near you (PL)	قَبْبُوكْنه

Adverb '(together) with'

gwadu	with me	قُوْدُ
gwadook	with you	قُوْدُوك
gwadoon	with us	قُوْدُون
gwadookna	with you (PL)	قُوْدُوكْنه

Adverb '(together) with' 1

Gwadoon aayima!	Stay, spend the day with us!	قُوْدُون آيمه!
Gwadoon daayaa!	Stay (LIT put) with us!	قُوْدُون دايا!
Gwadoon mhiya!	Remain with us!	قُوْدُون مهيه!

Adverb '(together) with' 2

Aaw gwadoon eefi?	Who is with us?	أَو قُوْدُون نيفي؟
Ani gwadookna eefi.	I am with you (PL).	أني قُوْدُوكْنه نيفي .
Baruuk gwadoon teefaya.	You (M) are with us.	بَرُوك قُوْدُون تيفيه .
Batuuk gwadoon teefayi.	You (F) are with us.	بَتُوك قُوْدُون تيفيه .
Baruuh gwadoon eefi.	He is with us.	بَرُوه قُوْدُون نيفي .
Batuuh gwadoon teefi.	She is with us.	بَتُوه قُوْدُون تيفي .
Hinin gwadookna neefi.	We are with you (M).	هينن قُوْدُوكْنه نيفي .
Baraakna gwadoon teefeena.	You (PL M) are with us.	بَرَاكْنه قُوْدُون تيفينه .
Baraah gwadoon eefeena.	They (M) are with us.	بَرَاه قُوْدُون نيفين .

Adverb 'in, above, under'

hiiyu	in me	هِييُ
hiiyook	in you	هِييُوك
hiiyoon	in us	هِييُون
hiiyookna	in you (PL)	هِييُوكْنه

kehiiyu	above me	كهييۇ
kehiiyook	above you	كهييۇك
kehiiyoon	above, on us	كهييۇن
kehiiyookna	above, on you (PL)	كهييۇكنە
whiiyu	under me	وھييۇ
whiiyook	under you	وھييۇك
whiiyoon	under us	وھييۇن
whiiyookna	under you (PL)	وھييۇكنە

Adverb 'from, among'

hooyu	from me	ھۆيۇ
hook	from you	ھۆك
hooy	from him, her	ھۆي
hoon	from, among us	ھۆن
hookna	from, among you (PL)	ھۆكنە
hooy, hoona, bareehsoona	from, among them	ھۆي، ھۆنە، ئېرىھسۇنە

Adverb 'among'

Hoon ihee? ¹⁴	Is he among us?	ھۆن ئېھى؟
Hoon tihee?	Is she among us?	ھۆن تېھى؟
Hoon iheen?	Are they among us?	ھۆن ئېھىن؟
Hookna ihee?	Is he among you (PL)?	ھۆكنە ئېھى؟
Hookna tihee?	Is she among you (PL)?	ھۆكنە تېھى؟
Hookna iheen?	Are they among you (PL)?	ھۆكنە ئېھىن؟
Hooy ihee?	Is he among them?	ھۆي ئېھى؟
Hooy tihee?	Is she among them?	ھۆي تېھى؟
Hooy iheen?	Are they among them?	ھۆي ئېھىن؟
Hookna ihayhoob, dehooyu fir'ana!	When he is among you (PL), send (PL) him out to me!	ھۆكنە ئېھيھۆب، دھۆيۇ فرأنه!
Oon'ootak hissaabook hooy d'iya!	Be careful about this man (LIT This man, put your mind on him)!	ۆنۆۆتاك ھىسابۇك ھۆي دأيه!

<299>

Adverb 'with (him, her, it, them)'

Haay giigaa!	Go away with it, him!	ھاي قىئا!
--------------	-----------------------	-----------

Oosuug haay ibi.	He went to the market with it, him.	ۆسۇق ھاي اېبى.
Ub'ani haay is'a.	The vulture sat down with it, him.	اُبائى ھاي اِسْأ.
Ub'ani haay insi.	The vulture ascended up with it, him.	اُبائى ھاي اِنْسے.
Usanuuk haay hawaayiya.	Your brother played with it, him.	اُسْتُوک ھاي ھوايپه.
Tirig gaal haay kitihagiti?	Won't you (F) stay one month with it, him?	تِرِقْ قال ھاي كِتِهْتِے؟

<300>

The adverb haay 'with' never changes. But when it is used, a third person is always implicit. Therefore haay 'with' must be translated either as 'with it', or 'with him', 'with her', or 'with them' - depending on the context.

Adverb 'toward'

maru	toward me	مَرُ
marook	toward you	مَرُوك
mari	toward him, her	مَرِے
maroon	toward us	مَرُون
marookna	toward you (PL)	مَرُوكنه
marooh, bareeh mari	toward them	مَرُوه، تَرِيه مَرِے

Adverb 'behind, after'

har'u	behind, after me	ھَرُءْ
har'ook	behind you	ھَرُوءُك
har'i, bariiyoooh har'i	behind him, her	ھَرِا، بَرِييُووه ھَرِا
har'oon	behind us	ھَرُوءُون
har'ookna	behind you (PL)	ھَرُوءُكنه
har'i, bareehoona har'i	behind them	ھَرِا، بَرِييُوونه ھَرِا

Adverb 'in front, before'

suuru	in front of, before me	سُورُ
suurook	before you	سُورُوك
suur	before him, her	سُور
suuroon	before us	سُورُون
suurookna	before you (PL)	سُورُوكنه
suurhoona	before them	سُورُوهُونه
Suuru sakaa!	Walk (M) before me!	سُورُ سَكَا!
Suuroon sakaa!	Walk (M) before us!	سُورُون سَكَا!

Conversation 13: 'Back from a Journey' (Examples of Local Adverbs)

<301>

A: host, B: traveler

#1	
A: Yakaana! Shaahiib hiddaab gw'aniiyay!	yak-aana shaahiib hiddaab gw'a-niiyay
A: Get up (PL)! Let us have tea together!	arise-IMPVPL tea together drink-PERMPL1
#2	
Ugawi jiwaay winneet l'aabu,	u-gaw-i jiwaay winneet l'-aab-u
In the room (house) it is very cold,	ARTSGM-house-CASGEN inside very be.cool-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#3	
barraab nitfir'a!	barraab ni-tfir'a
let us go out !	outside IMPFPL1PF-exit
#4	
B: Daayiitu, tuiintiib nitfir'a!	daayit-u tu-yiint-iib ni-tfir'a
B: Good, let us go out in the sun!	good-IDSG13F ARTSGF-sun-ADV+at IMPFPL1PF-exit
#5	
A: Naadoor eetaana?	naadoor ee-taana
A: When did you (PL) come?	what.time come-PERFPL2
#6	
B: Iru eena.	iru ee-na
B: We came yesterday.	yesterday come-PERFPL1
#7	
A: Tu'iibaab kak tid'i?	tu-'iibaab kak ti-d'i
A: How was the journey?	ARTSGF-journey how PERFSG3FPF-put
#8	
B: Yaa takay! Hamiitu.	yaa tak-ay hamiit-u
B: Oh man! It was difficult (LIT bitter).	hello man-VOCAT bitter-IDSG13M
#9	
A: Tu'iibaab kak tan'i?	tu-'iibaab kak ZERO-tan'i
A: What kind of journey was it?	ARTSGF-journey how IMPFSG3MPF-be.similar
#10	
B: Winneet hamiitu.	winneet hamiit-u

B: It was (LIT is) very difficult (LIT bitter).	very bitter-IDS13F
#11	
A: Afa naat naataana?	afa naat naa-taana
A: Where did you spend the last night?	last.night what.place pass.night-PERFPL2
#12	
B: Fundukiib, fundugiib naana.	funduk-iib naa-na
B: We slept in a hotel.	hotel-ADV+at pass.night-PERFPL1
#13	
A: Daayi funduk, fundug timiruuna?	daayi funduk ti-miru-una
A: Have you found a good hotel?	good hotel PERFPL2PF-find-PERFPL2
#14	
B: Whaaliyoon haddiib nimiru.	w-haali-i-yoon hadd-iib ni-miru
B: We found one according to our ability.	ARTSGM-condition-CASGEN-POSSPL1 until-ADV+at PERFPL1PF-find
#15	
A: Aliyaabuhan rhasaabu?	aliyaab-u-han rhasaab-u
A: Is it expensive or cheap?	expensive-IDS13M-also be.cheap-IDS13M
#16	
B: Yaa takay, winneet rhasaabu.	yaa tak-ay winneet rhasaab-u
B: Oh man, it is really cheap.	hello man-VOCAT very be.cheap-IDS13M
#17	
A: Oon'umhiinaani sagiibuhan dawilu?	oon-'u-mhiinaan-i sagiib-u-han dawil-u
A: Is it far from here or near?	NEARSGM OBJPF-ARTSGM-place-CASGEN far-IDS13M-also closeness-IDS13M
#18	
B: Winneet sagiib kiiki.	winneet sagiib kii-ki
B: It is not very far.	very far NEGIMPFS3MPF-be

<302>

۱ یکانه! شاهیب هدا ب قوائینی! ۲ اقومے جواي وئیت لآب، ۳ بزاب نتره! ۴ دایب، ئینتیب نتره! ۵ نادور تانه? ۶ اُر تنه. ۷ ئایاب کک تدا? ۸ یا تکی! همیت.
۹ ئایاب کک تبا? ۱۰ وئیت همیت. ۱۱ افه نات ناتانه? ۱۲ فندکیب نانه. ۱۳ دایب فندک تیرونه? ۱۴ وھالییون هدیب نور. ۱۵ آلیابھن رهساب? ۱۶ یا تکی،
وئیت رهساب. ۱۷ ونءمھینانے سقیبھن دول? ۱۸ وئیت سقیب کیبے.

Verbs and Clauses

Verbal Predicates

<303>

In the previous sections (especially Nominal Predicates), nominal predicates were discussed. They are used to identify or describe things, and they employ adjectives or nouns.

<304>

In the following sections verbal predicates will be discussed. They are used to talk about events, and they employ verbs.

Weak and Strong Verbs

<305>

A Beja dictionary of verbs would have two kinds of verbs - about 50% each: The first kind uses suffixes to express the subject, as in geed-an 'threw-SG1'. The other uses prefixes to express the subject, as in a-gid 'SG1-threw'.

<306>

The verbs which take suffixes are called weak verbs (or class 1 verbs), and they are considered more simple. They will be introduced first. The others are called strong verbs (or class 2 verbs), and they will be introduced later.

Weak Verbs: Subject Suffixes

<307>

There are only two basic paradigms for Beja tenses or aspects: (1) past, perfect and (2) present, imperfect. Most of the time, these two will simply be called past and present.

Verb Paradigms

<308>

The focus will now be on the past and present tense of weak verbs in their positive (affirmative) forms. A full discussion of negative verb forms will follow later, but for the sake of completeness, the tables will include the negative forms even at this stage. Two important things should be noted for all paradigms:

1. The past positive and present negative use the same verb stem. The only difference is the negative prefix ka- 'not'.
2. In the plural of participles, the pitch-accent shifts towards the beginning of the word.

Verbs Ending in Consonants

<309>

The subject suffixes of weak verbs are most easily recognized in verbs which end in consonants, such as yak- 'to start' or tam- 'to eat' (see below). For this reason, a verb stem which ends in a consonant will serve as the main paradigm for weak verbs.

The Paradigm of 'to arise, start'

IMPV:	IMPV:		NEG IMPV:	NEG IMPV:	
yakaa!	Start (M)!	يَكا!	baayakaa!	Don't start (M)!	بايَكا!
yakii!	Start (F)!	يَكي!	biiyakii!	Don't start (F)!	بييَكي!
yakaana!	Start (PL)!	يَكانه!	baayakaana!	Don't start (PL)!	بايَكانه!

PTCP:	PTCP:		NEG PTCP:	NEG PTCP:	
yakaab	started (M)	يکاب	baayakay	not started	بايکي
PAST:	PAST:		NEG PAST:	NEG PAST:	
yakan	I started.	يکن	yakaab kaaki	I didn't start.	يکاب کاکے
yaktaa	You (M) started.	يکنا	yakaab kittaa	You (M) didn't start.	يکاب کتا
yaktaayi	You (F) started.	يکنايے	yakaat kittaayi	You (F) didn't start.	يکات کتاايے
yakiya	He started.	يکيه	yakaab kiiki	He didn't start.	يکاب کيکے
yakta	She started.	يکنه	yakaat kitti	She didn't start.	يکات کتے
yakna	We started.	يکنه	yakaab kinki	We didn't start.	يکاب ککنے
yaktaana	You (PL) started.	يکناانہ	yakaab kitteena	You (PL) didn't start.	يکاب کتيناہ
yakiyaan	They started.	يکيان	yakaab kiikeen	They didn't start.	يکاب کيکين
PRES:	PRES:		NEG PRES:	NEG PRES:	
yakani	I start.	يکنے	kayakan	I don't start.	کيکن
yaktiniya	You (M) start.	يکتينيه	kayaktaa	You (M) don't start.	کتنا
yaktinii	You (F) start.	يکتيني	kayaktaayi	You (F) don't start.	کتناايے
yakiini	He starts.	يکينے	kayakiya	He doesn't start.	کيکيه
yaktini	She starts.	يکتينے	kayakta	She doesn't start.	کتنه
yaknay	We start.	يکني	kayakna	We don't start.	کتنه
yakteena	You (PL) start.	يکتينانہ	kayaktaana	You (PL) don't start.	کتناانہ
yakeen	They start.	يکتين	kayakiyaan	They don't start.	کتکيان
FUT:	FUT:		NEG FUT:	NEG FUT:	
yaki andi	I will start.	يکے اندے	yaki kaadi	I won't start.	يکے کاڈے
PAST CONT:	PAST CONT:		NEG PAST CONT:	NEG PAST:	
yaki	I was starting.	يکے	yakaab kaaki	I didn't start.	يکاب کاکے
yaktiya	You (M) were starting.	يکيه	yakaab kittaa	You (M) didn't start.	يکاب کتا
yaktiyi	You (F) were starting.	يکتينے	yakaat kittaayi	You (F) didn't start.	يکات کتاايے

yaki	He was starting.	يَڪَے	yakaab kiiki	He didn't start.	يَڪاَب ڪيڪَے
yakti	She was starting.	يَڪَے	yakaat kitti	She didn't start.	يَڪاَت ڪيڪَے
yakni	We were starting.	يَڪَے	yakaab kinki	We didn't start.	يَڪاَب ڪيڪَے
yaktiina	You (PL) were starting.	يَڪَےنِه	yakaab kitteena	You (PL) didn't start.	يَڪاَب ڪيڪَےنِه
yakiin	They were starting.	يَڪَےن	yakaab kiikeen	They didn't start.	يَڪاَب ڪيڪَےن
Noun of Action:	Noun of Action:				
u-yakti	the starting	اُ-يَڪَے			

<310>

Here are some of the most frequent weak verbs. All weak verbs have the same basic pattern as yak- 'to start'.

List of the most frequent Weak Verbs

M'aa!	Come (very frequent)!	مآ!
Yakaa!	Start, arise (very frequent)!	يڪاا!
Rhaa!	See (very frequent)!	رها!
Areeyaa!	Like, love (very frequent)!	آرئيا!
Giigaa!	Go away, leave (frequent)!	فيقا!
Sooyaa!	Tell, inform (frequent)!	سوڙيا!
Daayaa!	Do (frequent)!	دايا!

<311>

If a weak verb ends in a consonant, the suffix forms are exactly the same as for yak- in the paradigm above. If however the verb ends in a vowel or a glottal stop (h or hamzah), some minor adjustments of sounds need to be made. They will be presented further below.

Past Tense of 'to eat'

Taman.	I ate.	تَمَن.
Tamtaa.	You (M) ate.	تَمَتَا.
Tamtaayi.	You (F) ate.	تَمَتَايِي.
Tamiya.	He ate.	تَمِيه.
Tamta.	She ate.	تَمَتِه.
Tamna.	We ate.	تَمَنِه.
Tamtaana.	You (PL) ate.	تَمَتَانِه.
Tamiyaan.	They ate.	تَمِيَان.

Negative Present Tense of 'to eat'

Kataman.	I don't eat.	ڪَتَمَن.
----------	--------------	----------

Katamtaa.	You (M) don't eat.	ڪٽمٽا.
Katamtaayi.	You (F) don't eat.	ڪٽمٽايي.
Katamiya.	He doesn't eat.	ڪٽميه.
Katamta.	She doesn't eat.	ڪٽمته.
Katamna.	We don't eat.	ڪٽمنه.
Katamtaana.	You (PL) don't eat.	ڪٽمٽانه.
Katamiyaan.	They don't eat.	ڪٽميان.

Present Tense of 'to eat'

Tamani.	I eat, am eating.	ٽمڻي.
Tamtiniya.	You (M) eat, are eating.	ٽمٽيه.
Tamtinii.	You (F) eat, are eating.	ٽمٽيي.
Tamiini.	He eats, is eating.	ٽومي.
Tamtini, tamtini.	She eats, is eating.	ٽمٽي, ٽمٽي.
Tamnay.	We eat, are eating.	ٽمي.
Tamteena.	You (PL) eat, are eating.	ٽمٽيه.
Tameen.	They eat, are eating.	ٽمين.

Verbs Ending in Vowels 1

<312>

The verb 'to come' starts with a glottal stop (hamzah) and ends in a vowel. Therefore some of its forms differ from those of other weak verbs, such as the first person singular y'an, y'ani and the third person plural y'een. Actually, this is the only weak verb which appears to be irregular, in particular because its imperative m'aa! is derived from an entirely different root¹⁵.

Past Tense of 'to come'

Y'an.	I came	پان.
Eetaa.	You (M) came.	پتا.
Eetaayi.	You (F) came.	پتايي.
Eeya, eeyiya.	He came.	پيه, ڪي پيه.
Eeta.	She came.	پته.
Eena.	We came.	پنه.
Eetaana.	You (PL) came.	پتانه.
Eeyaan, eeyiyaan.	They came.	پيان, پييان.

Negative Present Tense of 'to come'

<313>

The verb initial glottal stop (hamzah) appears, when the negative prefix is attached. Compare eetaa and ka'eetaa.

Kay'an.	I don't come.	ڪيان.
---------	---------------	-------

Ka'eetaa.	You (M) don't come.	ڪٿيٽا .
Ka'eetaayi.	You (F) don't come.	ڪٿيٽايي .
Ka'eeya.	He doesn't come.	ڪٿيٽيه .
Ka'eeta.	She doesn't come.	ڪٿيٽيه .
Ka'eena.	We don't come.	ڪٿيٽيه .
Ka'eetaana.	You (PL) don't come.	ڪٿيٽانه .
Ka'eeyaan.	They don't come.	ڪٿيٽيان .

Present Tense of 'to come'

Y'ani.	I come / am coming.	يانئي .
Eetiniya.	You (M) come, are coming.	ئيٽنيه .
Eetinii, eetnii.	You (F) come, are coming.	ئيٽني ڪن تي .
Eeyiini, aayiini.	He comes, is coming.	ئيٽني .
Eetni.	She comes, is coming.	ئيٽني .
Eenay.	We come, are coming.	ئيٽني .
Eeteena.	You (PL) come, are coming.	ئيٽنيه .
Y'een.	They come, are coming.	ئيٽني .

Verbs Ending in Glottal Sounds

Past Tense of 'to drink'

<314>

For verbs which end in glottal sounds (h or hamzah), the vowel a is inserted between the stem and the suffix - unless the subject suffix starts with a vowel. For instance, compare gw'-an and gw'-a-taa.

Gw'an.	I drank.	قوان .
Gw'ataa.	You (M) drank.	قواتا .
Gw'ataayi.	You (F) drank.	قواتايي .
Gw'iya.	He drank.	قوايه .
Gw'ata.	She drank.	قواته .
Gw'ana.	We drank.	قوانه .
Gw'ataana.	You (PL) drank.	قواتانه .
Gw'iyaan.	They drank.	قوايان .

Present Tense of 'to drink'

Gw'ani.	I drink.	قوانئي .
Gw'atiniya.	You (M) drink.	قوانئييه .
Gw'atnii.	You (F) drink.	قوانئيي .
Gw'iini.	He drinks.	قوانئي .

Gw'atni.	She drinks.	قَوَّأَتْنِي .
Gw'anay.	We drink.	قَوَّأْنَا .
Gw'ateena.	You (PL) drink.	قَوَّأْتِنِه .
Gw'een.	They drink.	قَوَّوْئِن .

Past Tense of 'to see'

Rhan.	I saw (sth.).	رَهَن .
Rhita.	You (M) saw.	رَهْتَا .
Rhitaayi.	You (F) saw.	رَهْتَايِي .
Rhiya.	He saw.	رَهِيَه .
Rhita.	She saw.	رَهْتِه .
Rhina.	We saw.	رَهْنِه .
Rhitaana.	You (PL) saw.	رَهْتَانِه .
Rhiyaan.	They saw.	رَهِيَان .

Present Tense of 'to see'

Rhani.	I see (sth.).	رَهْنِي .
Rhitiniya.	You (M) see.	رَهْتِنِيَه .
Rhitnii.	You (F) see.	رَهْتِنِيِي .
Rhiini.	He sees	رَهِيْنِي .
Rhitni.	She sees.	رَهْتِنِي .
Rhinay.	We see.	رَهْنِيِي .
Rhateena.	You (PL) see.	رَهْتِنِيَه .
Rheen.	They see.	رَهِيْن .

Verbs Ending in Vowels 2

Past Tense of 'to read'

<315>

For verbs which end in vowels, -y is inserted if a suffix starts with a vowel.

Agriiyani.	I read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِي .
Agriitniya.	You (M) read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِيَه .
Agriitnii, agriitniyi.	You (F) read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِيِي وَ أَقْرَيْتَنِيِيَه .
Agriiyiini.	He reads, studies.	أَقْرَيْتَنِي .
Agriitni.	She reads, studies.	أَقْرَيْتَنِي .
Agriinay.	We read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِيِي .
Agriiteena.	You (PL) read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِيَه .
Agriiyeen.	They read, study.	أَقْرَيْتَنِيْن .

Negative Present Tense of 'to read'

Ka'agriyan.	I don't read, study.	كأقرين .
Ka'agriitaa.	You (M) don't read, study.	كأقرينا .
Ka'agriitaayi.	You (F) don't read, study.	كأقريناىي .
Ka'agriiya.	He doesn't read, study.	كأقرينه .
Ka'agriita.	She doesn't read, study.	كأقرينه .
Ka'agriina.	We don't read, study.	كأقرينه .
Ka'agriitaana.	You (PL) don't read, study.	كأقرينانه .
Ka'agriiyaan.	They don't read, study.	كأقرينان .

Verbs Ending in Vowels 3

Present Tense of 'to like'

Areeyani.	I like.	أرتنسى .
Areetniya.	You (M) like.	أرتنسيه .
Areetnii.	You (F) like.	أرتنسي .
Areyiini.	He likes.	أرتنسى .
Areetni.	She likes.	أرتنسى .
Areenay.	We like.	أرتنسي .
Areeteena.	You (PL) like.	أرتنسينه .
Areyeen.	They like.	أرتنسين .

Negative Present Tense of 'to like'

<316>

The transitive verb aree- 'to like' - before a direct object - starts and ends with a vowel - so the usual adjustments need to be made.

Ka'areeyan.	I don't like.	كأرتين .
Ka'areetaa.	You (M) don't like.	كأرتينا .
Ka'areetaayi.	You (F) don't like.	كأرتيناىي .
Ka'areeya, ka'areeyiya.	He doesn't like.	كأرتينه, كأرتينيه .
Ka'areeta.	She doesn't like.	كأرتينه .
Ka'areena.	We don't like.	كأرتينه .
Ka'areetaana.	You (PL) don't like.	كأرتينانه .
Ka'areeyaan, ka'areeyiyaan.	They don't like.	كأرتينان, كأرتينان .

<317>

As an auxiliary, introducing a sentential complement, a shorter form of aree is used.

Negative Present Tense of 'to like' (short form)

Karan.	I don't like (to do sth.).	كزن .
Kareetaa.	You (M) don't like (to do sth.).	كرتينا .

Kareetaayi.	You (F) don't like (to do sth.).	کرتا ہے .
Kareeya.	He doesn't like (to do sth.).	کرتیہ .
Kareeta.	She doesn't like (to do sth.).	کرتیہ .
Karena.	We don't like (to do sth.).	کرتیہ .
Kareetaana.	You (PL) don't like (to do sth.).	کرتانہ .
Kareeyaan.	They don't like (to do sth.).	کرتیان .

Past and Present Tense Verb Forms

<318>

Since the past and present forms of the third person are quite different from each other, it is suggested to study these with a list of verbs such as here below.

Afirhiya / afirhiini.	He rejoiced / He rejoices.	اُفرحیہ / اُفرحیے .
Afreeyiya / afreeyiini.	He was bad / He is bad.	اُفریئہ / اُفریئے .
Anfiya / anfiini.	He was fit / He is fit.	اُنفاہ / اُنفاہے .
Assiya / assiini.	He covered / He covers.	اُسّیہ / اُسّیے .
Bireetiya / bireetiini.	It rained / It rains.	برتیہ / برتیے .
Daasiya / daasiini.	He put / He puts.	داسیہ / داسیے .
Daayiya / daayiini.	He did / He does.	دایہ / دایے .
Hasamiya / hasamiini.	He passed / He passes.	ہسّمیہ / ہسّمیے .
Hawsooya, hawsooyiya / hawsooyiini.	He dreamt / He dreams.	ہوسّویہ, ہوسّویہ / ہوسّویے .
Hiisiya / hiisiini, hiisiyiini.	He thought / He thinks.	ہیسیہ / ہیسیے .
Jarrabiya / jarrabiini.	He tried / He tries.	جرّیہ / جرّیے .
Kwinhiya / kwinhiini.	He sounded, shouted / He sounds, shouts.	کونہیہ / کونہیے .
Lingwuuyiya / lingwuuyiini.	He sent / He sends.	لنقّویہ / لنقّویے .
Mitiyaayiya / mitiyaayiini.	He described / He describes.	میتایہ / میتایے .
Neewiya / neewiini.	He insulted / He insults.	نیویہ / نیویے .
Nuuniya / nuuniini.	He sent, handed / He sends, hands.	نونیہ / نونیے .
Rafoofiya / rafoofiini.	He beat / He beats.	رفوفیہ / رفوفیے .
Saffagiya / saffagiini.	He clapped hands / He claps hands.	سفقّیہ / سفقّیے .
Tawwariya / tawwariini.	He developed / He develops.	توریہ / توریے .

Imperatives

<319>

From the imperatives it is easy to recognize whether a verb is weak or strong. Here follows another list of the imperatives of weak verbs. The most frequent ones are marked and should be studied first.

Imperatives: Weak Verbs by Frequencies

Adgiraa / adgirii / adgiraana!	Be able (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	أدقرا / أدقري / أدقرانه!
Afasaa / afasii / afasaana!	Explain, make known (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أفسا / أفسي / أفسانه!
Afhamaa / afhamii / afhamaana!	Understand (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أفهما / أفهمي / أفهمانه!
Afooyaa / afooyii / afooyaana!	Forgive (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أفويا / أفويي / أفويانه!
Agriiyaa / agriiyii / agriiyaana!	Read (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أقريا / أقريني / أقريناه!
Areeyaa / areeyii / areeyaana!	Want, like (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	أرتيا / أرئني / أرئناه!
Asbiraa / asbirii / asbiraana!	Be patient (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أسبرا / أسبري / أسبراناه!
Assaa / assii / assaana!	Cover (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أستا / أسئي / أستناه!
B'aa! / B'ii / b'aana!	Lie down (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بآ / باي / باناه!
Badooyaa / badooyii / badooyaana!	Begin (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بدويا / بدويي / بدويانه!
Bhaliyaa / bhaliyii / bhaliyaana!	Speak, Talk (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بهلييا / بهليي / بهلييانه!
Daayaa / daayii / daayaana!	Do (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	دايا / داوي / دايناه!
Dhaabaa / Dhaabii / dhaabaana!	Run (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ذابا / ذابي / ذابانه!
Dhibaa / dhibii / dhibaana!	Fall (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ذبا / ذبي / ذباناه!
Diiraa / Diirii / diiraana!	Stare (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ديرا / ديري / ديرانه!
Diwaa / diwii / diwaana!	Sleep (M) / (F) / (PL)!	دوا / دوي / دواناه!
Faayisaa / faayisii / faayisaana!	Finish something (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فايسا / فايصي / فايساناه!
Fagaramaa / fagaramii / fagaramaana!	Have courage (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فقرما / فقرمي / فقرماناه!
Fartakaa / fartakii / fartakaana!	Disperse (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فرتكا / فرتكي / فرتكاناه!
Fiinaa / fiinii / fiinaana!	Rest (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فينا / فيني / فينانه!
Giigaa / giigii / giigaana!	Leave, go away (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	قيقا / قيسي / قيقانه!
Gw'aa / gw'ii / gw'aana!	Drink (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	قوا / قواي / قواناه!
Gw'asaa / gw'asii / gw'asaana!	Give to drink (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قواسا / قواسي / قواساناه!
Gwuugamaa / gwuugamii / gwuugamaana!	Look (quickly) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قووقما / قووقمي / قووقماناه!
Ha'aa / ha'ii / haam'aana!	Bring (M) / (F) / (PL)! (very frequent)	هاآ / هاي / هاماناه!
Hadiidaa / hadiidii / hadiidaana!	Talk (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هاديدا / هاديدي / هاديديانه!
Hawaayaa / hawaayii / hawaayaana!	Play (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هوايا / هوايي / هوايناه!
Hiisaa / hiisii / hiisaana!	Think (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هيسا / هيسي / هيساناه!
Hireeraa / hireerii / hireeraana!	Walk (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هريرا / هريري / هريراناه!
Hukwumaa / hukwumii / hukwumaana!	Rule, govern, decide (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هكوما / هكومي / هكوماناه!

Iibaabaa / iibaabii / iibaabaana!	Travel (M) / (F) / (PL)!	إيبابا / إيبابي / إيبابانه!
Jarrabaa / jarrabii / jarrabaana!	Try (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	جرّبا / جرّبي / جرّبانه!
Kafaa / kafii / kafaana!	Sing / dance (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كفا / كفي / كفانه!
Kwaramaa / Kwaramii / kwaramaana!	Bow down (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كُورما / كُوري / كُورمانه!
Lakkataa / lakkatii / lakkataana!	Collect (M) / (F) / (PL)!	لكّتا / لكّتي / لكّتانه!
Lhaa / lhii / lhaana!	Be angry, be ill (M) / (F) / (PL)!	لها / لهي / لهانه!
M'aa / m'ii / m'aana!	Come (M) / (F) / (PL)! (very frequent)	مآ / ماي / مآنه!
Mhasaa / mhasii / mhasaana!	Eat lunch (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مهّسا / مهّسي / مهّسانه!
Neewaa / neewii / neewaana!	Insult, blaspheme (M) / (F) / (PL)!	نيوا / نيوي / نيوانه!
Niinaa / niinii / niinaana!	Hum, sing (M) / (F) / (PL)!	نيننا / نيني / نيننانه!
Oobaa / oobii / oobaana!	Track (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ؤبا / وببي / وببانه!
Raataa, araataa / raatii / raataana!	Ask (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	راتا، أ راتا / راتي / راتانه!
Rayhamaa / rayhamii / rayhamaana!	Be relaxed, comforted (M) / (F) / (PL)!	رَيهّما / رَيهّمي / رَيهّمانه!
Reewaa / reewii / reewaana!	Climb, stop (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ريوا / ريوي / ريوانه!
Rhisaa / rhisii / rhisaana!	Show (M) / (F) / (PL)!	رهّسا / رهّسي / رهّسانه!
Sakaa / sakii / sakaana!	Work, do (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	سكا / سكي / سكانه!
Salaamaa / salaamii / salaamaana!	Greet (M) / (F) / (PL)!	سلاّما / سلاّمي / سلاّمانه!
Shagaamaa / shagaamii / shagaamaana!	Work (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شقاّما / شقاّمي / شقاّمانه!
Shakiidhaa / shakiidhii / shakiidhaana!	Scratch (REP) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شكّيّدا / شكّيّدي / شكّيّدانه!
Shuumaa / shuumii / shuumaana!	Enter (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شُوما / شُومي / شُومانه!
Soomaayaa / soomaayii / soomaayaana!	Tell a secret (M) / (F) / (PL)!	سُومايا / سُومايي / سُومايانه!
Sooyaa / sooyii / sooyaana!	Inform, tell (M) / (F) / (PL)! (frequent)	سُويا / سُويي / سُويانته!
Tamaa / tamii / tamaana!	Eat (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تما / تمي / تمانه!
Tatehaa / Tatehii / tatehaana!	Touch (REP) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تتها / تتهي / تتهانته!
Tehaa! / Tehii / tehaana!	Touch once (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تها! / تهي / تهانته!
Thathaa / thathii / thathaana!	Have a seat (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ثُثّا / ثُثّي / ثُثّانته!
Tikwaa / tikwii / tikwaana!	Descend (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تِكْوا / تِكْوي / تِكْوانته!
Waawaa! Waawii / waawaana!	Cry, weep (M) / (F) / (PL)!	واوا! واوي / واوانته!

Conversation 14: 'Doctor and Patient' (Examples of the Present Tense)

<320>

D: doctor, P: patient

#1	
D: Oosmook aab eeyadna?	oo-sm-ook aab ZERO-eeyad-na
D: What is your name?	ARTSGMOBJ-name-POSSG2 whoOBJM IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3
#2	
P: Uusmu Aliib eeyadna.	uu-sm-u aliib ZERO-eeyad-na
P: They call me Ali.	ARTSGMSUBJ-name-POSSG1 Ali IMPFPL3PF-say- IMPFPL3
#3	
D: Naakaat massi tibariya?	naakaat massi ti-bari-ya
D: How old are you?	how.many year PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M
#4	
P: Oon'ani timasseeti daayiib kaakan.	oon-'ani ti-masseet-i daayiib kaa-kan
P: Myself, I don't know the years well.	NEARSGMOBJPF-SG1 ARTPLF-year-CASGEN good NEGIMPFSG1PF-know
#5	
Laakiin Haayli Sillaassi oon'umhiinaan eeyanhoob, farayu.	laakiin haayli sillaassi oon-'u-mhiinaan ee-ya-nhoob far-aay-u
But I was born when Haile Selassie was here.	but Haile Selassie NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-place come-PERFSG3M-ADV+when born-PTCPPAST- IDSG13M
#6	
D: Naanaatii gwirhamtiniya / gwiryamtiniya?	naanaat-ii gwirham-tiniya
D: From what do you suffer?	what.thing-ADV+off suffer-IMPFSG2M
#7	
P: Uun'ani haafiit lhanayteeh gwiryamani.	uun-'ani haaf-iit lhanayt-eeh gwirham-ani
P: I suffer from stomach trouble.	NEARSGMSUBJPF-SG1 belly-CASGEN sickness- POSSG3 suffer-IMPFSG1
#8	
D: Naakaat tiina tibariya eettihanayteek gwiryamtaaneeka?	naakaat tiin-a ti-bariy-a eet-ti-lhanayt-eek gwirham- taan-ee-ka
D: How many days is it (do you have) since you suffer from this your sickness?	how.many sun-PL PERFSG2MPF-have-PERFSG2M NEARPLFOBJPF-ARTPLF-sickness-POSSG2 suffer- PERFPL2-WH-than
#9	

P: Uun amsi nagaaru / asaramaatu, hiisani.	uun amsi nagaar-u asaramaat-u hiis-ani
P: Now today (LIT this today) it is the second day / a week, I think.	NEARSGMSUBJ today second.day-IDSG13M seven-IDSG13F think-IMPFSG1
#10	
D: Huutamtiniya?	huutam-tiniya
D: Do you vomit?	vomit-IMPFSG2M
#11	
P: Kahuutaman.	ka-huutam-an
P: I don't vomit.	NEGIMPFSG1PF-vomit-NEGIMPFSG1
#12	
D: Malaal teebiya?	malaal t-eebi-ya
D: Do you have diarrhea?	diarrhea IMPFSG2MPF-go-IMPFSG2M
#13	
P: Doorka doorka malaal eebi.	door-ka door-ka malaal ZERO-eebi
P: From time to time I have diarrhea.	time-than time-than diarrhea IMPFSG1PF-go
#14	
D: Wanaaneeka naan tamta?	wanaanee-ka naan tam-ta
D: Since this morning, what did you eat?	before.morning-ADV+since what eat-PERFSG3F
#15	
P: Tum'ariitiib win nifis kaabaru.	tu-m'ariit-iib win nifis kaa-baru
P: I have no great appetite for any meal.	ARTSGF-food-ADV+at big appetite NEGIMPFSG1PF-have
#16	
D: Suuri dabaab hakiim rhamaawa?	suuri dabaab hakiim rham-aa-wa
D: Before this, have you been seen by a doctor?	ahead additionally doctor be.seen-PTCPPAST-IDSG2M
#17	
P: Kaaki.	kaa-ki
P: I haven't.	NEGIMPFSG1PF-be
#18	
D: Aflaa, uyafook haaksa!	aflaa u-yaf-ook haaks-a
D: Well, open your mouth.	so.then ARTSGM-mouth-POSSSG2 open-FUTSG
#19	
P: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
P: O.K.	good-IDSG13F

#20	
D: Naat hooy kalawta / kitihaayi.	naat hooy ka-law-ta kit-iha
D: Nothing can be seen here / nothing is there.	thing at NEGIMPFSG3FPF-appear-NEGIMPFSG3F NEGIMPFSG3FPF-be
#21	
Oon'oomhiin b'a!	oon-'oo-mhiin b'-a
Lie down here!	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place lie.down- IMPVM
#22	
P: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
P: O.K.	good-IDSG13F
#23	
D: Naat kitbaruwa.	naat kit-baru-wa
D: You don't have anything.	thing NEGIMPFSG2MPF-have-NEGIMPFSG2M
#24	
Laakiin mheel gaal dehook iiktib andi.	laakiin mheel gaal dehook ii-ktib a-ndi
But I will prescribe (LIT write) a medicine for you.	but spice one toSG2M FUTSG-write IMPFSG1PF-say
#25	
Oon'oomheel faayistiihoob, shaawi gaabalaahieb!	oon-'oo-mheel faayis-tii-hoob shaawi gaabal-aa- heeb
When you have finished this medicine, visit me again!	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-spice finish.something-PASTSG3F-ADV+when additionally visit-IMPVM-OBJS1
#26	
P: Allaa tankwiikweek. L'aab naayaa!	allaa ZERO-tankwiikw-eek l'-aab naa-yaa
P: If God allows. Good bye!	God IMPFSG3MPF-create-ADV+if be.cool-PTCPPAST pass.night-IMPVM
#27	
D: Asigaab, l'aab naayaa!	asigaab l'-aab naa-yaa
D: The same to you, good bye!	peaceful be.cool-PTCPPAST pass.night-IMPVM

<321>

<p>۱ ۆسمۆك آب یتدنه؟ ۲ اوسم ایلپ یتدنه. ۳ ناکات مسسه تیریه؟ ۴ ۆنانے تمسیتے دایپ کاکن. ۵ لاکین هایله سیلاسه ۆن ۆمهینان یتنهۆب. فرای. ۶ ناناتی قورهمتییه؟ ۷ اوانانے هافیت لهنتییه قورهمنه. ۸ ناکات یتنه تیریه یتلهنتیک قورهمنانیکه؟ ۹ اون اوسسه نقار / اسرماث. هیسنه. ۱۰ هومتتییه؟ ۱۱ کھوتمن. ۱۲ ملال تییه؟ ۱۳ دۆرکه دۆرکه ملال یسه. ۱۴ ونانیکه نان نمته؟ ۱۵ ثمارتیپ ون نفیس کابز. ۱۶ شورے دبب هکیم رهماوه؟ ۱۷ کاکه. ۱۸ افلا، ائفوک هاکسه! ۱۹ دایپت. ۲۰ نات هوی کلوته / کییه. ۲۱ ۆنۆمهین باه! ۲۲ دایپت. ۲۳ نات کیتزوه. ۲۴ لاکین مهیل قال دهوک ایکتب انده. ۲۵ ۆنۆمهیل فایستییهۆب. شاوه قابلاهیپ! ۲۶ آلا تنکویکونک. لآب نایا! ۲۷ اسقاب. لآب نایا!</p>

Strong Verbs: Subject Prefixes

<322>

The so-called strong verbs or class 2 verbs are typical of Semitic verbs. They have subject prefixes like a-, t-, i-. Although these verbs are considered to be difficult and full of irregularities, it will be seen that the apparent exceptions are manageable. The most frequent verbs will be tackled first, starting with the verb 'to say'.

Person Affixes

<323>

The past tense forms of the strong verb 'I said' etc. are already familiar from the present tense forms of the weak verb 'I start' (see Verbs Ending in Consonants above). The reason is that the suffixes of 'to start' are the same as the paradigm of 'to say': Compare the suffixes of yak- 'to start' and the paradigm of 'to say' in Table 29 below.

<324>

Actually, there are two paradigms of 'I said, you said' etc., namely -ni and -di. Presently, for most Beja dialects the second paradigm is the most common one, while the other one has only survived with certain speakers and in certain forms.

Table 29: Past Paradigm of 'to say'

1	2 / 3	1		2 / 3	
Yakani.	Ani / adi.	I start.	يَكْنِي .	I said.	أَنْعُ / أَدَعُ .
Yaktiniya.	Tiniya / tidiya.	You (M) start.	يَكْتِينِيَه .	You (M) said.	تِينِيَه / تَدِيَه .
Yaktinii.	Tinii / tidii.	You (F) start.	يَكْتِينِي .	You (F) said.	تِينِي / تَدِي .
Yakiini.	Ini / idi.	He starts.	يَكِينِيَه .	He said.	إِنِيَه / إِدِيَه .
Yaktini.	Tini / tidi.	She starts.	يَكْتِينِيَه .	She said.	تِينِيَه / تَدِيَه .
Yaknay.	Nini / nidi.	We start.	يَكْنِي .	We said.	نِنِيَه / نَدِيَه .
Yakteena.	Teena / tidiina.	You (PL) start.	يَكْتِينِيَه .	You (PL) said.	تِينِيَه / تَدِينِيَه .
Yakeen.	Een / idiin.	They start.	يَكْنِيَن .	They said.	إِنِيَن / إِدِينِيَن .

<325>

The verb stem and the person affixes can be extracted from Table 29, as shown in Table 30. Other tenses use exactly the same person affixes, but with different verb stems.

Table 30: Subject Prefixes of Strong Verbs

Affixes:			'say':		
a-	I (PAST / PERF)	أ-	Adi.	I said.	أَدَعُ .
ti- -a	you (M PAST)	تِي-أ-	Tidiya.	You (M) said.	تَدِيَه .
ti- -i	you (F PAST)	تِي-إ-	Tidii.	You (F) said.	تَدِي .
i-	he (PAST)	إ-	Idi.	He said.	إَدَعُ .
ti-	she (PAST)	تِي-	Tidi.	She said.	تَدَعُ .
ni-	we (PAST)	نِي-	Nidi.	We said.	نَدَعُ .
ti- -na	you (PL PAST)	تِي-ن-	Tidiina.	You (PL) said.	تَدِينِيَه .
i- -n / -na	they (PAST)	إ-ن- / ن-	Idiin.	They said.	إَدِينِيَن .

Patterns of Strong Verbs and the Basic Stem

<326>

The basic stem of a strong verb may have up to 7 different shapes. All of these shapes can largely be predicted from the imperative form of a verb - or more exactly: from the CV pattern of the imperative, after the imperative suffix -a is deleted. Therefore it is useful to always identify the imperative and the way in which consonants (C) and vowels (V) follow each other in the imperative.

<327>

To give an example: The imperative of the verb 'to write' is kitiba, so its basic Form is kitib-, and its CV pattern is CiCiC.

<328>

For most verbs, the other tense, aspect forms can be predicted from this CV pattern: Verbs of the same CV pattern generally behave in the same way. Even the difference between verbs of the patterns CiCiC and CiC can largely be ignored. So kitiba 'write' and tiba 'fill' have the patterns CiCiC- and CiC-, and all verbs of this pattern behave in the same way.

<329>

Here are two more examples of identifying the basic stem and its CV pattern:

- For the verb diya 'say (M)!' the stem would be diy- 'to say', and the CV pattern would be Ciy-.
- For the verb d'iya 'do (M)!' the stem would be d'iy- 'to do', and the CV pattern would be C'iy-.

The Basic Stem and the Other Stems

<330>

The (Sg M) form of the imperative is usually quoted as the most neutral, most basic form of a verb, and the imperative without the '(M)' suffix -a is usually quoted as the basic stem of the verb.

<331>

So the verb 'to say' is diya (literally: 'say (M)!'), and the stem is diy. For 'to say', the imperative stem and the imperative forms therefore are as follows:

Basic Stem (Number 1)

-diy-	Basic Stem of 'to say'	
Diya!	Say (M)!	دیه!
Diyi!	Say (F)!	دیرے!
Diina! (< diy-na)	Say (PL)!	دینہ! (> دی-نہ)

Basic Stem (Number 1) and Past, Perfect

<332>

The tense, aspect which is used most frequently - especially in narratives (stories), is the past, perfect. Here is the complete past, perfect paradigm of diya 'to say' again. This paradigm is already familiar from the suffixes of the weak verbs (see yak 'to arise' or tam 'to eat', above).

	Past, Perfect Paradigm of 'to say'	
Adi.	I said.	أدے.
Tidiya.	You (M) said.	تدینہ.

Tidii.	You (F) said.	تیدی .
Idi.	He said.	ادی .
Tidi.	She said.	تدی .
Nidi.	We said.	ندی .
Tidiina.	You (PL) said.	تدینہ .
Idiin.	They said.	ادین .

Basic Stem (Number 1) and Negative Present

<333>

The negative present tense uses the same forms as the past tense, but with ki- 'not' as a prefix. Because of this prefix, some minor adjustments need to be made: As usual, the t- will be adjusted (assimilated) to the next consonant, and the suffix for 'they' will be -n after vowels, but -na after consonants. And before a, the ki- will change to ka-.

<334>

To identify all of these phonological changes, compare the tables above and below.

-diy-	Basic Stem of 'to say'	
Kaadi.	I don't say.	کادی .
Kiddiya.	You (M) don't say.	کیدیہ .
Kiddiyi.	You (F) don't say.	کیدی .
Kiidi.	He doesn't say.	کیدی .
Kiddi.	She doesn't say.	کیدی .
Kindi.	We don't say.	کیدی .
Kiddiina.	You (PL) don't say.	کدینہ .
Kiidiin.	They don't say.	کیدین .

Basic Stem (Number 1) and Participle

<335>

The participle is the verb form which behaves like an adjective. It is formed by attaching -a, -aab, -aat to the basic stem.

-diy-	Basic Stem of 'to say'	
diyaab	having said (M)	دیاب
diyaat	having said (F)	دیات

Negative Imperative Stem (Number 2)

<336>

The negative imperative stem differs from the basic stem because the last syllable is lengthened. For the verb diy- 'to say' there is only one syllable, and it is lengthened to diiy-.

-diiy-	Stem of 'to say (NEG IMPV)'	
Baadiiya!	Don't say (M)!	بادیہ!

Biidiyi!	Don't say (F)!	بیدییے!
Baadiina!	Don't say (PL)!	بادینہ!

Present Singular and Plural Stems (Number 3 and 4)

<337>

For the present tense, strong verbs even use two stems - one for present singular and one for present plural. In the case of 'to say', the two stems are ndi (SG), and eeyad (PL).

-ndi-	Stem of 'to say (PRES SG)'	
Andi.	I say.	اُندے.
Tindiya.	You (M) say.	تندیہ.
Tindii.	You (F) say.	تندی.
indi.	He says.	اُندے.
Tindi.	She says.	تندے.
-eeyad-	Stem of 'to say (PRES PL)'	
Neeyad.	We say.	نیئد.
Teeyadna.	You (PL) say.	تئیئدنه.
Eeyadna.	They say.	تئدنه.

Future Positive and Negative Stem (Number 5)

<338>

The present tense of 'to say' also serves as an auxiliary to express the future ('I will' etc.) as well as the intentional ('I want to') for all verbs. So the paradigms of 'I will say' / 'I won't say' are as follows.

-iyaad-	Stem of 'to say (FUT)'	
Iyaad andi / Iyaad kaadi.	I will say / won't say.	اِیاد اُندے / اِیاد کادے.
Iyaad tindiya / Iyaad kiddiya.	You (M) will say / won't say.	اِیاد تندیہ / اِیاد کیدیہ.
Iyaad tindii / Iyaad kiddiyi.	You (F) will say / won't say.	اِیاد تندی / اِیاد کیدی.
Iyaad indi / Iyaad kiidi.	He will say / won't say.	اِیاد اُندے / اِیاد کیدے.
Iyaad tindi / Iyaad kiddi.	She will say / won't say.	اِیاد تندے / اِیاد کدے.
Niyaad neeyad / Niyaad kindi.	We will say / won't say.	نییاد نیئد / نییاد کئدے.
Iyaad teeyadna / Iyaad kiddiina.	You (PL) will say / won't say	اِیاد تئیئدنه / اِیاد کیدیئنه.
Iyaad eeyadna / Iyaad kiidiin.	They will say / won't say.	اِیاد تئدنه / اِیاد کیدیئین.

Past Continuous Stem (Number 6)

<339>

The past continuous forms express ongoing or habitual events in the past, as well as non-real events, especially in conditional sentences like 'I would have said, if ...' (It has also been called pluperfect). The stem of this paradigm is -iiyid-.

-iiyid-	Stem of 'to say (PAST CONT)'	
Iiyid.	I was saying, would say.	اَيِيد .
Tiiyida.	You (M) were saying, would say.	تَيِيدِه .
Tiiyidi.	You (F) were saying, would say.	تَيِيدِه .
Iiyid.	He was saying, would say.	اَيِيد .
Tiiyid.	She was saying, would say.	تَيِيد .
Niiyid.	We were saying, would say.	نَيِيد .
Tiiyidna.	You (PL) were saying, would say.	تَيِيدْنَه .
Iiyidna.	They were saying, would say.	اَيِيدْنَه .

Noun of Action Stem (Number 7)

-yaad-	Stem of Action Noun	
oo-miyaad	the saying	ؤ-ويياد

More Verb Forms

<340>

The above verb stems provide all tense, aspect forms of the Beja verb system. There are only two kinds of extensions which can be added to these verb forms:

1. Auxiliary verbs such as the verb indicating future - e.g. y'i andi 'I will come (LIT To-come I-say)' (See section Tense and Aspect below).
2. Adverbial suffixes such as the suffix indicating conditional - e.g. andi 'I say, mean' > andiyeek 'If I say' (See section Clause Sub-Ordination below).

The Main Paradigms

<341>

The verb which serves as the first example for strong verbs is diya 'to say'. This verb has a very high frequency both in everyday language and in narratives. The table below gives a complete overview of the forms of this verb. The overview of other verb families will be presented according to the same pattern. The positive forms will always be given on the left hand side, and the negative forms on the right.

<342>

The table below includes the different stems of the verb, together with the paradigms that are based on it.

<343>

It should be noted again that there are seven different stems, numbered from 1 to 7. Roughly speaking, the stems which are used most frequently are stems 1 to 4. It will be seen that the basic stem (number 1), serves as the basis for most of the paradigms. The numbers referring to the seven stems are noted in the following paradigms for each conjugational pattern. Further reference to these seven stems can be found in the annex.

The pattern Ci(y)- of diya

1 di(y)	1 Basic Stem	دے ۱ (ي)	2 dii(y)	2. Negative Stem	دِي ۲ (ي)
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	

Diya!	Say (M)!	دِیہ!	Baadiya!	Don't say (M)!	بادیہ!
Diyi!	Say (F)!	دِیہے!	Biidiyi!	Don't say (F)!	پیدیہے!
Diina!	Say (PL)!	دِینہ!	Baadiina!	Don't say (PL)!	بادینہ!
1	PTCP/SUB:	۱	2	NEG PTCP:	۲
diyaab	saying	دیاب	baadi	not saying	بادے
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Adi.	I said.	اُدے.	Diyaab kaaki.	I didn't say.	دیاب کا کہے.
Tidiya.	You (M) said.	تِدیہ.	Diyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't say.	دیاب کِٹا.
Tidii.	You (F) said.	تِدی.	Diyaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't say.	دیات کِٹا ہے.
Idi.	He said.	اِدے.	Diyaab kiiki.	He didn't say.	دیاب کِیکے.
Tidi.	She said.	تِدے.	Diyaat kitti.	She didn't say.	دیات کِٹے.
Nidi.	We said.	نِدے.	Diyaab kinki.	We didn't say.	دیاب کِنکے.
Tidiina.	You (PL) said.	تِدینہ.	Diyaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't say.	دیاب کِٹینہ.
Idiin.	They said.	اِدین.	Diyaab kiikeen.	They didn't say.	دیاب کِیکین.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Andi.	I say.	اُنْدے.	Kaadi.	I don't say.	کا دے.
Tindiya.	You (M) say.	تِندیہ.	Kiddiya.	You (M) don't say.	کِدیہ.
Tindii.	You (F) say.	تِندی.	Kiddii.	You (F) don't say.	کِدی.
Indi.	He says.	اِنْدے.	Kiidi.	He doesn't say.	کِیدے.
Tindi.	She says.	تِنْدے.	Kiddi.	She doesn't say.	کِیدے.
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Neeyad.	We say.	نِیْدے.	Kindi.	We don't say.	کِنْدے.
Teeyadna.	You (PL) say.	تِیْدینہ.	Kiddiina.	You (PL) don't say.	کِیْدینہ.
Eeyadna.	They say.	تِیْدنہ.	Kiidiin.	They don't say.	کِیْدین.
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Iyaad andi.	I will say.	اِیاد اُنْدے.	Iyaad kaadi.	I won't say.	یاد کا دے.
6	PAST CONT:	۶	1	NEG PAST CONT:	۱
Iiyid.	I was saying.	اِیْدے.	Diyaab kaaki.	I didn't say.	دیاب کا کہے.
Tiiyida.	You (M) were saying.	تِیْدہ.	Diyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't say.	دیاب کِٹا.
Tiiyidi.	You (F) were saying.	تِیْدے.	Diyaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't say.	دیات کِٹا ہے.
Iiyid.	He was saying.	اِیْدے.	Diyaab kiiki.	He didn't say.	دیاب کِیکے.
Tiiyid.	She was saying.	تِیْدے.	Diyaat kitti.	She didn't say.	دیات کِٹے.
Niiyid.	We were saying.	نِیْدے.	Diyaab kinki.	We didn't say.	دیاب کِنکے.

Tiiyidna.	You (PL) were saying.	تِيِيدِنَه .	Diyaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't say.	دِيَاب كِيْتِنَه .
Iiyidna.	They were saying.	اِيِيدِنَه .	Diyaab kiikeen.	They didn't say.	دِيَاب كِيِكِين .
7	Noun of Action:	٧			
oo-myaad	the saying	ؤ-مياد			

<344>

There are no other verbs of exactly the same pattern as diy- 'to say'. The closest similarity is with the pattern of d'iy- 'to do, to put'.

The Pattern CHiy- of d'iya

1 d'i(y)	1 Basic Stem	١ دِاِ (ي)	2 d'ii(y)	2 Negative Stem	٢ دَاِ (ي)
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
D'iya!	Do (M) !	دَاِيه!	Baad'aayaay!	Don't do (M) !	بادَاِيه!
D'iyi!	Do (F)!	دَاِيه!	Biid'iyi!	Don't do (F)!	بيِيدَاِيه!
D'iina!	Do (PL)!	دَاِينه!	Baad'iina!	Don't do (PL)!	بادَاِينه!
1	PTCP / SUB:	١	2	NEG PTCP:	٢
d'iyaab	having done	دَاِياب	baad'iiyay	not doing	بادَاِيهي
1	PAST:	١	1	NEG PAST:	١
Ad'i.	I did.	أَدِاِ .	D'iyaab kaaki.	I didn't say.	دَاِياب كَاكِه .
Tid'iya.	You (M) did.	تَدَاِيه .	D'iyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't say.	دَاِياب كِيْتَا .
Tid'ii.	You (F) did.	تَدَاِيهي .	D'iyaaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't say.	دَاِيات كِيْتَايهي .
Id'i.	He did.	إِدَاِ .	D'iyaab kiiki.	He didn't say.	دَاِياب كِيِكِيه .
Tid'i.	She did.	تَدَاِيهي .	D'iyaaat kitti.	She didn't say.	دَاِيات كِيْتِيه .
Nid'i.	We did.	نَدَاِيهي .	D'iyaab kinki.	We didn't say.	دَاِياب كِيِنكيه .
Tid'iina.	You (PL) did.	تَدَاِينه .	D'iyaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't say.	دَاِياب كِيْتِنَه .
Id'iin.	They did.	إِدَاِينه .	D'iyaab kiikeen.	They didn't say.	دَاِياب كِيِكِين .
3	PRES SG:	٣	1	NEG PRES:	١
Adan'i / and'i.	I do.	أَدَاِ / أَدَاِ .	Kaad'i.	I don't do.	كَاَدَاِ .
Dan'iya.	You (M) do.	دَاِياهي .	Kitd'iya.	You (M) don't do.	كِيْتدَاِيهي .
Dan'ii.	You (F) do.	دَاِياهي .	Kitd'ii.	You (F) did.	تَدَاِيهي .
Dan'i.	He does.	دَاِيهي .	Kiid'i.	He did.	دَاِيهي .
Dan'i.	She does.	دَاِيهي .	Kidd'i.	She did.	تَدَاِيهي .

4	PRES PL:	٤	1		١
Nid'i / need'i.	We do.	نِدا / نِدا.	Kind'i.	We did.	کِنِدا.
Tid'ina.	You (PL) do.	تِدا نِه.	Kidd'iina.	You (PL) did.	کِنِدا نِه.
Id'iin.	They do.	اِدا نِه.	Kiid'iin.	They did.	کِنِدا نِه.
5	FUT:	٥		NEG FUT:	
Iid'a, ad'a andi.	I will do.	اِدا، اِدا، اُنْدِ.	Iid'a kaadi.	I will not do.	اِدا کادا.
6	PAST CONT:	٦	1	NEG PAST Cont.:	١
Iid'i.	I was doing.	اِدا.	D'iyaaab kaaki.	I didn't say.	داياب کاکی.
Tiid'iyaa.	You (M) were doing.	تِدا نِه.	D'iyaaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't say.	داياب کتا.
Tiid'ii.	You (F) were doing.	تِدا نِه.	D'iyaaab kittayyi.	You (F) didn't say.	دايات کتايي.
Iid'i.	He was doing.	اِدا.	D'iyaaab kiiki.	He didn't say.	داياب کيکي.
Tiid'i.	She was doing.	تِدا.	D'iyaaab kitti.	She didn't say.	دايات کتي.
Niid'i.	We were doing.	نِدا.	D'iyaaab kinki.	We didn't say.	داياب کنکي.
Tiid'iina.	You (PL) were doing.	تِدا نِه.	D'iyaaab kittena.	You (PL) didn't say.	داياب کتنه.
Iid'iin.	They were doing.	اِدا نِه.	D'iyaaab kiikeen.	They didn't say.	داياب کيکتن.
7	Noun of Action:	٧			
oo-d'uuy	the doing	و-دوي			

<345>

There are more verbs of the same pattern. The list is not long, but one or two of these verbs are quite common. It should be noted that the patterns of diya 'to say' and d'iyaa 'to do' are similar to each other especially if the hamzah is disregarded.

Verbs like d'iyaa

n'iyaa	be down, go down (infrequent)	نايه
d'iyaa	be jealous (infrequent)	دايه
mhiyaa	be left, remain (less frequent)	مويه
t'iyaa	be similar (very frequent)	تايه
s'iyaa	be sure of, rely on (infrequent)	سايه

The Pattern CiC- of riba

1 rib	1 Basic Stem	١ رِب	2 riib	2 Negative Stem	٢ رِب
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	

Riba!	Refuse (M)!	رہہ!	Baariiba!	Don't refuse (M)!	ہارہہ!
Ribi!	Refuse (F)!	رہے!	Biiriibi!	Don't refuse (F)!	ہیرہے!
Ribna!	Refuse (PL)!	رہنہ!	Baariibna!	Don't refuse (PL)!	ہارہنہ!
1	PTCP/SUB:	۱	2	NEG PTCP:	۲
ribaab	having refused (M)	ریاب	baariib	not refusing	ہارہی
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Arib.	I refused.	اُرب.	Ribaab kaaki.	I didn't refuse.	ریاب کاکیے.
Tiriba.	You (M) refused.	تہہ.	Ribaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't refuse.	ریاب کتھا.
Tiribi.	You (F) refused.	تہے.	Ribaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't refuse.	ریات کتھایے.
Irib.	He refused.	اُرب.	Ribaab kiiki.	He didn't refuse.	ریاب کیکیے.
Tirib.	She refused.	تہہ.	Ribaat kitti.	She didn't refuse.	ریات کتھے.
Nirib.	We refused.	نہہ.	Ribaab kinki.	We didn't refuse.	ریاب کینکے.
Tiribna.	You (PL) refused.	تہنہ.	Ribaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't refuse.	ریاب کتھنہ.
Iribna.	They refused.	اُرنہ.	Ribaab kiikeen.	They didn't refuse.	ریاب کیکین.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Arriib.	I refuse.	اُریب.	Kaarib.	I don't refuse.	کارب.
Tirriiba.	You (M) refuse.	تہہہ.	Kitriba.	You (M) don't refuse.	کتہہہ.
Tirriibi.	You (F) refuse.	تہہے.	Kitribi.	You (F) don't refuse.	کتہہے.
Iriib.	He refuses.	اُریب.	Kiirib.	He doesn't refuse	کیرب.
Tirriib.	She refuses.	تہہہ.	Kitrib.	She doesn't refuse.	کتہہہ.
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Neerib.	We refuse.	نہہہ.	Kinrib.	We don't refuse.	کنہہہ.
Teeribna.	You (PL) refuse.	تہہنہہ.	Kitribna.	You (PL) don't refuse.	کتہہنہہ.
Eeribna.	They refuse.	تہہنہ.	Kiiribna.	They don't refuse.	کیہہنہہ.
5	FUT:	۵		NEG FUT:	
Irib andi.	I will refuse.	اُریب اندے.	Irib kaadi.	I won't refuse.	اُریب کادے.
6	PAST CONT:	۶		NEG PAST CONT:	
Iirib.	I was refusing.	اُریب.	Ribaab kaaki.	I didn't refuse.	ریاب کاکیے.

Tiiriba.	You (M) were refusing.	تیریبہ .	Ribaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't refuse.	ریاب کیتا .
Tiiribi.	You (F) were refusing.	تیریبے .	Ribaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't refuse.	ریات کیتایے .
Iirib.	He was refusing.	ایرب .	Ribaab kiiki.	He didn't refuse.	ریاب کیکے .
Tiirib.	She was refusing.	تیریب .	Ribaat kitti.	She didn't refuse.	ریات کیتے .
Niirib.	We were refusing.	نیرب .	Ribaab kinki.	We didn't refuse.	ریاب کینکے .
Tiiribna.	You (PL) were refusing.	تیرینہ .	Ribaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't refuse.	ریاب کیتینہ .
Iiribna.	They were refusing.	ایربنہ .	Ribaab kiikeen.	They didn't refuse.	ریاب کیکین .
7	Noun of Action:	۷			
oo-raab	the refusing	ؤ-راب			

<346>

There are more verbs of the same pattern CiC-.

Verbs like riba

Frequent verbs

riba	refuse (very frequent, verb of negation)	ریہ
simā	give a name	سیمہ
gida	throw	قیدہ
tiba	fill	تیبہ
difa	go away	دیفہ
dira	kill	درہ
kwina	have in mind	کونہ

Less frequent verbs

bira	snatch	برہ
dina	guess	دینہ
disa	be small	دسہ
fifa	pour	فیفہ
fika	threaten	فیکہ
fisha	warm up (sth.)	فیشہ
kwila	knock, hammer	کولہ
kwita	push	کوتہ
liga	lift, comb	لیفہ
liwa	burn (sth.)	لیوہ

mida	test	مدہ
mina	shave	منہ
mira	prepare (sth.)	مرہ
shiba	sharpen	شِبہ
sida	weave	سیدہ
sikwa	pull, sip once	سِکُوہ
wika	cut, scratch	وِکہ
wina	grow up	وِنہ

The Pattern CiCiC- of shibiba

1 shibib	1 Basic Stem	۱ شِبِب	2 shabiib	2 Negative Stem	۲ شَبِبِب
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Shibiba!	Look (M)!	شِبِبہ!	Baashabiiba!	Don't look (M)!	باَشِبِبہ!
Shibibi!	Look (F)!	شِبِبِیہ!	Biishabiibi!	Don't look (F)!	بِیَشِبِبِیہ!
Shibibna!	Look (PL)!	شِبِبِنہ!	Baashabiibna!	Don't look (PL)!	باَشِبِبِنہ!
1	PTCP/SUB	۱	2	NEG PTCP:	۲
shibbaab	having looked (M)	شِبِبَاب	baashabiib	not looking	باَشِبِبِی
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Ashbib.	I looked.	أَشِبِب.	Shibbaab kaaki.	I didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کاکی.
Tishbiba.	You (M) looked.	تَشِبِبہ.	Shibbaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کِٹَا.
Tishbibi.	You (F) looked.	تَشِبِبِیہ.	Shibbaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't look.	شِبِبَات کِٹَاہِی.
Ishbib.	He looked.	إَشِبِب.	Shibbaab kiiki.	He didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کِیکی.
Tishbib.	She looked.	تَشِبِبِیہ.	Shibbaat kitti.	She didn't look.	شِبِبَات کِٹِی.
Nishbib.	We looked.	نَشِبِبِیہ.	Shibbaab kinki.	We didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کِیکی.
Tishbibna.	You (PL) looked.	تَشِبِبِنہ.	Shibbaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کِٹِیَنہ.
Ishbibna.	They looked.	إَشِبِبِنہ.	Shibbaab kiikeen.	They didn't look.	شِبِبَاب کِیکیَن.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Ashanbiib.	I look.	أَشِبِبِیہ.	Kaashbib.	I don't look.	کاَشِبِبِیہ.
Shanbiiba.	You (M) look.	شَنِبِبِیہ.	Kitshibiba / kishshibiba.	You (M) don't look.	کِشِبِبِیہ.
Shanbiibi.	You (F) look.	شَنِبِبِیہِیہ.	Kitshibibi.	You (F) looked.	کِشِبِبِیہِیہ.

Shanbiib.	He looks.	شَنِيب .	Kiishbib.	He looked.	كيشيب .
Shanbiib.	She looks.	شَنِيب .	Kitshbib.	She looked.	كيشيب .
4	PRES PL:	٤	1		١
Nishabib.	We look.	نِشِب .	Kinshbib.	We looked.	كنشيب .
Tishabibna.	You (PL) look.	تِشِبِنه .	Kitshibibna.	You (PL) looked.	كيشيبِنه .
Ishabibna.	They look.	اِشِبِنه .	Kiishbibna.	They looked.	كيشيبِنه .
5	FUT:	٥	5	NEG FUT:	٥
Iishbib andi.	I will look.	اِشِب اُنْدِے .	Iishbib kaadi.	I won't look.	اِشِب کا دے .
6	PAST CONT:	٦	1	NEG PAST CONT:	١
Iishbib.	I was looking.	اِشِب .	Shibbaab kaaki.	I didn't look.	شِبَاب کا کھے .
Tiishbiba.	You (M) were looking.	تِشِبِبِه .	Shibbaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't look.	شِبَاب کِٹَا .
Tiishbibi.	You (F) were looking.	تِشِبِبِيے .	Shibbaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't look.	شِبَات کِٹَايِيے .
Iishbib.	He was looking.	اِشِب .	Shibbaab kiiki.	He didn't look.	شِبَاب کِيکھے .
Tiishbib.	She was looking.	تِشِبِب .	Shibbaat kitti.	She didn't look.	شِبَات کِٹھے .
Niishbib.	We were looking.	نِشِبِب .	Shibbaab kinki.	We didn't look.	شِبَاب کِنکھے .
Tiishbibna.	You (PL) were looking.	تِشِبِبِنه .	Shibbaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't look.	شِبَاب کِٹِينه .
Iishbibna.	They were looking.	اِشِبِبِنه .	Shibbaab kiikeen.	They didn't look.	شِبَاب کِيکِين .
7	Noun of Action:	٧			
oo-shbuub	the looking	و- شُبُوب			

<347>

There are more verbs of the same pattern. Note that the verbs of this pattern are transitive, even where the English gloss may not show this - such as kitima 'arrive at, reach'.

Verbs like shibiba

Frequent Verbs

kitima	arrive at, reach	کِئِمِه
bisira	decide	بِسِرِه
shibiba	look (very frequent)	شِبِبِه
fidiga	Open, untie	فِدِغِه

bitika	separate, be between	بیتیکه
rigiga	stretch, drive	رِقِقَه
diliba	trade	دَلِبَه
kitiba	write	کِتِبَه

Less Frequent Verbs

fitita	comb (less frequent)	فِتِيتَه
firika	dig (less frequent)	فِرِكَه
tiriba	divide (less frequent)	تِرِبَه
fitira	eat breakfast (less frequent)	فِتِرَه
fitika	lift (less frequent)	فِتِيكَه
kirira	make a dam, veil (less frequent)	كِرِرَه
gwishisha	move (sth.) (less frequent)	قُوْشِيشَه
tikwikwa	prepare, produce (less frequent)	تِكْوِكْوَه
shikidha	scratch (less frequent)	شِكِيْدَه
shigwidha	wash (less frequent)	شِغْوِيْدَه

Infrequent Verbs

fidina	hate, avoid	فِيْدِنَه
mikira	advise	مِكِرَه
simima	anoint, smear	سِيْمِمَه
ridida	be blunt	رِيْدِدَه
diwila	be close, approach	دِيْوِلَه
girima	be honored	قِرِمَه
nikwisa	be lacking	نِكْوِسَه
nifira	be sweet	نِفِرَه
shilika	become less	شِيْلِكَه
finika	bite	فِيْنِكَه
bidila	change	بِيْدِلَه
tilisa	cheat	تِيْلِسَه
giriba	conquer	قِرِيْبَه
misisa	die a natural death	مِيْسِسَه
kiliba	fence in	كِيْلِبَه
dibila	gather, collect	دِيْبِلَه
libiba	gird one's loins	لِيْبِبَه
shifiga	hasten	شِفِقَه

limida	learn, make used	لِجِدِه
silifa	lend, loan	سَلِفَه
gwimida	lengthen	قَوِّمِدِه
kwibira	cause to descend	كُوِّبِرِه
ginifa	let kneel	قَنِفَه
fitina	let quarrel, disturb	فَتِنَه
gwisira	lie, tell lies	قَوِّسِرِه
nigila	open, untie	نِقْلَه
shidhidha	peel	شِدِّدَه
widida	persist	وَدِدَه
siliba	rob	سَلِبَه
khidima	serve (AR)	خِدْمَه
likika	squander	لِكِكَه
kirima	subtract	كِرْمَه
dirira	give supper, let eat	دِرِرِه
shitita	tear	شِتْتَه

The Pattern CiCiy- of miriya

1 miri(y)	1 Basic Stem	۱ مَرِي (ي)	2 marii(y)	2 Negative Stem	۲ مَرِي (ي)
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Miriya!	Find (M)!	مَرِيَه!	Baamariiya!	Don't find (M)!	بَاَمَرِيَه!
Miriyi!	Find (F)!	مَرِيِيَه!	Biimariiyi!	Don't find (F)!	بِيَمَرِيِيَه!
Miriina!	Find (PL)!	مَرِيِيْنَه!	Baamariina!	Don't find (PL)!	بَاَمَرِيِيْنَه!
1	PTCP / SUB:	۱	2	NEG PTCP:	۲
miriyaab	having found (M)	مَرِيَاَب	bamaari	not finding	بَمَارِيِي
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Amiru.	I found.	أَمِرُ.	Mir(i)yaab kaaki.	I didn't find.	مَرِيَاَب كَاكِي.
Timiruwa.	You (M) found.	تَمِرُوَه.	Miryaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't find.	مَرِيَاَب كِتَّا.
Timiruwī.	<u>You (F) found.</u>	تَمِرُوِيَه.	Miryaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't find.	مَرِيَاَت كِتَّاَيِي.
Imiru.	He found.	إِمِرُ.	Miryaab kiiki.	He didn't find.	مَرِيَاَب كِيِكِي.
Timiru.	She found.	تَمِرُ.	Miryaat kitti.	She didn't find.	مَرِيَاَت كِتِّي.
Nimiru.	We found.	نَمِرُ.	Miryaab kinki.	We didn't find.	مَرِيَاَب كِنِكِي.

Timiruuna.	You (PL) found.	تَمِرُونَه.	Miryaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِتْتِينَه.
Imiruun.	They found.	اِمِرُون.	Miryaab kiikeen.	They didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِيِكِين.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Amarri.	I find.	اَمَرِي.	Kaamiru.	I don't find.	كَاامِرُ.
Marriya.	You (M) find.	مَرِيَه.	Kitmiriya.	You (M) don't find.	كِيَمِرِيَه.
Marrii.	You (F) find.	مَرِي.	Kitmiruwi / -iyi.	You (F) don't find.	كِيَمِرُووِي / -اِيِي.
Marri.	He finds.	مَرِي.	Kiimiru / -i.	He doesn't find	كِيِمِرُ / -اِي.
Marri.	She finds.	مَرِي.	Kitmiru.	She doesn't find	كِيَمِرُ.
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Nimeer.	We find.	نِيَمِير.	Kinmiru.	We don't find	كِنِمِرُ.
Timeerna.	You (PL) find.	تَمِرُونَه.	Kitmiruuna.	You (PL) don't find	كِيَمِرُونَه.
Imeerna.	They find.	اِمِرُونَه.	Kiimiruun.	They don't find	كِيِمِرُون.
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Imaar andi.	I will find.	اِمَار اُنْدِي.	Imaar kaadi.	I won't find.	اِمَار كَادِي.
6	PAST CONT:	۶	1	NEG PAST CONT:	۱
Imiir.	I was finding.	اِمِير.	Miriyaab kaaki.	I didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كَاكِي.
Timiira.	You (M) were finding.	تَمِيرَه.	Miriyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِتَا.
Timiiri.	You (F) were finding.	تَمِيرِي.	Miriyaat kittayyi.	You (F) didn't find.	مِرِيَات كِتَايِي.
Imiir.	He was finding.	اِمِير.	Miriyaab kiiki.	He didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِيِكِي.
Timiir.	She was finding.	تَمِير.	Miriyaat kitti.	She didn't find.	مِرِيَات كِتِي.
Nimiir.	We were finding.	نَمِير.	Miriyaab kinki.	We didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِنِكِي.
Timiirna.	You (PL) were finding.	تَمِيرُونَه.	Miriyaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِتْتِينَه.
Imiirna.	They were finding.	اِمِيرُونَه.	Miriyaab kiikeen.	They didn't find.	مِرِيَاب كِيِكِين.
7	Noun of Action:	۷			
oo-mraay, oo-mruuy	the finding	و-مَرَاي			

<348>

There are more verbs of the same pattern. These verbs are also transitive.

Verbs like miriya

Frequent Verbs

rikwiya	be afraid	رَكْوِيه
sigiya	be far	سِقِيه
tikwiya	cook	تَكْوِيه
dhigwiya	count once	دُفْوِيه
miriya	find (very frequent)	مَرِيه
firiya	give birth	فَرِيه
digiya	return (sth.)	دَقِيه
sikwiya	run after	سِكْوِيه يه
siniya	wait, stay	سِنِيه

Infrequent Verbs

hamiya	be bitter, blame	هَمِيه
nikwiyi	be pregnant	نِكْوِيِي
aliya	become dear	أَلِيه
nifiya	blow	نَفِيه
humiya	cover (less frequent)	هَمِيه
shifiya	drink milk	شَفِيه
sikw'iya	feel shy	سِكْوَا يه
nisiya	go west	نِسِيه
kwiriya	graze	كْوَرِيه
ribiya	load	رَبِيه
fidhiya	mix	فَدِيه
kwisiya	pay debts (less frequent)	كْوَسِيه
adiya	prick	أَدِيه
kiriya	rent	كِرِيه
kwimiya	roast bake	كْوَمِيه
hagiya	spend hot season	هَقِيه
dhimiya	stink	دَمِيه
dibiya	take care	دَبِيه

The Pattern HaCiC- of hariwa

1 hariw	1 Basic Stem	۱ ہرُو	2 hariiw	2 Negative Stem	۲ ہرِیو
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Hariwa!	Look (M) for (sth.)!	ہرُوہ!	Bahariiwa!	Don't look (M) for (sth.)!	تہرِیوہ!
Hariwi!	Look (F) for (sth.)!	ہرِوے!	Bihariiwi!	Don't look (F) for (sth.)!	تہرِیوے!
Hariwna!	Look (PL) for (sth.)!	ہرُونہ!	Bahariiwna!	Don't look (PL) for (sth.)!	تہرِیونہ!
1	PTCP / SUB:	۱	2	NEG PTCP:	۲
harwaab	having looked for (M) (sth.)	ہرُوَاب	bahariiw	not looking for (sth.)	تہرِیوِی
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Ahariw.	I looked for (sth.).	اَہرُو.	Harwaab kaaki.	I didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کاکیے.
Tihariwa.	You (M) looked for (sth.).	تہرُوہ.	Harwaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کیتا.
Tihariwi.	You (F) looked for (sth.).	تہرِوے.	Harwaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَات کیتاے.
Ihariw.	He looked for (sth.).	اِہرُو.	Harwaab kiiki.	He didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کیکے.
Tihariw.	She looked for (sth.).	تہرُو.	Harwaat kitti.	She didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَات کیتے.
Nihariw.	We looked for (sth.).	نہرُو.	Harwaab kinki.	We didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کینکے.
Tihariwna.	You (PL) looked for (sth.).	تہرُونہ.	Harwaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کیتینہ.
Ihariwna.	They looked for (sth.).	اِہرُونہ.	Harwaab kiikeen.	They didn't look for (sth.).	ہرُوَاب کیکین.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Aharriiw.	I look for (sth.).	اَہرِیو.	Kahariw.	I don't look for (sth.).	کہرِو.
Harriiwa.	You (M) look for (sth.).	ہرِیوہ.	Kitehariwa.	You (M) don't look for (sth.).	کیتہرِوہ.
Harriiwi.	You (F) look for (sth.).	ہرِیوے.	Kithariwi.	You (F) don't look for (sth.).	کیتہرِوے.
Harriiw.	He looks for (sth.).	ہرِیو.	Kihariw.	He doesn't look for (sth.).	کہرِو.
Harriiw.	She looks for (sth.).	ہرِیو.	Kithariw.	She doesn't look for (sth.).	کہرِو.
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Nihariw.	We look for (sth.).	نہرِو.	Kinhariw.	We don't look for	کینہرِو.

				(sth.).	
Tihariwna.	You (PL) look for (sth.).	تہرونہ.	Kithariwna.	You (PL) don't look for (sth.).	کٲرونہ.
Ihariwna.	They look for (sth.).	اٲرونہ.	Kihariwna.	They don't look for (sth.).	کٲرونہ.
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Ihiriw andi.	I will look for (sth.).	اٲرو اندے.	Ihiriw kaadi.	I won't look for (sth.).	اٲرو کادے.
6	PAST CONT:	۶		NEG PAST CONT:	
Ihiriw.	I was looking for (sth.).	اٲرو.	Harwaab kaaki.	I didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کاکے.
Tihiriwa.	You (M) were looking for (sth.).	تٲروہ.	Harwaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کٲا.
Tihiriwi.	You (F) were looking for (sth.).	تٲروے.	Harwaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't look for (sth.).	ٲروات کٲاےے.
Ihiriw.	He was looking for (sth.).	اٲرو.	Harwaab kiiki.	He didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کٲکے.
Tihiriw.	She was looking for (sth.).	تٲرو.	Harwaat kitti.	She didn't look for (sth.).	ٲروات کٲے.
Nihiriw.	We were looking for (sth.).	نٲرو.	Harwaab kinki.	We didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کٲکے.
Tihiriwna.	You (PL) were looking for (sth.).	تٲرونہ.	Harwaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کٲٲنہ.
Ihiriwna.	They were looking for (sth.).	اٲرونہ.	Harwaab kiikeen.	They didn't look for (sth.).	ٲرواب کٲکٲن.
7	Noun of Action:	۷			
w-haruuw	the looking for (sth.)	و-ٲروو			

<349>

There are more verbs of the same pattern.

Verbs like hariwa

Frequent Verbs

hayisa	be better	ٲسہ
hakwira	close, tie	ٲکوره
adhidha	hobble, divide	اڈڈہ
abika	hold, seize	اٲکہ
agira	return (sth.)	اقرہ
hawida	spend evening	ٲودہ
hamida	thank, praise	ٲمدہ
hasiba	think	ٲسہ

hariwa	try to find (very frequent)	هَرِيوَه
hagita	wait	هَقِيْتَه

Less Frequent Verbs

ariwa	align oneself, fit in	أَرُوَه
asiga	be peaceful	أَسِيْقَه
hamira	be poor, be meager	هَمِيْرَه
hasira	be sorry	هَمِيْرَه
akira	be strong	أَكِيْرَه
haliga	bend	هَلِيْقَه
agwira	bend (sth.)	أَقْوِيْرَه
atima	close, seal	أَتِيْمَه
adima	converse	أَدِيْمَه
hakifa	embrace	هَكْفَه
hatita	erase	هَتِيْتَه
aliga	feed	أَلِيْقَه
hakisa	limp	هَكْسَه
adila	make peace (AR)	أَدِلَه
hayisha	make pottery	هَيْشَه
ashisha	meet, receive	أَشِيْشَه
hagila	miss, leave, fail	هَقِيْلَه
awila	move westward	أَوِيْلَه
adhidha	peel once (e.g. a banana)	أَدِّدْه
ayikwa	pick	أَيِكْوَه
hayida	sew once	هَيْدَه
harida	slaughter	هَرْدَه
afidha	sneeze	أَفِيْدَه

The Pattern CaC- of nawa

1 naw	1 Basic Stem	١ نَوَ	2 naaw	2 Negative Stem	٢ نَاو
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Nawa!	Fail (M)!	نَوَه!	Baanaawa!	Don't fail (M)!	باناوه!
Nawi!	Fail (F)!	نَوِي!	Biinaawi!	Don't fail (F)!	بيناوِي!
Nawna!	Fail (PL)!	نَوْنَه!	Baanaawna!	Don't fail (PL)!	باناوْنَه!
1	PTCP / SUB:	١	2	NEG PTCP:	٢
nawaab	having failed	نَوَاب	banaaway	not having	بناوِي

	(M)			failed	
1	PAST:	۱	1	NEG PAST:	۱
Anaw.	I failed.	اَنُو.	Nawaab kaaki.	I didn't fail.	نَوَاب کاکے.
Tinawa.	You (M) failed.	تِنُوہ.	Nawaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِٹَا.
Tinawi.	You (F) failed.	تِنُوے.	Nawaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't fail.	نَوَات کِٹَاے.
Inaw.	He failed.	اِنُو.	Nawaab kiiki.	He didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِیکے.
Tinaw.	She failed.	تِنُو.	Nawaat kitti.	She didn't fail.	نَوَات کِٹے.
Ninaw.	We failed.	نِنُو.	Nawaab kinki.	We didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِیکے.
Tinawna.	You (PL) failed.	تِنُونہ.	Nawaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِٹینہ.
Inawna.	They failed.	اِنُونہ.	Nawaab kiikeen.	They didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِیکین.
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Eetniw / eenawi.	I fail.	اِیتنیو / اِیتنوی.	Kaanaw.	I don't fail.	کَانُو.
Teetniwa.	You (M) fail.	تِیتنیوہ.	Kitnawa.	You (M) don't fail.	کِیتنُوہ.
Teetniwi.	You (F) fail.	تِیتنیوے.	Kitnawi.	You (F) don't fail.	کِیتنُوے.
Eetniw.	He fails.	اِیتنیو.	Kiinaw.	He doesn't fail.	کِیتنُو.
Teetniwi.	She fails.	تِیتنیوے.	Kitnaw.	She doesn't fail.	کِیتنُو.
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Neetniw / neenawi.	We fail.	نِیتنیو / نِیتنوی.	Kinnaw.	We don't fail.	کِنُو.
Teetniwna.	You (PL) fail.	تِیتنیونہ.	Kitnawna.	You (PL) don't fail.	کِیتنُونہ.
Eetniwna.	They fail.	اِیتنیونہ.	Kiinawna.	They don't fail.	کِیتنُونہ.
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Iitnaw / iinaw andi.	I will fail.	اِیتنُو / اِیتنُو اُنْدے.	Iitnaw kaadi.	I won't fail.	اِیتنُو کادے.
6	PAST CONT:	۶	1	NEG PAST CONT:	۱
Iitnaw / iitniw / iinawi.	I was failing.	اِیتنُو / اِیتنُوے.	Nawaab kaaki.	I didn't fail.	نَوَاب کاکے.
Tiitnawa / tiitniwa.	You (M) were failing.	تِیتنُوہ.	Nawaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't fail.	نَوَاب کِٹَا.

Tiitnawi.	You (F) were failing.	تیتنووے .	Nawaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't fail.	نَوَات کیتاایے .
Iitnaw.	He was failing.	ایتنوو .	Nawaab kiiki.	He didn't fail.	نَوَاب کیکے .
Tiitnaw.	She was failing.	تیتنوو .	Nawaat kitti.	She didn't fail.	نَوَات کتے .
Niitnaw / niinawi.	We were failing.	نیتنوو / نیتنووے .	Nawaab kinki.	We didn't fail.	نَوَاب کینکے .
Tiitniwna.	You (PL) were failing.	تیتنونہ .	Nawaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't fail.	نَوَاب کیتینہ .
Iitniwna.	They were failing.	ایتنونہ .	Nawaab kiikeen.	They didn't fail.	نَوَاب کیکین .
7	Noun of Action:	۷			
oo-naaw	the failing	ؤ- ناو			

<350>

There are more verbs of the same pattern.

Verbs like nawa

<351>

Note that verbs of this pattern are intransitive.

rama	accompany (frequent)	رَمَه
maga	be bad (frequent)	مَقَه
rhasa	be cheap (infrequent)	رَهَسَه
nhasa	be clean (infrequent)	نَهَسَه
kata	be clear, be light (infrequent)	کَه
taba	be filled (infrequent)	تَبَه
kasha	be mean (infrequent)	کَشَه
nakwa	be smooth, be lazy (infrequent)	نَکُوَه
nhawa	be thin (infrequent)	نَهَوَه
lawa	burn (INTR) (infrequent)	لَوَه
laga	dance (infrequent)	لَقَه
gwala	exceed (infrequent)	قُوَلَه
mara	get ready (frequent)	مَرَه
tara	make a detour, avoid (sth.) (infrequent)	تَرَه
nawa	miss (frequent)	نَوَه
gama	not know, ignore (frequent)	قَمَه
shaba	put on shoes (INTR) (infrequent)	شَبَه
ama	ride (infrequent)	اَمَه
shata	slip, glide, fall (infrequent)	شَتَه
shagwa	start quarrel (infrequent)	شَقُوَه

gafa	stumble (infrequent)	قَفَّه
b'asa	turn sides (infrequent)	بَاسَه
gw'ada	watch, guard oneself (infrequent)	قَوَّادَه
bisa	bury, hide (AR) (infrequent)	بَسَه
bifa	swim (infrequent)	بَفَه
fisha	warm up (INTR) (infrequent)	فِشَه
wina	grow up (infrequent)	وَنَه

<352>

Except for the present singular which has -n- (rather than -t-), the following verbs have the same pattern.

Verbs similar to nawa

dhhana	become alive (infrequent)	دَّهَنَه
sh'isha (Gash dial.), sh'usha	cough (infrequent)	شَاشَه, شِئْشَه
lhasa	lick (infrequent)	لَهَسَه
kehana	love (infrequent)	كَهَنَه
gwhama	sip (infrequent)	قَوَّهَمَه
gwhara	steal (infrequent)	قَوَّهَرَه
b'ara	wake up, get up oneself (frequent)	بَارَه
gw'ada	watch, guard (infrequent)	قَوَّادَه

The Pattern Cay- of baya

1 ba(y)	1 Basic Stem	١ به (ي)	2 baa(y)	2 Negative Stem	٢ با (ي)
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Baya!	Go to (M)!	بَيَه!	Baabaaya!	Don't go to (M) !	بابايه!
Bayi!	Go to (F)!	بَيَّيَه!	Biibaayi!	Don't go to (F)!	بيباييه!
Beena!	Go to (PL)!	بَيَّنَه!	Baabeena!	Don't go to (PL) !	بايننه!
1	PTCP / SUB:	١	2	NEG PTCP:	٢
bayaab, abaay	having gone to (M)	بَيَّاب, أَبَاي	baabaay	not having gone to (M)	بابايي
1	PAST:	١	1	NEG PAST:	١
Abi.	I went to.	أَبَيَّ.	Bayaab kaaki.	I didn't go to.	بَيَّاب كاكَيَّ.
Tibaya.	You (M) went to.	تَبَيَّه.	Bayaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't go to.	بَيَّاب كَيَّتَا.
Tibayi.	You (F) went to.	تَبَيَّيَّه.	Bayaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't go to.	بَيَّات كَيَّتَايَّي.
Ibi.	He went to.	أَبَيَّه.	Bayaab kiiki.	He didn't go to.	بَيَّاب كَيَّكَيَّه.

Tibi.	She went to.	تھئے .	Bayaat kitti.	She didn't go to.	نیات کتھے .
Nibi.	We went to.	نہئے .	Bayaab kinki.	We didn't go to.	نیاب کینکے .
Tibeena.	You (PL) went to.	تہینہ .	Bayaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't go to.	نیاب کتہینہ .
Ibeen.	They went to.	ہین .	Bayaab kiiken.	They didn't go to.	نیاب کیکین .
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Eebi.	I go to.	ہئے .	Kaabi.	I don't go to.	کاہے .
Teebiya.	You (M) go to.	تہیہ .	Kitbaya.	You (M) don't go to.	کتہیہ .
Teebi.	You (F) go to.	تھیے .	Kitbayi.	You (F) don't go to.	کتھیے .
Eebi.	He goes to.	ہئے .	Kiibi.	He doesn't go to.	کیہے .
Teebi.	She goes to.	تھیے .	Kitbi.	She doesn't go to.	کتھیے .
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Neebi.	We go to.	نہئے .	Kinbi.	We don't go to.	کنہے .
Teebiina.	You (PL) go to.	تہینہ .	Kitbeena.	You (PL) don't go to.	کتہینہ .
Eebiin.	They go to.	ہین .	Kiibeena.	They don't go to.	کیہین .
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Iiba andi.	I will go to.	ایہ اندے .	Iiba kaadi.	I won't go.	ایہ کاہے .
6	PAST CONT:	۶	1	NEG PAST CONT:	۱
Iibi.	I was going to.	ہیے .	Bayaab kaaki.	I didn't go to.	نیاب کاہے .
Tiibiya.	You (M) were going to.	تہیہ .	Bayaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't go to.	نیاب کتہا .
Tiibiyi.	You (F) were going to.	تھیے .	Bayaat kittayyi.	You (F) didn't go to.	نیات کتہیے .
Iibi.	He was going to.	ہیے .	Bayaab kiiki.	He didn't go to.	نیاب کیکے .
Tiibi.	She was going to.	تھیے .	Bayaat kitti.	She didn't go to.	نیات کتھے .
Niibi.	We were going to.	نہیے .	Bayaab kinki.	We didn't go to.	نیاب کینکے .
Tiibiina.	You (PL) were going to.	تہینہ .	Bayaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't go to.	نیاب کتہینہ .
Iibiin.	They were going to.	ہین .	Bayaab kiiken.	They didn't go to.	نیاب کیکین .
7	Noun of Action:	۷			
i-miibi / i-	the going (to)	ہ- / میہے / -ہ			

mabay		مَبِي		
-------	--	-------	--	--

<353>

So the pattern of baya 'to go to' is similar to that of nawa, except that there is no -t- in the present tense.

<354>

The very frequent verb faya 'to be' is not used in the past, perfect or the negative paradigms. Otherwise it follows the pattern of baya.

<355>

The very frequent verb kana 'to know' has two senses; when used in the sense 'to get to know', it uses the same paradigm as baya. (For the other sense, see the special paradigm of kana.)

<356>

There are more verbs of the same pattern, except for different root vowels.

Verbs like baya

faya	be (very frequent)	فَيَه
shoofa	be light, easy (infrequent)	شَوِّفَه
baash'a, b'aasha	come among (infrequent)	بَاشَاهُ
weera	do, make (less frequent)	وَيَّرَه
gwooya	fail (infrequent)	قَوَّوْ يَه
foora	flee, escape (infrequent)	فَوَّرَه
kwara	harvest, pick (infrequent)	كَوَّرَه
sara	keep awake (infrequent)	سَرَه
kana	know (infrequent)	كَنَه
sala	sharpen (infrequent)	سَلَه

The Pattern CiCaC- of fiyaka

1 fiyak	1 Basic Stem	١ فَيَاك	2 fiyaak	2 Negative Stem	٢ فَيَاك
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Fiyaka!	Carry (M)!	فَيَاكَه!	Baafiyaaka!	Don't carry (M)!	بَا فَيَاكَه!
Fiyaki!	Carry (F)!	فَيَاكِي!	Biifiyaaki!	Don't carry (F)!	بِي فَيَاكِي!
Fiyakna!	Carry (PL)!	فَيَاكِنَه!	Baafiyaakna!	Don't carry (PL)!	بَا فَيَاكِنَه!
1	PTCP / SUB:	١	2	NEG PTCP:	٢
fayaak	having carried (M)	فَيَاك	baafiyaak	not carrying	بَا فَيَاكِي
1	PAST:	١	1	NEG PAST:	١
Afiyak.	I carried.	أَفَيَاك.	Fayaak kaaki.	I didn't carry	فَيَاك كَاكِي.
Tifiyaka.	You (M) carried.	تَفَيَاكَه.	Fayaak kittaa.	You (M) didn't carry	فَيَاك كِتَّاء.

Tifiyaki.	You (F) carried.	تفیکے .	Fayaakt kittaayi.	You (F) didn't carry	فیاکت کتیاہے .
Ifiyak.	He carried.	إفیک .	Fayaak kiiki.	He didn't carry	فیاک کیکے .
Tifiyak.	She carried.	تفیک .	Fayaakt kitti.	She didn't carry	فیاکت کتھے .
Nifiyak.	We carried.	نفیک .	Fayaak kinki.	We didn't carry	فیاک کینکے .
Tifiyakna.	You (PL) carried.	تفیکنہ .	Fayaak kitteena.	You (PL) didn't carry	فیاک کتینہ .
Ifiyakna.	They carried.	إفیکنہ .	Fayaak kiikeen.	They didn't carry	فیاک کیکین .
3	PRES SG:	۳	1	NEG PRES:	۱
Atfayiik.	I carry.	أتفیک .	Kaafiyak.	I don't carry.	کافیک .
Titfayiika.	You (M) carry.	تتفیکہ .	Kitfiyaka.	You (M) don't carry.	کتفیکہ .
Titfayiiki.	You (F) carry.	تتفیکے .	Kitfiyaki.	You (F) don't carry.	کتفیکے .
Itfayiik.	He carries.	إتفیک .	Kiifiyak.	He doesn't carry.	کیفیک .
Titfayiik.	She carries.	تتفیک .	Kitfiyak.	She doesn't carry.	کتفیک .
4	PRES PL:	۴	1	NEG PRES PL:	۱
Nitfayiik.	We carry.	نٹفیک .	Kinfiyak.	We don't carry.	کنفیک .
Titfayiikna.	You (PL) carry.	تتفیکنہ .	Kitfiyakna.	You (PL) don't carry.	کتفیکنہ .
Itfayiikna.	They carry.	إتفیکنہ .	Kiifiyakna.	They don't carry.	کیفیکنہ .
5	FUT:	۵	5	NEG FUT:	۵
Itfiyak andi.	I will carry.	إتفیک اندے .	Itfiyak kaadi.	I won't carry.	إتفیک کادے .
6	PAST CONT:	۶	1	NEG PAST CONT:	۱
Itfiyak.	I was carrying.	إتفیک .	Fayaak kaaki.	I didn't carry.	فیاک کاکے .
Titfiyika.	You (M) were carrying.	تتفیکہ .	Fayaak kittaa.	You (M) didn't carry.	فیاکت کتیا .
Titfiyiki.	You (F) were carrying.	تتفیکے .	Fayaakt kittaayi.	You (F) didn't carry.	فیاکت کتیاہے .
Itfiyak.	He was carrying.	إتفیک .	Fayaak kiiki.	He didn't carry.	فیاک کیکے .
Titfiyak.	She was carrying.	تتفیک .	Fayaakt kitti.	She didn't carry.	فیاکت کتھے .

Nitfiyik.	We were carrying.	نِتْفِيِيَك .	Fayaak kinki.	We didn't carry.	فَيَاك كِيَكِي .
Titfiyikna.	You (PL) were carrying.	تِتْفِيِيَكْنَه .	Fayaak kitteena.	You (PL) didn't carry.	فَيَاك كِيْتِيْنَه .
Itfiyikna.	They were carrying.	اِتْفِيِيَكْنَه .	Fayaak kiikeen.	They didn't carry.	فَيَاك كِيِكِيْن .
7	Noun of Action:	٧			
tu-mifyeek, tu-mifiyeek	the carrying	تُ-مِفِيِيَك			

<357>

There are more verbs of the same pattern. Note that these verbs are intransitive or passive.

Verbs like fiyaka

winana	be angry (infrequent)	وِنَنَه
shilaka	be few (infrequent)	شِيْلَكَه
bishakwa	be hot, diligent (infrequent) (see below)	بِشَكْوَه
haragwa	be hungry (frequent)	هَرَقْوَه
gwimada	be long (infrequent)	قُوْمَدَه
sirara	be long (infrequent)	سِرْرَه
bishakwa	be ripe, cooked (infrequent)	بِشَكْوَه
nikasha	be short (infrequent)	نِيَكْشَه
kitaba	be written, be registered (infrequent)	كِيْتَبَه
silafa	borrow (infrequent)	سِيْلَفَه
fiyaka	carry, take care of, be loaded (frequent)	فِيَكَه
sikata	choke (INTR) (infrequent)	سِيَكْتَه
fidhadha	confess (infrequent)	فِيْدْهَدَه
digwagwa	crouch (less frequent)	دِيْغْوَوَه
sibara	flee (infrequent)	سِيْبَرَه
libaba	gird one's loins (infrequent)	لِيْبَبَه
gilada	give a promise (infrequent)	غِيْلَدَه
kwibara	go down (infrequent)	كُوْبِرَه
shifaga	hasten (infrequent)	شِيْفَقَه
tilala	jump (infrequent)	تِيْلَلَه
ginafa	kneel (INTR) (infrequent)	غِيْنَفَه
gwishasha	move (INTR) (infrequent)	غُوْشِشَه
rigasa	play (infrequent)	رِيْغَسَه
shikwana	smell pleasant (infrequent)	شِيْكُوْنَه
dirara	sup, eat supper (infrequent)	دِرْرَه

libasa	travel by night (infrequent)	لَيْسَه
shigwadha	wash oneself (infrequent)	شَقَّوْدَه

<358>

There are verbs which follow the pattern of fiyaka 'carry', except that they start with h or hamzah. So the prefixes have to be adjusted in the same way as with hariwa 'want'.

<359>

There are more verbs of the same pattern.

Verbs similar to fiyaka

harara	be empty (infrequent)	هَرَّرَه
adara	be red (infrequent)	أَدَّرَه
agwara	bend oneself (infrequent)	أَقْوَرَه
hasara	lose (infrequent)	هَسَّرَه
agara	return (INTR) (infrequent)	أَقَرَه
agaga	sit, squat (infrequent)	أَقَقَه

The Pattern CiCHa- of fir'a

1 fir'(a)	1 Basic Stem	١ فر (أ)	2 far'(a)	2 Negative Stem	٢ فر (أ)
	IMPV:			NEG IMPV:	
Fir'a, fir'a!	Go out (M)!	فِرَاهُ!	Baafira'a!	Don't go out (M)!	بَاْفِرَاهُ!
Fir'i, fir'i!	Go out (F)!	فِرَاي!	Biifira'i!	Don't go out (F)!	بِيْفِرَاي!
Fir'ana!	Go out (PL)!	فِرَانَهُ!	Baafir'ana!	Don't go out (PL)!	بَاْفِرَانَهُ!
1	PTCP / SUB	١	2	NEG PTCP:	٢
fir'aab	having gone out (M)	فِرَاَب	baafar'a	not going out	بَاْفِرَاَبِي
1	PAST:	١	1	NEG PAST:	١
Afir'a.	I went out.	أَفِرَاهُ.	Far'a kaaki.	I didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كَاَكِي.
Tifir'aya.	You (M) went out.	تِفِرَايَهُ.	Far'a kittaa.	You (M) didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كِيْتَا.
Tifir'ayi.	You (F) went out.	تِفِرَايِي.	Far'at kittaayi.	You (F) didn't go out.	فِرَاتُ كِيْتَايِي.
Ifir'a.	He went out.	إِفِرَاهُ.	Far'a kiiki.	He didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كِيِكِي.
Tifir'a.	She went out.	تِفِرَاهُ.	Far'at kitti.	She didn't go out.	فِرَاتُ كِيْتِي.
Nifir'a.	We went out.	نِفِرَاهُ.	Far'a kinki.	We didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كِيِكِي.
Tifir'ana.	You (PL) went out.	تِفِرَانَهُ.	Far'a kitteena.	You (PL) didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كِيْتِيْنَه.
Ifir'ana.	They went out.	إِفِرَانَهُ.	Far'a kiikeen.	They didn't go out.	فِرَاهُ كِيِكِيْن.
3	PRES SG:	٣	1	NEG PRES:	١
Atfar'i.	I go out.	أَتَفِرَا.	Kaafir'a.	I don't go out.	كَافِرَاهُ.

Titfari'a.	You (M) go out.	تَتَفْرَأُ.	Kitfira'a.	You (M) don't go out.	كَيْتَفْرَأُ.
Titfari'i.	You (F) go out.	تَتَفْرِئُ.	Kitfira'i.	You (F) don't go out.	كَيْتَفْرِئُ.
Itfar'i.	He goes out.	إِتْفَرَأُ.	Kiifir'a.	He doesn't go out.	كَيْفَرَأُ.
Titfar'i.	She goes out.	تِتْفَرَأُ.	Kitfir'a.	She doesn't go out.	كَيْتَفَرَأُ.
4	PRES PL:	٤	1	NEG PRES PL:	١
Nitfar'i.	We go out.	نِتْفَرَأُ.	Kinfir'a.	We don't go out.	كَيْنَفَرَأُ.
Titfar'ina.	You (PL) go out.	تِتْفَرِئَانَهُ.	Kitfir'ana.	You (PL) don't go out.	كَيْتَفَرِئَانَهُ.
Itfar'ina.	They go out.	إِتْفَرِئَانَهُ.	Kiifir'ana.	They don't go out.	كَيْفَرِئَانَهُ.
5	FUT:	٥	5	NEG FUT:	٥
Itfir'a andi.	I will go out.	إِتْفَرَأُ أُنْدَعِي.	Itfir'a kaadi.	I won't go out.	إِتْفَرَأُ كَادَعِي.
1	PAST CONT:	١	1	NEG PAST CONT:	١
Itfir'a.	I was going out.	إِتْفَرَأُ.	Far'a kaaki.	I didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَاكِي.
Titfir'a.	You (M) were going out.	تِتْفَرَأُ.	Far'a kittaa.	You (M) didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَيْتَا.
Titfir'i.	You (F) were going out.	تِتْفَرِئُ.	Far'at kittaayi.	You (F) didn't go out.	فَرَأَتْ كَيْتَايِي.
Itfir'i.	He was going out.	إِتْفَرِئُ.	Far'a kiiki.	He didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَيْكِي.
Titfir'i.	She was going out.	تِتْفَرِئُ.	Far'at kitti.	She didn't go out.	فَرَأَتْ كَيْتِي.
Nitfir'a.	We were going out.	نِتْفَرَأُ.	Far'a kinki.	We didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَيْنَكِي.
Titfir'ana.	You (PL) were going out.	تِتْفَرِئَانَهُ.	Far'a kitteena.	You (PL) didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَيْتِينَهُ.
Itfir'ana.	They were going out.	إِتْفَرِئَانَهُ.	Far'a kiikeen.	They didn't go out.	فَرَأُ كَيْكِينَهُ.
7	Noun of Action:	٧			
tu-mifir'ooy	the going out	تُ-مِيفِرُؤُوي			

<360>

There are more verbs of the same pattern.

Verbs like fir'a

niseha, nisaha	advise (AR) (infrequent)	نِسْهَه, نِسْهَه
tilha	be awkward (infrequent)	تِلْهَه
dilha	be strong, healthy (infrequent)	دِلْهَه
yidh'a	be wet (infrequent)	يِدْأَه
bideha	bear witness (infrequent)	بِدْهَه
kit'a	break (frequent)	كَيْتَاَه
nif'a	dust, brush (infrequent)	نِفْأَه

sikw'a	feel shy (infrequent)	سِكْوَاهُ
fir'a, fira'a	get out (sth.) (very frequent)	فِرَاهُ, فِرَاهُ
ginha	get news, receive (infrequent)	قِنِهَه
milha	lead (infrequent)	مِلِهَه
fiteha	open (AR) (infrequent)	فِتِهَه
kwit'a	swallow (infrequent)	كَوْرَتَاهُ
kwibha	swim (infrequent)	كَوْبِهَه
nib'a	warm (infrequent)	نِيَاهُ

<361>

Note that the pronunciation of these verbs differs in different dialect areas: E.g. in the Gash area, the a would be pronounced after the glottal stop or 'h', and in the Atman area, the pronunciation is as written here above i.e. with the a before the glottal stop or 'h'.

Conversation 15: 'Taking Care of Cattle' (Examples of the Present Tense)

<362>

A: the teacher, B: the pupils

#1	
A: Tumadrassa hankwiirhoob,	tu-madrassa ZERO-hankwiir-hoob
A: When the school is closed,	ARTSGF-school IMPFSG3MPF-tie-ADV+when
#2	
naan daatiniya?	naan daa-tiniya
What do you (M) do?	what do-IMPFSG2M
#3	
B: Reewu eeshkwi.	reew-u ZERO-eeshkwi
B: I look after my cattle.	cattle-POSSSG1 IMPFSG3MPF-look.after
#4	
A: Reewook teeshkwiya?	reew-ook t-eeshkwi-ya
A: Do you (M) look after your cattle?	cattle-POSSSG2 IMPFSG2MPF-look.after-IMPFSG2M
#5	
Baruuk shaakwanaawwa?	baruuk shaakwanaa-wa
Are you (M) a herdsman?	SG2M cowherd-IDSG2M
#6	
B: Ani shaakwanaabu.	ani shaakwanaab-u
B: I am a herdsman.	SG1 cowherd-IDSG13M
#7	
A: Tumadrassa hankwiirhoob,	tu-madrassa ZERO-hankwiir-hoob

A: When the school is closed,	ARTSGF-school IMPFSG3MPF-tie-ADV+when
#8	
naan daateena?	naan daa-teena
What do you (PL) do?	what do-IMPFPL2
#9	
B: Reewoon neeshkwi.	reew-oon n-eeshkwi
B: We look after our cattle.	cattle-POSSPL1 IMPFPL1PF-look.after
#10	
A: Reewookna teeshkwiina?	reew-ookna t-eeshkwi-ina
A: Do you (PL) look after your (PL) cattle?	cattle-POSSPL2 IMPFPL2PF-look.after-IMPFPL2
#11	
Baraakna shaakwanaabaana?	baraakna shaakwanaab-aana
Are you (PL) herdsmen?	PL2M cowherd-IDPL2M
#12	
B: Hinin shaakwanaaba.	hinin shaakwanaab-a
B: We are herdsmen.	PL1 cowherd-IDPL13M

<363>

۱ تَمْدَرَسَه هَنْكُوِيَر هَوْب، ۲ نان دَاتِيَه؟ ۳ رِيُوُ نِيَشْكُوِيَه. ۴ رِيُوُك تِيَشْكُوِيَه؟ ۵ بَرُوُك شَاكُوْنَاوَه؟ ۶ اَنْرَه شَاكُوْنَاوَب. ۷ تَمْدَرَسَه هَنْكُوِيَر هَوْب، ۸ نان دَاتِيَه؟ ۹ رِيُوُون تِيَشْكُوِيَه. ۱۰ رِيُوُكَنَه تِيَشْكُوِيَه؟ ۱۱ تَرَاكَنَه شَاكُوْنَاوَابَانَه؟ ۱۲ هِنِن شَاكُوْنَاوَابَه.

Special Strong Verbs

<364>

Some very frequent verbs have forms which differ considerably from the CiCiC pattern (e.g. they have only one syllable, or they start or end with h or hamzah etc.)

'To Become': Negative Paradigm

<365>

The strong verb kaya 'to be, become' is already familiar from the negation of adjectives. The negative prefix is ki-.

Ashshigaab kaaki.	I am not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كَاكِي.
Ashshigaab kittaa.	You (M) are not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كِيْتَا.
Ashshigaat kittayyi.	You (F) are not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَات كِيْتَايِي.
Ashshigaab kiiki.	He is not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كِيِكِي.
Ashshigaat kitti.	She is not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَات كِيِكِي.
Ashshigaab kinki.	We are not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كِيِنِكِي.
Ashshigaab kitteena.	You (PL) are not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كِيْتِيَنَه.
Ashshigaab kiikeen.	They are not in a hurry, fast.	أَشْشِقَاب كِيِكِيَن.

'To Become': Positive Paradigm

<366>

The positive past forms of the same verb look different, because they have t + k where the negative forms have t + t.

Handhiwaayiib / Handiwaab aki.	I became a Hadendowa ¹⁶ . (M)	ہندڙواييب اڪے .
Handhiwaayiib tikaya.	<u>You (M) became a Hadendowa (M).</u>	ہندڙواييب تڪيہ .
Handhiwaayiit tikayi.	You (F) became a Hadendowa (F).	ہندڙواييب تڪيے .
Handhiwaayiib iki.	He became a Hadendowa (M).	ہندڙواييب اڪے .
Handhiwaayiit tiki.	She became a Hadendowa (F).	ہندڙواييب تڪيے .
Handhiwaayiib niki.	We became Hadendowa (M).	ہندڙواييب نڪے .
Handhiwaayiib tikeena.	You (PL) became Hadendowa (M).	ہندڙواييب تڪينہ .
Handhiwaayiib ikeen.	They (M) became Hadendowa (M).	ہندڙواييب اڪين .

'To Be, to Have': Pluperfect, Perfect used as Past, Present

<367>

Some paradigms which at first sight appear to be quite irregular are those of three very frequent verbs: faya 'to be, become', bariya 'to have' and hiya 'to give'.

<368>

Actually, the forms can be considered regular if one realizes that for the verb faya 'to be, become', the form iifi 'I had become (Pluperfect)' can be understood as 'Then I was (PAST)', and eefi 'I have become (PAST)' can be understood as 'Now I am (PRES)'.

<369>

The same is true for the verb 'to have', where iibiri 'I had got' (pluperfect) can be understood as 'Then I had' (PAST), and abari 'I have got' (PAST) can be understood as 'Now I have' (PRES).

'To Be' 1

	Past meaning (< Pluperfect in form):			Present meaning (< Perfect in form):	
Iifi.	I was < I had become.	ايفے .	Eefi.	I am < I have become.	ئفے .
Tiifiya.	You (M) were < had become.	تيفيہ .	Teefaaya.	You (M) are < have become.	تيفايہ .
Tiifii.	You (F) were < had become.	تيفيي .	Teefaayi.	You (F) are < have become.	تيفايے .
Iifi.	He was < had become.	ايفے .	Eefi.	He is < have become.	ئفے .
Tiifi.	She was < had become.	تيفے .	Teefi.	She is < have become.	تيفے .
Niifi.	We were (M) < had become.	ئيفے .	Neefi.	We are (M) < have become.	ئيفے .
Tiifiina.	You (PL) were < had become.	تيفينہ .	Teefeena.	You (PL) are < have become.	تيفينہ .
Iifiin.	They were had become.	ايفين .	Eefeen.	They are < have become.	ئيفين .

'To Give, To Be' 2

	Past meaning (< Pluperfect in form):			Present meaning (< Perfect in form):	
Ahi / Iihi.	I gave (I had given).	اھے / ائیھے	Iha.	I am (I have become).	اھہ
Tihiya.	You (M) gave.	تھیہہ	Tihaya.	You (M) are.	تھیہہ
Tihii.	You (F) gave.	تھیہی	Tihayi.	You (F) are.	تھیہی
Ihi.	He gave.	اھے	Iha.	He is.	اھہ
Tihi.	She gave.	تھیہہ	Tiha.	She is.	تھیہہ
Nihi.	We gave.	نھیہہ	Niha.	We are.	نھیہہ
Tihiina.	You (PL) gave.	تھیہنہ	Tihayna / tiheena.	You (PL) are.	تھیہنہ
Ihiin.	They gave.	اھین	Ihayna / iheen.	They are.	اھینہ / اھین

<370>

The vowels in the first syllable really should be the long ii which is typical for Pluperfect or Past CONT and which is found in other verbs. The reason for having a short i is the rule of shortening before h, as explained in the phonology section.

'To Have'

	Past meaning (< Pluperfect in form):			Present meaning (< Perfect in form):	
Iibiri.	I had	اٲیرے	Abari.	I have.	اٲرے
Tiibiriya.	You (M) had.	اٲیریہہ	Tibariya.	You (M) have.	اٲیریہہ
Tiibirii.	You (F) had.	اٲیریہی	Tibarii.	You (F) have.	اٲیریہی
Iibiri.	He had.	اٲیرے	Ibari.	He has.	اٲرے
Tiibiri.	She had.	اٲیریہہ	Tibari.	She has.	اٲیریہہ
Niibiri.	We had.	اٲیرے	Nibari.	We have.	اٲرے
Tiibiriina.	You (PL) had.	اٲیرینہ	Tibariina.	You (PL) have.	اٲیرینہ
Iibiriin.	They had.	اٲیرین	Ibariin.	They have.	اٲرین

Typical Transitive Verb Patterns

<371>

The imperatives of the most frequent verbs have been listed below. From the pattern of the imperative, all other forms can be derived.

<372>

The most frequent pattern of Beja verbs is the pattern CiCiC- and related to this are the patterns CaCiC-, CiCiy-, and CiC-. It should be noted that all of these verbs have the vowel i in the final syllable. This is typical for transitive verbs - i.e. verbs for which an object is understood (even if it is not expressed).

Pattern CiCiC-

Mikira / mikiri / mikirna!	Advise (him) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مکیرہ / مکیرے / مکیرنہ!
----------------------------	------------------------------------------------	-------------------------

Bidila / bidili / bidilna!	Change (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بدلہ / بدلیے / بدلیں!
Fitita / fititi / fititna!	Comb (hair) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فیتہ / فیتے / فیتے!
Bitika / bitiki / bitikna!	Divide (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بتکھ / بتکھے / بتکھیں!
Fitira / fitiri / fitirna!	Have breakfast (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فترہ / فترے / فترے!
Fidiga / fidigi / fidigna!	Open, separate, divorce (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) / (PL)!	فدقہ / فدیقے / فدیقے!
Tikwikwa / tikwikwi / tikwikwna!	Prepare, produce (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تکوکوہ / تکوکوے / تکوکوے! تکوکونہ!
Kitima / kitimi / kitimna!	Reach (sth.), arrive at (M) / (F) / (PL)!	کیمہ / کیمے / کیمے!
Shibiba / shibibi / shibibna!	See (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شیبہ / شیبے / شیبے!
Diliba / dilibi / dilibna!	Trade (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	دلہ / دلے / دلے!
Shigwidha / shigwidhi / shigwidhna!	Wash (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شغودہ / شغودے / شغودے! شغودنہ!
Kitiba / kitibi / kitibna!	Write (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	کیتہ / کیتے / کیتے!

Pattern HaCiC-

Hayisa / hayisi / hayisna!	Be better (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہیسہ / ہیسے / ہیسے!
Hakwira / hakwiri / hakwirna!	Close (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہکورہ / ہکورے / ہکورے! ہکورنہ!
Hasiba / hasibi / hasibna!	Count, think about (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہسیبہ / ہسیبے / ہسیبے!
Adhidha / adhidhi / adhidhna!	Divide, hobble (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	اڈدہ / اڈدے / اڈدے!
Hariwa / hariwi / hariwna!	Look for (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہرورہ / ہرورے / ہرورے!
Hamida / hamidi / hamidna!	Praise, thank (sb.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہمدہ / ہمدے / ہمدے!
Agira / agiri / agirna!	Return (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	اقرہ / اقرے / اقرے!
Hawida / hawidi / hawidna!	Spend the evening (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	ہودہ / ہودے / ہودے!
Hasira / hasiri / hasirna, hasarna!	Be sorry (about it) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ہسیرہ / ہسیرے / ہسیرے! ہسرنہ!
Abika / abiki / abikna!	Seize (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	اپکھ / اپکھے / اپکھے!
Hagita / hagiti / hagitna!	Wait, await (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ہقتہ / ہقتے / ہقتے!

Pattern CiCiy-

Siniya / siniyi / siniina!	Await (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	سینیہ / سینے / سینے!
Tikwiya / tikwiyi / tikwiina!	Cook, prepare (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تکویہ / تکویے / تکویے!
Dhigwiya / dhigwiyi / dhigwiina!	Count (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ڈھویہ / ڈھویے / ڈھویے!
Rikwiya / rikwiyi / rikwiina!	Fear (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	رکویہ / رکویے / رکویے!
Miriya / miriyi / miriina!	Find, get (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	میریہ / میرے / میرے!

Sikwiya / sikwiyi / sikwiina!	Run after (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	سِکْوِيه / سِکْوِيِيه / سِکْوِيِيِنَه!
-------------------------------	------------------------------------	----------------------------------------

Pattern CiC-

Tiba / tibi / tibna!	Fill (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	تَبِه / تَبِيه / تَبِنَه!
Difa / difi / difna!	Leave, go away (M) / (F) / (PL)!	دِفِه / دِفِيه / دِفِنَه!
Isha, Usha / ushi / ushna!	Leave, let (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	إِشِه، أُشِه، أُشِيه / أُشِنَه!
Sima / simi / simna!	Name, mention (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	سِمِه / سِمِيه / سِمِنَه!
Mira / miri / mirna!	Prepare (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مِرِه / مِرِيه / مِرِنَه!
Riba / ribi / ribna!	Refuse (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	رِبِه / رِبِيه / رِبِنَه!
Gida / gidi / gidna!	Throw (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قِدِه / قِدِيه / قِدِنَه!

Typical Intransitive Verb Patterns

Patterns CiCaC- and CaC-

<373>

The pattern of intransitive or reflexive verbs is characterized by a in the final syllable - such as CiCaC-, HaCaC-, or CaC-. A large number of verbs can have either i or a in the final syllable, and they can be viewed as derived from each other:

<374>

Verbs of the pattern CiCiC are transitive, but verbs of the pattern CiCaC are intransitive or reflexive. Compare dirir- 'to feed supper (someone else)' and dirar- 'to (have) supper (oneself)', or agir- 'to return (something)' and agar- 'to return (oneself)'.

<375>

The same is true for the patterns CiC and CaC: The first is transitive, the second intransitive. Compare mir- 'to prepare (something)' and mar- 'to prepare (oneself)'. Here follow some intransitive or reflexive verbs which have this a in the final syllable of the verb stem. The verbs are given in the imperative forms.

Pattern CiCaC-

Fiyaka / fiyaki / fiyakna!	Load, carry (yourself) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	فِيكَه / فَيَكِيه / فَيَاكِنَه!
Winana / winani / winanna!	Be angry (yourself) (M) / (F) / (PL) (frequent)!	وِنَنَه / وِنَنِيه / وِنَانَه!
Dirara / dirari / dirarna!	Have dinner, supper (yourself) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	دِرَرَه / دِرَرِيه / دِرَرِنَه!

Pattern CaC-

Rama / rami / ramna!	Accompany (M) / (F) / (PL)!	رَمِه / رَمِيه / رَمِنَه!
Maga / magi / magna!	Be bad (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مَقِه / مَقِيه / مَقِنَه!
Nawa / nawi / nawna!	Miss, lack (M) / (F) / (PL)!	نَوِه / نَوِيه / نَوِنَه!
Gama / gami / gamna!	Not know (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قَمِه / قَمِيه / قَمِنَه!
Mara / mari / marna!	Prepare oneself (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مَرِه / مَرِيه / مَرِنَه!

Intensive, Repeated, or Multiple Object Verbs

Pattern CaaCiC-

<376>

Another group of verbs is characterized by a long aa in the first syllable, such as verbs of the pattern CaaCiC-. This aa typically indicates frequent action or repeated action or action performed on many objects.

<377>

Certain verbs can be used both with the short a or the long aa. One example for this is alima 'to draw a line' / aalima 'to draw lines'. Similarly the following verbs are considered repetitive: faayida 'to laugh', maasiwa 'to hear', and aayima 'spend time'.

Faayida / faayidi / faayidna!	Laugh (about sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	فايده / فايدى / فايدنه!
Maasiwa / maasiwi / maasiwna!	Hear (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مايسوه / ماسووى / ماسوونه!
Aalima / aalimi / aalimna!	Draw lines (M) / (F) / (PL)!	آلمه / آلمى / آلمنه!
Aayima / aayimi / aayimna!	Spend time, day (M) / (F) / (PL)!	آيمه / آيمى / آيمنه!

Special Verbs of High Frequency

<378>

Some of the most frequent verbs, such as 'to be, to have', represent infrequent patterns. The main reasons are that these verbs are short (diradicals), or that they start with h- or hamzah, that they have -a- as a stem vowel, or that they end with -y.

<379>

Some verbal forms are not used for pragmatic reasons, i.e. nobody would say such a thing. Thus a verb like faya 'to be', is mainly used in the present and the CONT past (also called pluperfect). The imperative is one such form, which is not used for pragmatic reasons. The following table lists the most important ones of these special verbs.

Verbs of High Frequency - with Infrequent Patterns

- / - / - (Ihi)	Be (not used in the IMPV)	- / - / - (اهى)
- / - / - (Iifi)	Be (not used in the IMPV)	- / - / - (ايفى)
Aka, kaya / aki / akeena!	Become (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أكه, كيه / أكى / أكيينه!
D'iya / d'iyi / d'iina!	<u>Do, put (sth.)</u> (M) / (F) / (PL)!	دايه / دايمى / داينه!
Hiya / hiyi / hiina!	Give (sth.) (to sb.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	هيه / هييمى / هيينه!
Baya / bayi / beena!	Go to (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	بييه / بييمى / بيينه!
Kana / kani / kannna!	Know (M) / (F) / (PL)!	كنه / كنى / كنىنه!
Diya / diyi / diina!	Say, mean (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	ديه / دييمى / دينه!
Aha / ahayi / aheena!	Take (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أهه / أهيمى / أهينه!

Weak and Strong Verbs: Object Suffixes

<380>

There are Beja verbs which by their nature cannot have any object, e.g. Eeya 'He came', and there are others which always have an object - even if it is not expressed by any noun or name or pronoun, e.g. Rhiya 'He saw (sth.)'.

<381>

There also are a few verbs which always imply or express two objects, like 'give to, send to, think of as', etc. e.g. Aneeb aab hiisiya? 'Whom did he think me (to be)?', and there are others which require an adverb, e.g. Ugin'ook hooy d'iya! 'Put your mind on it!'.

<382>

These required objects or adverbs are part of the meaning of the verbs. It would be misleading not to include them in the definition.

<383>

So the verb 'ba-ya' may superficially have the meaning 'to go' - but the verb includes more: (1) the one who goes - which is always expressed as a subject, and secondly (2) the place - which is expressed or understood as the object, e.g. Oosook ibi 'He went to Suakin'.

<384>

So the verb 'ka-ya' may superficially have the meaning 'to be' - but the verb includes more: (1) the one who is - which is always expressed as a subject, and (2) the thing he, she is - which is expressed or understood as the object, e.g. 'Oobana iki 'he became a tracker.'

Verbs with One Object

<385>

Superficially it seems that there is no object in sentences such as Gw'an 'I drank' or Aharriiw 'I want' as in these sentences there is no word or affix which expresses an object. In actual fact, however, the object is understood, and the reason is that these verbs are inherently transitive. The following section is about verbs which have one object.

'Drink'

Ani gw'an.	I drank (something).	أَنْعَ قُوَانُ .
Baruuk naan gw'ata?	What would you (M) like to drink?	بَرُووك نَان قُوَانْتَهْ?
Batuuk naan gw'ati?	What would you (F) like to drink?	بَتُووك نَان قُوَانْتَهْ?
Baraakna naan gw'atna?	What would you (PL) like to drink? (infrequent)	بَرَاكْنَه نَان قُوَانْتَهْ?
Ani aat gw'an.	I drank milk.	أَنْعَ آت قُوَانُ .
Ani buun gw'an.	I drank coffee.	أَنْعَ بُون قُوَانُ .
Ani yam gw'an.	I drank water.	أَنْعَ يَم قُوَانُ .
Ani asiir gw'an.	I drank juice.	أَنْعَ أُسِير قُوَانُ .
Ani shaahiib gw'an.	I drank tea.	أَنْعَ شَاهِيِب قُوَانُ .

'Ride'

Kaam a'am.	I rode a camel.	كَام أَم .
Hataay a'am.	I rode a horse.	هَتَاي أَم .
Tambiil a'am.	I rode a car.	تَمْبِيِل أَم .
Baabuur a'am.	I rode a steamer.	بَابُوْر أَم .
Ootoobis a'am.	I rode a bus.	وَتُوْبِيْس أَم .

'Want'

Aharriiw.	I want (something).	أَهْرِيو.
Hadhiib aharriiw.	I want some bread.	هَدْيِبْ أَهْرِيو.
Eeshariif hana biltuub aharriiw.	I want some maize.	يَشْرِيْفْ هَنْهْ بِلْتُوْبْ أَهْرِيو.
Sheetariit aharriiw.	I want some white sorghum.	شَيْتَرِيْتْ أَهْرِيو.
Gamhiib aharriiw.	I want some wheat.	قَمْهَيْبْ أَهْرِيو.
Biltuub aharriiw.	I want some millet.	بِلْتُوْبْ أَهْرِيو.
Mheel aharriiw.	I want some spice.	مَهْيَلْ أَهْرِيو.

Object Suffixes

<386>

The object is expressed by suffixes both in the weak and in the strong verbs. The third person object is not expressed and may seem to be missing - but it is always understood.

Table 31: Object Suffixes

-heeb	me	- هَيْبْ
-hook	you	- هُوْكَ
-	him, her	-
-hoon	us	- هُوْنْ
-hookna	you (PL)	- هُوْكَنْهْ
-	them	-

Weak verb and Object suffix

Aab rhiya?	Whom did he see?	آبْ رَهِيَهْ؟
Aneeb rhiyaheeb.	He saw me.	أَنْيِبْ رَهِيَهَيْبْ.
Barook rhiyahook.	He saw you (M).	بَرْوُوكْ رَهِيَهْهُوْكَ.
Batook rhiyahook.	He saw you (F).	بَتْوُوكْ رَهِيَهْهُوْكَ.
Barooh rhiya.	He saw him.	بَرْوُوهْ رَهِيَهْ.
Batooh rhiya.	He saw her.	بَتْوُوهْ رَهِيَهْ.
Hinin rhiyahoon.	He saw us.	هَيْنِنْ رَهِيَهْهُوْنْ.
Bareekna rhiyahookna.	He saw you (M PL).	بَرْيَكْنَهْ رَهِيَهْهُوْكَنْهْ.
Bateekna rhiyahookna.	He saw you (F PL).	بَتْيَكْنَهْ رَهِيَهْهُوْكَنْهْ.
Bareeh rhiya.	He saw them (M).	بَرْيَهْ رَهِيَهْ.
Bateeh rhiya.	He saw them (F).	بَتْيَهْ رَهِيَهْ.

Strong verb and Object suffix

Baruuh aab ikteen?	Whom does he know?	بَرُوهُ أَبَ إِكْتِين؟
(Baruuh) aneeb ikteenheeb.	He knows me.	(بَرُوهُ) أَنِيبَ إِكْتِينْهَيْبَ .
(Baruuh) barook ikteenhook.	He knows you (M.)	(بَرُوهُ) بَرُوْكَ إِكْتِينْهَوْكَ .
(Baruuh) batook ikteenhook.	He knows you (F).	(بَرُوهُ) بَرُوْكَ إِكْتِينْهَوْكَ .
(Baruuh) barooh ikteen.	He knows him.	(بَرُوهُ) بَرُوْهُ إِكْتِينَ .
(Baruuh) batooh ikteen.	He knows her.	(بَرُوهُ) بَرُوْهُ إِكْتِينَ .
(Baruuh) hinin ikteenhoon.	He knows us.	(بَرُوهُ) هِينِنَ إِكْتِينْهَوْنِ .
(Baruuh) bareekna ikteenhookna.	He knows you (M PL).	(بَرُوهُ) بَرِيْكَنَهْ إِكْتِينْهَوْكَنَهْ .
(Baruuh) bateekna ikteenhookna.	He knows you (F PL).	(بَرُوهُ) بَتِيْكَنَهْ إِكْتِينْهَوْكَنَهْ .
(Baruuh) bareeh ikteen.	He knows them (M).	(بَرُوهُ) بَرِيْهْ إِكْتِينَ .
(Baruuh) bateeh ikteen.	He knows them (F).	(بَرُوهُ) بَتِيْهْ إِكْتِينَ .

Weak Verbs with their Objects

<387>

In the following table, the imperative form of the verb is give before the colon.

Afooyaa: Baabook / deetook afooyaa!	Forgive (M) your father / mother!	أَفُوْیَا: بَابُوْكَ / دِيْتُوْكَ أَفُوْیَا!
Agriiyaa: Tiwaseeteek agriiyaa!	Read (M) your advice!	أَقْرِيْیَا: تَوَسِيْتِيْكَ أَقْرِيْیَا!
Raataa: Gwida bhali ba'araataaheeb!	Don't (M) ask me many words!	رَاثَا: قُوْدَهْ بَهْلَهْ بَارَاثَاهَيْبَ!
Bhaliyaa: Sakanaayook bhaliyaa!	Tell (M) your message!	بَهْلِيْیَا: سَكْنَايُوْكَ بَهْلِيْیَا!
Faayisaa: Ooktaab / ushanhook faayisaa!	Finish (M) the book / your work!	فَايْسَا: وُ كِتَابَ / أَشْنَهَوْكَ فَايْسَا!
Gw'aa: Ubuunook / w'asiirook gw'aa!	Drink (M) your coffee / juice!	قُوْآ: أُوْبُوْكَ / وَاسِيْرُوْكَ قُوْآ!
Reewaa: Oon'oorba reewaa!	Climb (M) on this hill!	رِيْوَا: وُنُوْرْبَهْ رِيْوَا!
Rhisaa: Uktaabook / tuwaragaatook rhisaaheeb!	Show (M) me your book / paper.	رِهْسَا: أُكْتَابُوْكَ / تُوْرَقَاتُوْكَ رِهْسَاهَيْبَ!
Gwuugamaa: Tootrig gwuugamaa!	Look at the moon!	قُوْوَقْمَا: تُوْتْرِقْ قُوْوَقْمَا!

Strong Verbs with their Objects, sorted alphabetically

<388>

The following verbs are transitive. So the object is always understood, even if there is no noun, pronoun or object suffix to express it. Below, each verb is given with a noun that is commonly or typically associated with this particular verb. Again, the imperative form of the verb is given before the colon.

Abika: Aab t'abika?	Whom did you seize?	أَبِيْكَهْ: أَبَ تَابِيْكَهْ؟
Abika: Beenw'oor abika!	Hold, grab that boy!	أَبِيْكَهْ: بِيْنُوُوْرْ أَبِيْكَهْ!

Abika: Oon'ugalam abika!	Take (M) this pen!	أَبِيكَ: وَنِئَقْلَمِ أَبِيكَ!
Adhidha: Ookaam adhidha!	Hobble the camel!	أَدِّدْهُ: وَ كَامِ أَدِّدْهُ!
Adhidha: Oomooz adhidha!	Divide, peel the banana.	أَدِّدْهُ: وَ مَوْزِ أَدِّدْهُ!
Agira: Baliit teekam agira!	Return those camels!	أَقْرِهِ: بَلِيْتِ تَيْكَمِ أَقْرِهِ!
Agwira: Ubilbil agwira!	Bend the stick!	أَقْوِرْهُ: أُبَلْبِلِ أَقْوِرْهُ!
Agwira: Ottoondi agwira!	Bend this metal!	أَقْوِرْهُ: وَ تَوْتَنْدِ أَقْوِرْهُ!
Aha: Daayi na aha!	Take something good!	أَهْ: دَايِي نَهْ أَهْ!
Ama: Kaam ama!	Ride a camel!	أَمَهْ: كَامِ أَمَهْ!
Ama: Whataay ama!	Ride the horse!	أَمَهْ: وَهْتَايِ أَمَهْ!
Amfaraada: Aneeb amfaraadaheeb!	Talk to me!	أَمْفَرَادَهْ: أَنْيْبِ أَمْفَرَادَهَيْبِ!
Amfaraada: Usanook amfaraada!	Talk to your brother!	أَمْفَرَادَهْ: أَسْنُوْكَ أَمْفَرَادَهْ!
Amakaara: Baabook ammakaara!	Consult your father!	أَمْكَارَهْ: بَابُوْكَ أَمْكَارَهْ!
Amakakaarna: Taktak ammakakaarna!	Consult (PL) each other!	أَمْكَكَارَنَهْ: تَكْتَكِ أَمْكَكَارَنَهْ!
Amararaayna: Taktak ammararaayna!	Meet (PL) each other!	أَمْرَارِيْنَهْ: تَكْتَكِ أَمْرَارِيْنَهْ!
Amookaana: Oon'ootak amookaana!	Get to know this man!	أَمْوَكَاْنَهْ: وَنُوُوْتَكِ أَمْوَكَاْنَهْ!
Amookakaanna: Taktak amookakaanna!	Get to know (PL) each other!	أَمْوَكَاْنَاهْ: تَكْتَكِ أَمْوَكَاْنَاهْ!
Amoorama: Baabook amoorama!	Follow, go with your father!	أَمْوَرَامَهْ: بَابُوْكَ أَمْوَرَامَهْ!
Amooraramna: Amooraramna!	Go with each other!	أَمْوَرَرَامَنَهْ: أَمْوَرَرَامَنَهْ!
Amooth'a: (Hinini) amooth'ahoon / baamoothi'ahoon!	Quarrel with us / Don't quarrel with us!	أَمْوُتْأَاهُوْنِ: (هِيْنِيْنِ) أَمْوُتْأَاهُوْنِ / بَامْوُتْأَاهُوْنِ!
Amooth'ath'ana: Taktak amooth'ath'ana / baamooth'ath'ina!	Quarrel (PL) with each other / Don't quarrel (PL) with each other!	أَمْوُتْأَاهُوْنَاهْ: تَكْتَكِ أَمْوُتْأَاهُوْنَاهْ / بَامْوُتْأَاهُوْنَاهْ!
Amtaraama: Baabook amtaraama!	Respect your father!	أَمْتَرَامَهْ: بَابُوْكَ أَمْتَرَامَهْ!
Ashisha: Baabook ashisha!	Receive, meet your father!	أَشِيْشَهْ: بَابُوْكَ أَشِيْشَهْ!
Ashisha: Y'amna ashisha!	Meet, receive the guests!	أَشِيْشَهْ: يَاْمَنَهْ أَشِيْشَهْ!
Atood'aara: Tutakat titood'aar!	Be married to the woman.	أَتُوْدَارَهْ: تُتْكَتِ تِيْتُوْدَارَهْ!
Awaya: Oobaaba / baabook awaya!	Help the father / your father!	أُوَيْهْ: وَبَابِهْ / بَابُوْكَ أُوَيْهْ!
Baadhina: Uktaabook baadhina / Baabaadhiina!	Forget your book / Don't forget your book!	بَاْدِيْنَهْ: أُنْكَابُوْكَ بَاْدِيْنَهْ / بَابَاْدِيْنَهْ!
Baya: Oosuug baya!	Go to the market!	بِيْهْ: وَشُوْوقِ بِيْهْ!
Bidila: Imhallaga bidila!	Change the money!	بِدِلَهْ: إِمْهَلْتَهْ بِدِلَهْ!
Birira: Tubadham / tumadham	Unroll the (sitting) mat.	بِيْرَهْ: تُبْدَمِ / تُمْدَمِ بِيْرَهْ!

birira!		
Biriya: Mhallagaab biriya!	Have some money!	بِرِيه: مهَلَقَاب بَرِيه!
Bitika: Imhallaga bitika!	Divide the money!	بِيَكه: اِمَهَلَقَه بِيَكه!
Bitika: Oomooz bitika!	Cut apart, divide the banana!	بِيَكه: وَ مَوَز بِيَكه!
D'iya: Tarabeeza d'iya!	Make a table.	دَايَه: تَرَبِيْرَه دَايَه!
D'ura: Aab id'ur?	Whom did he marry?	دُغْرَه: اَب اِدُغُر?
D'ura: Takat d'ura!	Marry a woman!	دُغْرَه: تَكْت دُغْرَه!
Dhibiba: Tubadham dhibiba!	Uncoil, unwrap the mat!	دُيْبِه: تَبْدَم دُيْبِه!
Dhigwiya: Imhallagaayeeek dhigwiya!	Count your money!	دُغْوِيَه: اِمَهَلَقَايِيَك دُغْوِيَه!
Dibila: W'issi dibila!	Collect the sand!	دِيْلَه: وُاسَس دِيْلَه!
Dibiya: Imhallagaayeeek dibiya!	Take care of your money!	دِيْبِه: اِمَهَلَقَايِيَك دِيْبِه!
Digiya: Imhallagaayeen digiya!	Return, give back our money!	دِقِيَه: اِمَهَلَقَايِيَن دِقِيَه!
Diliba: Teekam diliba!	Trade, sell the camels (F)!	دِيْلَه: تِيَكَم دِيْلَه!
Diliba: Wharru diliba!	Trade the millet!	دِيْلَه: وُهْر دِيْلَه!
Dira: Tak dira / baadiira, baadariiya!	Kill someone / Don't kill someone!	دِرَه: تَك دِرَه / بَادِرِه, بَادِرِيَه!
Dirara: Diraar dirara!	Eat dinner!	دِرَرَه: دِرَار دِرَرَه!
Diriga: N'eet diriga!	Light a fire!	دِرِقَه: نَتِيَت دِرِقَه!
Dirira: Y'amna dirira!	Serve the guests supper!	دِرِرَه: يَامْنَه دِرِرَه!
Diwila: Aneeb diwilaheeb!	Come (M) close to me!	دُوْلَه: اُنِيْب دُوْلَهِيْب!
Diya: Gaana diya!	Say something!	دِيَه: قَانَه دِيَه!
Faayida: Aneeb faayida / baafaayiida!	Laugh at me / Don't laugh at me!	فَايِدَه: اُنِيْب فَايِدَه! / بَاْفَايِيِدَه!
Fidhadha: Oosdik fidhadha!	Confess the truth!	فِيْدَدَه: وَ سَدِيَك فِيْدَدَه!
Fidiga: Oobaab fidiga!	Open the door!	فِيْدِقَه: وَ بَاب فِيْدِقَه!
Fidina: Aneeb fidinaheeb / baafadiinaheeb!	Avoid me / Don't avoid me!	فِيْدِنَه: اُنِيْب فِيْدِنَهِيْب / بَاْفَادِيِيْنَهِيْب!
Fidina: Been'ootak fidina / baafadiina!	Avoid that man / Don't avoid that man!	فِيْدِنَه: بِيْنُوْتَاك فِيْدِنَه / بَاْفَادِيِيْنَه!
Fifa: Eeyam fifa!	Pour the water out!	فِفَه: عَي يَم فِفَه!
Fika: Aneeb fikaheeb / baafiikaheeb!	Threaten me / Don't threaten me!	فِيَكَه: اُنِيْب فِيَكَهِيْب / بَاْفِيِيَكَهِيْب!
Fikika: Tubatehiyaay fikika!	Slice the melon!	فِيَكِكَه: تُبْتَهِيْيَاي فِيَكِكَه!
Finika: Tu'anbarooytook finika / baafaniika!	Bite your lip / Don't bite your lip!	فِيْنِكَه: تُاَنْبَرُوْيْتُوَك فِيْنِكَه / بَاْفَانِيِيَكَه!
Fir'a: Ooyaas fir'a!	Get the dog out!	فِرَاَه: وَ يَاس فِرَاَه!
Firika: Toori firika!	Dig the well!	فِرِيَكَه: تَوْرِي فِرِيَكَه!

Fiteha: Tihamooteek fitehi!	Open, let down (F) your hair.	فَيْتِه: تَيْهَمُوتِيكَ فَيْتِه!
Fitika: Ootam fitika!	Lift the food (from the fire).	فَيْتِكِه: وَ تَم فَيْتِكِه!
Fitira: Fatuur fitira!	Eat breakfast!	فَيْتِرِه: فَتُور فَيْتِرِه!
Fitita: Tihamooteek fititi!	Comb (F) your hair!	فَيْتِيه: تَيْهَمُوتِيكَ فَيْتِيه!
Fitita: Yhadhi fitita!	Turn the breads into crumbs (LIT comb it)!	فَيْتِيه: يَهْدِي فَيْتِيه!
Fiyaka: Wharru fiyaka!	Carry (load yourself) the millet.	فَيْيَكِه: وَهَرُّ فَيْيَكِه!
Fooru: Fooru! Utambiil ifoor, uumeek.	Flee! The donkey fled, escaped the car.	فُورِه: فُورِه! أُتَمِيلُ إِفُورِه. أُوْمِيكَ.
Gama: Tudaayiinaay gama / baagaama!	Ignore goodness / Don't ignore goodness!	قَمِه: تُدَايِيْنَاي قَمِه / بَاغَامِه!
Gida: W'awi gida!	Throw the stone!	قِدِه: وَ أُوْعِي قِدِه!
Gwhama: Oobuun gwhama! / igwham.	Sip! / He sipped the coffee.	قُوهَمِه: وَ بُون قُوهَمِه! / إِقُوهَم.
Gwhara: Imhallaga baagwhiira.	Don't steal the money!.	قُوهَرِه: إِمَهَلَّه بَاقُوهِيرِه.
Gwhara: Imhallaga gwhara! / igwhar.	Steal! / He stole the money.	قُوهَرِه: إِمَهَلَّه قُوهَرِه! / إِقُوهَر.
Gwishisha: Utambiil gwishisha! / igwshish.	Push! / He pushed the car.	قُوشِيْشِه: أُتَمِيلُ قُوشِيْشِه! / إِقُوشِيْش.
Hagila: Oogaw hagila / bahagiila!	Miss the house / Don't miss the house!	هَقِيْلِه: وَ قُو هَقِيْلِه / بَهَقِيْلِه!
Hagita: Aneeb hagitaheeb!	Wait for me!	هَقِيْتِه: أَنْيْب هَقِيْتِهِيْب!
Hagwina: Y'ayeek hagwina / bahagwiina!	Scratch your hands / Don't scratch your hands!	هَقُوْنِه: يَأْيِيْكَ بَهَقُوْنِيْه!
Hakwira: Toon'aay hakwira!	Tie the goat!	هَكُوْرِه: تُوْنَاي هَكُوْرِه!
Hamida: Allaayook hamida!	Thank, praise your God!	هَمِيْدِه: أَلَايُوكْ هَمِيْدِه!
Hamiya: Barooh hamiya / bahamiya!	Blame, be bitter, serious about him / Don't blame, be bitter, serious about him!	هَمِيْه: بَرُوْه هَمِيْه / بَهَمِيْه!
Harida: Toon'aay harida!	Slaughter the goat!	هَرِيْدِه: تُوْنَاي هَرِيْدِه!
Hariwa: Ikameeh hariwa!	Seek his camels!	هَرِيْوِه: إِكْمِيْه هَرِيْوِه!
Hariwa: Mhallagaayeek hariwa!	Find your (M) money (PL)!	هَرِيْوِه: مَهَلَّقَايِيْكَ هَرِيْوِه!
Hasiba: Teekam hasiba!	Count the camels!	هَسِيْبِه: تَيْيَكْم هَسِيْبِه!
Hayida: Ujil'ik hayidi!	Sew (F) the rag, old cloth!	هَيْدِه: أُجَالِكْ هَيْدِه!
Hayida: Whalakoooh hayida! / ihayid.	Sew! / He sewed his clothes (LIT cloth).	هَيْدِه: وَهَلَكُوْه هَيْدِه! / إِهَيْد.
Hiya: Mhallagaab (w'oorook) hiya!	Give (M) money (PL) (to your son)!	هِيْه: مَهَلَّقَاب (وُوُوْرُوك) هِيْه!
Humiya: Baabook humiya!	Cover your father!	هُمِيْه: بَابُوكْ هُمِيْه!
Kana: Been'ootak kana!	Know that man!	كَنْه: بِيْنُوْتَاكْ كَنْه!

Kaya: Daktoor kaya / aka!	Become a doctor!	كَيِه: دَكْتور كَيِه / اَكِه!
Kiliba: Teekam kiliba!	Fence the camels (F) in!	كَلِيه: تِيكَم كَلِيه!
Kirima: Eeyam kirima!	Take away the water!	كِرِمِه: عَي يَم كِرِمِه!
Kirira: Ookwaan kirira!	Build a dam for the flood!	كِرِرِه: وَ كُوَان كِرِرِه!
Kit'a: Tubatehiiyaay kit'a!	Cut the melon!	كِيْتَا: تُتَهِييَاي كِيْتَا!
Kitiba: Jawaab kitiba!	Write a letter!	كِيْتِه: جَوَاب كِيْتِه!
Kitiba: Kitaab kitiba!	Write a book!	كِيْتِه: كِيْتَاب كِيْتِه!
Kitima: Oosuug kitima!	Arrive at the market!	كِيْتِمِه: وَ سُوُق كِيْتِمِه!
Kwibara: Urbaayi kwibara (gideha, tikwa)!	Go down from the hill (go down, descend)!	كُوْبِرِه: اُرْبَايِي كُوْبِرِه (قِدِهِه, تِكْوِه)!
Kwibira: Wharru kwibira!	Take the millet down!	كُوْبِرِه: وَهْرُ كُوْبِرِه!
Kwila: Oobaab kwila!	Knock / hammer at the door!	كُوْلِه: وَ بَاب كُوْلِه!
Kwina: Gaana kwina!	Have one thing in mind!	كُوْنِه: فَانِه كُوْنِه!
Kwishiba: W'oorook kwishiba!	Circumcise your son!	كُوْشِيه: وَوُورُوك كُوْشِيه!
Kwisiya: Aliib kwisiya!	Pay Ali your debts!	كُوْسِيه: اَلِيْب كُوْسِيه!
Kwisiya: Imhallagaayi kwisiya!	Pay (me) back my money!	كُوْسِيه: اِمْهَلْغَايِي كُوْسِيه!
Kwisiya: Uyafook kwisiya!	Pay back your debts!	كُوْسِيه: اُفُوُوك كُوْسِيه!
Lhasa: Tisikwkwar lhasa / baalhiisa!	Lick the sugar / Don't lick the sugar!	لِهْسِه: تِسِيكُوُور لِهْسِه / بِالْهِيْسِه!
Lhasa: Tukwooba, tukwibbaay lhasa!	Lick the pot!	لِهْسِه: تُكُوُوبَا / تُكُوُوبَايِي لِهْسِه!
Libaba: Whalakook libaba!	Gird your cloth, loins!	لِيْبِه: وَهَلَكُوُوك لِيْبِه!
Liga: Tihamooteek liga!	Lift, comb your hair!	لِيْغِه: تِهْمُوُوتِيْكَ لِيْغِه!
Limida: Tuktaaba limida!	Get used to the writing!	لِيْمِدِه: تُكْتَابِه لِيْمِدِه!
Liwa: Tuwaraga liwa!	Burn the paper (F)!	لِيْوِه: تُوُرْقِه لِيْوِه!
Liwa: Uwarag liwa!	Burn the paper (M)!	لِيْوِه: اُوُرُق لِيْوِه!
Maasiwa: Ibhaliyi maasiwa!	Hear the word!	مَاسِيْوِه: اِبْهَالِيْيِي مَاسِيْوِه!
Mikira: Been'otak mikira!	Advise, counsel that man!	مِيْكِرِه: بِيْنُوُوتَاك مِيْكِرِه!
Mikira: W'oorook mikira!	Advise your (SG) son!	مِيْكِرِه: وَوُورُوك مِيْكِرِه!
Mikwasa: Ubooyook mikwasa!	Avenge your blood!	مِيْكُوْسِه: اُبُوُيُوُوك مِيْكُوْسِه!
Milha: Whamashaay milha!	Lead the blind man!	مِيْلِه: وَهْمَشَاي مِيْلِه!
Mina: Tihamooteek mina!	Shave (M) your hair!	مِيْنِه: تِهْمُوُوتِيْكَ مِيْنِه!
Mira: Tumhasay mira!	Prepare the lunch!	مِيْرِه: تُمْهَسِي مِيْرِه!
Miriya: Eekam miriya!	Find the camels (M)!	مِيْرِيَه: عَي كَم مِيْرِيَه!
Miriya: Yam / shaahiib miriya!	Find, get (M) some water / tea!	مِيْرِيَه: يَم / شَاهِيْب مِيْرِيَه!
N'ura: Tilhanayteesook n'ura!	Get better from the cold!	نُغْرِه: تِلْهَنْتِيْسُوُوك نُغْرِه!

Naakiba: Ookaam naakiba!	Go after, overtake the camel!	ناكيه: و كام ناكبه!
Nawa: Oogaw nawa / ugawoon baanaawa!	Miss the house / Don't miss our house!	نوه: و قو نوه / اقوون باناوه!
Nigila: Usanduuk nigila!	Open, untie the box!	نقيله: استندوك نقيله!
Rama: Y'amna rama!	Accompany the guests!	رمة: يامنة رمة!
Riba: Imhallaga riba / baariiba!	Refuse the money / Don't refuse the money!	ربه: امهلقه ربه / باريبه!
Ribiya: Ookaam ribiya!	Load the camel!	ريبه: و كام ريبه!
Rififa: Ubarmiil rififa! / irfif.	Pull! / He pulled the container.	رففه: ابرميل رففه! / ارفف.
Rigiga: Tutibalaaytook asa rigiga!	Stretch, raise your finger!	رققه: تبتلايتوك اسه رققه!
Rikwiya: Aneeb rikwiyaheeb / baarakwiiyaheeb!	Be afraid of me / Don't be afraid of me!	ركويه: انيب ركويهيب / باركويهيب!
S'abika: Beenw'oor s'abikaheeb!	Catch that boy for me!	سابكه: بينووزور سابهكيب!
S'ama: Tambiil (barooh) s'ama!	Let (him) ride a car!	سامه: تمپيل (بروه) سامه!
Shaakwa: Reew shaakwa!	Look after cattle.	شاكوه: ريو شاكوه!
Shaawa: Yam shaawa!	Add water!	شاوه: يم شاوه!
Shawawiya: Y'ar shawawiya / baashawawiiya!	Incite the boys against each other / Don't incite the boys against each other!	شويوه: يار شوويه / باشويويه!
Shawawiya: Y'ar shawawiya!	Gather the boys!	شويوه: يار شوويه!
Shibashikwa: Ootam shibashikwa!	Get the food ready, cause to be ready!	شيشكوه: و تم شيشكوه!
Shibiba: Been'eenda shibiba!	Glance at those men!	شيبه: بينتنده شيبه!
Shibiba: Tootrig shibiba!	Look at, watch the moon!	شيبه: توترق شيبه!
Shidhidha: Oomooz shidhidha!	Peel the banana!	شيدده: و موز شيدده!
Shigwidha: Y'ayeek shigwidha! / y'ayeek ishgidh.	Wash your hands! / He washed his hands.	شغوذه: يايك شغوذه! / يايه اشغوذ.
Shigwidha: Yhalakaayeek shigwidha!	Wash your clothes!	شغوذه: يهالكايك شغوذه!
Shiishalika: Oobuun shiishalika!	Reduce the coffee !	شيشلكه: و بون شيشلكه!
Shikidha: Y'ayeek shikidha, shakiidha! / baashakiidha!	Scratch your hands / Don't scratch your hands!	شكده: يايك شكده! / باشكده!
Shitita: Yhalakaayeek shitita! / baashatiita!	Tear your clothes (apart) / Don't tear your clothes (apart)!	شيته: يهالكايك شيته / باشيته!
Sidabila: Y'ar sidabila!	Gather the children!	سيدبله: يار سيدبله!
Sigiya: Ugwharaayi sigiya!	Distance (yourself), be far from the	سقيه: اقوهرايه سقيه!

	thief!	
Siisaga: Ooyaas siisaga!	Let the dog be far (Chase it away)!	سِيِسَقَه: ۆ ياس سِيِسَقَه!
Sikwa: Ooluul sikwa!	Pull (M) the string!	سِكْوَه: ۆ لُول سِكْوَه!
Sikwiya: Ugwhara sikwiya!	Run after the thief!	سِكْوِيَه: أُفْوَهْرَه سِكْوِيَه!
Sima: W'oorook sima!	Name your son!	سِيْمَه: وُوُوْرُوْك سِيْمَه!
Sinaakira: Barooh sinaakira!	Listen to him!	سِيْنَاكِرَه: تَرُوَه سِيْنَاكِرَه!
Sinaakira: Ibhaliyi sinaakira!	Listen to my words!	سِيْنَاكِرَه: اِبْهَلِيِي سِيْنَاكِرَه!
Sinaakira: Uraadiyu sinaakira!	Listen to the radio!	سِيْنَاكِرَه: اُرَادِي سِيْنَاكِرَه!
Sinhada: Oon'ootam sinhada!	Finish that porridge!	سِيْنَهْدَه: ۆنُوُوْتَم سِيْنَهْدَه!
Sinhasa: Tukwooba sinhasa!	Clean the bowl!	سِيْنَهْسَه: نُكُوُوْبَه سِيْنَهْسَه!
Siniya: W'oor siniya!	Wait for the boy!	سِيْنِيَه: وُوُوْر سِيْنِيَه!
T'iya: Baabook t'iya!	Be similar to your father (Imitate him)!	تَاِيَه: بَابُوْك تَاِيَه!
Tara: Ugawoon tara! / itar.	Avoid! / He avoided our house.	تَرَه: أُفُوُوْن تَرَه! / اِتَر.
Tara: W'awi tara! / itar.	Dodge! / He dodged the stone.	تَرَه: وَاُوُوْءَ تَرَه! / اِتَر.
Tha'a, th'a: Oobaab tha'a!	Beat, knock at the door!	تَاَه, تَاَه: ۆ بَاب تَاَه!
Tha'a, th'a: Talafoon tha'a! / ith'a.	Ring the phone! / The telephone rang.	تَاَه, تَاَه: تَلْفُوُون تَاَه! / اِثَاَه.
Thab'a / thaba'a: Ookaam thaba'a!	Beat the camel much (REP)!	تُبَاَه / تُبَاَه: ۆ كام تُبَاَه!
Thiwiya: Ooluul thiwiya!	Squeeze the rope!	تُوِيَه: ۆ لُول تُوِيَه!
Tiba: Tukarooro tiba!	Fill the bottle!	تِيَه: نُكُرُوْرَه تِيَه!
Tifira: Oor tifiri / tifri.	She gave birth to a boy.	تِيْفِرَه: ۆ رِيْفِرَه / تِيْفِرَه.
Tikwikwa: Tarabeezaat tikwikwa!	Produce a table!	تِكُوُوْكُوَه: تَرِيِيْزَات تِكُوُوْكُوَه!
Tikwiya: Ootam tikwiyi!	Cook (F) the porridge!	تِكْوِيَه: ۆ تَم تِكْوِيَه!
Tikwiya: Toosha, toolam tikwiya!	Cook (M) the meat, broth!	تِكْوِيَه: تُوُشَه, تُوُلَم تِكْوِيَه!
Tilisa: Unisrik tilisa / baataliisa!	Don't cheat the child!	تِيْلِسَه: اُنِسْرِك تِيْلِسَه! / بَاتِيْلِسَه!
Tilisa: Unisrik tilisa! / iitlis.	Cheat! / He cheated the child.	تِيْلِسَه: اُنِسْرِك تِيْلِسَه! / اِيْتِيْلِس.
Tiriba: Imhallaga tiriba!	Divide the money!	تِرِيَه: اِمْهَلَّقَه تِرِيَه!
Uba: Umii'at uba!	Follow the trace!	اُبَه: اُمِيَاْت اُبَه!
Usha: Oogaw usha!	Leave the house!	اُشَه: ۆقُو اُشَه!
Wika: W'ayook wika / baawiika!	Cut, scratch your hand / Don't cut, scratch your hand!	وِكَه: وَاِيُوْك وِكَه! / بَاوِيِكَه!
Yaaya: Baabook yaaya / baayaaya!	Blame your father / Don't blame your father!	يَاِيَه: بَابُوْك يَاِيَه! / بَايَاِيَه!

Yiya: Ashshigeet yaay baayaaya! / iyiya.	Don't die a sudden (hurried) death! / He died.	ييه : أَشَقِيت ياي بايايه! إيه .
---------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Weak and Strong Verbs with Object Suffixes 1 (M)

Raataaheeb! / raatanihook.	<u>Ask (M) me! / I ask you (M).</u>	راتاهيب! / راتيهوك .
Afooyaaheeb! / afooyanihook.	Excuse (M) me! / I excuse you (M).	أفوياهيب! / أفويتيهوك .
Tamsaaheeb! / tamsanihook.	Feed (M) me! / I feed you (M).	تمساهيب! / تمسنيهوك .
Gw'asaahieb! / gw'asanihook.	Give me something to drink (M)! / I give you (M) something to drink.	قواساهيب! / قواسنيهوك .
Salaamaahieb! / salaamanihook.	Greet (M) me! / I greet you (M).	سلاماهيب! / سلامنيهوك .
Rhisaaheeb! / rhisanihook.	Show (M) me! / I show you (M).	رھسايھيب! / رھسنيهوك .
Sooyaaheeb! / sooyanihook.	Tell (M) (inform) me! / I inform you (M).	سوياهيب! / سويتيهوك .
Afhamaahieb! / afhamanihook.	Understand (M) me! / I understand you (M).	أفھماھيب! / أفھمنيهوك .
Hiyaheeb! / aniiwhook.	Give (M) me! / I give you (M).	ھيھيب! / أنيوهوك .
Ushaheeb! / an'iishhook.	Leave (M) me! / I leave you (M).	أشھيب! / أنايشھوك .
Shibibaheeb! / ashanbiibhook.	See (look at) (M) me! / I look at you (M).	شيبھيب! / أشنيبيھوك .

Weak and Strong Verbs with Object Suffixes 2 (F)

Raatiheeb! / raatanihook.	Ask (F) me! / I ask you (F).	راتيهيب! / راتيهوك .
Afooyiheeb! / afooyanihook.	Excuse (F) me! / I excuse you (F).	أفوييهيب! / أفويتيهوك .
Tamsiheeb! / tamsanihook.	Feed (F) me! / I feed you (F).	تمسيهيب! / تمسنيهوك .
Gw'asiheeb! / gw'asanihook.	Give to drink (F) me! / I give you (F) something to drink.	قواسيهيب! / قواسنيهوك .
Salaamihieb! / salaamanihook.	Greet (F) me! / I greet you (F).	سلاميهيب! / سلامنيهوك .
Rhisihieb! / rhisanihook.	Show (F) me! / I show you (F).	رھسيهيب! / رھسنيهوك .
Sooyiheeb! / sooyanihook.	Tell / inform (F) me! / I inform you (F).	سوييهيب! / سويتيهوك .
Afhamihieb! / afhamanihook.	Understand (F) me! / I understand you (F).	أفھميهيب! / أفھمنيهوك .

Ushiheeb! / an'iishhook.	Leave (F) me! / I leave you (F).	أشهب! / أنايشهوك.
Hiyiheeb! / aniiwhook.	Give (F) me! / I give you (F).	هيتهب! / أنيوهوك.
Shibibiheeb! / ashanbiibhook.	See (look at) (F) me! / I see you (F).	شيبهيب! / أشنيبهوك.

Weak and Strong Verbs with Object Suffixes 3 (PL)

Raataanahoon! / raatnayhookna.	Ask (PL) us! / we ask you (PL).	راتانهون! / راتينهوكنه.
Afooyanahoon! / afoonayhookna.	Excuse (PL) us! / we excuse you (PL).	أفويانهون! / أفوينهوكنه.
Tamsaanahoon! / tamsnayhookna.	Feed (PL) us! / we feed you (PL).	تمسانهون! / تمسينهوكنه.
Gw'asaanahoon! / gw'asnayhookna.	Give (PL) us something to drink ! / we give you (PL) something to drink.	قواسانهون! / قواسينهوكنه.
Salaamaanahoon! / salaamnayhookna.	Greet (PL) us! / we greet you (PL).	سلامانهون! / سلامينهوكنه.
Rhisaanahoon! / rhisnayhookna.	Show (PL) us! / we show you (PL).	رهسانهون! / رهسينهوكنه.
Sooyanahoon! / soonayhookna.	Tell / inform (PL) us! / we inform you (PL).	سويانهون! / سوينهوكنه.
Afhamaanahoon! / afhamnayhookna.	Understand (PL) us! / we understand you (PL).	أفهمانهون! / أفهمينهوكنه.
Hiinahoon! / neeyaawhookna.	Give (PL) us! / we give you (PL).	هيناهون! / نيياوهوكنه.
Ushnahoon! / nee'ushhookna.	Leave (PL) us! / we leave you (PL).	أشناهون! / نيئشهوكنه.
Shibibnahoon! / nishabibhookna.	See look at (PL) us! / we look at you (PL).	شيبينهون! / نشبينهوكنه.

Verbs Frequently Used with Object Suffixes

'Thank'

Ahammiidehook.	I thank, praise you (M).	أهميدهوك.
Ahammiidehook.	I thank, praise you (F).	أهميدهوك.
Ahammiidehookna.	I thank, praise you (PL).	أهميدهوكنه.
Nhamidehook.	We thank, praise you (M).	نهميدهوك.
Nhamidehook.	We thank, praise you (F).	نهميدهوك.
Nhamidehookna.	We thank, praise you (PL).	نهميدهوكنه.

'Wash'

W'ayu ahangwiidh.	I wash my hand.	وَأَيُّ أَشَقْوَيْدُ.
Y'ayi ahangwiidh.	I wash my hands.	يَأَيُّ أَشَقْوَيْدُ.
Tihamooti ahangwiidh.	I wash my hair (PL).	تَهْمَوْتِي أَشَقْوَيْدُ.
Isahaanaayi ahangwiidh.	I wash my dishes.	إِسْهَانَايِي أَشَقْوَيْدُ.
Yhalakaayi ahangwiidh.	I wash my clothes.	يَهْلَكَايِي أَشَقْوَيْدُ.

Verbs with Two Objects

<389>

A few verbs always have two objects. Even if not expressed, both are understood.

Verbs with Two Object Nouns

(Oomeek) urabi fiyika!	Load the luggage on the donkey, load the donkey with the luggage.	(ؤميك) أُرْبِي فَيْكِه!
(Oomeek) wharru fiyika!	Load the donkey with the millet!	(ؤميك) وُهْرُ فَيْكِه!
(Aneeb) yam gw'asaahieb!	Give (M) me (something) to drink!	(أنيب) يَم قَوَّسَاهِيَب!
(Aneeb) mhallagaab hiyaheeb!	Give me some money!	(أنيب) مَهْلَقَاب هِيَهِيَب!
(Oonbarooh) oorooh ikwaas.	He made (created) him his child!	(ؤنبروه) وُرُوَه إِكْوَاس.
(W'oorook) tuktaaba silamiida!	Learn, get your son used to writing!	(وؤوروك) تُكْتَابِه سِلْمِيدِه!
(W'oorook) wharru sidabila!	Let your son collect the millet!	(وؤوروك) وُهْرُ سِيدَابِلِه!
(W'oorook) dehaay sim soosima!	Let your boy be given a good name!	(وؤوروك) دِهَاي سِيَم سَوْسِيْمِه!
(Barooh) meek s'ama!	Let him climb a donkey!	(بروه) مِيَك سَامِه!
(Y'amna) diraar dirira!	Let the guests have supper!	(يَامْنِه) دِرَار دِرِرِه!
(W'oorook) tugraaya silamida!	Let your son learn how to read (LIT the reading)!	(وؤوروك) تُغْرَايِه سِلْمِيدِه!
(W'oorook) tuktaaba sookina!	Let your son know how to write (LIT cause your son to know the writing)!	(وؤوروك) تُكْتَابِه سَوَكْنِه!
(Oomeek) harroob ribiya!	Load the donkey with millet!	(ؤميك) هَرَّوَب رِيْبِه!
(Unadaay) oorooh kwaasa!	Make (create as) the orphan your child!	(أُنْدَاي) وُرُوَك كُوَاسِه!
(Aneeb) imhallagaayi kwisiyaheeb!	Repay me my money!	(أنيب) إِمْهَلَقَايِي كُوَسِيْهِيَب!
(W'oorook) tumidrasa sitooba!	Take your boy to (the) school!	(وؤوروك) تُمِيدْرَسِه سِيْتُوْبِه!

'To Give' with Two Objects

(Aneeb) w'ayook hiyaheeb!	Give (M) me your hand!	(أنيب) وَايُوك هِيَهِيَب!
---------------------------	------------------------	---------------------------

W'ayook hiyahoon!	Give (M) us your hand!	وَأَيُّوكَ هِيَهُون!
W'ayook hiyiheeb!	Give (F) me your hand!	وَأَيُّوكَ هِيَهَيْب!
W'ayook hiyihoon!	Give (F) us your hand!	وَأَيُّوكَ هِيَهُون!
Y'ayeeekna hiinaheeb!	Give (PL) me your (PL) hands!	يَأَيُّوكِنَه هِيَهَيْب!
Y'ayeeekna hiinahoon!	Give (PL) us your (PL) hands!	يَأَيُّوكِنَه هِيَهُون!

'To Say' with Two Objects 1

(Barook) aab eeyadnahook?	What do they call you (M)?	(بَرُوك) أَب تِيدَنَهَوَك؟
Aneeb Sayid eeyadnaheeb.	They call me Said.	أَنِيْب سَيِد تِيدَنَهَيْب.
Batook aab eeyadnahook?	What do they call you (F)?	بَتُوكَ أَب تِيدَنَهَوَك؟
Aneeb Zaynab eeyadnaheeb.	They call me Zaynab.	أَنِيْب زَيْنَب تِيدَنَهَيْب.
Barooh aab eeyadna?	What do they call him?	بَرُوهَ أَب تِيدَنَه؟
Barooh Aliib eeyadna.	They call him Ali.	بَرُوهَ أَلِيْب تِيدَنَه.
Batooh aab eeyadna?	What do they call her?	بَتُوهَ أَب تِيدَنَه؟
Batooh Haliimaab eeyadna.	They call her Halima.	بَتُوهَ هَلِيْمَاب تِيدَنَه.

'To Say' with Two Objects 2

(Bareekna) aab eeyadnahookna?	What do they call you (M PL)?	(بَرِيَكِنَه) أَب تِيدَنَهَوَكِنَه؟
Hinin Aliiwwa Abuuzaynabwa eeyadnahoon.	They call us Ali and Abuzaynab.	هِنِن أَلِيَّوهَ أَبُوْزَيْنَبوهَ تِيدَنَهُون.
Bateekna aab eeyadnahookna?	What do they call you (F PL)?	بَتِيَكِنَه أَب تِيدَنَهَوَكِنَه؟
Hinin Haliimaabwa Zaynabwa, Zaynawwa eeyadnahoon.	They call us Halima and Zaynab.	هِنِن هَلِيْمَابوهَ زَيْنَبوهَ، زَيْنَبوهَ تِيدَنَهُون.
Bareeh aab eeyadna?	What do they call them (M)?	بَرِيَهَ أَب تِيدَنَه؟
Bareeh Abduwwa Oosheekwa eeyadna.	They call them Abu and Oosheek.	بَرِيَهَ أَبُوْوهَ وَشِيَكُوهَ تِيدَنَه.
Bateeh aab eeyadna?	What do they call them (F)?	بَتِيَهَ أَب تِيدَنَه؟
Bateeh Haliimaabwa Zaynabwa eeyadnahoon.	They call us Halima and Zaynab.	بَتِيَهَ هَلِيْمَابوهَ زَيْنَبوهَ تِيدَنَهُون.

'To Return' with Object and Adverb

Uktaabook dehook adgi.	I returned (gave back) your (M) book to (for) you (M).	أَكْتَابُوكَ دَهوكَ أَدْعِي.
Iktabookna dehookna adgi.	I returned your (PL) books to you (PL).	إَكْتَابُوكِنَه دَهوكِنَه أَدْعِي.

Full Paradigm with Two Objects

<390>

Here is the full paradigm of a verb with all subject and object pronoun suffixes - both positive and negative (further below).

'I gave to ...'

Aab tihya?	Whom did you (M) give (it to)?	آب تيهه؟
Barook ahihook.	I gave (it to) you (M).	بروك ايهوك .
Batook ahihook.	I gave (it to) you (F).	بتوك ايهوك .
Barooh ahi.	I gave (it to) him.	بروه اھے .
Batooh ahi.	I gave (it to) her.	بتوه اھے .
Bareekna ahihookna.	I gave (it to) you (M PL).	بريكنه ايهوكنه .
Bateekna ahihookna.	I gave (it to) you (F PL).	بتيكنه ايهوكنه .
Bareeh ahi.	I gave (it to) them (M).	بريه اھے .
Bateeh ahi.	I gave (it to) them (F).	بتيه اھے .

'You (M) gave to ...'

Aneeb tihyaheeb.	You (M) gave (it to) me.	آنيب تيهيهيب .
Barooh tihya.	You (M) gave (it to) him.	بروه تيهه .
Batooh tihya.	You (M) gave (it to) her.	بتوه تيهه .
Hinin tihyahoon.	You (M) gave (it to) us.	هينن تيهيهون .
Bareeh tihya.	You (M) gave (it to) them (M).	بريه تيهه .
Bateeh tihya.	You (M) gave (it to) them (F).	بتيه تيهه .

'You (F) gave to ...'

Aneeb tihyiheeb.	You (F) gave (it to) me.	آنيب تيهيهيب .
Barooh tihyi.	You (F) gave (it to) him.	بروه تيهيه .
Batooh tihyi.	You (F) gave (it to) her.	بتوه تيهيه .
Hinin tihyihoon.	You (F) gave (it to) us.	هينن تيهيهون .
Bareeh tihyi.	You (F) gave (it to) them (M).	بريه تيهيه .
Bateeh tihyi.	You (F) gave (it to) them (F).	بتيه تيهيه .

'He gave to ...'

Aneeb ihiheeb.	<u>He gave (it to) me.</u>	آنيب ايهيب .
Barook ihihook.	He gave (it to) you (M).	بروك ايهوك .
Batook ihihook.	He gave (it to) you (F).	بتوك ايهوك .
Barooh ihi.	He gave (it to) him.	بروه اھے .
Batooh ihi.	He gave (it to) her.	بتوه اھے .

Hinin ihihoon.	He gave (it to) us.	ھینن اِھھون .
Bareekna ihihookna.	He gave (it to) you (M PL).	بَرَّکَنه اِھھوکَنه .
Bateekna ihihookna.	He gave (it to) you (F PL).	بَتَّیکَنه اِھھوکَنه .
Bareeh ihi.	He gave (it to) them (M).	بَرَّه اِھه .
Bateeh ihi.	He gave (it to) them (F).	بَتَّه اِھه .

'She gave to ...'

Aneeb tihieeb.	She gave (it to) me.	اُنَّیْب تِھَّیَّیْب .
Barook tihihook.	She gave (it to) you (M).	بَرَّوْک تِھَّھوْک .
Batook tihihook.	She gave (it to) you (F).	بَتَّوْک تِھَّھوْک .
Barooh tihi.	She gave (it to) him.	بَرَّوْه تِھه .
Batooh tihi.	She gave (it to) her.	بَتَّوْه تِھه .
Hinin tihihoon.	She gave (it to) us.	ھینن تِھَّھون .
Bareekna tihihookna.	She gave (it to) you (M PL).	بَرَّکَنه تِھَّھوْکَنه .
Bateekna tihihookna.	She gave (it to) you (F PL).	بَتَّیکَنه تِھَّھوْکَنه .
Bareeh tihi.	She gave (it to) them (M).	بَرَّه تِھه .
Bateeh tihi.	She gave (it to) them (F).	بَتَّه تِھه .

'We gave to ...'

Barook nihihook.	We gave (it to) you (M).	بَرَّوْک نِھَّھوْک .
Batook nihihook.	We gave (it to) you (F).	بَتَّوْک نِھَّھوْک .
Barooh nihi.	We gave (it to) him.	بَرَّوْه نِھه .
Batooh nihi.	We gave (it to) her.	بَتَّوْه نِھه .
Bareekna nihihookna.	We gave (it to) you (M PL).	بَرَّکَنه نِھَّھوْکَنه .
Bateekna nihihookna.	We gave (it to) you (M PL).	بَتَّیکَنه نِھَّھوْکَنه .
Bareeh nihi.	We gave (it to) them (M).	بَرَّه نِھه .
Bateeh nihi.	We gave (it to) them (F).	بَتَّه نِھه .

'You (PL) gave to ...'

Aneeb tihinaheeb.	You (PL) gave (it to) me.	اُنَّیْب تِھَّیْنَّھَّیْب .
Barooh tihina.	You (PL) gave (it to) him.	بَرَّوْه تِھَّیْنه .
Batooh tihina.	You (PL) gave (it to) her.	بَتَّوْه تِھَّیْنه .
Hinin tihinahoon.	You (PL) gave (it to) us.	ھینن تِھَّیْنَّھون .
Bareeh tihina.	You (PL) gave (it to) them (M).	بَرَّه تِھَّیْنه .
Bateeh tihina.	You (PL) gave (it to) them (F).	بَتَّه تِھَّیْنه .

'They gave to ...'

Aneeb ihinheeb.	They gave (it to) me.	اُنَّیْب اِھَّیْنَّھَّیْب .
-----------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------

Barook ihiihook.	They gave (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكْ إِهِيْنهَوُكْ .
Batook ihiihook.	They gave (it to) you (F).	بَتُوكْ إِهِيْنهَوُكْ .
Barooh ihiiin.	They gave (it to) him.	بَرُوْهْ إِهِيْن .
Batooh ihiiin.	They gave (it to) her.	بَتُوْهْ إِهِيْن .
Hinin ihiiinhood.	They gave (it to) us.	هِيْننْ إِهِيْنهَوُنْ .
Bareekna ihiiinhookna.	They gave (it to) you (M PL).	بَرِيْكْنَهْ إِهِيْنهَوُكْنَهْ .
Bateekna ihiiinhookna.	They gave (it to) you (F PL).	بَتِيْكْنَهْ إِهِيْنهَوُكْنَهْ .
Bareeh ihiiin.	They gave (it to) them (M).	بَرِيْهْ إِهِيْن .
Bateeh ihiiin.	They gave (it to) them (F).	بَتِيْهْ إِهِيْن .

Derivations and Synonyms

<391>

Basic verb stems can be changed to derived verbs like yak-aa 'start' > yak-s-aa 'let start'. The main Beja derivations are causative (cause the action) and passive (suffer the action). Other derivations include reflexive verbs (the action is directed to the one who acts), and repetitive verbs (the action is repeated).

<392>

Weak verbs attach the derivation after the root, strong verbs attach the same morpheme before the root.

Weak Verbs Grouped by Derivations

<393>

The verbs below are grouped by derivations such as causative, intensive or passive.

Causatives

Causative Verbs

Afhasiya / afisiya.	He let know, explained.	أَفْهَسِيْهْ / أَفِيْسِيْهْ .
Agriisiya.	He let read, taught.	أَقْرِيْسِيْهْ .
Allamsiya.	He let get used to, taught.	أَلْمَسِيْهْ .
Faayisiya.	He let be completed, finished.	فَايْسِيْهْ .
Giigsiya.	He let go, sold.	قِيْغْسِيْهْ .
Rhisiya.	He let see, showed.	رْهِيْسِيْهْ .

Causative Verbs With Two Objects

<394>

The -s marking causative forms usually expresses that another person is caused to perform an action. Therefore the causative verbs tend to have two objects, even though the objects may not be expressed as nouns or independent pronouns or suffixed pronouns.

Example 'Give (LIT cause) to Drink'

(Aneeb) yam gw'asaahceb!	<u>Give (M) me (not someone else) to drink!</u>	(أَنْيِبْ) يَم قُوْأَسَاهِيْب!
--------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------

Yam gw'asaahieb!	Give (M) me to drink!	يَم قُوَاسَاهِيَب!
Barooh / batooh / bateeh / yam gw'asaa!	Give (M) him / her / them (not someone else) to drink!	بَرُوَه / بَتُوَه / بَتِيَه / يَم قُوَاسَا!
Yam gw'asaa!	Give (M) (him / her / them) to drink!	يَم قُوَاسَا!
Yam gw'asihieeb!	Give (F) me to drink!	يَم قُوَاسِيَهِيَب!
Yam gw'asaanaheeb!	Give (PL) me to drink!	يَم قُوَاسَانَهِيَب!
Yam gw'asaahoon!	Give (M) us to drink!	يَم قُوَاسَاهُوَن!
Yam gw'asiihoon!	Give (F) us to drink!	يَم قُوَاسِيَهُوَن!
Yam gw'asaanahoon!	Give (PL) us to drink!	يَم قُوَاسَانَهُوَن!
Teekam yam gw'asaa!	Give (M) the camels (F) water to drink!	تِيَكَم يَم قُوَاسَا!
Teekam yam gw'asii!	Give (F) the camels (F) water to drink!	تِيَكَم يَم قُوَاسِيِي!
Teekam yam gw'asaana!	Give (PL) the camels (F) water to drink!	تِيَكَم يَم قُوَاسَانَه!

Social Verbs

<395>

The mutual or social action is expressed by the use of two affixes together: The -m 'passive' plus the -s 'causative'. The noun or adverb taktak 'each other' may serve as dummy object. Note that although some of the commands with a social or passive meaning - such as 'be entertained!' - may not have any function in normal everyday life, the imperative forms in -aa have been used here for the sake of consistency.

[Examples: Social Verbs](#)

Hatirsamaa!	Argue with (sb.)!	هَاتِيَرَسَمَا!
Ayaysamaa!	Be a relative with (sb.)!	أَيَايَسَمَا!
Hijiksamaa!	Be entertained, talk!	هِيَجِيَكَسَمَا!
Assassamaa!	Be sure (LIT established)!	أَسَّسَمَا!
Araasamaa!	Be friendly!	أَرَاَسَمَا!
Araaweesamaa!	Be friends, share!	أَرَاوِيَسَمَا!
Neeweesamaa!	Be insulted!	نِيُوِيَسَمَا!
Waasisamaa (wawaasisamaa)!	Be removed!	وَأَيَسَمَا (وَوَأَيَسَمَا)!
Rhisamaa!	Be seen!	رَهِيَسَمَا!
Shamaasamaa (shamsamaa)!	Bicker with (sb.)!	شَمَاسَمَا (شَمَسَمَا)!
Bhaliisamaa!	Converse with (sb.)!	بَهَالِيَسَمَا!
(Taktak) afhamsamaa!	Discuss with (sb.), explain!	(تَكْتَاك) أَفْهَمَسَمَا!
Tamsamaa!	Eat with each other!	تَمَسَمَا!
Hawaasamaa!	Entertain, play with (sb.)!	هَوَاَسَمَا!
Nuunsamaa!	Exchange!	نُوُونَسَمَا!
Hadiidsamaa!	Let talk, cause to talk!	هَادِيِيدَسَمَا!
Afhamsamaa!	Let understand, explain!	أَفْهَمَسَمَا!

Salaamsamaa!	Cause to greet!	سَلَامَسْمَا!
Hadiidsamaa!	Let talk!	هَادِيْدَسْمَا!
Ajjabsamaa!	Let someone be surprised!	اَجْبَسْمَا!
Naffasamaa!	Pretend to be happy!	نَفَسْمَا!
Suursamaa!	Run a race with someone!	سُوْرَسْمَا!
Amaansamaa!	Trust each other!	اَمَانَسْمَا!
Hireersamaa!	Walk about!	هَرِيْرَسْمَا!

Passives

Examples: Past

Agriimiya.	It was read.	اَقْرِيْمِيَه .
Allamamiya.	It was taught.	اَلْمَمِيَه .
Eegriimamiya.	It was getting old.	يَقْرِيْمِيَه .
Faayamiya.	It was completed.	فَايْمِيَه .
Hukwumamiya.	It was ruled, decided.	هَكُوْمِيَه .
Gw'amiya.	It (M) was consumed, drunk.	قَوَامِيَه .
Tamamiya.	It (M) was eaten.	تَمَمِيَه .
Rhamiya.	He was seen.	رَهْمِيَه .
Rhamta.	She was seen.	رَهْمَتَه .

Examples with Subjects

Batuuk utalafooniib titeharriwi.	You (F) are wanted at the phone.	بَتُوْك اُتْلَفُوْنِيْب تِيْتَهَرِّيْوِي .
Uumooz tamamiya.	The banana was eaten.	اُوْمُوْز تَمَمِيَه .
Uumooz tamamiini.	The banana is (being) eaten.	اُوْمُوْز تَمَمِيْنِي .
Uuttubaskaawi tamamtini.	This biscuit is (being) eaten.	اُوْتْبَسْكَاوِي تَمَمْتِيْنِي .
Uun'ushaahi gw'amiini.	This tea is (being) consumed.	اُوْنُشَاهِي قَوَامِيْنِي .

'Be Rented': Past, Present

Uun'uugaw ajjaramiya.	This house (M) was rented.	اُوْنُوْغَو اَجْرَامِيَه .
Tuuttughurfa ajjaramta.	It (F) was rented.	تُوْتُوْغُرْفَه اَجْرَمْتَه .
Tuuttughurfa ajjaramtini.	It (F) is being rented.	تُوْتُوْغُرْفَه اَجْرَمْتِيْنِي .
Ajjaramiyaan.	They were rented out.	اَجْرَمِيَان .
Ajjaramtini.	It (F) is being rented out.	اَجْرَمْتِيْنِي .

'Be Consumed': Past / Present

Gw'amiya.	It (M) was consumed / drunk.	قَوَامِيَه .
Gw'amta.	It (F) was consumed / drunk.	قَوَامْتَه .
Gw'amiyaan.	They are consumed / drunk.	قَوَامِيَان .

Gw'amiini.	It (M) is consumed / drunk.	قَوَامِينِي .
Gw'amtini.	It (F) is consumed / drunk.	قَوَامْتِينِي .
Gw'ameen.	They are consumed / drunk.	قَوَامِين .

'Be Consumed': Active / Passive

Active:		
Aakam yhindi tamiyaana / tameen.	The camels ate the trees.	اَكَم يِهِنْدِي تَمِيَاانَه / تَمِين .
Baraah rhiyaanhookna.	They saw you (PL).	بَرَاه رِهِيَاانهُوَكْنَه .
Passive:		
Yhindi tamamiyaan.	The trees were eaten.	يِهِنْدِي تَمَمِيَاان .
Baraakna rhamteena.	You are seen.	بَرَاكْنَه رَهْمَتِينَه .
Ushaahi gw'amiya.	The tea was consumed (REP).	اُشَاهِي قَوَامِيَا .
Tujabana gw'amta.	The coffee (-pot) was consumed.	تُجَبَانَه قَوَامْتَه .

Repeated Action

<396>

Some verbs express that the action is repeated over time, or over many objects. The form of these verbs is reduplicated, i.e., one syllable is repeated.

Reduplicated Weak Verbs

haggagaa	affirm, confirm	هَقَّقَا
lablabaa	babble, talk	لَبَّلَا
assassamaa	be established	اَسَّسَمَا
ayaysamaa	be a relative with	اَيَّيَسَمَا
hanhan'aa	bray	هَنَّنَا
haggagsamaa	inquire, investigate (AR)	هَقَّقَسَمَا
witwitaa	grin, smile	وَتَوَتَا
gargaraa	gurgle	قَرَقَرَا
kilkilsaa	let move easily	كَلِكَلِسَا
hamhamaa	bellow, neigh	هَمَمَهَا
haddadaa	threaten	هَدَّدَا

Strong Verbs Grouped by Derivations

<397>

The verbs below are grouped by derivations such as causative, passive etc. Strong verbs take prefixes.

Causatives

Example: 'Let be cheap'

Rhasaabu.	It / he is cheap.	رَهْسَابُ .
-----------	-------------------	-------------

Unifsooh isrhas.	He made himself cheap / cheapened himself.	أُنْفِسُوهُ إِسْرَهَسَ .
Unifsook baasirhiisa!	Don't make yourself (M) cheap!	أَنْفَسُوكْ بَاسِرْهَيْسَه!

Causative, Imperatives

Oobuun shiishalika!	Let the coffee be less!	وَبُون شِيْشَلِكِه!
Tugraaya w'oorook sookina!	Let your son know the reading!	تُقْرَايَه وُؤُرُوكْ سُوْكِينَه!
W'ooriiyook oor soosima!	Let your son's son be named!	وُؤُرِيْيُوكْ وُرْ سُوْبِيْمَه!

Causative Verbs with Objects

Oobaab (barooh) sehakwira!	Let (him) tie, cause him to, lock the door.	وَبَاب (بَرُوَه) سَهَكْوِرَه!
Ibhaliyi sinaakira!	Listen to my words!	إِبْهَالِيْيِي سِنَاكِرَه!
Ootam shibashikwa!	Let the porridge, meal get ready, cooked!	وَتَم شِيْبَشِيْكَوَه!
Wharru (barooh) sidabila!	Let (him) collect the millet!	وَهْرُ (بَرُوَه) سِيْدَابِلَه!
Tugraaya (w'oorook) silamida!	Let (your son) learn reading!	تُقْرَايَه (وُؤُرُوكْ) سِيْلَامِيْدَه!
Oon'ootam isnhad.	He finished this porridge.	وُنُوُوتَم إِسْنَهَد.
Oogaw sinhasa!	Let the house, the pot be cleaned!	وَقَو سِيْنَهَسَه!
Ooyaas siisaga!	Let the dog be far, cause (M) him to be far!	وَيَاس سِيْسِقَه!

Passives

'Be Worn': Past, Present

Active:		
Akwi.	I wore.	أَكُوْءِي .
Passive:		
Itookkwaaay.	It (M) was worn.	إِتُوكُوكُوْءَاي .
Titookkwaaay.	It (F) was worn.	تِيْتُوكُوكُوْءَاي .
Itookkwaaayna.	They were worn.	إِتُوكُوكُوْءَايْنَه .
Itookkwki.	It (M) is worn.	إِتُوكُوكُوْءِي .
Titookkwki.	It (F) is worn.	تِيْتُوكُوكُوْءِي .
Itookkwkin.	They are worn.	إِتُوكُوكُوْءِيْن .

'Be Married': Past Paradigm

IMPV:		
Atood'aari!	Get (F) married!	أَتُوْدَآرِيْ!
PAST:		
Atood'aar.	I (F) got married.	أَتُوْدَآرِي .
Titood'aari.	You (F) got married.	تِيْتُودَآرِي .
Titood'aar.	She got married.	تِيْتُودَآرِي .
Nitood'aar.	We got married.	نِيْتُودَآرِي .

Titood'aarna.	You (F PL) got married.	تیتوڈآرنه.
Itood'aarna / Tikwaati kastaa itood'aarna.	They (F) / All my sisters got married.	یتوڈآرنه / تیکواتے کستا یتوڈآرنه.

'Be Married': Present Paradigm

PRES:		
Atood'iir.	I (F) get married.	آتوڈایر.
Titood'iiri.	You (F) get married.	تیتوڈایرے.
Titood'iir.	She gets married.	تیتوڈایر.
Nitood'iir.	We (F) get married.	نیتوڈایر.
Titood'iirna.	You (F PL) get married.	تیتوڈایرنه.
Itood'iirna.	They (F) get married.	یتوڈایرنه.
Various:		
Ituud'iir andi.	I (F) will get married.	یتوڈایر اندے.
Biitood'aari!	Don't (F) get married!	پیتوڈآرے!
Kaatood'aar.	I (F) don't get married.	کاتوڈآر.
Ad'uraat kaaki.	I (F) am not married.	ادئرات کاکے.

Examples: Past, Present

Ugwhara it'abaak.	The thief was caught.	اُغورَه اِتاباک.
Ugwhara it'abiik.	The thief is caught.	اُغورَه اِتابیک.
Tidlab.	It (F) was sold.	تیدلب.
Titdalliib > dd / tiddalliib.	It (F) is being sold.	تیتدلیب < د / تیدلیب.
Atookkaan / atookkiin.	I was / am known.	آتوکان / اتوگین.
Nitookkiin.	We are known.	نیتوگین.
Iru bitkaay kat'aatu.	The day before yesterday it (F) was broken.	یرُ پتکای کتاتُ.
Aamoor kat'a.	The bed is broken.	آمور کتاه.

Social, Mutual Action

Social Verbs with Object

Baabook ammakkaara!	Consult with your father!	بابوک اُمکآره!
Been'ootak amookkaana!	Know that man!	بینووتک اُموکآنه!
Baabook amoorama!	Accompany your father!	بابوک اُمورامه!
Ammararaayna!	Meet with each other!	اُمتراینه!
Ammakakaarna!	Consult each other!	اُمککارنه!
Amookakaanna!	Know each other!	اُموککآنه!
Amooraramna!	Accompany each other!	اُموررامنه!

Baabook amtaraama!	Respect your father!	بابوك أمترامه!
Sanook amfaraada!	Talk to your brother!	سنوك أمفرااده!

Paradigm: 'Tolerate'

Amtariim.	I respect, tolerate.	أمترييم .
Timtariima.	You (M) respect.	تيمترييمه .
Timtariimi.	You (F) respect.	تيمترييمى .
Imtariim.	He respects.	إمترييم .
Timtariim.	She respects.	تيمترييم .
PAST:		
Amtarraam.	I respected, tolerated.	أمتراام .
Timtarraama.	You (M) respected.	تيمتراامه .
Timtarraami.	You (F) respected.	تيمتراامى .
Imtarraam.	He respected.	إمتراام .
Timtarraam.	She respected.	تيمتراام .

Repeated or Circular Motion

Reduplicated Verbs

<398>

There are many strong verbs in which the third consonant echoes the second.

<399>

In weak verbs this would always express repeated action. In strong verbs, this is not always the case, but for about half of these verbs, it does express repeated or circular motion.

Transitive:		
adhidha	peel, e.g. bananas	أدِّدِه
adhidha	hobble, tie ropes around camel's front legs	أدِّدِه
birira	unroll	بِرِرِه
dhibiba	coil	دِّبِبِه
dinina	crow, shout (REP)	دِّنِنِه
fikika	slice	فِكِكِه
fitita	comb, lift	فِتِتِه
hakika	comb	هَكِكِه
hakwikwa	scrape, grind	هَكْوِكْوِه
hasisa	rub, stroke	هَسِسِه
hatita	erase	هَتِتِه
kirira	veil	كِرِرِه
kisisa	roll	كِسِسِه

kwibiba	cut	كَوَّبِه
kwidhidha	make round	كَوَّدَّه
kwilila	surround	كَوَّلِه
libiba	gird someone else's loins	لَبَّيْه
lidida	tie together	لَدَدِه
liwiwa	go around (sth.)	لَوَّوَه
midida	shave, clean	مَدَدِه
shidhidha	peel	شَدَّدَه
shimima	wrap	شَمَمِه
shitita	tear	شَتَّتِه
sififa	splice	سَفَفِه
silila	cut in strips	سَلَّلِه
simima	smear	سَمَمِه
tibiba	construct	تَبَّيْه
tikwikwa	prepare, produce	تَكْوَكْوَه
tirira	spin	تَرَّرِه
widida	persist	وَدَدِه
yisisa	wipe, rub	يَسِسِه
Intransitive:		
kwidhadha	be round	كَوَّدَّه
kwilala	be surrounded	كَوَّلِه
libaba	gird one's loins	لَبَّيْه

Weak and Strong Verbs Grouped by Synonyms

<400>

Here below, verbs of all grammatical classes are grouped by their meaning only: Verbs of similar meanings (near synonyms) are listed in the same group, such as all verbs of moving, all verbs of preparing food, etc.

'Cleaning'

Oogaw kwinishaa!	Sweep (M) the house!	وَقَّوْ كَوْنِشَا!
Tukwoosha kwinishaa!	Sweep, clear (M) the rubbish!	تُكْوَوِّشَهْ كَوْنِشَا!
Tutarabeeza mhaga!	Wipe (M) the table.	تُتَرَبِّيزَهْ مَهَقَه!
Whalakook nif'a (nifa'a)!	Dust, shake (M) your (SG) clothes (LIT cloth)!	وُهَلَكُوكْ نِفَاَهْ نِفَاَهْ!
Tusabuura sinhasa!	Clean the blackboard (AR)!	تُسَبُّورَهْ سِنَهَسَه!

'Covering'

Baabook humiya!	Cover your father!	بَابُوكْ هُمِيَه!
Naanhooy ifiireek kitihumiya?	Why don't you (F) cover your face?	نَانَهْوَيِ اِفِيْرِيَكْ كِيْتِهْمِيَهْ؟

Naanhooy ifiireekna kitihumiina?	Why don't you (PL) cover your face?	نانهۆي ايفيريكنه كيتيهمينه؟
Ifiireek humiyi!	Cover (F) your face (with cloth etc.)!	ايفيريك هومييه!
Ifiireekna humiina!	Cover (PL) your face (with cloth etc.)!	ايفيريكنه هوميينه!
Naanhooy ifiireek hummiyi?	Why do you (F) cover your face?	نانهۆي ايفيريك هومييه؟
Naanhooy ifiireekna tiheemna?	Why do you (PL) cover your face?	نانهۆي ايفيريكنه تيهيمينه؟
Tu'ulba / ti'ilba assaa!	Cover (M) the tin / tins (with a lid)!	ت'ئلبه / ت'ئلبه ائسا!
Tukwooba / tikwooba assaa!	Cover (M) the pot / pots!	ت'كۆۆبه / ت'كۆۆبه ائسا!
Usanduuk / isandik assaa!	Cover (M) the box / boxes!	ا'سندوك / ا'سندوك ائسا!
Tu'ulba / ti'ilba assii!	Cover (F) the tin / tins!	ت'ئلبه / ت'ئلبه ائسي!
Usanduuk / isandik assii!	Cover (F) the box / boxes!	ا'سندوك / ا'سندوك ائسي!

'Doing / Working'

Naan saktiniya / saktinii / sakteena?	What are you (M) / (F) / (PL) doing (said when (sth.) happens)?	نان سكتينه / سكتيني / سكتينه؟
Naan daatiniya / daatnii / daateena?	What are you (M) / (F) / (PL) doing (asking information)?	نان داتينه / داتيني / داتينه؟
Naan daatiya / daatii / daatiina?	What were you (M) / (F) / (PL) doing?	نان داتيه / داتي / داتينه؟
Naan daataa / daataayi / daataana?	What did you (M) / (F) / (PL) do?	نان داتا / داتاي / داتانه؟
Iru shanha eeneenaaka daayaab kaaki.	Yesterday I did not do any work.	ا'ر شنهه ئينناكه داياب كاكه.
Ushanhoon daaniiyay!	Let us do our work!	ا'شهنون دانيني!
Hindeeh, ti-har'oon tihay daaniiyay!	Please, let us do what (F) remains (LIT is left for us)!	هندهه، تيه-هاروون تيهي دانيني!
Naat iiwra kaadi.	I will do nothing (with it).	نات ايوره كاده.
Mhallagaayeeek naan tiwariya?	What do you do with your money?	مه'لقاييك نان توريه؟
Tudaayiina tiweerihoob, naafti toomaag jazaayihook.	When you do good to someone, he may reward you badly.	ت'داييه توريهووب، نافتيه توماق جزاييهوك.
Naan dan'iya?	What are you doing (M)?	نان دنايه؟
Tulitneen haddiit naat ad'a kaadi.	Till Monday I won't do, don't want to do, anything.	ت'لنتين هديت نات اداه كاده.
Tuwaraga naan d'iya tindiya?	What are you going to do with the paper?	تورقه نان دايه تنديه؟
Oon'umsajal naan d'iya tindiya?	What are you going to do with this recorder?	ون'ئمسجل نان دايه تنديه؟
Een'imhallaga naan d'iya tindiya?	What are you going to do with this money (PL)?	يناه'لقه نان دايه تنديه؟

'Gathering'

Oon'uwarag hiddaab dibila /	Gather (M) this paper (M)	ون'ئورق هيداب ديبه /
-----------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------

likwita!	together!	لِكْوَيْتَه!
W'issi oon'oomhiin baaradiima!	Don't heap up the sand here!	وَأَسِّسْ وَنُؤْمِهِيْنَ بَارَدِيْمَه!
W'andhu oon'oomhiin baalakwiita!	Don't pick up the dung here!	وَأَنْدُ وَنُؤْمِهِيْنَ بِالْكُوَيْتَه!
Ooreew shawawiya!	Drive, bring together the cattle!	وَرِيو شَوَوِيَه!

'Getting, Having'

Miriyaab kaaki.	I didn't find, get.	مِرِيَاب كَاكَيْ.
Imaar andi.	I will find.	إِمَار أَنْدَيْ.
Biriyaab kaaki.	I did not have.	بِرِيَاب كَاكَيْ.
Uunbaruuh aniibu.	This one (M) is mine.	أُونْبَرُوَه أَنِيْبُ.

'Going, Leaving'

Usikkaayook saka!	Go your way!	أُسِيكَايُوك سَكَه!
Oon'umhiinaani giigaa!	Go away from here!	وْنُؤْمِهِيْنَانِيْ قِيْغَا!
Oon'umhiinaani difa!	Go away, leave from here!	وْنُؤْمِهِيْنَانِيْ دِفَه!
Oon'oomhiinaan usha!	Leave, go out from this place!	وْنُؤْمِهِيْنَانِ أُشَه!
Oosuug baya!	Go to the market.	وُشُوق بِيَه!
Baabook kitima!	Go to, reach your father!	بَابُوك كَيْتِمَه!
Asmaraab mari iibaaba!	Travel toward, up to Asmara.	أَسْمَرَاب مَرِيْ إِيْبَاه!

'Helping, Supporting'

Baabook a'awi.	I helped your (SG) father.	بَابُوك أَوِيْ.
Y'araweek ansiraa!	Support, help (M) your (M) friends!	يَارَوَيْكْ أُنْسِيْرَا!
Ootak unhawiib (whireer ba'adgiray) saanada!	Help (M) the weak, disabled man (who cannot walk).	وَتَاكْ أُنْهَوَيْب (وُهِرَيْرِ بَادَقِرَي) سَانَدَه!

'Knocking, Hammering'

Oobaab kwila!	Knock, hammer at the door!	وَبَاب كُوَيْلَه!
Oobaab tha'a!	Knock, beat at the door!	وَبَاب ثَاَه!
Talafoon dehooyu tha'a!	Phone (to, for) me!	تَلْفُون دَهْوِيْ ثَاَه!
Utalafoon ith'a.	The phone rang.	أَتَلْفُون إِثَاه.
W'adi thiba!	Make the skin container wet (so it won't crack)!	وَأَدِيْ ثِيَه!
Usanduuk kadhawshaa!	Shake the box!	أَسْنَدُوك كَدَّوْشَا!
Tutarabeeza kwila!	Knock, hammer at the table (to produce or repair it)!	تُتْرَبِيْزَه كُوَيْلَه!
Ookaam daayiib shakwiitaa!	Beat the camel well (sufficiently)!	وَكَام دَايِيْب شَكْوَيْتَا!

'Looking, Seeing'

Hindeeh, been'ootak shibbaan!	Please, look at that man.	هَندَه، بِيئُووتَاك شِبْبَان!
Naan rhitiniya?	What do you see?	نَان رَهْتِييَه؟
Tutil'iitii gwuugamaa!	Glance through the hole!	تُتِلْإِيْتِي قُووقَمَا!
Naanhooy bak shanniinaheeb?	Why do you stare at me like that?	نَانَهَوَي بَاك شَانْنِيْنَهِيْب؟
Ushanhook ugin'ook hooy d'iya!	Put your mind at, into your work!	أَشْنَهْوُوك أُغِيْنُووك هَوَي دَايَه!
Bak baadiiraana!	Don't (PL) stare like that!	بَاك بَادِيْرَانَه!

'Measuring, Counting'

Giisaa / giisii / giisaana!	Measure estimate (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قِيْسَا / قِيْسِي / قِيْسَانَه!
Ab'araa / ab'arii / ab'araana!	Measure (sth.) (M) / (F) / (PL)!	أَبَارَا / أَبَارِي / أَبَارَانَه!
Mhuudha / mhuudhi / mhuudhna!	Measure by mhuuda ¹⁷ (M) / (F) / (PL)!	مُهْوُوْدَه / مِهْوُوْدِي / مِهْوُوْدِنَه!
Gwilaha / gwilahi / gwilhana!	Measure by ulna ¹⁸ (M) / (F) / (PL)!	قُوْلَهَه / قُوْلَهِي / قُوْلَهِنَه!
Shilika / shiliki / shilikna!	Reduce (sth.), make (sth.) small (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شِيْلِكَه / شِيْلِكِي / شِيْلِكِنَه!
Ani giisan / abbaran.	I estimated / I measured.	أَنْعِي قِيْسِن / أَبْرَان.
Eekam dhigwiya!	Count the camels!	يَكْم دُغْوِيَه!

'Moving Down'

Whindi whii tikwaa!	Descend from the tree!	وُهِنْدِي وَهِي تِكْوَا!
Usuugiit gidehooy daayiitu.	Descending to the market is good.	أُسُوغِيْت قِدَهْوَي دَايِيْتُ.
Tutakattiida kwibara!	Come down to the woman, for the woman's sake!	تُتَكَاْتِيْدَه كُوْبِرَه!

'Needing, Wanting'

Baruuh gwida shanha harwaabu.	It, he needs a lot of work.	بَرُوُه قُوْدَه شَنْهَه هَرَوَاب.
Uun'ushanha ugin'u hooy d'uuw harwaabu.	This work needs my attention (LIT putting my heart, mind on it).	أُوْنُشَنْهَه أُقِنُّ هَوَي دُوو هَرَوَاب.
Uun'utak awiyaayt harwaabu.	This man needs help.	أُوْنُتَاك أُوْيَايْت هَرَوَاب.
Uun'unadaay halakaab harwaabu.	This orphan (M) needs clothes.	أُوْنُئِنْدَاي هَلَكَاَب هَرَوَاب.
Tuuttujabana mheel harwaatu.	This coffee needs ginger.	تُوْتُوْجَابَنَه مِهِيْل هَرَوَات.
Uun'uutak uulha mheel harwaabu.	This sick man needs medicine.	أُوْنُوْتَاك أُوْلَهَه مِهِيْل هَرَوَاب.
Ani daktoor akatiyeena minniimani.	I wish (LIT the thing) to become a doctor.	أَنْعِي دَكْتُوْر أَكْتِيْيَنَه مِيْنِيْمَانِي.
Naan harriiwa? Aab harriiwa?	What do you (M) want? Whom do you (M) want?	نَان هَرِّيْوَه؟ أَب هَرِّيْوَه؟

Hasirhook abari.	I have a need for you.	هيسر هوڪ اٿرے.
Miraadehook abari.	I long for you (Lit have a desire for you).	ميرادهوڪ اٿرے.
Naan areetniya?	What do you (M) love?	نان آر ٽينيہ؟
Naanaatiida shinhaawa?	What do you (M) desire?	ناناٽيده شينهاوه؟
Naan gw'ata? / Naat gw'i kaadi.	What would you like to drink? / I won't drink anything.	نان قواٽه؟ / نات قوا / کاڌے.
Naan tamata? / Naat tami kaadi.	What would you like to eat? / I won't eat anything.	نان ٽمٽه؟ / نات ٽمے / کاڌے.
Naan rhata? / Naat rhi kaadi.	What would you like to see? / I won't see anything.	نان رھٽه؟ / نات رھے / کاڌے.
Naan miriyata? / Naat imaar kaadi.	What would you like to find? / I won't find anything.	نان ميريتھ؟ / نات امار / کاڌے.

'Preparing Food'

Ushaahi sinaba'a / shoofisha!	Warm up the tea!	اُشاھے سينباہ / شووفشه!
M'aana, jabanaat d'itiit gin'a diwniiyay!	Come, let us make 'jabana' and chat!	مانه، جَبَنات دِايت قِناہ / دوئيئي!
Ti'a gishiya!	Boil the milk (or any liquid)!	ٽاھ قِشيه!
Ootam tikwiya.	Cook the porridge (food).	وٽم ٽڪويه.
Toosha / toolam shibashikwa!	Cook, get ready the meat / the meal!	توشه / توٽم شيبشڪوه!
Tudiiifu / ubiltu / toosha gwira!	Roast the grain / durrh porridge / the meat!	ٽُڊيْفُ / اُبُلْتُ / توشه قوره!
Tudiiifu / toosha / ugwaraar kwimiya!	Grill the grain / the meat / the colon!	ٽُڊيْفُ / توشه / اُغوارار / ڪوميہ!

'Putting, Placing'

Oon'oomhiin d'iya!	Put it here!	وٽوومھين داڀه!
Oon'oomhiin daasaa!	Put ¹⁹ it here!	وٽوومھين داسا!
Been'oomhiin daasaa!	Put it there!	بينٽوومھين داسا!

'Reminding, Forgetting'

Sh'asaa / sh'asii / sh'asaana!	Remind (M) / (F) / (PL)!	شاسا / شاسي / شاسانه!
Baabook sh'astiniyaheeb / sh'astaheeb.	You remind / reminded me of your (M) father.	بابوڪ شاسٽينيهيب / شاسٽيهيب.
Ibhaliyaak baabook sh'aseenheeb / sh'asiyaanheeb.	Your language reminds / reminded me of your (M) father.	اِبھالِيَاڪ بابوڪ شاسٽينيهيب / شاسييانيهيب.
Whireeruuk baabook sh'asiiniheeb.	Your walking (M) reminds me of your father.	وھريروڪ بابوڪ شاسٽينيهيب.
Tiliiliitaak baabook sh'aseenheeb.	Your eyes remind me of your father.	ٽِيلِيلِيٽَاڪ بابوڪ شاسٽينيهيب.
Simaayaat nibari. Baabaadhiina!	We have a naming ceremony ²⁰ . Don't	سيمايات نيرے. باباڏيهه!

	(M) forget!	
Sh'asaahieb / sh'asaanaheeb!	Remind (M) me! / Remind (PL) me!	شأساهيب / شأسانهيب!
Sh'asaayu bitkaayeeek, iibdhan iiyid / abaadhin.	If you hadn't reminded me, I would have forgotten / I would forget.	شأساي بيكاينيك، إي بدن اييد / اباذن.

'Sending, Taking To'

Oon'ujawaab lhayt haddiit diigwataa!	Send this letter till tomorrow!	ون جواب لهيت هديت ديغواتا!
W'oorook lingwuuyaa!	Send your son!	وؤوروك لينقوويا!
W'oorook tumadrassa sitooba!	Take your son to school!	وؤوروك تُمدرسه سيتوبه!
Asmaraab soobaya!	Take him (make him go) to Asmara.	أسمراب سوويه!

'Separating, Cutting'

Whadhi kit'a (kita'a)!	Break off the bread!	وهديت كيتاه (كيتاه)!
Fartaka!	Disperse!	فرتكه!
Oomooz shadhiidha / shidhidha!	Peel the banana (REP) / peel once!	وموز شديده / شديده!
Tuwaraga shirima!	Rip the paper (M) apart!	تورقه شرمه!

'Speaking, Talking'

Baabook sooyaa!	Tell, inform (M) your father!	بابوك سويا!
Bak bahadiidaa!	Don't (M) talk like that!	بك بهديدا!
Amaag naati bhaliyeeb baabhaliyaa!	Don't (M) speak words of bad things!	اماق ناتح بهلييب بابهلييا!
Eegriimkaayuuk tak hadiidiinihoob, baruuk naafti bahadiidaa!	When a man older than you (M) speaks, don't (M) talk back (LIT talk again)!	يقريمكاايوك تك هديدينهوب، برونك نافتي بهديدا!
Wharaayr'i ba'amfariida!	Don't (M) talk to the liar!	وهرايير بامفريده!
Baalablabaana!	Don't (M) babble, talk much!	باللبانه!
Hindeeh, hijkaana! Hijikt hadiidaana!	Please talk (PL)! Make (PL) some conversation, say something!	هنده، هيجكانه! هيجكت هديدانه!
Gaana diina!	Say (PL) something!	قانه دينه!
Sakanaab tibariyeek, sakanaayaahoon!	If you (M) have any news, tell us!	سكاناب تيرينيك، سكاناياهون!
Gin'a diwniiyay! Ugin'adu daayiibu	Let us chat. Chatting is fun.	قناه دونيبي! انا داييب

'Suffering, Being Sick'

Lhaab aki.	I became sick.	لهاب اكي.
Malaal abi.	I had diarrhea.	ملال ابي.
Huutaman.	I vomited.	هوتمن.
Gwirhaayan.	I suffered.	قورهايين.

'Teaching, Learning'

WooH Mudarris ²¹ ! Y'ar allamsaa / agriisaa!	Oh teacher! Teach the boys / let the boys read !	وؤه مُدَّرْس! يَارَ الْمَسَا / أَقْرِيسَا!
WooH Ustaaz! Y'ar ireesaa!	Oh teacher! Teach (LIT make read) the children (M)!	وؤه أُسْتَاذ! يَارَ إِرْتِسَا!
WooH Ukwooja! Y'ar sookina!	Oh teacher! Teach (inform) the children (M)!	وؤه أُكْوُوجِه! يَارَ سَوَكِينِه!
WooH Agriisana! Y'ar agriisaa!	Oh teacher! Teach (let read) the children (M)!	وؤه أَقْرِيسَنَه! يَارَ أَقْرِيسَا!

Negation

<401>

Negation in nominal predicates uses the verb kaya 'to become' with the prefix k- 'not'.

<402>

Negation in verbal predicates uses the prefix k- 'not' with all verbs. In imperative and subordinate verbs, the prefix is ba- 'don't!' or 'not to'. Negative auxiliary verbs like 'to fail to, refuse to, not like to' are also used to express negation.

Negation in Nominal Predicates (Repetition)

Paradigm 'Not to be' 1

Baruuk haraayr'iiwa?	Are you a liar?	بَرُوكُ هَرَايِرَايُوَه؟
Haraayr'iib kaaki.	I am not a liar.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ كَاكَيْ.
Haraayr'iib kittaa.	You (M) are not a liar.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ كَيْتَا.
Haraayr'iit kittaaayi.	You (F) are not a liar.	هَرَايِرَايِتْ كَيْتَايِي.
Haraayr'iib kiiki.	He is not a liar.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ كَيْكَيْ.
Haraayr'iit kitti.	She is not a liar.	هَرَايِرَايِتْ كَيْتَيْ.
Haraayr'iib kinki.	We are not liars.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ كَيْنَكَيْ.
Haraayr'iib / haraayr'iit kitteena.	You (M PL) / (F PL) are not liars.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ / هَرَايِرَايِتْ كَيْتَيْنَه.
Haraayr'iib / haraayr'iit kiikeen.	They (M) / (F) are not liars.	هَرَايِرَايِبْ / هَرَايِرَايِتْ كَيْكَيْن.

'Not to be (SG)'

Baruuk sidkiwa?	You (M), are you (M) serious, true?	بَرُوكُ سِيدْ كِيُوَه؟
Ani sidkiibu, haraayr'iib / gwisireeb kaaki!	I, I am serious, I am not a liar / liar!	أَنْي سِيدْ كَيْبُ، هَرَايِرَايِبْ / قُوسِرَيْبْ كَاكَيْ!
Sidkiwa, haraayr'iib / gwisireeb kittaa.	You (M) are serious, not a liar / liar.	سِيدْ كِيُوَه، هَرَايِرَايِبْ / قُوسِرَيْبْ كَيْتَا.
Sidkiituwi, haraayr'iit / gwisireet kittaaayi.	You (F) are serious, not a liar / liar.	سِيدْ كَيْتُوَيْ، هَرَايِرَايِتْ / قُوسِرَيْبِتْ كَيْتَايِي.
Sidkiibu, haraayr'iib kiiki.	He is serious, not a liar / liar.	سِيدْ كَيْبُ، هَرَايِرَايِبْ كَيْكَيْ.
Sidkiitu, haraayr'iit kitti.	She is serious, not a liar / liar.	سِيدْ كَيْبُ، هَرَايِرَايِتْ كَيْتَيْ.

'Not to be (PL)'

Hinin sidkiiba, haraayr'iib kinki.	We are serious, true, we are not liars.	هين سيد كيبه، هرايرايب كينكے.
Baraakna sidkiibaana, haraayr'iib kitteena.	You (M PL) are serious, true, not liars / liars.	براكنه سيد كيبانه، هرايرايب كيتينه.
Bataakna sidkiitaana, haraayr'iit kitteena.	You (F PL) are serious, true, not liars / liars.	بتاكنه سيد كيتانه، هرايرايب كيتينه.
Baraah sidkiiba, haraayr'iib kiikeen.	They (M) are serious, true, not liars / liars.	براھ سيد كيبه، هرايرايب كيكين.
Bataah sidkiita, haraayr'iit kiikeen.	They (F) are serious, true, not liars / liars.	بتاه سيد كيتھ، هرايرايب كيكين.

'Not to be (M)'

Baruuk hargwaawa?	Are you (M) hungry?	بَرُوكْ هَرْقَوَاوَه؟
Ani hargwaab kaaki.	I (M) am not hungry.	اُنْے هَرْقَوَابْ كَاكْے.
Baruuk gabaawa?	Are you (M) satisfied, full?	بَرُوكْ قَبَاوَه؟
Ani gabaab kaaki.	I (M) am not satisfied, full.	اُنْے قَبَابْ كَاكْے.
Baruuk naritiiwa?	Are you (M) tired?	بَرُوكْ نَرْتِيوَه؟
Ani naritiib kaaki.	I (M) am not tired.	اُنْے نَرْتِيْبْ كَاكْے.
Baruuk deeyaraawa?	Are you (M) tired?	بَرُوكْ دَتِيْرَاوَه؟
Ani deeyaraab kaaki.	I (M) am not tired.	اُنْے دَتِيْرَابْ كَاكْے.
Baruuk lhaawa?	Are you (M) sick?	بَرُوكْ لَهَاوَه؟
Ani lhaab kaaki.	I am not sick.	اُنْے لَهَاْبْ كَاكْے.

'Not to be (F)'

Batuuk hargwiitiituwi?	Are you (F) hungry?	بَتُوكْ هَرْقَوِيْتِيْتُوِي؟
Ani hargwiitiit kaaki.	I (F) am not hungry.	اُنْے هَرْقَوِيْتِيْتْ كَاكْے.
Batuuk gabaatuwi?	Are you (F) satisfied, full?	بَتُوكْ قَبَاْتُوِي؟
Ani gabaatu.	I (F) am satisfied, full.	اُنْے قَبَاْتُ.
Batuuk naritiituwi?	Are you (F) tired?	بَتُوكْ نَرْتِيْتُوِي؟
Ani naritiit kaaki.	I (F) am not tired.	اُنْے نَرْتِيْتْ كَاكْے.
Batuuk deeyaraatuwi?	Are you (F) tired?	بَتُوكْ دَتِيْرَاْتُوِي؟
Ani deeyaraat kaaki.	I (F) am not tired ²² .	اُنْے دَتِيْرَاْتْ كَاكْے.
Batuuk lhaatuwi?	Are you (F) sick?	بَتُوكْ لَهَاْتُوِي؟
Ani lhaat kaaki.	I (F) am not sick.	اُنْے لَهَاْتْ كَاكْے.

Negation in Verbal Predicates

<403>

The object suffixes in negative paradigms are somewhat complicated - except for the third person 'it, him', where they are ZERO - as in the following examples.

Negation with Object Suffixes 1

Aaw kanaab kiiki?	Who has not known (it, him)?	آو ڪتاب ڪيڪي؟
Ani kanaab / kanaat kaaki.	<u>I (M) / I (F) haven't known (it, him).</u>	اُنئي ڪتاب / ڪنات ڪاڪي.
Baruuk kanaab kittaa.	You (M) haven't known (it, him).	بَرُوڪ ڪتاب ڪيٿا.
Batuuk kanaat kittayyi.	You (F) haven't known (it, him).	بَتُوڪ ڪنات ڪيٿايي.
Baruuh kanaab kiiki.	He hasn't known (it, him).	بَرُوه ڪتاب ڪيڪي.
Batuuh kanaat kitti.	She hasn't known (it, him).	بَتُوه ڪنات ڪيٿي.
Hinin kanaab kinki.	We (M) haven't known (it, him).	هينن ڪتاب ڪيڪي.
Baraakna kanaab / bataakna kanaat kitteena.	You (M PL) / (F PL) haven't known (it, him).	بَرَاڪنه ڪتاب / ڪنات ڪيٿينه.
Baraah kanaab / baraah kanaat kiikeen.	They (M) / (F) haven't known (it, him).	بَرَاه ڪتاب / ڪنات ڪيڪين.

Negation with Object Suffixes 2

Baruuk tikteenahēeb?	Do you (M) know me?	بَرُوڪ ٽيڪٽينهيٺيب؟
Awooh, akteenhook.	Yes, I know you.	اَوُوه، اُ ڪٿينهيٺوڪ.
Batuuk tikteenihēeb?	Do you (F) know me?	بَتُوڪ ٽيڪٽينهيٺيب؟
Awooh, akteenhook / Laa laa, kaakanhook.	Yes, I know you (M) / No, I don't know you (M).	اَوُوه، اُ ڪٿينهيٺوڪ / لا لا، ڪاڪانهوڪ.
Baraakna tikteennahoon?	Do you (M PL) know us?	بَرَاڪنه ٽيڪٽينهيٺون؟
Awooh, nikteenhookna.	Yes, we know you.	اَوُوه، نيڪٿينهيٺوڪنه.
Bataakna tikteennahoon?	Do you (F PL) know us?	بَتَاڪنه ٽيڪٽينهيٺون؟
Awooh, nikteenhookna / Laa laa, kinkanhookna.	Yes, we know you (PL) / No, we don't know you (PL).	اَوُوه، نيڪٿينهيٺوڪنه / لا لا، ڪيڪانهوڪنه.

Negation with Object Suffixes 3

<404>

Object suffixes of negative verbs - especially their variations with (SG) and (PL) subjects - deserve special attention. A full paradigm is given of the various combinations.

Rhaayook kaaki.	<u>I (M) did not see, haven't seen you.</u>	رهايُوڪ ڪاڪي.
(Barooh) rhaab kaaki.	I (M) did not see (him).	(بَرُوه) رهاپ ڪاڪي.
Rhaayookna kaaki.	I (M) did not see you (PL).	رهايُوڪنه ڪاڪي.
Rhaayhoona kaaki.	I (M) did not see them.	رهايُهوننه ڪاڪي.
Rhaatook kaaki.	I (F) did not see you.	رهاٽُوڪ ڪاڪي.
(Barooh) rhaat kaaki.	I (F) did not see (him).	(بَرُوه) رهاٽ ڪاڪي.
Rhaatookna kaaki.	I (F) did not see you (PL).	رهاٽُوڪنه ڪاڪي.
Rhaatehoona kaaki.	I (F) did not see them.	رهاٽُهوننه ڪاڪي.

Negation with Object Suffixes 4

Rhaayu kittaa.	You (M) did not see me.	رہاؤی کیتا.
Rhaayoon kittaa.	You (M) did not see us.	رہاؤون کیتا.
(Bareeh) rhaab kittaa.	You (M) did not see them.	(برہ) رہاب کیتا.
Rhaatu kittaayi.	You (F) did not see me.	رہاٹ کیتایے.
Rhaatoon kittaayi.	You (F) did not see us.	رہاٹون کیتایے.
Rhaatehoona kittaayi.	You (F) did not see them.	رہاٹھونہ کیتایے.
(Barooh) rhaab kiiki.	He did not see (him).	(بروہ) رہاب کیکیے.
(Barooh) rhaat kitti.	She did not see (him).	(بروہ) رہات کیتے.

Negation with Object Suffixes 5

Rhaayook kaaki.	I (M) have not seen you (M).	رہاؤوک کاکے.
Rhaatook kaaki.	I (F) have not seen you (M).	رہاٹوک کاکے.
Rhaayeeek kinki.	We have not seen you (M).	رہاییک کینکے.
Maasiwaayook kaaki.	I (M) haven't heard you (M).	ماسواؤوک کاکے.
Maasiwaatook kaaki.	I (F) have not heard you (M).	ماسواٹوک کاکے.
Maasiwaayeeek kinki.	We have not heard you (M).	ماسوااییک کینکے.
Rhaayookna kaaki.	I (M) haven't seen you (PL).	رہاؤوکنا کاکے.
Rhaatookna kaaki.	I (F) have not seen you (PL).	رہاٹوکنا کاکے.
Rhaayeeekna kinki.	We have not seen you (PL).	رہاییکنا کینکے.
Maasiwaayookna kaaki.	I (M) haven't heard you (PL).	ماسواؤوکنا کاکے.
Maasiwaatookna kaaki.	I (F) have not heard you (PL).	ماسواٹوکنا کاکے.
Maasiwaayeeekna kinki.	We have not heard you (PL).	ماسوااییکنا کینکے.

Negation with Object Suffixes 6

Rhaayeeek kinki.	We have not seen you.	رہاییک کینکے.
Rhaayeeekna kinki.	We have not seen you (PL).	رہاییکنا کینکے.
Rhaayhina kinki.	We have not seen them.	رہایہنے کینکے.
Rhaayi kitteena.	You (M PL) have not seen me.	رہایے کیتینہ.
Rhaayeen kitteena.	You (M PL) have not seen us.	رہاین کیتینہ.
Rhaayhina kitteena.	You (M PL) have not seen them.	رہایہنے کیتینہ.
Rhaati kitteena.	You (F PL) have not seen me.	رہاٹے کیتینہ.
Rhaateen kitteena.	You (F PL) have not seen us.	رہاٹین کیتینہ.
Rhaatehina kitteena.	You (F PL) have not seen them.	رہاٹہنے کیتینہ.
Rhaab kiikeen.	They (M) have not seen (him).	رہاب کیکیکن.
Rhaat kiikeen.	They (F) have not seen (him).	رہات کیکیکن.

Negation with Object Suffixes 7

W'ayook hiyaheeb!	Give (M) me your hand!	وَأَيُّوكَ هِيَهَيْب!
Hiyaab / hiyaayu kittaa.	You (M) did not give / give me.	هِيَاب / هِيَايُ كَيْتَا.
Hiyaat / hiyaatu kittaayi.	You (F) did not give / give me.	هِيَات / هِيَاثُ كَيْتَايِي.
Hiyaab kiiki.	He did not give.	هِيَاب كَيْكِي.
Hiyaat kitti.	She did not give.	هِيَات كَيْتِي.
Hiyaab kinki.	We (M) did not give.	هِيَاب كَيْنَكِي.
Hiyaat kinki.	We (F) did not give.	هِيَات كَيْنَكِي.
Hiyaab kitteena.	You (M PL) did not give.	هِيَاب كَيْتِينِي.
Hiyaat kitteena.	You (F PL) did not give.	هِيَات كَيْتِينِي.
Hiyaab kiikeen.	They (M) did not give.	هِيَاب كَيْكِينِي.
Hiyaat kiikeen.	They (F) did not give.	هِيَات كَيْكِينِي.

Full Paradigm: Negation with Object Suffixes

<405>

The object pronouns of negative verbs deserve careful attention, especially the (SG) / (PL) forms of the object suffixes.

'Give to me'

Aneeb hiyaayu kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَايُ كَيْتَا.
Aneeb hiyaatu kittaayi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَاثُ كَيْتَايِي.
Aneeb hiyaayu kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَايُ كَيْكِي.
Aneeb hiyaatu kitti.	She didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَاثُ كَيْتِي.
Aneeb hiyaayi kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَايِي كَيْتِينِي.
Aneeb hiyaati kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَاثِي كَيْتِينِي.
Aneeb hiyaayi kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَايِي كَيْكِينِي.
Aneeb hiyaati kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) me.	أَنْيِب هِيَاثِي كَيْكِينِي.

'Give to you (M)'

Barook hiyaayook kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَايُوكَ كَاكِي.
Barook hiyaayook kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَايُوكَ كَيْكِي.
Barook hiyaatook kitti.	She didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَاثُوكَ كَيْتِي.
Barook hiyaayook kinki.	We didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَايُوكَ كَيْنَكِي.
Barook hiyaayook kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَايُوكَ كَيْكِينِي.
Barook hiyaateek kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) you (M).	بَرُوكَ هِيَاثُوكَ كَيْكِينِي.

'Give to you (F)'

Batook hiyaayook kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) you (F).	بَتُوكَ هِيَايُوكَ كَاكِي.
-------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------

Batook hiyaayook kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) you (F).	بتوك هيايوك ڪيڪي.
Batook hiyaatook kitti.	She didn't give (it to) you (F).	بتوك هياتوك ڪيڪي.
Batook hiyaayook kinki.	We didn't give (it to) you (F).	بتوك هيايوك ڪيڪي.
Batook hiyaayook kiiken.	They (M) didn't give (it to) you (F).	بتوك هيايوك ڪيڪي.
Batook hiyaateek kiiken.	They (F) didn't give (it to) you (F).	بتوك هياتيڪ ڪيڪي.

'Give to him'

Barooh hiyaab kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيااب ڪاڪي.
Barooh hiyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaat kittayyi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيات ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaab kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaat kitti.	She didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيات ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaab kinki.	We didn't give (it to) (him).	بروه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaab kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaat kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيات ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaab kiiken.	They (M) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Barooh hiyaat kiiken.	They (F) didn't give (it to) him.	بروه هيات ڪيڪي.

'Give to her'

Batooh hiyaab kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪاڪي.
Batooh hiyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaat kittayyi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيات ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaab kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaat kitti.	She didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيات ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaab kinki.	We didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaab kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaat kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيات ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaab kiiken.	They (M) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيااب ڪيڪي.
Batooh hiyaat kiiken.	They (F) didn't give (it to) her.	بتوه هيات ڪيڪي.

'Give to us'

Hinin hiyaayoon kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) us.	هين هيايون ڪيڪي.
Hinin hiyaatoon kittayyi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) us.	هين هياتون ڪيڪي.
Hinin hiyaayoon kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) us.	هين هيايون ڪيڪي.
Hinin hiyaatoon kitti.	She didn't give (it to) us.	هين هياتون ڪيڪي.
Hinin hiyaayeen kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) us.	هين هيايڻ ڪيڪي.
Hinin hiyaateen kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) us.	هين هياتيڻ ڪيڪي.

Hinin hiyaayeen kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) us.	ہین ہیاہین کیکیں۔
Hinin hiyaateen kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) us.	ہین ہیاہین کیکیں۔

'Give to you (M PL)'

Bareekna hiyaayookna kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) you (M PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کاکی۔
Bareekna hiyaayookna kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) you (M PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکی۔
Bareekna hiyaatookna kitti.	She didn't give (it to) you (M PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کٹی۔
Bareekna hiyaayookna kinki.	We didn't give (it to) you (M PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کینکی۔
Bareekna hiyaayookna kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) you (M PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکیں۔
Bareekna hiyaateekna kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بریکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکیں۔

'Give to you (F PL)'

Bateekna hiyaayookna kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کاکی۔
Bateekna hiyaayookna kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکی۔
Bateekna hiyaatookna kitti.	She didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کٹی۔
Bateekna hiyaayookna kinki.	We didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کینکی۔
Bateekna hiyaayookna kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکیں۔
Bateekna hiyaateekna kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) you (F PL).	بٹیکنہ ہیاہیوکنہ کیکیں۔

'Give to them (M)'

Bareeh hiyaab kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کاکی۔
Bareeh hiyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کٹا۔
Bareeh hiyaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کٹاے۔
Bareeh hiyaab kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کیکی۔
Bareeh hiyaat kitti.	She didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کٹی۔
Bareeh hiyaab kinki.	We didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کینکی۔
Bareeh hiyaab kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کٹیئہ۔
Bareeh hiyaat kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کٹیئہ۔
Bareeh hiyaab kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کیکیں۔
Bareeh hiyaat kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) them (M).	بریہ ہیاہ کیکیں۔

'Give to them (F)'

Bateeh hiyaab kaaki.	I didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کاکی۔
Bateeh hiyaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کٹا۔
Bateeh hiyaat kittaayi.	You (F) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کٹاے۔
Bateeh hiyaab kiiki.	He didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کیکی۔
Bateeh hiyaat kitti.	She didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کٹی۔
Bateeh hiyaab kinki.	We didn't give (it to) them (F).	بٹیہ ہیاہ کینکی۔

Bateeh hiyaab kitteena.	You (M PL) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بیتہ ہیاب کیتینہ.
Bateeh hiyaat kitteena.	You (F PL) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بیتہ ہیات کیتینہ.
Bateeh hiyaab kiikeen.	They (M) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بیتہ ہیاب کیکنین.
Bateeh hiyaat kiikeen.	They (F) didn't give (it to) them (F).	بیتہ ہیات کیکنین.

Negation with Auxiliary Verbs

<406>

Auxiliary verbs like naw-, rib-, gwooy- 'fail, refuse, miss' are used to express negation.

Dilbat kareetaa?	Don't you want to buy (trade-to don't-like)?	دلِبت کریتا؟
Y'adil igwooy.	He failed to reconcile (reconciled failed).	یادل اِقووی
Ahariw anaw.	I missed, failed to find (I wanted failed).	أهرو أنو.
Siniyaayu kiiki.	He doesn't wait for me.	سینیاای کیکیے.
Siniyaayi kiikeen.	They don't wait for me.	سینیاایے کیکنین.
Siniitu irib.	He didn't wait for me.	سینیٹ ارب.
Rhat arib.	I didn't see (see-to I refused).	رہت ارب
Oosdik usootiyu irib.	He refused to tell the truth (the informing-me).	وسدک اُسوتی ارب.
Oosdik umiyaaw irib.	He refused to give, giving the truth.	وسدک اُمیاو ارب.
Oosdik umiyaay irib.	He refused to take, taking the truth.	وسدک اُمیاای ارب.

Conversation 16 'At School' (Examples of Negation)

<407>

S: students, T: teacher

#1	
S: Usheekay, tuhissa na naatu?	usheek-ay tu-hissa na naat-u
S: Oosheek, what is the lesson?	Oosheek-VOCAT ARTSGF-calculation thing thing-IDSG13F
#2	
S: Ani kaakan, laakiin hissaab hiisani.	ani kaa-kan laakiin hissaab hiis-ani
S: I don't know, but I think it is maths.	SG1 NEGIMPFG1PF-know but calculation think-IMPFG1
#3	
S: Aflaa, ukwooja haaloo <u>hu</u> , aakharamiyaneek?	aflaa u-kwooja haal-oo <u>h</u> -u aakharam- <u>iya</u> -neek
S: So then, what happened to the teacher, that (LIT if, since) he is late?	so.then ARTSGM-teacher condition-POSSG3-IDSG13M be.late-PERFSG3M-ADV+if
#4	
S: Hooss akeena! Ukwoojaayuun eeya / eeyiya.	hooss akee-na u-kwoojaa-yuun ee-ya
S: Be quiet! Our teacher has come.	voice be-IMPVPL ARTSGM-teacher-POSSPL1

	come-PERFSG3M
#5	
T: Asna gadna!	as-na gad-na
T: Stand (PL) up.	go.up-IMPVPL stand-IMPVPL
#6	
Kak mhataana?	kak mha-taana
How did you spend the morning?	how spend.morning-PERFPL2
#7	
S: Kwatiib mhana. Baruuk kak mhataa?	kwatiib mha-na baruuk kak mha-taa
S: We spent the morning well. How did you spend the morning?	fine spend.morning-PERFPL1 SG2M how spend.morning-PERFSG2M
#8	
T: Ani daayiib mhan. S'ana!	ani daayiib mh-an s'a-na
T: I spent the morning well. Sit (PL) down!	I good spend.morning-PERFSG1 sit-IMPVPL
#9	
Iru naan agriina?	iru naan agrii-na
What did we learn (LIT read) yesterday?	yesterday what read-PERFPL1
#10	
Sh'ateena?	sh'a-teena
Do you (PL) remember?	remember-IMPFPL2
#11	
Aaw sh'iini?	aaw sh'-iini
Who remembers?	who remember-IMPFSG3M
#12	
S: Ani sh'ani.	ani sh'-ani
S: I remember.	SG1 remember-IMPFSG1
#13	
T: Ali, asa gada!	ali as-a gad-a
T: Ali, stand (M) up!	Ali go.up-IMPVM stand-IMPVM
#14	
Hindeeh agriiyaan!	hindeeh agrii-yaa-n
Please read-please.	please read-IMPVM-CON+please
#15	
S: "Kaam, meek, oor."	kaam meek oor
S: "Camel, donkey, boy"	camel donkey boy
#16	

T: Araway! Ali daayiib eefee?	araw-ay ali daayiib ZERO-eefee
T: Hey friends! Is Ali correct?	friendPL-VOCAT Ali good IMPFSG3-be
#17	
S: Wooh ²³ ukwoojaayi, wooh ukwoojaayi!	wooh u-kwoojaa-yi wooh u-kwoojaa-yi
S: You, teacher, you teacher!	hey ARTSGM-teacher-VOCAT hey ARTSGM-teacher-VOCAT
#18	
Ali daayiib kihay.	ali daayiib ki-hay
Ali was not right.	Ali good NEGIMPFSG3MPF-be
#19	
T: Daayiitu, hindeeh baruuk agriiyaan!	daayiit-u hindeeh baruuk agrii-yaa-n
T: Good, please you (M) read-please!	good-IDSG13F please SG2M read-IMPVM-CON+please
#20	
S: "Kam, mak, ar."	kam mak ar
S: "Camels, donkeys, children (M)"	camelPL donkeyPL childrenM
#21	
T: Aha! Oond'aab, kak iha?	ah-a oond'aab kak i-ha
T: Aha! Now, how was it?	take-IMPVM this.time how PERFSG13PF-be
#22	
S: Daayiib iha.	daayiib i-ha
S: It was good.	good PERFSG13PF-be
#23	
T: Kassaakna afhamtaana? Laakiin Ali ibaadhin.	kass-aakna afham-taana laakiin ali i-baadhin
T: You (PL) all have understood? But Ali forgot.	all-POSSPL2 understand-PERFPL2 but Ali PERFSG3MPF-forget
#24	
S: Awooh, daayiib afhamna.	awooh daayiib afham-na
S: Yes, we understood well (good).	yes good understand-PERFPL1
#25	
T: Aflaa, baabaadhiinna!	aflaa baa-baadhiin-na
T: Then don't (PL) forget!	so.then NEGIMPVPLPF-forget-NEGIMPVPL
#26	
Aaw tusabuura isnhis?	aaw tu-sabuura isnhis
Who cleans the blackboard(s)?	who ARTSGF-blackboard make.clean-FUTSG
#27	

S: Wooh kwooja! Ani isnhis andi.	wooh kwooja ani isnhis a-ndi
S: You, teacher! I will clean it.	hey teacher SG1 make.clean.FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#28	
T: Ahammiidehook.	a-hammiid-ehook
T: Thank you.	IMPFSG1PF-praise-OBJSg2
#29	
S: Hamuud baanaawa!	hamuud baa-naaw-a
S: Welcome (May thanks not lack)!	praise NEGIMPVMPF-lack-NEGIMPVM
#30	
T: Amsi shalik na niyaay neeyad.	amsi shalik na ni-yaay n-eeeyad
T: Today we will take something small (LIT a little thing).	today little thing take-FUTPL IMPFPL1PF-say
#31	
Hummaday, hindeeh agriyaan!	hummad-ay hindeeh agrii-yaa-n
Hummad, please read!	Hummad-VOCAT please read-IMPVM- CON+please
#32	
S: "Arit, kamit, yast."	arit kamit yast
S: "Girls, she-camels, bitches."	girlPL camelPLF dogPLF
#33	
T: Daayiiib sakta! Fagar oorwa!	daayiiib sak-ta fagar oor-wa
T: You (M) did well, you are a good boy.	good do-PERFSG3F brave boy-IDSG2M
#34	
Ugin'u tikteena?	u-gin'-u ti-kteen-a
You (M) know (sth.) by heart?	ARTSGM-heart-IDSG13M IMPFSG2MPF-know- IMPFSG2M
#35	
Kitibna!	kitib-na
Write (PL)!	write-IMPVPL
#36	
S: A b c.	a b c
S: A b c.	a b c
#37	
T: Baruuk, asa gada! Fir'a!	baruuk as-a gad-a fir'-a
T: You, stand (M) up! get out!	SG2M go.up-IMPVM stand-IMPVM exit-IMPVM
#38	

Naanhooy kitkitiba?	naanhooy kit-kitib-a
Why don't you (M) write?	why NEGIMPFSG2MPF-write-NEGIMPFSG2M
#39	
S: Ukarraasu abaadhin.	u-karraas-u a-baadhin
S: I forgot my exercise book.	ARTSGM-exercise.book-POSSG1 PERFSG1PF-forget
#40	
T: Naanhooy ukarraasook tibaadhina?	naanhooy u-karraas-ook ti-baadhin-a
T: Why did you (M) forget your exercise book?	why ARTSGM-exercise.book-POSSG2 PERFSG2MPF-forget-PERFSG2M
#41	
Amsi afooyihook andi.	amsi afoo-yi-hook a-ndi
Today I will forgive you.	today forgive-FUT-OBJSG2 IMPFSG1PF-say
#42	
Laakiin shaawi (dabaab) baabaadhiina!	laakiin shaawi dabaab baa-baadhiin-a
But don't (M) forget again!	but again additionally NEGIMPVMPF-forget-NEGIMPVM
#43	
Ibhali teemsiwa? Timaasiwa?	i-bhali t-eemsiw-a ti-maasiw-a
Do you (M) hear my words?	ARTPLM-word IMPFSG2MPF-hear-IMPFSG2M PERFSG2MPF-hear-PERFSG2M
#44	
S: Eemsiw.	ZERO-eemsiw
S: I hear (I heard).	IMPFSG1PF-hear
#45	
T: Umhiinook baya!	u-mhiin-ook bay-a
T: Go (M) to your place!	ARTSGM-place-POSSG2 go-IMPVM
#46	
Faayamtaana? Afhamtaana?	faayam-taana afham-taana
Have you (PL) finished? Have you understood?	complete-PERFPL2 understand-PERFPL2
#47	
Hindeeh, hiddaab daayiib agriini!	hindeeh hiddaab daayiib agrii-ni
Please, let's read very well together!	please together good read-FUTPL
#48	
S: A b c.	a b c
S: A b c.	a b c

#49	
T: Weena kitihay. Oon'umhiinaan ningadi!	weena kiti-hay oon-'u-mhiinaan ni-ngadi
T: There is nothing else. Let us stop here!	other.thing NEGIMPFSG3FPF-be NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-place IMPFPL1PF-stand
#50	
L'aab aayimna! (L'aab naayaana!)	l'-aab aayim-na l'-aab naa-yaana
Good afternoon! (Good evening!)	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVPL be.cool-PTCPPAST pass.night-IMPVPL
#51	
S: Asigaab.	asigaab
S: Reply.	peaceful

<408>

<p>۱ اشيكي، ايسه نه ناث؟ ۲ ائى كاكن. لايين هساب هيسنه. ۳ افلا، اكووچه هالو، آخرمينيك؟ ۴ هوس اكيه! اكووچايون تيه. ۵ اسنه قدنه! ۶ كك مهتانه؟ ۷ كووتيب مهنه. بړوك كك مهتا؟ ۸ ائى داييب مهن. سانه! ۹ ازان اقرينه؟ ۱۰ شاتينه؟ ۱۱ او شايين؟ ۱۲ ائى شائى. ۱۳ آل، اسه قدنه! ۱۴ هنديه اقرينان! ۱۵ 'كام، ميك، وړ. ۱۶ اروي! ائى داييب يفي؟ ۱۷ ووه اكووچاي، ووه اكووچاي! ۱۸ ائى داييب كيي. ۱۹ داييب، هنديه بړوك اقرينان! ۲۰ 'كم، مك. ار. ۲۱ 'اهه! و نذاب كك ايه؟ ۲۲ داييب ايه. ۲۳ كساكنه افهمتانه؟ لايين ائى اباون. ۲۴ اووه، داييب افهمنه. ۲۵ افلا، باباډينه! ۲۶ او تسيوره اسنيس؟ ۲۷ ووه كووچه! ائى اسنيس انده. ۲۸ اهميدهو. ۲۹ همود باناوه! ۳۰ امسه شليك نه نياي نييد. ۳۱ همدي، هنديه اقرينان! ۳۲ 'ارت، كيت، يست. ۳۳ داييب سكه! فقر وروه! ۳۴ افن تكتينه؟ ۳۵ كينه! ۳۶ ا...ب... ۳۷ بړوك، اسه قدنه! فراه! ۳۸ نانهوي كيكته؟ ۳۹ اكراس اباون. ۴۰ نانهوي اكراسوك تباونه؟ ۴۱ امسه افويهو. انده. ۴۲ لايين شاوه باباډينه! ۴۳ اهل تيمسيوه؟ تماسوه؟ ۴۴ يمسيو. ۴۵ امهينوك تيه! ۴۶ فايمتانه؟ افهمتانه؟ ۴۷ هنديه، هذاب داييب اقرينان! ۴۸ ا...ب... ۴۹ وينه كيي، و نهمهينان نندده! ۵۰ لآب آيمنه! لآب نايانه! ۵۱ اسقاب.</p>

Tense and Aspect

Overview of Tenses and Aspects

<409>

Beja verbs use the Perfect Aspect if at the particular time, the event is over, and Imperfect if it is still going on. But the two aspects are not entirely neutral as far as tenses like Past / Present are concerned:

- The Present Tense is usually expressed by the imperfect aspect.
- The Past Tense is usually expressed by the perfect aspect.

<410>

The Future Tense employs the special Future stem of the verb, which must be followed by the present tense of the verb *diy-* 'to say/mean'. So 'I will go' translates as 'I mean to go-FUT'. The future stem typically has a suffix *-i* (in weak verbs) or prefix *i-* (in strong verbs). This is used for all persons except 'we', where *-n/n-* must be added.

Table 32: The Main Tenses, Aspects

Weak Verbs:		
PAST:		
Yakan / yakna.	I started / we started.	يكن / يكنه.
PRES:		
Yakani / yaknay.	I start / we start.	يكنى / يكني.

FUT:		
Yaki andi / yakni neeyad.	I will start / we will start.	یکے اُندے / یکھے نیید.
Strong Verbs:		
PAST:		
Adi / nidi.	I said / we said.	اُدے / نیدے.
PRES:		
Andi / neeyad.	I say / we say.	اُندے / نیید.
FUT:		
Iyaad andi / niyaad neeyad.	I will say.	ایاد اُندے / نیاد نیید.

Tense Examples: Past, Present, Future

Iru naan daatiya? Buun iitiikw.	What were you (M) doing yesterday? I was boiling coffee.	اُرُ نان داایہ ؟ بُون اِیتیکُو.
Iru naan daata? Buun atkwi.	What did you (M) do yesterday? I boiled coffee.	اُرُ نان داایہ ؟ بُون اُتکُوے.
Oond'aab naan daatiniya? Buun atankwi.	What are you (M) doing now? I am boiling coffee.	وُندآب نان داایہ ؟ بُون اُتکُوے.
Lhayt naan daayi tindiya? Buun itaakw andi.	What will you (M) do tomorrow? I will boil coffee.	لہیت نان داایہ تندیہ ؟ بُون اِتاکُو اُندے.
Iru naan daayi? Buun iitiikw.	What was he doing yesterday? He was boiling coffee.	اُرُ نان داایہ ؟ بُون اِیتیکُو.
Iru naan daayiya? Buun itkwi.	What did he do yesterday? He boiled coffee.	اُرُ نان داایہ ؟ بُون اِتکُوے.
Oond'aab naan daayiini? Buun tankwi.	What does he do now? He boils coffee.	وُندآب نان داایہ ؟ بُون تَنکُوے.
Lhayt naan daayi indi? Buun itaakw indi.	What will he do tomorrow? He will boil coffee.	لہیت نان داایہ اُندے ؟ بُون اِتاکُو اُندے.

Additional Tense / Aspect Forms (Aktionsarten)

<411>

In addition to the two tense / aspects present / imperfect and past / perfect, there are some more specific tense / aspect forms. They are also called Aktionsarten (Kinds of events). One very obvious form to express repeated events is the repetition, especially the repetition of the present participle. The present participle always has the suffix -eeh.

Present Participle

Tameeh tameeh gaban.	Eating, eating I became satisfied (full).	تَمیہ تَمیہ قَبَن .
Gwa'eeh gwa'eeh l'oob aki.	Drinking, drinking I became satisfied (full).	قَوَیہ قَوَیہ لَوُوب اُکے .
Diweeh diweeh hawsooyan.	Sleeping, sleeping I dreamt.	دَوِیہ دَوِیہ هَوَسَوَیَن .

Verbs and Auxiliaries

<412>

Auxiliary verbs are used to differentiate various other kinds of events and how they are related to the course of time. The table below lists the most frequent auxiliaries. The English glosses attempt to express the timing of these events.

Table 33: Auxiliary Verbs

diya	to mean to do (FUT), 'say'	دِيَه
haya	to do at once, 'take'	هَيَه
gada	to be about to do, 'stand'	قَدَه
siniya	to be doing, 'wait'	سِينِيَه
sa'a	to continue to do, 'sit'	سَاه
d'iya	to do completely, 'put'	دَايَه
ba'aa, b'aa	to stop to do, 'lie down'	بَا بَا

Auxiliaries

<413>

The course of an action or event, such as 'begin to do, finish doing, go on with', is often clarified by an auxiliary verb. Here are examples.

Udirtiyiida ingad.	He was ready to kill (LIT for-killing he-stood).	أُدِرْتِيِيْدَه اِنْغَد.
Iid'a andi.	I will do (LIT do-FUT I say).	اِيْدَاه اَنْدِي.
Ad'a andi.	I want to do (lit doing I-say).	اَدَاه اَنْدِي.
Bak akaayeeh isni.	Being so he waited, i.e. he kept on waiting (LIT so being he-waited).	بَاك اَكَايِيَه اِسْنِي.
S'ayaamay is'a.	He still expected it (LIT expecting he-sat).	سَايَاْمِي اِسَاه.

Immediate Action: 'to take'

<414>

Immediate Action is expressed by a combination with the verb aha 'to take' and refers to changes which take place immediately, like diwan ayiha 'I slept at once'.

Kwidha aha!	Get lost (M) (at once, strongly)!	كُوْدَه اَه!
Lawa aha!	Get burnt (M) (at once, strongly)! ²⁴	لَوَه اَه!
Gw'an ayiha.	I drank at once.	قَوَان اِيَه.
Taman ayiha.	I ate at once.	تَمَن اِيَه.
Diwan ayiha.	I slept at once.	دَوْن اِيَه.
Yakiyaay iyihayit.	He started immediately (LIT arose took).	يَكِيَاي اِيَهَيْت
Adlib ayiha.	I bought (LIT traded took).	اَدْلِب اِيَه

Complete Action: 'to put'

<415>

Complete Action is expressed by a combination with the verb d'iya 'to put' and refers to events which come to an end: Taman ad'i 'I drank completely'.

Taman ad'i.	I ate it completely.	تَمَّنْ أَدَا.
Aaman ad'i.	I ate it (gulped it up) completely.	آمَّنْ أَدَا.
Gw'an ad'i.	I drank completely.	قَوَّانْ أَدَا.
Faayisan ad'i.	I finished completely.	فَايَسَّنْ أَدَا.

Stative

<416>

Stative is expressed by participles and refers to ideas of status, or being, such as 'being born in Egypt' (so the person has the status of being Egyptian).

Stative: 'to be, become'

Ani Handhiwaayiib aki.	I became a Hadendowa.	أَنِي هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ أَكِي.
Baruuk Handhiwaayiib tikaya.	You (M) became a Hadendowa.	بَرُوْكَ هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ تِكِيَه.
Batuuk Handhiwaayiit tikayi.	You (F) became a Hadendowa.	بَتُوْكَ هَنْدُوَايِيْتْ تِكِيَه.
Baruuh Handhiwaayiib iki.	He became a Hadendowa.	بَرُوْه هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ إِكِي.
Batuuh Handhiwaayiit tiki.	She became a Hadendowa.	بَتُوْه هَنْدُوَايِيْتْ تِكِيَه.
Hinin Handhiwaayiib niki.	We (M) became Hadendowa.	هَيْنِنْ هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ نِكِيَه.
Baraakna Handhiwaayiib tikeena.	You (M PL) became Hadendowa.	بَرَاكْنَه هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ تِكِيَه.
Baraah Handhiwaayiib ikeen.	They (M) became Hadendowa.	بَرَاهْ هَنْدُوَايِيْبْ إِكِين.

Stative: 'to be there'

Bashal iha.	There are onions.	بَشَلْ إِهَه.
Adas iha.	There are lentils.	أَدَسْ إِهَه.
Tamaatiim iha.	There are tomatoes.	تَمَاتِيْمْ إِهَه.
Bataatis iha.	There are potatoes.	بَتَاتِيْسْ إِهَه.
Gar'a iha.	There are pumpkins.	قَرَاهْ إِهَه.
Batehiiyayt iheen. / Batehiyaayt tiha.	There are melons / there is a melon.	بَتَهِيِيْتْ إِهَيْنْ. / بَتَهِيِيَايْتْ تِيَهَه.
Baskaawiit iheen.	There are biscuits.	بَسْكَوَايِيْتْ إِهَيْنْ.

Future and Intention

<417>

Some tenses are expressed by the combination of two verbs. Future is expressed by a particular verb form with i- / -i plus 'to say', which is used as an auxiliary. The future tense (characterized by the affix 'i') and the intentional tense, aspect (characterized by the affix 'a') can be compared in the following examples.

Intention:			Future:		
Tama andi.	I want to eat.	تَمَهْ أُنْدِيَه.	Tami andi.	I will eat.	تَمِيَهْ أُنْدِيَه.
D'iya andi.	I want to do it.	دَايَهْ أُنْدِيَه.	Id'a andi.	I will do it.	إِدَاَهْ أُنْدِيَه.
Tama tindiya.	You (M) want to	تَمَهْ تِنْدِيَه.	Tami	You (M) will	تَمِيَهْ تِنْدِيَه.

	eat.		tindiya.	eat.	
D'iya (daaya) tindiya.	You (M) want to do it.	دایہ (دایہ) تندیہ .	Id'a tindiya.	You (M) will do it.	إدأه تندیہ .
Tama indi.	He wants to eat.	تمہ اندے .	Tami indi.	He will eat.	تمے اندے .
D'iya (daaya) indi.	He wants to do it.	دایہ (دایہ) اندے .	Id'a indi.	He will do it.	إدأه اندے .

Future: 'to mean, to say'

<418>

The Future of strong verbs uses the prefixes ni- or nii- for the first person plural and i- or ii- for the other persons. The choice between the long and short form depends on the verb and the dialect. The form must be looked up in the dictionary.

Future Strong Paradigm: 'to ride'

Kaam iid'am andi.	I will ride a camel.	کام ایڈام اندے .
Kaam iid'am tindiya.	You (M) will ride a camel.	کام ایڈام تندیہ .
Kaam iid'am tindiyi.	You (F) will ride a camel.	کام ایڈام تندیہ .
Kaam iid'am indi.	He will ride a camel.	کام ایڈام اندے .
Kaam iid'am tindi.	She will ride a camel.	کام ایڈام تندیہ .
Kam niid'am neeyad.	We will ride a camel.	کم نیڈام نیید .
Kam iid'am teeyadna.	You (PL) will ride a camel.	کم ایڈام تییدنہ .
Kam iid'am eeyadna.	They will ride a camel.	کم ایڈام تییدنہ .

Future: 'to become'

Had'aab / had'aat iikta andi.	I (M) / (F) will become an elder, leader.	هدآب / هدآت ایکتہ اندے .
Had'aab iikta tindiya.	You (M) will become an elder, leader.	هدآب ایکتہ تندیہ .
Had'aat iikta tindiyi.	You (F) will become an elder, leader (F).	هدآت ایکتہ تندیہ .
Had'aab iikta indi.	He will become an elder, leader.	هدآب ایکتہ اندے .
Had'aat iikta tindi.	She will become an elder, leader (F).	هدآت ایکتہ تندیہ .
Had'aab niikta neeyad.	We will become elders, leaders.	هدآب نیکتہ نیید .
Had'aab iikta teeyadna.	You (PL) will become elders, leaders.	هدآب ایکتہ تییدنہ .
Had'aab iikta eeyadna.	They will become elders, leaders.	هدآب ایکتہ تییدنہ .

Future Weak Paradigm: 'to drink'

Aaw gw'i indi?	Who will drink?	آو قووا اندے؟
Ani gw'i andi.	I will drink.	أنے قووا اندے .
Baruuk gw'i tindiya.	You (M) will drink.	بَرُوك قووا تندیہ .
Batuuk gw'i tindiyi.	You (F) will drink.	بَتُوك قووا تندیہ .

Baruuh gw'i indi.	He will drink.	بَرُوهُ قُوَا اِنْدِے .
Batuuh gw'i tindi.	She will drink.	بَتُوهُ قُوَا تِنْدِے .
Hinin gw'ani neeyad.	We will drink.	هِنِن قُوَا نِے نِے .
Baraakna gw'ani teeyadna.	You (M PL) will drink.	بَرَاكْنَه قُوَا نِے تِے نِے .
Bataakna gw'ani teeyadna.	You (F PL) will drink.	بَتَاكْنَه قُوَا نِے تِے نِے .
Baraah gw'i eeyadna.	They (M) will drink.	بَرَاه قُوَا تِے نِے .
Bataah gw'i eeyadna.	They (F) will drink.	بَتَاه قُوَا تِے نِے .

Future Negative

Aaw tami kiidi?	<u>Who will not eat?</u>	اَو تَمے كِے دے؟
Ani tami kaadi.	I will not eat.	اُنے تَمے كا دے .
Baruuk tami kiddiya.	You (M) will not eat.	بَرُوك تَمے كِے دِے .
Batuuk tami kiddiyi.	You (F) will not eat.	بَتُوك تَمے كِے دِے .
Baruuh tami kiidi.	He will not eat.	بَرُوهُ تَمے كِے دے .
Batuuh tami kiddi.	She will not eat.	بَتُوهُ تَمے كِے دے .
Hinin tamni kindi.	We will not eat.	هِنِن تَمے كِے دے .
Baraakna tami / tamni kiddiina.	You (M PL) will not eat.	بَرَاكْنَه تَمے / تَمے كِے دِے .
Bataakna tami / tamni kiddiina.	You (F PL) will not eat.	بَتَاكْنَه تَمے / تَمے كِے دِے .
Baraah tami / tamni kiidiin.	They (M) will not eat.	بَرَاه تَمے / تَمے كِے دِے .
Bataah tami / tamni kiidiin.	They (F) will not eat.	بَتَاه تَمے / تَمے كِے دِے .

Future Strong Verbs: CiCiC (SG)

Iidbil tindiya? / iidbil andi.	<u>Will you collect it? / I will collect it.</u> ²⁵	اِیْدِبِل تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْدِبِل اُنْدِے .
Iifdig tindiya? / iifdig andi.	Will you (M) untie it, divorce her? / I will untie it, divorce her.	اِیْفِدِیْگ تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْفِدِیْگ اُنْدِے .
Iiftir tindiya? / iiftir andi.	Will you (M) eat breakfast? / I will eat breakfast.	اِیْفِیْر تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْفِیْر اُنْدِے .
Iiftit tindiya? / iiftit andi.	Will you (M) comb (sth.)? / I will comb (sth.).	اِیْفِیْت تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْفِیْت اُنْدِے .
Iiktib tindiya? / iiktib andi.	Will you (M) write (sth.)? / I will write (sth.).	اِیْكِیْب تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْكِیْب اُنْدِے .
Iimkir tindiya (immikir tindiya)? / iimkir andi (immikir andi).	Will you (M) advise (sth.)? / I will advise (sth.).	اِیْمَكِر تِنْدِیْه؟ (اِیْمَكِر تِنْدِیْه؟) / اِیْمَكِر اُنْدِے . (اِیْمَكِر اُنْدِے .)
Iishbib tindiya? / iishbib andi.	Will you (M) look (at it)? / I will look (at it).	اِیْشِبِیْب تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْشِبِیْب اُنْدِے .
Iishgwidh tindiya? / iishgwidh andi.	Will you (M) wash (sth.)? / I will wash (sth.).	اِیْشَقُوْد تِنْدِیْه؟ / اِیْشَقُوْد اُنْدِے .

Future Strong Verbs: CiC, HaCiC (SG)

Iidif tindiya? / iidif andi.	Will you (M) go away? / I will go away.	إيدف تندیہ؟ / ایدف اُندے.
Y'ish, y'ush tindiya? / y'ush andi.	Will you (M) give up (LIT leave, let) (sth.)? / I will give up (LIT leave, let) (sth.).	یئش تندیہ؟ / یئش اُندے.
Y'ibik, tindiya? / y'ibik andi.	Will you (M) seize? / I will seize (sth.).	یابک تندیہ؟ / یابک اُندے.
Yhigit tindiya? / yhigit andi.	Will you (M) wait? / I will wait.	یہقت تندیہ؟ / یہقت اُندے.
Itehisir tindiya? / Itehisir andi.	Will you be sorry? / I will be sorry.	یتھیسر تندیہ؟ / یتھیسر اُندے.

Future Strong Verbs: CiCiy, Ciy etc. (Sg)

Isaan tindiya? / isaan andi.	Will you (M) wait? / I will wait.	إسان تندیہ؟ / إسان اُندے.
Idhaagw tindiya? / idhaagw andi.	Will you (M) count (sth.)? / I will count (sth.).	إدأغو تندیہ؟ / إدأغو اُندے.
Imaar tindiya? / imaar andi.	Will you (M) find (sth.)? / I will find (sth.).	إمار تندیہ؟ / إمار اُندے.
Iyaad tindiya? / iyaad andi.	Will you (M) say (sth.)? / I will say (sth.).	إیاد تندیہ؟ / إیاد اُندے.
Iyaaw tindiya? / iyaaw andi.	Will you (M) give (sth.)? / I will give (sth.).	إیاو تندیہ؟ / إیاو اُندے.
Iyaay (ayaay) tindiya? / iyaay andi.	Will you (M) take (sth.)? / I will take (sth.).	إیای (أیای) تندیہ؟ / إیای اُندے.

Future Strong Verbs: CaaCiC etc. (SG)

Iifyad tindiya? / iifyad andi.	Will you (M) laugh? / I will laugh.	إیفید تندیہ؟ / ایفید اُندے.
Iimsaw tindiya? / iimsaw andi.	Will you (M) hear (sth.)? / I will hear (sth.).	ایمسو تندیہ؟ / ایمسو اُندے.
Iishiwaawa tindiya? / iishiwaawa andi.	Will you (M) gather (sth.)? / I will gather (sth.).	ایشواوہ تندیہ؟ / ایشواوہ اُندے.
Iid'a tindiya? / Iid'a andi.	Will you (M) do (sth.)? / I will do (sth.).	ایدأہ تندیہ؟ / ایدأہ اُندے.
Isnhid tindiya? / isnhid andi.	Will you (M) finish (sth.)? / I will finish (sth.).	إسنهد تندیہ؟ / إسنهد اُندے.
Ingida tindiya? / ingida andi.	Will you (M) stand? / I will stand.	إنقده تندیہ؟ / إنقده اُندے.
Iikana tindiya? / iikana andi.	Will you (M) know (sth.)? / I will know (sth.).	ایکنہ تندیہ؟ / ایکنہ اُندے.
Iiba tindiya? / iiba andi.	Will you (M) go (somewhere)? / I will go (somewhere) ²⁶ .	ایبہ تندیہ؟ / ایبہ اُندے.

Future Strong Verbs: CiCiC (PL)

iidbil teeyadna? / niidbil neeyad.	Will you (PL) collect (sth.)? / We will collect (sth.).	إيدبل تئيدنه? / نيدبل تئيد.
liifdig teeyadna? / niifdig neeyad.	Will you (PL) untie (sth.)? / We will untie (sth.).	إيفديق تئيدنه? / نيفديق تئيد.
liiftir teeyadna? / niiftir neeyad.	Will you (PL) eat breakfast? / We will eat breakfast.	إيفتير تئيدنه? / نيفتير تئيد.
liiftit teeyadna? / niiftit neeyad.	Will you (PL) comb (sth.)? / We will comb (sth.).	إيفتت تئيدنه? / نيفتت تئيد.
liiktib teeyadna? / niiktib neeyad.	Will you (PL) write (sth.)? / We will write (sth.).	إيكتيب تئيدنه? / نيكتيب تئيد.
liimkir (immikir) teeyadna? / niimkir (nimmikir) neeyad.	Will you (PL) advise (sth.)? / We will advise (sth.).	إيمكير (إمكير) تئيدنه? / نيمكير (نمكير) تئيد.
liishbib teeyadna? / niishbib neeyad.	Will you (PL) look? / We will look.	إيشيب تئيدنه? / نيشيب تئيد.
liishgwidh teeyadna? / niishgwidh neeyad.	Will you (PL) wash (sth.)? / We will wash (sth.).	إيشغوڊ تئيدنه? / نيشغوڊ تئيد.

Future Strong Verbs: CiC, HaCiC (PL)

Iidif teeyadna? / niidif neeyad.	Will you (PL) go away? / We will go away.	إيدف تئيدنه? / نيدف تئيد.
Y'ish, y'ush teeyadna? / ni'ush neeyad.	Will you (PL) give up (LIT leave, let) (sth.)? / We will give up (LIT leave, let) (sth.).	إيش. ي'يش تئيدنه? / ن'يش تئيد.
Y'bik teeyadna? / ni'ibik neeyad.	Will you (PL) seize (sth.)? / We will seize (sth.).	إيبك. ي'يبك تئيدنه? / ن'يبك تئيد.
Ihigit teeyadna? / nihigit neeyad.	Will you (PL) wait? / We will wait.	إهيت تئيدنه? / نهيت تئيد.
Itehisir teeyadna? / nitehisir neeyad.	Will you (PL) be sorry? / We will be sorry.	إتهيسير تئيدنه? / نتهيسير تئيد.

Future Strong Verbs: CiCiy, Ciy etc. (PL)

Isaan teeyadna? / nisaan neeyad.	Will you (PL) wait? / We will wait.	إيسان تئيدنه? / نيسان تئيد.
Idhaagw teeyadna? / nidhaagw neeyad.	Will you (PL) count? / We will count.	إدأغو تئيدنه? / نيدأغو تئيد.
Imaar (iimar) teeyadna? / nimaar (niimar) neeyad.	Will you (PL) find (sth.)? / We will find (sth.).	إيمار (إيمر) تئيدنه? / نيمار (نيمر) تئيد.
Iyaad teeyadna? / niyaad neeyad.	Will you (PL) say (sth.)? / We will say (sth.).	إياد تئيدنه? / نياد تئيد.
Iyaaw teeyadna? / niyaaw neeyad.	Will you (PL) give (sth.)? / We will give (sth.).	إياو تئيدنه? / نياو تئيد.
Iyaay (ayaay) teeyadna? / niyaay neeyad.	Will you (PL) take (sth.)? / We will take (sth.).	إياي (أياي) تئيدنه? / نياي تئيد.

Future Strong Verbs: CaaCiC etc. (PL)

Iifyad teeyadna? / niifyad neeyad.	Will you (PL) laugh? / We will laugh.	إيفيد تئيدنه? / نيفيد تئيد.
Iimsaw teeyadna? / niimsaw neeyad.	Will you (PL) hear (sth.)? / We will hear (sth.) .	إيمسو تئيدنه? / نيمسو تئيد.
Iishwaawa teeyadna? / niishwaawa neeyad.	Will you (PL) gather (sth.)? / We will gather (sth.).	إيشواوه تئيدنه? / نيشواوه تئيد.
Ad'a teeyadna? / niid'a neeyad.	Will you (PL) do (sth.)? / We will do (sth.).	أدأه تئيدنه? / نيدأه تئيد.
Isnhad teeyadna? / nishhid neeyad.	Will you (PL) finish (sth.)? / We will finish (sth.).	إسنهد تئيدنه? / نسنهد تئيد.
Iingida teeyadna? / niingida neeyad.	Will you (PL) stand? / We will stand.	إينقده تئيدنه? / نينقده تئيد.
Iikan teeyadna? / niikan neeyad.	Will you (PL) know (sth.)? / We will know (sth.).	إيكن تئيدنه? / نيكن تئيد.
Iiba teeyadna? / niiba neeyad.	Will you (PL) go? / We will go.	إيه تئيدنه? / نيه تئيد.

Future Strong Verb: 'to know'

Aaw Tubdhaawi iikan indi?	Who will know Beja?	أو تئداوے إيكن إندے؟
Ani Tubdhaawi iikan andi.	I will know Beja.	أنے تئداوے إيكن أندے.
Baruuk Tubdhaawi iikan tindiya.	You (M) will know Beja.	بړوك تئداوے إيكن تئديه.
Batuuk Tubdhaawi iikan tindiya.	You (F) will know Beja.	بٹوك تئداوے إيكن تئديه.
Baruuh Tubdhaawi iikan indi.	He will know Beja.	بړوه تئداوے إيكن إندے.
Batuuh Tubdhaawi iikan tindi.	She will know Beja.	بٹوه تئداوے إيكن تئدے.
Hinin Tubdhaawi niikan neeyad.	We will know Beja.	هين تئداوے نيكن تئيد.
Baraakna Tubdhaawi iikan teeyadna.	You (PL) will know Beja.	بړاكنه تئداوے إيكن تئيدنه.
Baraah Tubdhaawi iikan eeyadna.	They will know Beja.	بړاه تئداوے إيكن تئيدنه.

Future Strong Verb: 'to eat'

Ani iiftir andi.	I will have breakfast.	أنے إفير أندے.
Hinin niiftir neeyad.	We will have breakfast.	هين نيفير تئيد.
Ani mhasi andi.	I will have lunch.	أنے مھسے أندے.
Hinin mhasni neeyad.	We will have lunch.	هين مھسنے تئيد.
Ani iddirir andi.	I will have supper.	أنے إديرر أندے.
Hinin niddirir neeyad.	We will have supper.	هين نديرر تئيد.

Future Strong Verb: 'to give'

Hiyaheeb!	Give (M) it to me!	هيھيب!
Iyaawhook andi.	I will give it to you.	إياوهوك أندے.
Hiyiheeb!	Give (F) it to me!	هيھيب!

Iyaaw andi.	I will give it (to him).	إياو أندے .
Hiinaheeb!	Give (PL) it to me!	ھیئھیب!
Niyaawhook neeyad.	We will give it to you.	نیاوھوک نیئد .
Hiyaheeb!	Give (M) it to me!	ھیئھیب!
Iyaawhook andi.	I will give it to you (M).	إیاوھوک أندے .
Hiyiheeb!	Give (F) it to me!	ھیئھیب!
Iyaawhook andi.	I will give it to you (M).	إیاوھوک أندے .
Hiinahoon!	Give (PL) it to us!	ھیئھون!
Niyaawhookna neeyad.	We will give it to you (PL).	نیاوھوکنا نیئد .

Future Strong Verb: 'to know'

Gaat masseetiib Tubdhaawi kastoo <i>h</i> iikan andi?	Will I know all of Beja in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب تُبْدَاوے کَسْتُوھ اِیْکَن اُنْدے؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan tindiya?	Will you (M) know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن تِنْدِیْھ؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan tindiya?	Will you (F) know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن تِنْدِیْھ؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan indi?	Will he know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن اِنْدے؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan tindi?	Will she know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن تِنْدے؟
Gaat masseetiib niikan neeyad?	Will we know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب نِیْکَن نیئد؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan teeyadna?	Will you (PL) know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن تِیئدناھ؟
Gaat masseetiib iikan eeyadna?	Will they know it in one year?	قات مَسْتِیْب اِیْکَن تِئدناھ؟

Future Strong Verb: 'to become'

Ustaaz iikta andi.	I will become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ اُنْدے .
Ustaaz iikta tindiya.	You (M) will become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ تِنْدِیْھ .
Ustaaz iikta tindii.	You (F) will become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ تِنْدِیْھ .
Ustaaz iikta indi.	He will become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ اِنْدے .
Ustaaz iikta tindi.	She will become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ تِنْدے .
Ustaz niikta neeyad.	We will become, be teachers.	اُسْتَاز نِیْکْتھ نیئد .
Ustaz iikta teeyadna.	You (PL) will become, be teachers.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ تِیئدناھ .
Ustaz iikta eeyadna.	They will become, be teachers.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ تِئدناھ .

Future Negative: 'to become'

Ustaaz iikta kaadi.	I won't become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ کَاَدے .
Ustaaz iikta kiddiya.	You (M) won't become, be a teacher.	اُسْتَاز اِیْکْتھ کِیْدِیْھ .

Ustaaz iikta kiddii.	You (F) won't become, be a teacher.	أُستاز إِيكته كِيدِي.
Ustaaz iikta kiidi.	He won't become, be a teacher.	أُستاز إِيكته كِيدِي.
Ustaaz iikta kiddi.	She won't become, be a teacher.	أُستاز إِيكته كِيدِي.
Ustaz niikta kindi.	We won't become, be teachers.	أُستاز نِيكته كِيدِي.
Ustaz iikta kiddiina.	You (PL) won't become, be teachers.	أُستاز إِيكته كِيدِي.
Ustaz iikta kiidiin.	They won't become, be teachers.	أُستاز إِيكته كِيدِي.

Intention

<419>

Intention is expressed by a verb suffix -a plus 'to say'. Thus the adequate translation of tama andi would be 'I want to eat', while tami andi expresses the future 'I shall eat'.

Intention: Future Weak Verbs

Naat tama andi.	I want to eat something.	نات تَمه أُنْدِي.
Naat gw'a andi.	I want to drink something.	نات قُوْه أُنْدِي.
Naat tama neeyad.	We want to eat something.	نات تَمه نِيِيْد.
Naat gw'a neeyad.	We want to drink something.	نات قُوْه نِيِيْد.
Naat tami andi.	I will eat something.	نات تَمِي أُنْدِي.
Naat gw'i andi.	I will drink something.	نات قُوْه أُنْدِي.
Naat tamni neeyad.	We will eat something.	نات تَمِنِي نِيِيْد.
Naat gw'ani neeyad.	We will drink something.	نات قُوْه نِيِيْد.

Intention: Future Strong Verb 'to say'

Naat d'iya / daaya andi.	I want to do something.	نات دِيَا / دَايَا أُنْدِي.
Naat diya andi.	I want to say something.	نات دِيَا أُنْدِي.
Naat d'iya neeyad.	We want to do something.	نات دِيَا نِيِيْد.
Naat diya neeyad.	We want to say something.	نات دِيَا نِيِيْد.
Naat iid'a andi.	I will do something.	نات دِيَا أُنْدِي.
Naat iyaad andi.	I will say something.	نات دِيَا أُنْدِي.
Naat niid'a neeyad.	We will do something.	نات دِيَا نِيِيْد.
Naat niyaad neeyad.	We will say something.	نات دِيَا نِيِيْد.

Future Strong Verbs with Object

Naan iyaad tindiya?	What will you (M) say?	نان إِيَاد تِنْدِيَه؟
Bataatis (dilbi) ayaay tindiya?	Will you (M) (buy and) take potatoes?	بَتَاتِيْس (دِلْبِي) أَيَاي تِنْدِيَه؟
Wharru iidbil tindiya?	Will you (M) collect the millet?	وَهْرُ إِيْدْبِل تِنْدِيَه؟
Imhallagaayeeek idhaagw tindiya?	Will you (M) count your money?	إِمَهَلْقَايِيَك إِدَاغُو تِنْدِيَه؟
Uwaragoon imar tindiya?	Will you (M) find our paper?	أُوْرَقُوْن إِمْر تِنْدِيَه؟

Tukwooba isnhis tindiya?	Will you (M) clean the pot?	تُكْوِبُه إِسْنَهْس تِنْدِيَه؟
Kasseeh eenda iishwiwa tindiya?	Will you (M) gather all the men?	كَسْتِه تِنْدَه إِشْوَوَه تِنْدِيَه؟
Baliin eektab iyaawheeb tindiya?	Will you (M) give me those books?	بَلِيْن يَكْتَب إِياوَهْتَب تِنْدِيَه؟
Uktaabook iyaawheeb tindiya?	Will you (M) give me your book?	أَكْتَابُوك إِياوَهْتَب تِنْدِيَه؟
Umaktabook iiba tindiya?	Will you (M) go to your (M) office?	أَمَكْتَابُوك إِيبَه تِنْدِيَه؟
Umsajal / ushariit iimsaw tindiya?	Will you (M) hear the recorder / the cassettes?	أَمَسْجَل / أَشْرِيْت إِيْمَسَو تِنْدِيَه؟
Baliin eenda iishbib tindiya?	Will you (M) look at those people?	بَلِيْن تِنْدَه إِشْبِب تِنْدِيَه؟
Oobaab iifdig tindiya?	Will you (M) open the door?	وَبَاب إِفْدِق تِنْدِيَه؟
Tikwuura y'ibik tindiya?	Will you (M) take the balls?	تِكْوُورَه يَابِك تِنْدِيَه؟
Isaanhoon tindiya?	Will you (M) wait for us?	إِسَانْهُون تِنْدِيَه؟
Yhalakaayeeek iishgwidh tindiya?	Will you (M) wash your clothes?	يَهَلْكَايِيْنِك إِشْقُوْدَ تِنْدِيَه؟

Past Continuous (Pluperfect)

<420>

Continuous Past is expressed by verbs with 'ii-' and refers to habitual, repeated actions of the (more distant) past, like iiyid 'he was saying, he used to say'.

Past Continuous: Strong Verb

Iishbib.	I was looking, I used to look.	إِشْبِب .
Tiishbiba.	You (M) were looking.	تِيَشْبِبَه .
Tiishbibi.	You (F) were looking.	تِيَشْبِبِيَه .
Iishbib.	He was looking.	إِشْبِب .
Tiishbib.	She was looking.	تِيَشْبِب .
Niishbib.	We were looking.	نِيَشْبِب .
Tiishbibna.	You (PL) were looking.	تِيَشْبِبِنَه .
Iishbibna.	They were looking.	إِشْبِبِنَه .

Past Continuous: Weak Verb

Naan gw'i?	What was I drinking?	نَان قُوَا؟
Naan gw'atiya?	What were you (M) drinking?	نَان قُوَاتِيَه؟
Naan gw'atiyi / gw'atii?	What were you (F) drinking?	نَان قُوَاتِيِيَه / قُوَاتِيِيَه؟
Naan gw'i?	What was he drinking?	نَان قُوَا؟
Naan gw'ani?	What were we drinking?	نَان قُوَانِيَه؟
Naan gw'atiina?	What were you (PL) drinking?	نَان قُوَاتِيِنَه؟
Naan gw'iin?	What were they drinking?	نَان قُوَايِنَه؟

Naan daayi?	What was I doing?	نان داايے؟
Naan daatiya?	What were you (M) doing?	نان داايه؟
Naan daatiyi?	What were you (F) doing?	نان دااييه؟
Naan daayi?	What was he doing?	نان داايے؟

Conversation 17 'A Visitor' (Examples of the Past Continuous)

<421>

A: host, B: visitor

#1	
(Gaal door, tak araawiiyooch halaagaayt iibiri.)	gaal door tak araaw-ii-yooch halaagaayt ZERO-iibiri
(Some time, a man needed to meet his friend.)	one time man friend-CASGEN-POSSG3 business PASTSG1PF-have
#2	
(W'araawiiyooch gawiida eeya. Oobaab ith'a.)	w-'araaw-ii-yooch gaw-ii-da eey-a oob-aab i-th'a
(He came to his friend's house. He knocks at the door.)	ARTSGM-friend-CASGEN-POSSG3 house-CASGEN-ADVGEN+for come-PERFSG3M track-PTCPPAST PERFSG3MPF-knock
#3	
A: Aabwa, oobaab inth'i?	aab-wa oob-aab i-nth'i
A: Who are you (M), knocking at the door?	whoOBJM-IDSG2M track-PTCPPAST IMPFSG3MPF-knock
#4	
B: Ani, Aliibu.	ani aliib-u
B: I, I am Ali.	SG1 Ali-IDSG13M
#5	
A: Yaa marhaba, yaa marhaba.	yaa marhaba yaa marhaba
A: Hello, hello.	helloSG2M hello helloSG2M hello
#6	
Eetaaneena!	ee-taan-ee-na
Welcome (LIT you coming)!	come-PERFPL2-WH-Thing
#7	
B: Tisniyeena!	ti-sni-yee-na
B: Good to await me (LIT you sitting).	PERFSG2MPF-stay-WH-thing
#8	
A: Suur baya!	suur bay-a
A: Go (ahead)!	before go-IMPVM
#9	

Shuumaa!	shuum-aa
Come in!	enter-IMPVM
#10	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: Good.	good-IDSG13F
#11	
A: Oon'oomhiin s'a!	oon-'oo-mhiin s'-a
A: Sit down here!	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGMOBJ-place sit-IMPVM
#12	
B: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
B: Good.	good-IDSG13F
#13	
A: Dabaaywa?	dabaay-wa
A: Are you well	well-IDSG2M
#14	
B: Dabaayu.	dabaay-u
B: I am well.	well-IDSG13M
#15	
Batuuk kak tihayi?	batuuk kak ti-hay-i
How are you (F)?	SG2F how PERFSG2FPF-be-PERFSG2F
#16	
A: Ani daayiitu. Libaabiiwa?	ani daayiit-u libaabii-wa
A: I am good (well). Are you (M) happy?	SG1 good-IDSG13F happy-IDSG2M
#17	
B: Gwirhaab kaabaru.	gwirhaab kaa-baru
B: I don't have any trouble.	problem NEGIMPFSG1PF-have
#18	
Batuuk kak tihayi?	batuuk kak ti-hay-i
How are you (F)?	SG2F how PERFSG2FPF-be-PERFSG2F
#19	
A: Ani daayiit iha.	ani daayiit i-ha
A: I am good (fine).	SG1 good PERFSG13PF-be
#20	
Naan gw'ata?	naan gw'-ata
What would you (M) like to drink?	what drink-SUBM

#21	
Shaahiib gw'atahan, hana jabanaat?	shaahiib gw'-ata-han hana jabanaat
Do you want to drink some tea, or coffee?	tea drink-SUBM-also or coffee.pot
#22	
B: Naat gw'i kaadi.	naat gw'-i kaa-di
B: I won't drink anything.	thing drink-FUTSG NEGIMPFSG1PF-say
#23	
Dawil door buun gw'aabu.	dawil door buun gw'-aab-u
I just drank coffee.	closeness time coffee drink-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#24	
Uusheek keeya?	uusheek kee-ya
Where is Oosheek?	Oosheek be.where-PERFSG3M
#25	
A: Ushanhooh abaayu.	u-shanh-oooh abaay-u
A: He has gone (went) to his work.	ARTSGM-work-POSSSG3 go-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#26	
B: Naadoor eeyiini?	naadoor ee-yiini
B: When does he (usually) come?	when come-IMPFSG3M
#27	
A: Nabhoob eeyiini.	nabhoob ee-yiini
A: He comes (in) the afternoon.	afternoon come-IMPFSG3M
#28	
Haalooku?	haal-ook-u
How are you (LIT what is your condition)?	condition-POSSSG2-IDSG13M
#29	
B: Dibiloot halaagaay hooy abari.	dibiloot halaagaay hooy a-bari
B: I have a little request (affair, obligation, business) for him.	small business at PERFSG1PF-have
#30	
A: Hangiiteek, y'i indi.	ZERO-hangiit-ZERO-eek y'-i i-ndi
A: If you wait, he will come.	IMPFSG2MPF-wait-IMPFSG2M-ADV+if come-FUTSG IMPFSG3MPF-say
#31	
B: Oond'aab, ani shawaay kaaki.	oond'aab ani shawaay kaa-ki
B: (Right) now, I am not free.	this.time SG1 free NEGIMPFSG1PF-be

#32	
Ashshigani.	ashshig-ani
I'm in a hurry.	hurry-IMPFSG1
#33	
Laakiin weer door y'i andi.	laakiin weer door y'-i a-ndi
But (some) other time I will come.	but other time come-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#34	
Uusheek ayiiniyeek,	uusheek a-yiini-yeek
<u>If Oosheek comes.</u>	Oosheek come-IMPFSG3M-ADV+if
#35	
"Ali ihiriwhook" diyi!	ali i-hiriw-hook di-yi
Tell him "Ali wanted you"!	Ali PERFSG3MPF-want-OBJSG2 say-IMPVF
#36	
A: Daayiitu, sooyi andi.	daayit-u sooy-i a-ndi
A: Good, I will tell (him).	good-IDSG13F tell-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#37	
B: Anaa kwaatu, biibaadhiini!	anaa kwaat-u bii-baadhiin-i
B: Dear sister, don't forget!	hey sister-POSSG1 NEGIMPVFPF-forget-NEGIMPVF
#38	
A: Kak eebdhiin?!	kak ZERO-eebdhiin
A: How (will) I forget?!	how IMPFSG1PF-forget
#39	
B: L'aab aayimi!	l'-aab aayim-i
B: Bye, good afternoon!	be.cool-PTCPPAST spend.day-IMPVF
#40	
A: Asigaab!	asigaab
A: Same to you.	peaceful
#41	
Kwidhi bahaaya!	kwidh-i ba-haa-ya
Don't get lost!	get.lost-FUTSG NEGIMPVMPF-be-NEGIMPVM
#42	
B: Daayiitu. Kwidhi ayaay kaadi!	daayit-u kwidh-i ayaay kaa-di
B: Good. I won't get completely lost.	good-IDSG13F get.lost-FUTSG take.FUTSG NEGIMPFSG1PF-say
#43	
A: Usheekay!	usheek-ay

A: Oh Oosheek!	Oosheek-VOCAT
#44	
Ali ihiriwhook.	ali i-hiriw-hook
Ali was looking for you (M).	Ali PERFSG3MPF-want-OBJS2
#45	
Oon'umhiinaan eeyaayit, ihariw inawhook.	oon-'u-mhiinaan ee-yaa-yit i-hariw i-naw-hook
He came here and needed (LIT wanted) you and did not find you (failed to).	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-place come-PERFSG3M-CON+then PERFSG3MPF-want PERFSG3MPF-lack-OBJS2
#46	
"Hagita! Y'i indi" adiyeeek,	hagit-a y'-i i-ndi a-di-yeek
When I said, "Wait! He will come",	wait-IMPVM come-FUTSG IMPFSG3MPF-say PERFSG1PF-say-ADV+if
#47	
"Shawaay kaaki, ashshigani" idiheeb,	shawaay kaa-ki ashshig-ani i-di-heeb,
"I am busy (LIT I am not free), I am in a hurry" he told me,	free NEGIMPFSG1PF-be hurry-IMPFSG1 PERFSG3MPF-say-OBJS1
#48	
"Laakiin weer door y'i andi." idi.	laakiin weer door y'-i a-ndi i-di
"But I will come some other time." he said.	but other time come-FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say PERFSG3MPF-say
#49	
"Uusheek ayiiniyeek, Ali halaagaaytehook ibari, diyi!" idi.	uusheek a-yiini-yeek ali halaagaayt-ehook i-bari diy-i i-di
(He said) "If Oosheek comes, tell him I need him (LIT had need of him)." he said.	Oosheek come-IMPFSG3M-ADV+if Ali business-POSSG2 PERFSG3MPF-have say-IMPVF PERFSG3MPF-say
#50	
A: Ahaa! Sidkiibu.	ahaa sidkiib-u
A: Oh! He is right.	oh true-IDSG13M
#51	
Ani abaadhin.	ani a-baadhin
I forgot.	SG1 PERFSG1PF-forget
#52	
Amsi wajaab gwad iibiri!	amsi wajaab gwad ii-biri
I had an appointment with (him) today.	today appointment with PASTSG1PF-have

<422>

۱ (قال دؤر، تڭ اراوييۆه هلاقايت ايبيرى). ۲ (ؤاراوييۆه قويده نيه. ۆ باب ائاه). ۳ ابؤ، ۆ باب ائئا؟ ۴ ان، اليب. ۵ يا مرهّب، يا مرهبه. ۶ تئانينه! ۷ تئسينينه! ۸ سؤور نيه! ۹ شوما! ۱۰ دايبئ. ۱۱ ۆنؤۆمهين ساه! ۱۲ دايبئ. ۱۳ دبايوه؟ ۱۴ دباي. ۱۵ بئوك كك تهيير. ۱۶ انر دايبئ. ليايوه؟ ۱۷ قورهاب كايز. ۱۸ بئوك كك تهيير؟

۱۹ اُنے داییت اِہہ . ۲۰ نان فَوَاتَہ؟ ۲۱ شاہیب فَوَاتَہن. ہنہ جَبَنات؟ ۲۲ نات فَوَا کادے. ۲۳ دَوَل دَوْر بُون فَوَاتَب. ۲۴ اُوشنیک کبیہ؟ ۲۵ اُشنہوہ اُباي. ۲۶ نادوْر تِینے؟ ۲۷ نَبھوْب تِینے. ۲۸ ہالوْک؟ ۲۹ دِبلوْت ہَلَا فای ہوْی اُترے. ۳۰ ہَنْقِیتنیک، پِل اِندے. ۳۱ وَنْدآب، اُنے شوْای کاکے. ۳۲ اُشنِشَقْنے. ۳۳ لاکِین وِتر دَوْر پِل اِندے. ۳۴ اُوشنیک اُیْنینیک، ۳۵ اُلے اِہروھوْک! دیر! ۳۶ داییت، سوْیر اِندے. ۳۷ انا کَوَات، نِیباڈینے! ۳۸ کک تِیڈین! ۳۹ لآب اِپمے! ۴۰ اِسِقاب! ۴۱ کَوڈے نَہایہ! ۴۲ داییت، کَوڈے اُباي کادے! ۴۳ اُشِکِی! ۴۴ اُلے اِہروھوْک. ۴۵ وَنْمَہِنان تِیايت، اِہرو اِنوھوْک. ۴۶ ہَقْتہ! پِل اِندے 'اَدینیک، ۴۷ ' شوْای کاک، اُشنِشَقْنے. ۴۸ لاکِین وِتر دَوْر پِل اِندے. ' اِدے. ۴۹ ' اُوشنیک اُیْنینیک، اُلے ہَلَا فایھوْک اِتر، دیر! ' اِدے. ۵۰ ' اُھا! سِدکِیْب. ۵۱ اُنے اُباڈن. ۵۲ اَمسے وَجَب فَوَد اِیرے!'

Repeated, Intensive Action

Repeated Action Weak and Strong Verb

Aweeb angiid.	I throw a stone.	اُوْب اَنْقِید.
Aweeb geedani.	I throw (REP) stones.	اُوْب قِیدَنے.
Oogwib andiir.	I kill the rat.	وَقُوْب اَنْدِیر.
Igwiba eedri.	I kill (REP) the rats.	اِقُوْبہ یَدِرے.
Mooz ashandhiidh.	I peel a banana.	مُوْز اَشَنْدِیڈ.
Mooz shadhiidhani.	I peel (REP) bananas.	مُوْز شَدْیڈَنے.
Aweeb gida andi.	I want to throw a stone.	اُوْب قِیدہ اِندے.
Aweeb geeda andi.	I want to throw (REP) stones.	اُوْب قِیدہ اِندے.
Gwib dira andi.	I want to kill the rat.	قُوْب درہ اِندے.
Gwibaab daara andi.	I want to kill (REP) the rats.	قُوْباب دارہ اِندے.
Mooz shidhidha andi.	I want to peel a banana.	مُوْز شِڈِڈہ اِندے.
Mooz shadhiidha andi.	I want to peel (REP) bananas.	مُوْز شَدْیڈہ اِندے.

Auxiliaries: 'to put, to take'

<423>

The verbs aha 'to take' and d'iya 'to put' are used as auxiliaries. Together with the verb diliba which has the general meaning 'to trade', these two auxiliaries convey the meanings 'to buy' (trade and take) and 'to sell' (trade and put).

Auxiliary: 'to take'

Past: 'to buy'

Adlib ayiha.	I bought.	اَدْلِب اَیْہہ.
Tidlib tiyhaya.	You (M) bought.	تِڈْلِب تِیْہہ.
Tidlib tiyhayi.	You (F) bought.	تِڈْلِب تِیْہے.
Idlib iyiha.	He bought.	اِدْلِب اِیْہہ.
Tidlib tiyiha.	She bought.	تِڈْلِب تِیْہہ.
Nidlib niyiha.	We bought.	نِڈْلِب نِیْہہ.
Tidlib tiyiheena.	You (PL) bought.	تِڈْلِب تِیْہینہ.
Idlibna iyiheena.	They bought.	اِدْلِبِنہ اِیْہین.

Past Perfect: 'to buy'

Dilba ahaabu.	I have bought.	دلبه اهابُ.
Dilba ahaatuwi.	You (F) have bought.	دلبه اهاؤتوے.
Dilba ahaabu.	He has bought.	دلبه اهابُ.
Dilba ahaatu.	She has bought.	دلبه اهاؤتُ.
Dilba ahaaba.	We have bought.	دلبه اهابہ.
Dilba ahaabaana.	You (PL M) have bought.	دلبه اهابانہ.
Dilba ahaaba.	They (M) have bought.	دلبه اهابہ.

Past Negative: 'to buy'

Dilba ahaab kaaki.	I (M) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کا کے.
Dilba ahaat kaaki.	I (F) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاات کا کے.
Dilba ahaab kittaa.	You (M) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کیتا.
Dilba ahaat kittayyi.	You (F) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاات کیتایے.
Dilba ahaab kiiki.	He didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کی کے.
Dilba ahaat kitti.	She didn't buy.	دلبه اهاات کیتے.
Dilba ahaab kinki.	We (M) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کین کے.
Dilba ahaab kitteena.	You (PL) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کیتینہ.
Dilba ahaab kiikeen.	They (M) didn't buy.	دلبه اهاب کیکین.

Present: 'to buy'

Dilbi aniin.	I buy.	دلبے این.
Dilbi tiniina.	You (M) buy.	دلبے تینہ.
Dilbi tiniini.	You (F) buy.	دلبے تینے.
Dilbi iniin.	He buys.	دلبے این.
Dilbi tiniin.	She buys.	دلبے تین.
Dilbi neeyay.	We buy.	دلبے نئی.
Dilbi teeyayna.	You (PL) buy.	دلبے تینہ.
Dilbi eeyayna.	They buy.	دلبے تینہ.

Present Negative: 'to buy'

Dilbi ka'ayiha / kaayiha.	I don't buy.	دلبے کا ایہہ / کا یہہ.
Dilbi kit'iyihaya / kitiyihaya.	You (M) don't buy.	دلبے کیتایہہ / کیتہہ.
Dilbi kit'iyihayi / kitiyihayi.	You (F) don't buy.	دلبے کیتایہے / کیتہے.
Dilbi ki'iyiha / kiiyiha.	He doesn't buy.	دلبے کا یہہ / کیہہ.
Dilbi kit'iyiha / kitiyiha.	She doesn't buy.	دلبے کیتایہہ / کیتہہ.
Dilbi kin'iyiha / kiniyiha.	We don't buy.	دلبے کیتایہہ / کیتہہ.

Dilbi kit'iyiheena / kitiyiheena.	You (PL) don't buy.	دلبرے کتایہینہ / کتہینہ.
Dilbi ki'iyiheen / kiiyiheen.	They don't buy.	دلبرے کایہین / کایہین.

Future: 'to buy'

Dilbi ayaay tindiya?	Will you (M) buy?	دلبرے آیا تندیہ؟
Dilbi ayaay tindiya?	Will you (F) buy?	دلبرے آیا تندیہ؟
Dilbi ayaay indi?	Will he buy?	دلبرے آیا اندے؟
Dilbi ayaay tindi?	Will she buy?	دلبرے آیا تندیہ؟
Dilbi niyaay neeyad?	Will we buy?	دلبرے نیای نیند؟
Dilbi ayaay teeyadna?	Will you (PL) buy?	دلبرے آیا تیندنہ؟
Dilbi ayaay eeyadna?	Will they buy?	دلبرے آیا تیندنہ؟

Future Negative: 'to buy'

Dilbi ayaay kaadi.	I won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کادے.
Dilbi ayaay kiddiya.	You (M) won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کڈیہ.
Dilbi ayaay kiddiya.	You (F) won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کڈیہ.
Dilbi ayaay kiidi.	He won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کیدے.
Dilbi ayaay kiddi.	She won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کڈے.
Dilbi niyaay kindi.	We won't buy.	دلبرے نیای کندنے.
Dilbi ayaay kiddiina.	You (PL) won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کڈینہ.
Dilbi ayaay kiidiin.	They won't buy.	دلبرے آیا کڈین.

Past: 'to buy'

Aat adlib ayiha.	I bought (some) milk.	آت ادلب ایہہ.
Aat tidlib tiyhaya.	You (M) bought (some) milk.	آت تدلب تیہہ.
Aat tidlib tiyhayi.	You (F) bought (some) milk.	آت تدلب تیہے.
Aat idlib iyiha.	He bought (some) milk.	آت ادلب ایہہ.
Aat tidlib tiyiha.	She bought (some) milk.	آت تدلب تیہہ.
Aat nidlib(ni) niyiha.	We bought (some) milk.	آت ندلب (نے) نیہہ.
Aat tidlib(ni) tiyiheena.	You (PL) bought (some) milk.	آت تدلب (نے) تیہینہ.
Aat idlib(ni) iyiheen.	They bought (some) milk.	آت ادلب (نے) ایہین.

Present: 'to buy'

Aat dilbi aniin.	I buy (some) milk.	آت دلبرے این.
Aat dilbi tiniina.	You (M) buy (some) milk.	آت دلبرے تینہ.
Aat dilbi tiniini.	You (F) buy (some) milk.	آت دلبرے تینے.
Aat dilbi iniin.	He buys (some) milk.	آت دلبرے این.
Aat dilbi tiniin.	She buys (some) milk.	آت دلبرے تین.

Aat dilbi neeyay.	We buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے نیئی.
Aat dilbi teeyayna.	You (PL) buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے تےئیہہ.
Aat dilbi eeyayna.	They buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے تےئیہہ.

Future: 'to buy'

Aat dilbi iyaay / ayaay andi.	I will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے ایای / آیای اُندے.
Aat dilbi iyaay / ayaay tindiya.	You (M) will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے ایای / آیای تندیہہ.
Aat dilbi iyaay / ayaay tindiya.	You (F) will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے ایای / آیای تندیہہ.
Aat dilbi iyaay / ayaay indi.	He will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے ایای / آیای اُندے.
Aat dilbi iyaay / ayaay tindi.	She will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے ایای / آیای تندیہہ.
Aat dilbi niyaay neeyad.	We will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے نیای نیئد.
Aat dilbi niyaay / ayaay teeyadna.	You (PL) will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے نیای / آیای تےئدنهہ.
Aat dilbi niyaay / ayaay eeyadna.	They will buy (some) milk.	آت دلبے نیای / آیای تےئدنهہ.

Auxiliary: 'to put'

Past: 'to sell'

Aat adlib ad'i.	I sold (some) milk.	آت ادلب ادّی.
Aat tidlib tid'iya.	You (M) sold (some) milk.	آت تدلب تدّیہہ.
Aat tidlib tid'iyi.	You (F) sold (some) milk.	آت تدلب تدّیہہ.
Aat idlib id'i.	He sold (some) milk.	آت ادلب ادّی.
Aat tidlib tid'i.	She sold (some) milk.	آت تدلب تدّیہہ.
Aat nidlib nid'i.	We sold (some) milk.	آت ندلب ندّیہہ.
Aat tidlib(ni) tid'iina.	You (PL) sold (some) milk.	آت تدلب (نر) تدّیہہہ.
Aat idlib(ni) id'iin.	They sold (some) milk.	آت ادلب (نر) ادّیہہہ.

Present: 'to sell'

Aat dilbi adan'i.	I sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے ادّنا.
Aat dilbi dan'iya.	You (M) sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے دنّیہہ.
Aat dilbi dan'iyi.	You (F) sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے دنّیہہ.
Aat dilbi dan'i.	He sells (some) milk.	آت دلبے دنّنا.
Aat dilbi dan'i.	She sells (some) milk.	آت دلبے دنّیہہ.
Aat dilbi nid'i.	We sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے ندّیہہ.
Aat dilbi tid'ina.	You (PL) sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے تدّیہہہ.
Aat dilbi id'iin.	They sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے ادّیہہہ.

Future: 'to sell'

Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a andi.	I want to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبے ادّاہ / ایدّاہ اُندے.
------------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------

Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a tindiya.	You (M) want to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه تءءءه .
Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a tindiya.	You (F) want to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه تءءءه .
Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a indi.	He wants to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه اىءءه .
Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a tindi.	She wants to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه تءءه .
Aat dilbi niid'a neeyad.	We want to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي نءءأه نءءءه .
Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a teeyadna.	You (PL) want to / will, want to sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه تءءءنه .
Aat dilbi ad'a / iid'a eeyadna.	They want to / will sell (some) milk.	آت دلبي اءأه / اءأه تءءءنه .

Conversation 18 'Selling a Camel' (Examples of Verb Pairs)

<424>

A: wife, B: husband

#1	
(Takwa takatuuhwa kaami mhallagaayeeb imooth'ath'ana.)	tak-wa takat-uuh-wa kaam-i mhallagaa-yeeb i-mooth'ath'-ana
(A man and his wife are arguing about the money for a camel.)	man-and woman-POSSG3-and camel-CASGEN money-ADV+at PERFPL3PF-quarrel-PERFPL3
#2	
A: Baruuk iru ukaamook tidliba.	baruuk iru u-kaam-ook ti-dlib-a
A: Yesterday you (M) sold your came (M)l.	SG2M yesterday ARTSGM-camel-POSSG2 PERFSG2MPF-trade-PERFSG2M
#3	
Imhallagaayeeb kak tiweera?	i-mhallagaa-yeek kak ti-weer-a
How did you (M) do (spend) your money?	ARTPLM-money-POSSG2 how PERFSG2MPF-do-PERFSG2M
#4	
Imhallagaayeeb aab tihiya?	i-mhallagaa-yeek aab ti-hi-ya
Whom did you (M) give your money?	ARTPLM-money-POSSG2 whoOBJM PERFSG2MPF-give-PERFSG2M
#5	
B: Imhallagaayii tak hiyaab kaaki.	i-mhallagaa-yii tak hiyaab kaa-ki
B: I didn't give (M) my money to anyone.	ARTPLM-money-ADV+off man give-PTCPPAST NEGIMPFG1PF-be
#6	
Aan ikatiin.	aan i-kati-in
Here it is (LIT they are).	NEARPLMSUBJ IMPFPL3PF-be-IMPFPL3

#7	
A: Gaaliib hiyaheeb!	gaal-iib hi-ya-heeb
A: Give me some!	one-CASGEN give-IMPVM-OBJSG1
#8	
B: Naanhooy aniiwhook?	naanhooy a-niiw-hook
B: Why do I give it to you?	why IMPFSG1PF-give-OBJSG2
#9	
A: Halak dilbi ayaay andi.	halak dilbi ayaay a-ndi
A: I will buy a dress (toga).	cloth buying take.FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#10	
B: Dawil door halak dilbi ahaat kittaayi?	dawil door halak dilbi ah-aat kit-ta-ayi
B: A short time ago, did you not buy a dress?	closeness time cloth trading take-PTCPAST NEGIMPFG2FPF-be-NEGIMPFG2F
#11	
A: Laakiin uunbaruuh ishtat iyiha.	laakiin uun-baruuh i-shtat i-yiha
A: But it is torn.	but NEARSGMSUBJPF-SG3M PERFSG3MPF-tear PERFSG3MPF-take
#12	
Uun ikati, shibiba!	uun i-kati shibib-a
Here it is, look (M)!	NEARSGMSUBJ IMPFSG3MPF-be look-IMPVM
#13	
B: Batuuk naat takattuwi?	batuuk naat takatt-uwi
B: What kind of a woman are you (F)?	SG2F thing woman-IDSG2F
#14	
Tirig tirig halak dilbi tiniini?	tirig tirig halak dilbi ti-niin-i
Do you (F) buy a dress every month?	month month cloth trading IMPFSG2FPF-take- IMPFSG2F
#15	
Aneeb aab hiistiniheeb?	aneeb aab hiis-tinii-heeb
What do you (F) think of me? (Who do you (F) think I am?).	OBJSG1 whoOBJM think-IMPFSG2F-OBJSG1
#16	
A: Baalhaa, baalhaa! A'ush.	baa-lh-aa baa-lh-aa a-'ush
A: Don't be angry, don't be angry, I have given up (LIT I left it).	NEGIMPVMPF-be.ache-NEGIMPVM NEGIMPVMPF- be.ache-NEGIMPVM PERFSG1PF-leave
#17	

Shaawi araatihook kaadi.	shaawi araat-i-hook kaa-di
I won't ask (F) you again.	again ask-FUTSG-OBJSg2 NEGIMPFSg1PF-say
#18	
B: Laa laa laa! Bihasaayi!	laa laa laa bi-hasaa-yi
B: Oh no no no, don't be upset!	no no no NEGIMPVFPF-be.angry-NEGIMPVF
#19	
Halak dilbi tiniinhoob,	halak dilbi ti-niin-hoob
When you buy a dress,	cloth trading IMPFSg3FPF-take-ADV+when
#20	
tirig gaal haay kitihagiti?	tirig gaal haay kiti-hagit-i
doesn't it last (even) one month?	month one with NEGIMPFSg2FPF-wait-NEGIMPFSg2F
#21	
Ubasharook naan hooy tiha?	u-bashar-ook naan hooy t-iha
What is the matter with (in) your body?	ARTSGM-body-POSSg2 what at PERFSg3FPF-be
#22	
N'eet hooy tihay?	n'eet hooy ti-hay
Is there a fire (inside)?	fire at PERFSg3FPF-be
#23	
Kak halak gaal tirgiib ishtatit,	kak halak gaal tirg-iib i-shtat-it
How did the dress get torn in one month?	how cloth one month-ADV+at PERFSg3MPF-tear-CON+then
#24	
Dehay tirig ushit, masseet kaamlaat haay ihagitna,	dehay tirig ush-i-t masseet kaaml-aat haay i-hagit-na
Not just a month, a whole year people use	people month leave-IMPVF-CON+then year whole-PL with IMPFPL3PF-wait-IMPFPL3
#25	
gaal halak!	gaal halak
one dress!	one cloth

<425>

۱ (تَكُوهُ نَكْتُوهُوَه كَامِي مَهَلْقَانِيْب اِمُوْتَانَانَه .) ۲ بَرُوْكَ اِرْ اَكَامُوْكَ تَدَلِيَه . ۳ اِمَهَلْقَانِيْكَ كَلْكَ تَوِيْرَه؟ ۴ اِمَهَلْقَانِيْكَ اَب تَهِيَه؟ ۵ اِمَهَلْقَانِيْكَ تَكْ هِيَاب كَاكِي . ۶ اِن اِكْتِيْن . ۷ قَالِيْب هِيَهِيْب! ۸ نَانَهْوِيْ اَنِيُوْهَوُكْ؟ ۹ هَلْكَ دَلِيَه اَيَاي اُنْدِيَه . ۱۰ دَوَل دَوْر هَلْكَ دَلِيَه اَهَات كِيْتَايِي؟ ۱۱ لَاكِيْن اُوْنَبِرُوْه اِشْتَت اِيَهِيَه . ۱۲ اُوْن اِكْت. شِيْبِيَه! ۱۳ بَتُوْكَ نَات نَكْتُوْهِي؟ ۱۴ تِرِقْ تِرِقْ هَلْكَ دَلِيَه تِيْنِيَه؟ ۱۵ اُنِيْب اَب هِيَسْتِيْبِيَه؟ ۱۶ بَالِهَا، بَالِهَا! اَلْاُش. ۱۷ شَاوِيَه اَرَاتِيَهْوُكْ كَادِيَه . ۱۸ لَا لَا لَا! بَهْسَايِي! ۱۹ هَلْكَ دَلِيَه تِيْبِيَهْوُوب. ۲۰ تِرِقْ قَال هَاي كِيْبَهَقْتِيَه؟ ۲۱ اَبْشَرُوْكَ نَان هُوِي تَهِيَه؟ ۲۲ نِيْت هُوِي تَهِيَه؟ ۲۳ كَلْ هَلْكَ قَال تِرِقِيْب اِشْتِيْت. ۲۴ دَهِي تِرِقْ اُنِيْت. مَسْتِيْت كَامَلَات هَاي اِهَقْتِيْن. ۲۵ قَال هَلْكَ!

Nominalized Verbs

<426>

Verbs can be changed into nouns of action, such as 'To arrive' > 'Arrival'. The verbs of different patterns will produce different shapes of nouns. The table (below) gives an overview. Only the most productive patterns have been presented.

<427>

Note that (1) weak verbs all have the same pattern: The noun is masculine, and consists of the verb-stem plus -ti.

<428>

Note that (2) strong verbs have different patterns: Some strong verbs are changed to masculine nouns, others - especially derived verbs such as causative verbs etc. - are changed to feminine nouns.

Table 34: The Main Nominalization Patterns: Weak Verbs

		Examples:	Nominalization:	Pattern and Gender:
				(M)
yak-aa	> oo-yak-ti	start	> the starting	stem > oo-Stem-ti

Table 35: The Main Nominalization Patterns: Strong Verbs

		Examples:	Nominalization:	Pattern and Gender:
				(M)
kitim-a	> oo-ktuum	arrive	> the arrival	CiCiC > oo-CCuuC
bis-a	> oo-baas	bury	> the burial	CiC > oo-CaaC
				(F)
kan-a	> tu-kanaan	know	> the knowledge	CaC > tu-CaCaaC
sookin-a	> tu-sooknooy	inform	> the informing	other patterns

More Examples: Nominalized Verbs

Weak Verbs:		
(M)		
yakaa / uyakti	start / the starting	يَڪا / اُيَڪتِي
waawaa / uwaawti	weep / the weeping	واوا / اُوَاوتِي
Strong Verbs:		
(M)		
kitima / ooktuum	arrive / the arrival	ڪِئِمِه / اُوُڪتُووم
winina / oownuun	be angry / the anger	وِنِنِه / اُوُونُون
bitika / oobtuuk	divide / the dividing	بِيئِڪِه / اُوُبْتُوُڪ
dibila / oodbuul	collect (things) / the collecting of the things	دِيپِلِه / اُوُدْبُوول
dhigwiya / oodhgwuuy	count / the counting	دِيغُوِيَه / اُوُدْغُوِي
fitira / ooftuur	have breakfast / the breakfast	فِيئِرِه / اُوُفْتُور
(M)		

bisa / oobaas	hide / the hiding	بِسْه / وُبَاس
miga, maga / oomaag	be bad / the being bad	مِقْه, مَقْه / وُمَاق
hiya / oomyaaw	give / the giving	هِيَه / وُمَيَاو
aha / oomyaay	take / the taking	أَهْه / وُمَيَاي
sikwiya / ooskwuuy	follow, run after / the following, running after (I)	سِيكْوِيَه / وُسْكُوِي
(F)		
kana / tukanaan	know / the knowing, knowledge	كَنَه / تُكْنَان
gama / tugamaam	fail / the failing	قَمَه / تُقْمَام
faya / tufayaay	be / the being, the existence	فَيَه / تُفَيَاي
kaya / tukayaay, tukatooy	be / the being, the existence	كَيَه / تُكَيَاي, تُكْتُوِي
(F)		
atoomaana / tutoomnooy	shave / the being shaved	أَتُوْمَانَه / تُتُوْمْنُوِي
sookina / tusooknooy	inform, let know / the informing, letting know	سُوْكِيْنَه / تُسُوْكْنُوِي
sikwiya / tooskwuuy	follow (run after) / the following, running after (II)	سِيكْوِيَه / تُسْكُوِي
at'abaaka / tut'abkwooy	get caught / the being caught	أَتَابَاكَه / تُتَابَكْوُوِي
gwhara / toogwhar	steal / the stealing	قُوْهْرَه / تُقُوْهْر
fiyaka / tumifiyeek	load / the loading	فِيكَه / تُمِفِيِيَك

Greetings and Nominalized Verbs (Cognate objects)

<429>

The verb and the noun which is derived from the same verb are occasionally used together, especially in greetings such as the following.

Rayhamaat naay naayaana!	Sleep a peaceful sleep!	رَيَهْمَات نَاي نَايَانَه!
Rayhamaat tiina / aaymaam aayimna!	Spend peaceful days / a peaceful afternoon!	رَيَهْمَات تِيْنَه / آيْمَام آيْمَنَه!
Rayhamaat aymim aayimna!	Spend a peaceful day!	رَيَهْمَات أَيْمِم آيْمَنَه!
Rayhamaat hawid hawidna!	Spend a peaceful night!	رَيَهْمَات هَوْد هَوْدِنَه!

'Can' and Nominalized Verbs 1

Ani whireer adgirani.	I can walk.	أَنْي وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْنِي.
Baruuk whireer adgirtiniya.	You (M) can walk.	بَرُوْك وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْتِيْنِيَه.
Batuuk whireer adgirtinii.	You (F) can walk.	بَتُوْك وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْتِيْنِي.
Baruuh whireer adgiriini.	He can walk.	بَرُوْه وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرِيْنِيَه.
Batuuh whireer adgirtini.	She can walk.	بَتُوْه وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْتِيْنِيَه.
Hinin whireer adgirnay.	We can walk.	هِيْن وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْنِي.
Baraakna / bataakna whireer adgirteena.	You (M PL) / (F PL) can walk.	بَرَاكْنَه / بَتَاكْنَه وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْتِيْنِيَه.
Baraah / bataah whireer adgireen.	They (M) / (F) can walk.	بَرَاه / بَتَاه وُهْرِيْر أَدْقِرْتِيْن.

'Can' and Nominalized Verbs 2

Ani whireer adgiri kaadi.	I won't be able to walk.	أَنِي وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كَادِي.
Baruuk whireer adgiri kiddiya.	You (M) won't be able to walk.	بَرُوُكُ وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Batuuk whireer adgiri kiddiyi.	You (F) won't be able to walk.	بَتُوُكُ وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Baruuh whireer adgiri kiidi.	He won't be able to walk.	بَرُوُهِ وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Batuuh whireer adgiri kiddi.	She won't be able to walk.	بَتُوُهِ وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Hinin whireer adgiri kindi.	We won't be able to walk.	هِنِيْنِ وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Baraakna / bataakna whireer adgiri kiddiina.	You (M PL) / you (F PL) won't be able to walk.	بَرَاكْنَه / بَتَاكْنَه وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.
Baraah / bataah whireer adgiri kiidiin.	They (M) / they (F) won't be able to walk.	بَرَاه / بَتَاه وَهْرِيَرِ أَدْقِرِي كِيدِي.

Nominalization and Verb Patterns

Pattern: CiCiC > CCuuC (fitira > ooftuur)

<430>

In the examples here below, an epenthetic i may be inserted between the first two consonants. Thus, CCuuC may be pronounced as CiCuuC. But after a prefix, only CCuuC will be used.

Ooftuur haam'aa!	Bring the breakfast!	وُفْتُوْر هَامَا!
usuugi ktuum	the reaching of the market	أُسُوُغِي كِتُووم
urabayi dbuul	the collecting of luggage	أُرَابِيِي دَبُوول
Toownuun ka'adgiran.	I can't stand anger.	تُوُوْنُوْن كَاَدْقِرَان.
Ubaabi ngwuul daayiib tikteena.	You know well how to open the door (LIT the opening of the door).	أُبَابِيِي نَغْوُوول دَاَيِيِب تِكْتِيِنَه.

Pattern: CiC > CaaC (bisa > oobaas)

W-halaki baas tikteena?	Do you know how to hide the clothes (LIT the burying of cloth)?	و-هَلَكِي بَاس تِكْتِيِنَه؟
Oon'urabayi baas tikteena?	Do you know how to hide the things?	وْنُورَابِيِي بَاس تِكْتِيِنَه؟
Umaag yakiya.	The war (LIT bad thing) broke out.	أُوْمَاغ يَكِيِي.
Ti-hamooti maan tikteena?	Do you know how to shave hair?	تِي-هَمُوُوتِي مَان تِكْتِيِنَه؟
W-awaayi gaad whamashaayiida finaayi tarabu / harawaayu.	Throwing a stone at a blind person is seeking trouble (LIT half a war).	و-أُوَايِي غَاد وَهْمَشَايِيْدَه فِنَايِي تَرَابُ / هَرَاوَايِي.
Een'imhallaga kaseeh naan kwaasa tindiya?	What will you do, create with all this money?	بِنَاْمَهْلَقَه كَسِيَه نَان كُوَاسَه تِنْدِيَه؟
Umaag yakiinihoob, hinin dhabeen dehay kinki.	When the war (LIT bad thing) arises, we are not people who run away.	أُوْمَاغ يَكِيِيْنِيْهُووب، هِنِيْن دُهَيْن دَهِي كِنِكِي.
U-yiwaashi faaf ubaabiiyoon dabaay maagnaayti harawaayu.	Pouring of dirt in front of our elders, fathers is seeking trouble (LIT badness).	أ-يُوَاشِي فَاَف أُبَابِيِيُوُون دَبَاي مَاقْنَايِي هَرَاوَايِي.
W-araawiiyook faak daayiib kiiki.	Threatening, inciting your friend is not	و-أَرَاوِيِيُوُوك فَاك دَاَيِيِب كِيِكِي.

	good.	کچکے .
U-baabi kwaan hanyiis.	Knocking (at) the door is better.	أ- باہے کوال ھنپیس .
Ti-hamooteeyook laag hanyiis.	Combing your hair (s) is better.	تے-ھموتیووک لاق ھنپیس .
Tu-gimaamaati laaw daayiibu.	Burning rubbish is good.	ت-قماماتے لاو داپیٹ .
U-nifsiyook maar umtihaani dabaay hanyiis.	Preparation, preparing yourself before an exam is better.	أ- نَفْسِيوُوك مَار اُمْتِيهَانِي دَبَاي ھنپیس .
Oonaaw / uunaaw amaag naatu.	Avoiding (people) is a bad thing.	وَنَاو / اُونَاو اَمَاق نَاٹ .
W-adaayi saab akraa-naatu.	Skinning (off) your skin is a hard, strong thing.	و-اَدَايِي سَاب اَكْرَا-نَاٹ .
W-haafiiyook taab daayi na kitti.	Filling your belly is not a good thing.	و-ھَاْفِيِيوُوك تَاب دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي .

Pattern: CaC > CaCaaC (kana > kanaan)

Tudaayiinaaytiit gamaam daayii-na kitti.	Ignoring, denial of good deeds is not a good thing.	تُدَايِيِنَايِيْتِيْت قَمَام دَايِي-نِه كَيْتِي .
Udehayiit kanaan dim'araabu.	Knowing people is useful.	اُدَهَيِيْت كَنَان دِمَارَاب .
Yi-araawetook ramaam gwidaa-na anfatnihook.	Accompanying your friends will benefit you in many ways.	يِي-اَرَاوِيْتِيوُوك رَمَام قَوْدَا-نِه اَنفَاتْنِيوُوك .
Imhallagaayeetook shawawiyoooy (dibuul) daayiitu.	Gathering your money (that you keep your money together) is good.	اِمْهَلْفَايِيْتِيوُوك شَوَوِيوُوي (دَبُوْل) دَايِيْتِي .
Ishawawetook taraar daayi na kitti; aflaa ishawaweek baataara!	Avoiding of your neighbors is not good; So don't avoid your neighbors!	اِشَوَوِيْتِيوُوك تَرَار دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي; اَفْلَا اِشَوَوِيوُوك بَاتَارَا!
Ugawiib tufayaaytuuk y'amna areestini.	Your (M) presence (being) at home makes the guest happy.	اُغَوِيِب تُفَايَايْتِيوُوك يَامْنِه اَرِيْسْتِيْنِي .
Uulbaab daayi naatu.	Happiness is a good thing.	اُولْبَاب دَايِي نَاٹ .
Uufraay / ufiraay t'aliim anuu ka'anfiya.	Having children without education does not profit anyone.	اُوْفَرَاي / اُوْفَرَاي تَالِيْم اَنُو كَانْفِيَايِه .

Pattern: ...Ciy > ...Cooy (mhiya > mhiyooy)

Udehayiida tuushnhooy daayi na kitti.	The need of (dependence on) people is not a good thing.	اُدَهَيِيْدِه تُوشْنِهَوِي دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي .
Usuugiit gidehooy daayiitu.	Going down to the market is good.	اُسُوغِيْت قِدَهَوِي دَايِيْتِي .
Y'araweesook tumhiyooy daayi na kitti.	Staying, remaining away from your friends is not a good thing.	يَارَوِيْسُوُوك تُمْحِيوُوي دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي .

Other Patterns

Gwidat ugawiisook tumifir'oooy daayi na kitti.	To be absent too often (LIT frequency of absence) is not a good thing.	قَوْدَت اُوْغَوِيْسُوُوك تُمْفِرُوُوي دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي .
Ti-araawetook hamuuy daayi na kitti.	Blaming your friend is not a good thing.	تِي-اَرَاوِيْتِيوُوك ھَمُوِي دَايِي نِه كَيْتِي .
Maagnaaytiit weerooy	Doing bad things (LIT an act of badness)	مَاقْنَايِيْتِيْت وَيَرُوِي اَرَاو

araaw kitehihook.	doesn't give you a friend.	كيتيهوك .
Yi-araawheet shawawyooy daayi na kitti.	Inciting friends is not good.	يى-أراويت شَوَوِيوَي دايى نه كيتى .
Ugwharaayit naakbooy adaatnihook.	Running after the thief harms you.	أفُوْهرايْت ناكبوَي أداْتنيهوك .
Ushanhiib tu'amaraariyooy atookkina naatu.	Meeting at one's work is a common (known) thing.	أشْنهيب تُأْمَارايوَي أُتوْكْنه ناْتُ .
Whara baatiwaaya!	Don't deny that you have lied (LIT the lie).	وْهْره باْتوايه!
Tubaskaawi digwigwa, ootam sinhada.	Break the biscuits (LIT divide the biscuit), finish the meal.	تَيْسكاوَي دِفُوْفُوْه، وَ تَم فايسه / سينهده .
Usuugi miibi ka'adgiran. Usuugiib ba'aayiima!	I can't stand leaving, going to the market. Don't stay long (spend the afternoon) at the market.	أُسُوْقَي ميبى كَادِقْرَن. أُسُوْقَيْب بَايْمه!
Whibti amaagu.	Falling is bad.	وْهْبْتى أْمَاقُ .

Conversation 19 'Visiting an Official' (Examples of Nominalization)

<431>

H: host, V: visitor

#1	
H: Oon'umhiinaan w'aayookna daayi hinin winneet afirhaaba.	oon-'u-mhiinaan w-'aay-ookna daayi hinin winneet afirh-aab-a
H: We are very happy about your coming here.	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-place ARTSGM-arrival-POSSPL2 good PL1 very rejoice-PTCPPAST-IDPL13M
#2	
V: Hininhan oon'umhiinaani	hinin-han oon-'u-mhiinaan-i
V: We also (for us to come) here	PL1-also NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-place-CASGEN
#3	
bareeyookna rhiitiida winneet afirhaaba.	bareeyookna rhiiti-i-da winneet afirh-aab-a
in order to see you, we are very happy.	CASEGENPL2M seeing-CASGEN-ADVGEN+for very rejoice-PTCPPAST-IDPL13M
#4	
H: Barook oosmook aab eeyadna?	barook oo-sm-ook aab ZERO-eeyad-na
H: What is your name?	SG2MOBJ ARTSGMOBJ-name-POSSG2 whoOBJM IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3
#5	
V: Aneeb Ali eeyadnaheeb.	aneeb Ali ZERO-eeyad-na-heeb
V: They call me Ali.	SG1 Ali IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3-OBJSG1

#6	
H: Uunbatuuh naat ayaayhook tibri?	uun-batuuh naat ayaay-hook ti-bari
H: What relationship do you have to her?	NEARSGFSUBJPF-SG3F thing relationship-POSSSG2 PERFSG3FPF-have
#7	
V: Uunbatuuh takattootu.	uun-batuuh takatt-oot-u
V: She is my wife.	NEARSGFSUBJPF-SG3F woman-POSSSG1-IDSG13F
#8	
H: Oosmooh aab eeyadna?	oo-sm-oooh aab eeyad-na
H: What is she called (LIT her or his name, what do they say?) ?	ARTSGMOBJ-name-POSSSG3 whoOBJM ZERO-IMPFP3PF-say-IMPFP3-OBJS1
#9	
V: Oosmooh Zaynab eeyadna.	oo-sm-oooh Zaynab ZERO-eeyad-na
V: Her name is Zaynab.	ARTSGMOBJ-name-POSSSG3 Zaynab IMPFP3PF-say-IMPFP3-OBJS1
#10	
H: Baruuk naa takwa? / Baraakna naan daayaana?	baruuk naa tak-wa baraakna naan daa-yaana
H: What kind of person are you (M) (LIT you (M) what man are you (M)?) / What is your (PI) nationality? (LIT you (PL) what people are you?)	SG2M what man-IDSG2M PL2M what man-IDPL13M
#11	
V: Hinin Iritriiba.	hinin iritriib-a
V: We are Eritreans.	PL1 Eritrean-IDPL13M
#12	
H: Naan daateena?	naan daa-teena
H: What do you (PL) do?	what do-IMPFP2
#13	
V: Hinin mhallaan Ut'aliimiit Wazaraatiib shagaamnay.	hinin mhall-aan u-t'aliim-iit wazaraat-iib shagaam-nay
V: We both (of us) work in the Ministry of Education.	PL1 both-POSSPL1 ARTSGM-education-CASGEN ministry-ADV+at work-IMPFP1
#14	
H: Ut'aliimiit Wazaraatiib naan daateena?	u-t'aliim-iit wazaraat-iib naan daa-teena
H: What do you do (LIT work) in the Ministry of Education?	ARTSGM-education-CASGEN ministry-ADV+at what do-IMPFP2
#15	
V: Kitab nikatib. Oodehay iktabeet kitaaba	kitab ni-katib oo-dehay i-ktab-eet

allamnay.	kitaaba allam-nay
V: We write books. We teach people the writing of books.	book IMPFPL1PF-write ARTSGMOBJ-people ARTPLM-book-CASGEN writing teach-IMPFPL1
#16	
H: Naakaat tiina Soodaaneeb tibiina?	naakaat tiin-a soodaan-eeb ti-bari-ina
H: How many days have you been in Sudan?	how.many sun-PL Sudan-ADV+at PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#17	
V: Asaramaat tiinaa nibari.	asaramaat tiin-aa ni-bari
V: We had seven days.	seven sun-PL PERFPL1PF-have
#18	
H: Suuri dabaab Soodaan rhaabaana?	suuri dabaab soodaan rh-aab-aana
H: Did you see the Sudan before?	earlier additionally Sudan see-PTCPPAST-IDPL2M
#19	
V: Laa laa laa, kinki.	laa laa laa kin-ki
V: No no no, we haven't.	no no no NEGIMPFPL1PF-be
#20	
H: Aflaa, Kassalaab baakaay,	aflaa kassalaa-b baa-ka-ay
H: So then, apart from Kasala	so.then Kasala-OBJ NEGPTCPPF-be-NEGPTCPM
#21	
mhiinaan weer rhitaana?	mhiinaan weer rhi-taana
have you seen any other place?	place other see-PERFPL2
#22	
V: Suuri dabaab, Kassalaab baakaay,	suuri dabaab kassalaab baa-ka-ay
V: Before, apart from Kasala,	ahead additionally Kasala-OBJ NEGPTCPPF-be-NEGPTCPM
#23	
mhiinaan weer rhaab kinki.	mhiinaan weer rh-aab kin-ki
we haven't seen any other place.	place other see-PTCPPAST NEGIMPFPL1PF-be
#24	
Laakiin Bar'uuti miibi s'ayaamnay.	laakiin bar'uut-i miibi s'ayaam-nay
But we expect to go to Port Sudan.	but Port.Sudan-CASGEN going expect-IMPFPL1
#25	

H: Naanaatii Bar'uut baya teeyadna?	naanaat-ii bar'uut bay-a t-ee-yad-na
H: Why do you want to go to Port Sudan?	what.thing-ADV+off Port.Sudan go-FUTSG IMPFPL2PF-say-IMPFPL2
#26	
V: Oobhar rha neeyad,	oo-bhar rh-a n-ee-yad
V: We want to see the Sea,	ARTSGMOBJ-sea see-FUTSG IMPFPL1PF-say
#27	
tubdhaawiyeeti dehay gaabalaat,	tu-bdhaawiyeet-i dehay gaabal-aat
meet (LIT visit) the Beja people;	ARTSGF-Beja-CASGEN people visit-PTCPAST
#28	
Bidhaawiyeeti hadiidsama neeyad;	bidhaawiyeet-i hadiidsam-a n-ee-yad
We want to talk Beja;	Beja-CASGEN let.talk-FUTSG IMPFPL1PF-say
#29	
oosookehan rha neeyad.	oosook-ehan rh-a n-ee-yad
we want to see Suakin as well.	Suakin-also see-FUTSG IMPFPL1PF-say
#30	
H: Daayiitu.	daayiit-u
H: OK (LIT It (F) is good).	good-IDSG13F

<432>

۱ ون مھینان وُأبوکنه دایے هینن وئیت افرهابه. ۲ هیننھن ون مھینانے ۳ برئیوکنه رهئیده وئیت افرهابه. ۴ برؤك وسموك آب تیدنه؟ ۵ ائیب اُلے تیدنھیب. ۶ اونبئوہ نات اباہیوؤك تیرے؟ ۷ اونبئوہ تکتوؤت. ۸ وسموہ آب تیدنه؟ ۹ وسموہ زینب تیدنه. ۱۰ برؤك نا تکوہ؟ / براکنه نان دایانہ؟ ۱۱ هینن اِرتیبه. ۱۲ نان داتینہ؟ ۱۳ هینن مھلان اُتالیمیت وُزرائیب شقامتی. ۱۴ اُتالیمیت وُزرائیب نان داتینہ؟ ۱۵ کتب نکتیب. و دھی اِکتیبیت کتباہ اَلْمَی. ۱۶ ناکات تینہ سوڈانیب تیرینہ؟ ۱۷ اَسرَمات تینا تیرے. ۱۸ شورے دَبب سوڈان رھابانہ؟ ۱۹ لا لا لا، کینکے. ۲۰ افلا، کسلااب باکای. ۲۱ مھینان ویر رھانہ؟ ۲۲ شورے دَبب، کسلااب باکای. ۲۳ مھینان ویر رھاب کینکے. ۲۴ لاکین بڑوتے میسے ساییامنی. ۲۵ ناناتی بڑوت تیه تیدنه؟ ۲۶ وُبهر رھه نیند؛ ۲۷ تَبْدَاوِیتے دھی قابلات، ۲۸ بَدَاوِیتے هَدِيدَسَمه نیند؛ ۲۹ وُسوُکھن رھه نیند. ۳۰ داپیٹ.

Mood and Illocutionary Force

<433>

The mood or the illocutionary force gives a clause or a talk its particular purpose. It makes a clause a statement, a question, a wish, a command, etc.

Mood

<434>

The modalities or moods and the illocutionary force stand for varying degrees of permission, obligation, willingness etc. In English these are mainly expressed by auxiliaries ('should, may, might, will, would' etc.).

Imperatives and Jussives

<435>

To request that something should be done, the imperative is used for the second person, as in '(You) do it!', and the jussive for the first or third person, as in 'Let us, let them do it'. Here below are requests addressed to the second person:

Imperative: Positive, Negative

Diyaheeb!	Tell (M) me!	دِيَهَيِّب!
Diyiheeb!	Tell (F) me!	دِيَهَيِّب!
Diinaheeb / diyinaheeb!	Tell (PL) me!	دِيَهَيِّب / دِيَهَيِّب!
Baadiyaheeb!	Don't (M) tell me!	بَادِيَهَيِّب!
Biidiyiheeb!	Don't (F) tell me!	بِيَدِيَهَيِّب!
Baadiinaheeb!	Don't (PL) tell me!	بَادِيَهَيِّب!

Imperative with Please

<436>

To soften the command, in the Atman dialect the word hindeeh 'please', can be used before the verb, but it requires that the verb takes the suffix -n, which also may be translated as 'please'. (The form hindeeh 'please' is not used in other dialects, but the -n is.)

Hindeeh tamaan!	Please eat (M)!	هِنْدِيَه تَمَان!
Hindeeh tamiin!	Please eat (F)!	هِنْدِيَه تَمِيْن!
Hindeeh tamaanan!	Please eat (PL)!	هِنْدِيَه تَمَانَن!

Jussive

<437>

The first and third person uses the suffix –at or -atay to express the jussive. The same suffix can also be used in the second person, but it is more common to use the imperative instead.

Table 36: Imperative, Jussive Paradigm 1

Araatatay, araatat!	Let me ask!	أَرَاتَتِي / (أَرَاتت)!
Araataa! / Naan araatata?	Ask (M)! / What would you (M) like to ask?	أَرَاتَا! / نان أَرَاتتَه?
Araatii! / Naan araatati?	Ask (F)! / What would you (F) like to ask?	أَرَاتِي! / نان أَرَاتتِ?
Ba'araatiiyay / (ba'araatii)!	Let him ask!	بَأَرَاتِيِي / (بَأَرَاتِي)!
Ba'araatiiyay / (ba'araatii)!	Let her ask!	بَأَرَاتِيِي / (بَأَرَاتِي)!
Araatniyyay / (araatnii)!	Let us ask!	أَرَاتِنِيِي / (أَرَاتِنِي)!
Araataana! / Naan araatatna?	Ask (PL)! / What would you (PL) like to ask?	أَرَاتَانَه! / نان أَرَاتتَنَه?
Ba'araatiinay / (ba'araatiin)!	Let them ask!	بَأَرَاتِيِي / (بَأَرَاتِيِن)!

Table 37: Imperative, Jussive Paradigm 2

Gw'atay, gw'ata!	Let me drink!	قَوَاتِي / قَوَاتَه!
Gw'ataa!	Drink (M)!	قَوَاتَا!
Naan gw'ata?	What would you (M) like to drink?	نان قَوَاتَه?
Gw'atii!	Drink (F)!	قَوَاتِي!
Naan gw'ati?	What would you (F) like to drink?	نان قَوَاتِ?

Bagw'iyay!	Let him drink!	بَقْوِإِي!
Bagw'atiyay!	Let her drink!	بَقْوَاتِي!
Gw'aniiyay!	Let us drink!	قَوَانِي!
Gw'aana!	Drink (PL)!	قَوَانَه!
Naan gw'atna?	What would you (PL) like to drink?	نان قَوَانَه؟
Bagw'iinay!	Let them drink!	بَقْوِإِي!

Jussive: first Person

Jussive: 'let me', Weak Verbs

With Adverb:		
Awwal fiinatay!	Let me rest first!	أَوَّلُ فَيْتِي!
Awwal gw'atay!	Let me drink first!	أَوَّلُ قَوَاتِي!
With Object:		
Ootam tamatay!	Let me eat the porridge!	وَتَمَّ تَمَّتِي!
Ushanhu faayisatay!	Let me finish my work!	أَشْنُهُ فَايْسَتِي!
Naat rhiseetookay!	Let me show you (M) something!	نات رهسيتووكي!
Naat sooyeetookay!	Let me tell, inform you (M) (about) something!	نات سوويتووكي!
Gaana araateetookay!	Let me ask you (SG) one thing!	قانه أراتيتووكي!
Gaana araateetooknaay!	Let me ask you (PL) one thing!	قانه أراتيتووكناي!

Jussive: 'let me', Strong Verbs

Hindeeh difatay!	Let me leave, please!	هِنْدِيَه دِفَتِي!
Hindeeh ahatay!	Let me take (sth.), please!	هِنْدِيَه أَهَتِي!
Waraga harwatay!	Let me look for some paper, please!	وَرَقَه هَرَوَاتِي!
Waraga miryatay!	Let me find some paper, please!	وَرَقَه مِرْيَتِي!
Ujawaab kitbatay!	Let me write the letter!	أَجْوَاب كِتْبَتِي!
Ujawaab shibbatay!	Let me see the letter!	أَجْوَاب شِبْبَتِي!
Oond'aab hiyatookay!	Now let me give (it to) you (M)!	وَنَدَاب هِيَتووكي!
Oond'aab awaytookay!	Now let me help you (M)!	وَنَدَاب أُوَيْتووكي!
Hindeeh hagittookay!	Please let me await you (M)!	هِنْدِيَه هَقَّتووكي!
Hindeeh sinitookay!	Please let me await you (M)!	هِنْدِيَه سِيَتووكي!
Hindeeh hagittooknaay!	Please let me await you (PL)!	هِنْدِيَه هَقَّتووكناي!
Hindeeh sinitooknaay!	Please let me await you (PL)!	هِنْدِيَه سِيَتووكناي!

Jussive: 'let us', Weak Verbs

With Adverb:

Awwal fiinniiyay!	Let us rest first!	أَوَّلُ فِينِّي!
Awwal tamniiyay!	Let us eat first!	أَوَّلُ تَمْنِي!
Awwal gw'aniiyay!	Let us drink first!	أَوَّلُ قَوَانِي!
With Object:		
Ushanhoon faayisniiyay!	Let us finish our work!	أَشْنَهَوْنُ فَايسِنِّي!
Naat rhiseetook eenayay!	Let us show you (M) something!	نَات رِهْسِيَتُوْكَ نِي!
Gaana sooyeetook eenayay!	Let us tell, inform you (M) (about) one thing!	قَانِه سُوِيَتُوْكَ نِي!
Gaana araateetook eenayay!	Let us ask you one thing!	قَانِه اَرَاتِيَتُوْكَ نِي!

Jussive: 'let us', Strong Verbs

With 'please':		
Hindeeh niidifay!	Please let us go, leave!	هِنْدِيَه نِيْدِفِي!
Hindeeh ahat eenayay / niiyaayay!	Please let us have / take it!	هِنْدِيَه اَهْت نِيِّي / نِيْيَاي!
Hindeeh nihiriway!	Please let us look for it!	هِنْدِيَه نِيْرُوِي!
Hindeeh nimaaray!	Please let us find it!	هِنْدِيَه نِمَارِي!
With Object:		
Jawaab niktibay!	Let us write a letter!	جَوَاب نِكْتِي!
Hindeeh niit'iwhookay!	Let us help you!	هِنْدِيَه نِيْتَاوْهُوْكَي!
Hindeeh hagittook eenayay!	Let us wait for you!	هِنْدِيَه هَقْتُوْكَ نِيِّي!
Hindeeh sinitook eenayay!	Let us wait, stay for you!	هِنْدِيَه سِنْتُوْكَ نِيِّي!

Jussive: second Person

<438>

The forms in -at have been called future or jussive, but these do not really capture the sense of these forms. The general term subordinate seems to be more adequate. This is obvious from the use of these forms in questions such as gw'ata 'would you like to drink?'

Jussive: 'would you', Weak Verbs

Naan gw'ata?	What would you (M) like to drink?	نَان قُوَاتَه؟
Naan tamata?	What would you (M) like to eat?	نَان تَمْتَه؟

Jussive: 'would you', Strong Verbs

Naan miriyata?	What would you (M) like to find?	نَان مِرِيَتَه؟
Naan hiyata?	What would you (M) like to give?	نَان هِيَتَه؟
Naat kitmata?	Where do you like to get to (reach)?	نَات كِيْتَمْتَه؟

Jussive: third Person

Jussive: 'let him', Weak Verbs

Without Object:		
-----------------	--	--

Hindeeh, awwal bafiiniiyay!	Please let him rest first!	هِنْدِيَه, اَوَّل بَقِيئِي!
Awwal batamiiyay!	Let him eat first!	اَوَّل بَقْمِي!
Awwal bagw'iyyay!	Let him drink first!	اَوَّل بَقْوَانِي!
With Object:		
Ushanhooh bafaayisiyyay!	Let him finish his work!	اَشْنَهْوَه بَقَايِسِي!
Naat barhisihookay!	Let him show you (M) something!	نَات بَرَهْسِيهَوَكِي!
Gaana basooyihookay!	Let him tell, inform you (M) one thing!	قَانَه بَسُوِيهَوَكِي!
Gaana ba'araatiihookay!	Let him ask you (M) one thing!	قَانَه بَارَاتِيهَوَكِي!

Jussive: 'let him', Strong Verbs

With 'please':		
Hindeeh ba'idifay!	Please let him go, leave!	هِنْدِيَه بَادِفِي!
Hindeeh ba'yaayay!	Let him have, take it!	هِنْدِيَه يَأَيِي!
Hindeeh ba'ihiriway!	Let him look for it!	هِنْدِيَه يَأَهْرُوِي!
Hindeeh ba'imiray!	Let him find it!	هِنْدِيَه يَأَمْرِي!
With Object:		
Jawaab ba'iiktibay!	Let him write a letter!	جَوَاب يَأِكْتِي!
Hindeeh ba'iit'iwhokey!	Please let him help you!	هِنْدِيَه يَأْتَاوَهَوَكِي!
Hindeeh ba'ihigitehookay!	Let him wait for you!	هِنْدِيَه يَأَهْقْتِهَوَكِي!
Hindeeh ba'isaanhookay!	Let him wait, stay for you!	هِنْدِيَه يَأَسَانَهَوَكِي!

Jussive: 'let them', Weak Verbs

Ba'araatiin (ba'araatiinay)!	Let them ask, may they ask!	بَارَاتِيْن (بَارَاتِيْنِي)!
Batamiin (batamiinay)!	Let them eat, may they eat!	بَقْمِيْن (بَقْمِيْنِي)!
Bagw'iin (bagw'iinay)!	Let them drink, may they drink!	بَقْوَانِيْن (بَقْوَانِيْنِي)!

<439>

Here follow the forms of the jussive with full paradigms. (For second persons it is more common to use the imperative.) Additional paradigms are given further below. It should be noted that with strong verbs, the form which gives the first person is derived from the stem no. 1, and the others are derived from stem no. 5.

Table 38: Imperative, Jussive Paradigm 3

Gw'at (gw'atay)!	Let me drink!	قُوَات (قُوَاتِي)!
Gw'aa! / Naan gw'ata?	Drink (M)! / What would you (M) like to drink?	قُوَا! / نَان قُوَاتَه?
Gw'ii! / Naan gw'ati?	Drink (F)! / What would you (F) like to drink?	قُوَاي! / نَان قُوَاتَرَه?
Bagw'iyyay!	Let him drink!	بَقْوَانِي!
Bagw'atiyyay!	Let her drink!	بَقْوَانِي!
Gw'aniiyyay!	Let us drink!	قُوَانِيْنِي!
Gw'aana! / Naan gw'atna?	Eat (PL)! / What would you (PL) like to drink?	قُوَاتَه! / نَان قُوَاتَنَه?

Bagw'iinay!	Let them drink!	بَقُولِينِي!
-------------	-----------------	--------------

Weak Verbs

Ba'araatiin(ay)!	Let them ask, may they ask!	بَأْرَاتِين (أَي)!
Batamiin(ay)!	Let them eat, may they eat!	بَتَمِين (أَي)!
Bagw'iin(ay)!	Let them drink, may they drink!	بَقُولِين (أَي)!

Strong Verbs

Diyat(ay)!	Let me say (sth.)!	دَيَات (أَي)!
Ba'iyaad(ay)!	Let him say (sth.)!	بَايَاد (أَي)!
Batiyaad(ay)!	Let her say (sth.)!	بَاتِيَاد (أَي)!
Niyaad(ay)!	Let us say (sth.)!	نِيَاد (أَي)!
Ba'iyaadna(ay)!	Let them say (sth.)!	بَايَادَنه (أَي)!
D'iyat(ay)!	Let me do (sth.)!	دَايَات (أَي)!
Ba'id'ay(ay)!	Let him do (sth.)!	بَايَادْأَي (أَي)!
Nid'ay(ay)!	Let us do (sth.)!	نِيَادْأَي (أَي)!
Ba'id'ana(ay)!	Let them do (sth.)!	بَايَادَانَه (أَي)!
Ribat(ay)!	Let me refuse (sth.)!	رَبَات (أَي)!
Ba'iirib(ay)!	Let him refuse (sth.)!	بَايِيرِب (أَي)!
Niirib(ay)!	Let us refuse (sth.)!	نِيِيرِب (أَي)!
Ba'iiribna(ay)!	Let them refuse (sth.)!	بَايِيرِبَنه (أَي)!
Shibbat(ay)!	Let me look (at sth.)!	شَبَّات (أَي)!
Ba'iishbib(ay)!	Let him look (at sth.)!	بَايِشْبِيب (أَي)!
Niishbib(ay)!	Let us look (at sth.)!	نِيِشْبِيب (أَي)!
Ba'iishbibna(ay)!	Let them look (at sth.)!	بَايِشْبِيبَنه (أَي)!
Miriyat(ay)!	Let me find (sth.)!	مِرِيَات (أَي)!
Ba'imaar(ay)!	Let him find (sth.)!	بَايِمَار (أَي)!
Nimaar(ay)!	Let us find (sth.)!	نِمَار (أَي)!
Ba'imaarna(ay)!	Let them find (sth.)!	بَايِمَارَنه (أَي)!
Hariwat(ay)!	Let me look for (sth.)!	هَرِيَوَات (أَي)!
Ba'ihiriw(ay)!	Let him look for (sth.)!	بَايِهَرِيَو (أَي)!
Nihiriw(ay)!	Let us look for (sth.)!	نِهَرِيَو (أَي)!

Ba'ihiriwna(ay)!	Let them look for (sth.)!	پَاهِرُونَه (أَي)!
Nawat(ay)!	Let me fail (sth.)!	نَوْتُ (أَي)!
Ba'itnaw(ay) / ba'iinaw(ay)!	Let him fail (sth.)!	بَايْتَو (أَي) / بَايْتَو (أَي)!
Niitnaw(ay) / niiwaw(ay)!	Let us fail (sth.)!	نَيْتَو (أَي) / نَيْتَو (أَي)!
Ba'itnawna(ay) / ba'iinawa(ay)!	Let them fail (sth.)!	بَايْتُونَه (أَي) / بَايْتُونَه (أَي)!
Bayat(ay)!	Let me go (there)!	بَيْت (أَي)!
Ba'iibaay(ay)!	Let him go (there)!	بَايْبَاي (أَي)!
Niibaay(ay)!	Let us go (there)!	نَيْبَاي (أَي)!
Ba'iibaayna(ay)!	Let them go (there)!	بَايْبَايْنَه (أَي)!
Fiyakat(ay)!	Let me carry (sth.)!	فَيْكَت (أَي)!
Ba'itfiyak(ay)!	Let him carry (sth.)!	بَايْتْفَيْك (أَي)!
Nitfiyak(ay)!	Let us carry (sth.)!	نَيْتْفَيْك (أَي)!
Ba'itfiyakna(ay)!	Let them carry (sth.)!	بَايْتْفَيْكْنَه (أَي)!
Fir'at(ay)!	Let me get (sth.)out!	فِرَات (أَي)!
Ba'itfir'ay(ay)!	Let him get (sth.)out!	بَايْتْفِرَائِي (أَي)!
Nitfir'a (nitfir'ayay)!	Let us get (sth.)out!	نَيْتْفِرَاهُ (نَيْتْفِرَائِي)!
Ba'itfir'ayna (ay)!	Let them get (sth.)out!	بَايْتْفِرَائِيْنَه (أَي)!
More Examples:		
Baadiif(ay)!	Let me not go away!	بَادِيْف (أَي)!
Oosuug niibaay!	Let us go to the market!	وَشُوْق نَيْبَاي!

Table 39: 'want to' Paradigm

Ani yam dehookna ha'aat karan.	I don't want to bring (for) you (PL) water.	أَنْعِي يَم دَهْوَكْنَه هَات كَرَنْ.
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'aat kareetaa?	Why don't you (M) want to bring us water?	نَانَهْوَي يَم دَهْوَنْ هَات كَرَيْتَا؟
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'aat kareetaayi?	Why don't you (F) want to bring us water?	نَانَهْوَي يَم دَهْوَنْ هَات كَرَيْتَايِي؟
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'aat kareeyiya?	Why doesn't he want to bring us water?	نَانَهْوَي يَم دَهْوَنْ هَات كَرَيْيَه؟
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'aat kareetaa?	Why doesn't she want to bring us water?	نَانَهْوَي يَم دَهْوَنْ هَات كَرَيْتَا؟
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'aat	Why don't you (PL) want to bring us	هَيْن يَم دَهْوَكْنَه هَات

kareetaana?	water?	كْرَيْتَه .
Naanhooy yam dehoon ha'at kareeyiyaan?	Why don't they want to bring us water?	ناڤهوي يَم دهون هَات كْرَيْتانه؟

Strong Verbs

Ramtooya?	Do you (M) want to accompany me?	رَمْتَوِيَه؟
Ramtooyi?	Do you (F) want to accompany me?	رَمْتَوِيِيَه؟
Ramtoona?	Do you (PL) want to accompany me?	رَمْتَوْنَه؟
Awooh, ramtook.	Yes, let me accompany you (SG).	أُووَه, رَمْتَوَك .
Laa laa, ramtook karan.	No no, I don't want to accompany you (SG).	لا لا, رَمْتَوَك كَرَن .
Laa laa, ramtook kareena.	No no, we don't want to accompany you (SG).	لا لا, رَمْتَوَك كْرَيْتَه .

Weak Verbs

Gw'aseetooya!	Please give (M) me to drink!	قُوْأَسِيْتَوِيَه!
Gw'aseetooyi!	Please give (F) me to drink!	قُوْأَسِيْتَوِيِيَه!
Gw'aseetoona!	Please give (PL) me to drink!	قُوْأَسِيْتَوْنَه!
Awooh, gw'aseetook.	Yes, let me give you (SG) to drink.	أُووَه, قُوْأَسِيْتَوَك .
Laa laa, gw'aseetook karan.	No no, I don't want to give you (SG) to drink.	لا لا, قُوْأَسِيْتَوَك كَرَن .
Laa laa, gw'aseetook kareena.	No no, we don't want to give you (SG) to drink.	لا لا, قُوْأَسِيْتَوَك كْرَيْتَه .

Evidentials

<440>

Evidentials show why the speaker considers his, her information reliable - or why not. In Beja, the evidentials are verbs - some of them with special evidential forms - and they are attached at the end of what one says like a seal.

<441>

Thus in Beja traditional narratives, every paragraph will be followed by the verb *een* 'they said', which marks the talk as traditional folklore. Literally, this verb should mean 'they said' - but it is used in the sense 'that is what people say (and I did not make it up myself)'. If someone really wants to say 'they said', then a different form of the same verb must be used, namely *idiin* 'they said'.

<442>

Other verbs provide various other kinds of evidence: *hiisani* 'I think so', *kahiisan* 'I don't think so', *toona* (winneet) *akteen* 'I know this matter (for sure)', or *tan'i* 'It seems'.

Verbs as Evidentials

Evidential: 'say'

Malik iifi, een.	There (once) was a king, they say.	مَلِكْ إِيْفِي, عَي ن .
Takat tiifi, een.	There was a woman, they say.	تَكْت تِيْفِي, عَي ن .
'Gw'ajiibu' idi, een.	'It is one-eyed' he said, they say.	قُوْأَجِيْبُ إِدِي, عَي ن .

Evidential: 'announce'

Yhabaar isookinna.	They announced the news.	يَهْبَار إِسْوَكْنَه.
Hargwiitiwwa alhashi inhadneet eefiineet toona yhabaar yhadab been'i eeyaan isookin.	That some had remained from hunger and drought, a group which came from there announced the news (LIT the thing).	هَرْقَوِيْتِيُووَهْ اَلْهَشِيْ اِنْهَدْنِيْت تَفِيْنِيْت تُوْنَه يَهْبَار يَهْدَب بِيْنَا تِيَان اِسْوَكِن.

Evidential: 'think'

Tuhissa naa naatu? Ani kaakan, laakiin hissaab, hiisani.	What is the lesson? I don't know, but it is maths, I think.	تُهْسَه نَا نَاتُ؟ اَنْه كَاكَنْ، لَاكِيْن هِسَاب، هِيْسَنْه.
Amsi nagaaroh, hiisani.	Today it is the second day (LIT its second day), I think.	اَمْسَه نَقَارُوْه، هِيْسَنْه.
Uunbaruuh mumkin ugawi kwalaal hiisiyaan.	Maybe they thought it to be the fence of the house.	اُوْنْبَرُوْه مُمَكِن اُقُوْه كُوْلَال هِيْسِيَان.

Evidential: 'don't think'

Nafir ikatiyeet toona kahiisan.	I don't think it is tasty.	نَفِر اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه كَهِيْسَنْ.
Gaayib ikatiyeet toona kahiisan.	I don't think it is fresh.	قَايِيْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه كَهِيْسَنْ.
Sh'iyaaab ikatiyeet toona kahiisan.	I don't think it is old.	شَايَاْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه كَهِيْسَنْ.
Hamiib ikatiyeet toona kahiisan.	I don't think it is bitter, sour.	هَمِيْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه كَهِيْسَنْ.
Aliyaab ikatiyeet toona kahiisan.	I don't think it is expensive.	اَلِيَاْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه كَهِيْسَنْ.

Evidential: 'know'

Amaag na yaksaawa, aaw ikteen?	You bring something bad, who knows?	اَمَاغ نَه يَكْسَاوَه، اَو اِكْتِيْن؟
Nafir ikatiyeet toona akteen.	I know that it is tasty.	نَفِر اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه اَكْتِيْن.
Gaayib ikatiyeet toona akteen.	I know that it is fresh.	قَايِيْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه اَكْتِيْن.
Sh'iyaaab ikatiyeet toona akteen.	I know that it is old.	شَايَاْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه اَكْتِيْن.
Hamiib ikatiyeet toona akteen.	I know that it is bitter, sour.	هَمِيْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه اَكْتِيْن.
Alyaab ikatiyeet toona akteen.	I know that it is expensive.	اَلِيَاْب اِكْتِيْت تُوْنَه اَكْتِيْن.

Evidential: 'seem'

Tu'angwa tubaraar tan'i.	It seems (like) a mat spread out.	تَاَنْقُوْه تُبْرَار تَبَا.
Ubaaba it'i.	He was (LIT it seemed to be) like the father.	اُبَاْبَه اِتَا.

Adverbs as Evidentials

<443>

Adverbial forms of evidentials are borrowed from Arabic: mumkin 'possibly, maybe', laazim 'necessarily'.

'Maybe'

Mumkin baruuk beentooy kitehaya.	Maybe you are not there.	مُمَكِن بَرُوْكَ بِيْنْتُوِي كِيْتَهِيَه.
Mumkin amaag na yaksaawa.	Maybe you cause (LIT raise up)	مُمَكِن اَمَاغ نَه يَكْسَاوَه.

	something bad.	
Batuuh mumkin oorba oowin naayiit tikati.	Maybe she is from the high mountain.	بَتُوهُ مُمَكِنُ وُورِبِه وُورِن نَائِيْت تِيكْتِي.

'Certainly'

Laazim gaana ibari!	He certainly has something!	لازِمُ قَانِه اِبْرِي!
Shikamti ukinaayiida laazim mhallagaab farri'a!	You (M) certainly pay some money (even) for the scent itself!	شِيكَمْتِي اُكِنَايِيْدِه لَازِمُ مَهْلَقَاب فَرِّيْءَا!

Conversation 20: 'The Threefold Gift' (Examples of Evidentials)

#1	
Tak iifi een.	Tak ZERO-iifi ZERO-ee-n
There was a man, they say.	man PASTSG3MPF-be PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#2	
Suurkinaayiihooda eeyaayit,	Suurkinaa-yii-hoo-da ee-yaa-yit
He came to the leader, and	leader-CASGEN-POSSG3-ADVGEN+for come-PERFSG3M-CON+then
#3	
suurkinaayiihooda yakiyaayit,	suurkinaa-yii-hoo-da yak-iyaa-yit
he started to go to (LIT he started to) the leader, and	leader-CASGEN-POSSG3-ADVGEN+for arise-PERFSG3M-CON+then
#4	
"Oonbarooh naat isuugim andi."	Oon-barooh naat i-suugim a-ndi
"I will puzzle him with something."	NEARSGMOBJPF-PL3MSGMOBJ thing PERFSG3MPF-bother IMPFSG1PF-say
#5	
diyit,	diy-i-it
he said, and	say-PTCPAST-CON+then
#6	
dehaay yakiini een.	dehaay yak-iini ZERO-ee-n
he goes to him (LIT he starts to him), they say.	toward arise-IMPFSG3M PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#7	
Dehaay yakiyaayit,	Dehaay yak-iyaa-yit
He went to him (LIT started to him), and	toward arise-PERFSG3M-CON+then
#8	
ibayit,	i-bay-it
went to him, and	PERFSG3MPF-go.to-CON+then
#9	

isiganifnit,	i-siganif-n-it
they let (his camel) kneel, and	PERFPL3PF-let.kneel-PERFPL3-CON+then
#10	
daayiiib dabaaysalaamiyaaneet tumidda	daayiiib dabaaysalaam-iyaan-eet tu-midda
they welcomed him well, at that time (he said)	good greet-PERFPL3-WH ARTSGF-time
#11	
"Uun'ani mhayt naateeh harawaay	Uun-'ani mhayt naat-eeh harawaay
"I here, since I am in need of three things	NEARSGMSUBJPF-SG1 three thing-POSSSG3 need
#12	
dehook yakaabu."	dehook yak-aab-u
I have come to you."	toSG2M arise-PTCPPAST-IDSG13M
#13	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#14	
"Dehook tiilaleeyaabu."	Dehook tiilaleeyaab-u
"I am in need of them from you."	toSG2M needy-IDSG13M
#15	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#16	
"Ari diwaabayit,	Ar-i diw-aab-a-yit
"My children, since they are hungry (LIT sleep, an idiom for staying hungry),	children-CASGEN sleep-PTCPPAST-IDPL13M-CON+then
#17	
dangeet dehaay ananyiyeet	dangeet dehaay a-nanyi-yeet
a milking animal, to milk for them	milking.animal to IMPFSG1PF-milk.an.animal-WH
#18	
hook aharriiw.	hook a-harriiw
I want from you."	SG2 IMPFSG1PF-want
#19	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#20	
"Sinkaayiiidaaywa aranbiyeenaatiida	Sinkaa-yii-daay-wa a-ranbi-yee-naat-ii-da

"For shouldering and loading also	animal.of.burden-CASGEN-ADVGEN+for- CON+and IMPFSG1PF-load-WH-Thing-CASGEN- ADVGEN+for
#21	
hook aharriiw.	hook a-harriiw
I want something from you.	SG2 IMPFSG1PF-want
#22	
Weenaatiida harawaay y'aabu."	Weenaat-ii-da harawaay y'-aab-u
And needing another thing, I have come."	other.thing-CASGEN-ADVGEN+for need come- PTCPAST-IDSG13M
#23	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#24	
"Miyaay, areeh, hook hariweeh	Miyaay areeh hook hariw-eeh
"A gift, then, (it is) that I want from you	gift well.then from.SG2 want-PTCPPRES
#25	
y'aabu."	y'-aab-u
I have come."	come-PTCPAST-IDSG13M
#26	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#27	
Utuurkina mirbeet iibiriyayt,	U-suurkina mirbeet ZERO-iibiri-yayt
Since the leader had a milking camel	ARTSGM-leader riding.camel PASTSG3MPF- have-ADV+because
#28	
"Tuuumaat haam'aana!"	Tu-huumaat haam'-aana
"Bring (PL) the milking animal!"	ARTSGF-milking.camel bring-IMPVPL
#29	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#30	
"Uunbatuuh huumaatuyit,	Uun-batuuh huumaat-u-yit
"This is a milking camel, thus ...	NEARSGFSUBJPF-SG3F milking.camel-IDSG13F- CON+then
#31	

y'areek niiya hiya!"	y-'ar-eek niiya-a hi-ya
milk it for your children and give them!"	ARTPLM-children-POSSG2 milk.an.animal-IMPVM give-IMPVM
#32	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#33	
"Malyaab laamaatuyit,	Malyaab laam-aat-u-yit
"Also, it is a docile animal,	secondly docile.animal-IDSG13F-CON+then
#34	
ribiya!"	ribi-ya
load it!"	load-IMPVM
#35	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3
#36	
"Malyaab miyaay kwasat aha!"	Malyaab miyaay kwas-at ah-a
"Also, consider it a gift and take it!"	secondly gift create-SUB take-IMPVM
#37	
idi een.	i-di ZERO-ee-n
he said, they say.	PERFSG3MPF-say PERFPL3PF-say-PERFPL3

<444>

<p>۱ تڭ ايفرى نين ۲ شور كنيايهوده نيپيت، ۳ شور كنيايهوده يكيپيت، ۴ ووترو نات ايشوقم اندى ۵ دپيت، ۶ دهاي يكيپى نين. ۷ دهاي يكيپيت، ۸ ايتت، ۹ ايسقنيت، ۱۰ دايب دبايسلا ميانيت تمده ۱۱ اونان مهي ناتي هرواي ۱۲ دهوك يكاپ. ۱۳ ادى نين. ۱۴ دهوك تيلليباپ. ۱۵ ادى نين. ۱۶ ارى دوايت، ۱۷ ذنقيت دهاي انبييت ۱۸ هوك اهريو. ۱۹ ادى نين. ۲۰ سنكايدايوه ارنبييتايديه ۲۱ هوك اهريو. ۲۲ وينايديه هرواي ياب ۲۳ ادى نين. ۲۴ مياي، ارته، هوك هرويه ۲۵ ياب. ۲۶ ادى نين. ۲۷ اهور كنه مريت ايريت، ۲۸ نهومات هاما نه! ۲۹ ادى نين. ۳۰ اونتيوه هومايت، ۳۱ يارتك نييه هيه! ۳۲ ادى نين. ۳۳ ملباب لامائيت، ۳۴ ريه! ۳۵ ادى نين. ۳۶ ملباب مياي كوست اها! ۳۷ ادى نين.</p>

Clause Co-Ordination

<445>

Coordinate clauses can be chained together in various ways. The simplest way is to just let one statement follow the other. Usually this implies that one event just follows the other.

<446>

The table below displays the main kinds of coordination. They will be illustrated in different paradigms or conversations further below.

Table 40: Forms of Coordination

-	Statement 1, Statement 2	-
Tamiya, gw'iya.	He ate, he drank	تميه، قوايه.

-t	Imperative 1 'and' Imperative 2	- ت
Tamaat gw'ata!	Eat (M) and drink (M)!	تَمَات قَوَاتَه!
-han hana	Question 1 'or' Question 2	- هَن هَنَه
Tamtaahan hana gw'ataa?	Did you (M) eat or did you (M) drink?	تَمْتَاهَن هَنَه قَوَاتَا?
-it / -yit	Statement 1 'then' Statement 2	- إِت / -يِت
Tamiyaayit gw'iya.	He ate and then he drank.	تَمِيَايِت قَوَايَه.
laakiin	Statement 1 'but' Statement 2	لاَكِيِن
Tamiini, laakiin kagw'iya.	He eats, but he doesn't drink.	تَمِيِن. لاَكِيِن كَقَوَايَه.

Imperative Plus Imperative Coordinated

<447>

Imperatives can be chained together by -t ... -t 'and then ... and then'. This can be viewed as co-ordination or co-sub-ordination (see below). Unlike chains with -wa ... -wa 'and ... and', the last imperative does not take the -t suffix. (A reminder seems in order here: The imperative suffixes of weak verbs are long -aa -ii -aana, but those of strong verbs are short -a -i -na).

Gw'aat tamaa!	Drink (M) and eat (M)!	قَوَات تَمَا!
M'aat kitiba!	Come (M) and write (M)!	مَات كِيْبَه!
Tamaat diwaa!	Eat (M) and sleep (M)!	تَمَات دِوَا!
Difat shuumaa!	Go (M) and enter (M)!	دِفَت شُوْمَا!
Maasiwat hadiidaa!	Listen (M) and talk (M)!	مَاسِوَت هَدِيْدَا!
Agriiyaat kitiba!	Read (M) and write (M)!	اَقْرِيَاَت كِيْبَه!
Hasayat thawaa!	Be angry (M) and explode (M)!	هَسَيَّت ثَوَا!
Udawilu s'iit oobuun dehooyu kalooyii!	Sit (F) near me and roast (F) the coffee for me!	أَدُوْلُ سَايْت وَبُون دَهْوَي كَلُوْيِي!
Anaa tu'ootu! Tihamooteek shigwidhiit daayiib fititi!	My girl! After having washed your hair, comb it nicely!	أَنَا تُوَوْت! تَهْمُوْتِيَك شِقْوُوْدِيَت دَايِيْب فَيْتِيَه!
Yhalaka shigwidhiit balamsii!	After you (F) have washed the clothes, dry them!	يَهْلَكَه شِقْوُوْدِيَت بَلْمَسِي!
Wharru shigwidhiot tuyiintiib balamsii / biriri!	After you (F) wash the millet dry / spread (F) it in the sun!	وَهْرُ شِقْوُوْدِيَت تُوُوْت تِيْسِيْتِيْب بَلْمَسِي / بِيْرِي!
Lhayt haddiit hagitnat talafoon th'ana, toos'a mhayt!	Wait (PL) till tomorrow and phone (PL) at three!	لَهَيْت هَدِيَّتْ هَقْتِنْت تَلْفُوْن تَاه. تُوَسَاه مَهَيْت!

Conditions implied in Co-Ordination

<448>

Conditions need not always be expressed as such, because they may be obvious from the contents of the clauses.

Toos'a maloot tikayi, b'ara!	It (F) is 2 o'clock, wake (M) up!	توساھ ملوٽ ٽڪي، ٻاره!
Amsi iibaabnay, mara!	Today we travel, be (M) ready!	امسھ ايبابني، مره!
Ani miskiintu, mhallagaab hiyaheeb!	I (F) am poor, give (M) me money!	انھ مسڪينٽ، مهلقاب هيھيب!

Clause Co-Sub-Ordination

<449>

Clauses may be coordinated with each other by the suffix -it 'then'. But the final clause of such a chain closes the paragraph, and it cannot have the suffix -it 'then'. The final clause must be considered the main clause of the paragraph, and it tends to convey some conclusive meaning.

Pattern of Co-Subordination

-t -t idi.	X-then, Y-then, ... he -ed.	
W'ayi y'abkit,	He took (him) by the hand - and then	وَأَيْ يَأْبِكْتِ ،
hireersamiyayit,	he walked with him - and then	هَرِيرَسَمِيَّيْتِ ،
"Oon'umii'at shibiba!" idi.	"Look at this trace!" he said.	"وَنُؤْمِيَّاتِ شَيْبِه!" اِدَعِ.
Ubarkina gwida hissaab ihasibit,	The desert man thought much - and then	أُبْرَكِيْنَه قُوْدَه هِسَّابِ اِهْسِيَّتِ ،
w'aakhariib yakiyaayit,	finally he stood up - and then	وَأَخْرِيْبِ يَكِيَّايْتِ ،
"Ani weena araatihook andi." idi.	"I will ask you something else." he said.	"اُنْه وَنَه اَرَاتِهْوُك اُنْدَعِ"

Conversation 21: 'At School' (Examples of Coordinated Clauses)

#1	
Naaka talaba tibiirina?	naaka talaba ti-bari-ina
How many students do you (PL) have?	how.many student PERFPL2PF-have-PERFPL2
#2	
Igwidaaka, arahan, arita / aritta?	i-gwidaa-ka ar-a-han arit-a
The ones who are more, are they boys or girls?	ARTPLM-much-than boy-IDPL13M-also girl-IDPL13F
#3	
Tumadrasaatiiyookna ti'arit naakaata?	tu-madrasaat-ii-yookna t-'arit naakaat-a
In your (PL) school, how many are the girls?	ARTSGF-school-CASGEN-POSSPL2 ARTPLF-girl how.manyF-IDPL13F
#4	
Y'ar naakaab ikatiin?	y-'ar naakaab i-kati-in
The boys, how many are they?	ARTPLM-children how.manyM IMPFPL3PF-be-

	IMPFPL3
#5	
Y'ar gwuudeenhan, hana ti'arit?	y-'ar gwuud-eeen-han hana t-'arit
Are there more boys or girls? (LIT Are the boys many, or the girls?)	ARTPLM-children be.many-IMPFPL3-also or ARTPLF-girl
#6	
Yhadaariib ti'aritehina ka'agriisiyaan, sidiikuhan haraabu?	yi-hadaariib t-'arit-ehina ka-'agriis-iyaan sidiik-u-han haraab-u
The Hidaarab ²⁷ , their girls don't study, correct (LIT is it right or wrong)?	ARTPLM-Hidaarab ARTPLF-girl-POSSPL3 NEGIMPFPL3PF-teach-NEGIMPFPL3 true-IDSG13M-also wrong-IDSG13M
#7	
Bareehoonaa, tuktaaba hankwiirhan, hana tugraaya?	bareehoonaa-da tu-ktaaba ZERO-hankwiir-han hana tu-graaya
For them (M), is the writing difficult or the reading?	POSSPL3M-ADVGEN+for ARTSGF-writing IMPFSG3MPF-tie-also or ARTSGF-reading
#8	
Bariiyooknaada, tuktaaba hankwiirhan, hana tugraaya?	bariyyooknaa-da tu-ktaaba ZERO-hankwiir-han hana tu-graaya
For you (PL), is the writing difficult or the reading?	PossPL2-ADVGEN+for ARTSGF-writing IMPFSG3FPF-tie-also or ARTSGF-reading

<450>

١ ناكه تلبه تيرينه؟ ٢ اِقوداك، اُرهن، اُرته؟ ٣ ئمدَرَساييوكنه تَارِت ناكاته؟ ٤ يَار ناكاب اِكْتين؟ ٥ يَار قُوودنهن، هنه تَارِت؟ ٦ يَهْدَارِب تَارْتِهَنه كَأَقْرِيسِيان، سَلِيكُنهن هَرَاب؟ ٧ بَرِيهُونَاد، ئَكْنَابَه هَنْكُوِيرَهَن، هنه تُقْرَاي؟ ٨ بَرِييُوكْنَاد، ئَكْنَابَه هَنْكُوِيرَهَن، هنه تُقْرَايَه؟

Clause Sub-Ordination

<451>

In the previous sections it was shown how nouns, adjectives, adverbs etc. have their different places in a clause. In the following sections it will be shown how subordinate clauses may take the places of nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc.

<452>

So the subject noun may be replaced by a subordinate clause, e.g.:

- 'The runner arrives at sunrise.' > '[Who runs] arrives at sunrise.'

<453>

Or the temporal adverb may be replaced by a subordinate clause, e.g.:

- 'The runner arrives at sunrise.' > 'The runner arrives [when the sun rises].'

<454>

In this example, 'The runner arrives' is the main clause, and '[when the sun rises]' is the subordinate clause. The subordinate clauses have been put in brackets in order to distinguish them from the main clauses.

Relative Clauses

<455>

The most frequent kind of subordinate clauses is the relative clause. A relative clause modifies a noun just like adjectives would. This can be illustrated by a comparison of the following examples.

- 'A [racing] camel.' (adjective).
- 'A camel [which races].' (relative clause)

<456>

The difference between these two is that the relative clause uses a relative verb instead of an adjective. In the examples below, the parts inside the brackets, such as '[which races]' are relative clauses, and the parts outside the brackets are main clauses. The relative verb (e.g. 'races') may modify subject or object nouns²⁸. So there are several possibilities which can be combined, and each of them has its own grammatical structure:

<457>

The relative verb may modify object nouns or subject nouns. These nouns may be the object or the subject of the main clause (O, S) or, on the other hand, they may be the object or subject of the relative clause ([O], [S]). Thus the verb may refer to objects and subjects in different ways - The following combinations are possible:

- [O]O: The relative verb refers to the object of the main clause which also is the object of the relative clause
- [O]S or S[O]: The relative verb refers to the subject of the main clause which is the object of the relative clause.
- [S]O or O[S]: The relative verb refers to the object of the main clause which is the subject of the relative clause.
- [S]S: The relative verb refers to the subject of the main clause which also is the subject of the relative clause.

<458>

In addition, there are the following options: The relative verb may precede or follow the noun, and the noun may be definite or indefinite. In actual fact, the verb usually precedes the noun, and the noun usually is definite. Not all of these patterns are frequent. The more common patterns will be listed first.

The Frequent Patterns

<459>

Object of the relative clause [O]O, [O]S

[Areeyani-yeeb] ookaam rhani.	[Which I like] the camel I see. [O]O	[أرىقنئى-يىب] وُكّام رهنئى .
[Areeyani-yeeb] uukaam ayiini.	[Which I like] the camel comes. [O]S	[أرىقنئى-يىب] أوّكّام أئىنئى .

<460>

Subject of the relative clause [S]S, [S]O

[Dhaabiini -] kaam eeyiini.	[Which races] a camel comes. [S]S	[ذّابئىنئى-] كام ئىئىنئى .
[Dhaabiini -] kaam rhani.	[Which races] a camel I see. [S]O	[ذّابئىنئى-] كام رهنئى .
Uukaam [u-dhaabiini -] ayiini.	The camel [which races] comes. S[S]	أوّكّام [أ- ذّابئىنئى-] أئىنئى .
Ookaam [u-dhaabiini-iib] rhani.	The camel [which races] I see. O[S]	وُكّام [أ- ذّابئىنئى-ئىب] رهنئى .

The Infrequent Patterns

<461>

(1b) S[O], and the verb follows its noun

Uukaam [w-areeyani-yi] ayiini.	The camel [which I like] comes. S[O] (infrequent)	اوكام [و-اريتتے-یے] ایتنے .
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------

<462>

(2b) O[S], and the verb follows its noun

Ookaam [u-dhaabiinii-b] rhani.	I see the camel [which races]. O[S] (infrequent)	وڪام [ا-ڈاہینی-ب] رھنے .
--------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------	--------------------------

<463>

Complications like these only arise if (a) the verb follows the noun to which it refers and at the same time (b) the noun has different functions in both clauses. Since this is the case in about 2% to 3% of the occurrences, it may therefore be ignored at this point.

Comparison with Adjective or Genitive Attributes

<464>

The relative verbs may be compared with adjectives or genitives, since all of them are used to modify nouns. The comparison shows that the use of the -b suffix and the definite articles are the same, but the suffix -ee '(REL)' is not used.

Object:		
[Dis] tak rhani.	[A small] man I saw.	[دس] تڪ رھنے .
[Alii-b] w-hataay rhani.	[Ali's] horse I saw.	[آلی-ب] و-ھتای رھنے .
Oo-tak [oodis] rhani.	The man [the-small] I saw.	و- تڪ [وڈس] رھنے .
Subject:		
[Dis] tak ayiini.	[A small] man came.	[دس] تڪ ایتنے .
[Utaki] hataay ayiini.	[The man's] horse came.	[اُتکے] ھتای ایتنے .
Uu-tak [uudis] ayiini.	The man [the-small] came.	اُو- تڪ [اُودس] ایتنے .

Rules for Relative Verbs which Precede the Noun

<465>

The two rules here below refer to verbs which precede the noun that they modify.

Verbs preceding Relative Objects [O] take -eeb/-eet

<466>

In most cases (33%) the relative verb refers to an **Object** in the relative clauses, i.e. O[O] or S[O]. In these cases, the suffixes are -eeb for '(M)' and -eet for '(F)'.

<467>

An English illustration for the O[O] construction would be: 'Whom we like-eeb the leader, we follow (him)', and: 'Whom we like-eeb the leader, comes' for the S[O] construction.

<468>

In many cases (30%) the relative verb refers to an **Object** in the relative clauses which is the noun na 'thing (F)' with or without the definite article. In these case, the suffixes are -eet toona 'the thing (F) which' (definite) or -ee-na 'something (F) which' (indefinite).

<469>

An English illustration for the O[O] construction would be: 'Which we like-eet toona (the thing), we follow (it)', and: 'Which we like-eet toona (the thing), (it) comes' for the S[O] construction.

Verbs preceding Relative Subjects [S] take -ZERO/-t

<470>

In many cases (15%) the relative verb refers to the **Subjects** of relative clauses, i.e. S[S] or O[S]. In these cases there are no suffixes, i.e. the suffixes are -ZERO, except for the usual feminine suffix -t '(F)'.

<471>

An English illustration for the S[S] construction would be: 'Who comes-ZERO the leader, he stays', and: 'Who comes-ZERO the leader, we like (him)' for the O[S] construction. In the case of a feminine subject, an English illustration for the S[S] construction would be: 'Who comes-t the girl, (she) stays', and: 'Who comes-t the girl, we like (her)' for the S[O] construction.

Rules for Relative Verbs which follow the Noun (Infrequent)

<472>

The two rules given below refer to verbs which follow the noun that they modify.

Verbs following Relative Subjects O[S] take -i/-eet

<473>

In very few cases (2.0%) the relative verb **follows** the noun which is the **Object** of the main clause **but** the **Subject** of the relative clause, i.e. O[S]. In these cases the suffixes are -i for '(M)' and -eet for '(F)'.

<474>

In the case of a masculine subject, an English illustration for the O[S] construction would be: 'The leader who comes-i, we like (him)', and: 'The girl who comes-eet, we like (her)' in the case of a feminine subject.

Verbs following Relative Objects S[O] take -b/-t

<475>

In very few cases (0.5%) the relative verb **follows** a noun which is the **Subject** of the main clause **but** the **Object** of the relative clause, i.e. S[O]. In these cases the suffixes are -b for '(M)' and -t for '(F)'.

<476>

In the case of a masculine object, an English illustration for the S[O] construction would be: 'The leader whom we like-b, comes', and: 'The girl whom we like-t, comes' in the case of a feminine object.

[Table 41: Relative Verb Suffixes](#)

Rules:			
Gender:	Affix:	Frequency:	Comments:
(M)	-eeb Noun	Frequent	3. The Verb refers to the S[O] or O[O] noun which follows it. Often the Verb refers to the (F) noun na 'thing' which follows it.
(F)	-eet Noun		
(F)	-eet too-na		
(F)	-ee-na		

(M)	Noun -ee (ee > i/_#)	Infrequent	4. The Verb refers to the S[O] noun which precedes it.
(F)	Noun -eet		
(M)	-ZERO Noun	Frequent	5. The Verb refers to the S[S] or O[S] noun which follows it.
(F)	-t Noun		
(M)	Noun -b	Infrequent	6. The Verb refers to the O[S] noun which precedes it.
(F)	Noun -t		

<477>

Examples where the relative verb refers to the object of the main clause:			
1.	[Areeyan-eeb] oo-kaam rhan. [Areeyan-eet] too-kaam rhan. [Areeyan-eet] too-na rhan. [Areeyan-ee] -na rhan.	[Which I like] the camel (M) I saw. [Which I like] the camel (F) I saw. [What I like] the thing (F) I saw. [What I like] a thing I saw.	[أرئین-یب] و-کام رهن. [أرئین-یت] تو-کام رهن. [أرئین-یت] تو-نه رهن. [أرئین-ین] -نه رهن.
2.	Oo-kaam [w-areeyan-eeb] rhan. Too-kaam [t-areeyan-eet] rhan.	The camel (M) [which I like] I saw. The camel (F) [which I like] I saw.	و-کام [و-أرئین-یب] رهن. تو-کام [ت-أرئین-یت] رهن.
3.	[Dhaabiini-] kaam rhan. [Dhaabtini-t] kaam rhan.	[Which runs] a camel (M) I saw. [Which runs] a camel (F) I saw.	[ڈاہینے-] کام رهن. [ڈاہینے-ت] کام رهن.
4.	-	Infrequent	-

<478>

Examples where the relative verb refers to the subject of the main clause:			
1.	[Areeyani-yeeb] uu-kaam eeyiini. [Areeyani-yeet] tuu-kaam eetini. [Areeyani-yeet] tuu-na eetini. [Areeyani-ye] -na eetini.	[Which I like] the camel (M) comes. [Which I like] the camel (F) comes. [What I like] the thing (F) comes. [What I like] a thing comes.	[أرئینے-یب] او-کام ئینینے. [أرئینے-یت] تو-کام ئینینے. [أرئینے-یت] تو-نه ئینینے. [أرئینے-ین] -نه ئینینے.
2.	Uukaam [w-areeyan-i] eeyiini. Tuukaam [t-areeyan-eet] eetini.	The camel (M) [which I like] comes. The camel (F) [which I like] comes.	او-کام [و-أرئین-ی] ئینینے. تو-کام [ت-أرئین-یت] ئینینے.
3.	[Dhaabiini-] kaam eeyiini. [Dhaabtini-t] kaamt eetini.	[Which runs] a camel (M) comes. [Which runs] a camel (F) comes.	[ڈاہینے-] کام ئینینے. [ڈاہینے-ت] کامت ئینینے.
4.	-	Infrequent	-

Relative Verb refers to O[O]

Verb follows Noun

Oo-tak [u-salaaman-eeb] rhitaa?	The man [whom I greeted] did you (M) see him?	و-تاک [أ-سلاامن-یب] رهتا؟
Tu-takat [tu-salaaman-eet]	The woman [whom we greeted] did	ت-تاکت [ت-سلاامن-یت]

rhitaa?	you (M) see her?	رهنا؟
Baraah tu-jaziira ['B' eeyadn-eet] ibeen.	They went to the island [called 'B'].	تراه تـ جـزيره 'ب' تيدن- يت [اين].
Oon-oobuun [tuhoorma tiigid-eeb] areenay.	We love the coffee [made by a respected lady].	أون-أوبون [تهورمه تيقده- يت [أرتي].
Tu'oor [unajjaari itkwikw-eet] imiru.	He found the girl [which the carpenter had made].	تؤور [أنجارے ايتكوکو- يت [إمر].

Verb precedes Noun (infrequent)

[Iru duuran-eeb] ootak, oosmooh aab eeyadna?	[Whom I visited yesterday] the man, what do they call his name?	إرؤ دؤرن-يب [وتك، ؤسموه آب تيدنه؟
[Salaaman-eeb] uu-tak winu.	The man [whom I greeted] is tall.	[سلامن-يب] أو-تک ونؤ.

Relative Verb refers to S[S]

Noun understood

[U-gw'iini-] barooh kiiki.	It is not he [who is drinking].	[أقواينے-] برؤه كيكے .
[Tu-gw'atnii-t] batooh kitti.	It is not she [who is drinking].	[تـقواتيے-ت] بتؤه كيتے .
[Tu-dehaay tiki-] hadiidiyaan.	They told (them) [what happened to, with (sth.)].	[تـدهايے تـكے-] هديديان .
[Tu-tiki-] akan.	I knew [what happened].	[تـتـكے-] اكن .

Verb follows Noun (infrequent)

Uu-tak [w-eeiya-] winu.	The man [who (M) came] is tall.	أو-تک [ؤ-تييه-] ونؤ.
Tu-takat [tu-eetaa-t] wintu.	The woman [who (F) came] is tall.	تـتکت [تـتيات-] ونؤ.

Verb follows Indefinite Noun

[Mar mhiin eefi-] malik beena!	Go to a king [which is in such-and-such a place].	[مر مهين نفعے-] ملك بينه!
[Uhadhaayyiida yaki-] takka whadha aameeh id'i.	This lion swallowed any man [who stood up against him].	[أهدايديه يکے-] تککه وهده آميه ادا.
[Iist'a-] tak rhiya.	He saw a man [sitting].	[ايستاه-] تک رهيه .
[Isgw'ad-] mhay da imiru.	He found three men [who watched].	[اِسقؤاد-] مهّي ده اِمرؤ.
[Naat ikteen-] tak hiisiinihook.	He thinks you (are) a man [who knows something].	[نات اکتين-] تک هيسينيهؤک .
[Bahadiiday-] tak eefi.	There is a man [who doesn't talk].	[بهديدي-] تک نفعے .
[Bahadiiday-t] takat teefi.	There is a woman [who doesn't talk].	[بهديدي-ت] تکت نفعے .

Relative Verb refers to 'thing'

The Noun is implied

<479>

In the following examples, the verb refers to a noun which is not made explicit. In the first example, for instance, the noun implied by the verb "I did" could have been made explicit by adding "the thing (I did)".

[Tu-daayan-i] itwi.	[What I did] he denied.	[ث-دائین-یا] اتوے.
[Tu-nimeer-i] whaalon kahasamta.	[What we get] is not enough for our condition.	[ث-نیمیر-یا] وھالون کھسمتہ.
[Tu-bit'areeya-yi] dawilkaatooktu / dawiltooktu.	[What you don't love] is closest to you.	[ث-بتارنہ-یے] دُولکاتوکٹ / دُولتوکٹ.

Verb precedes the Definite Noun 'thing'

[Ragad gaal naayi iitir-eet] toona imii'atii nikan.	[That it was limping on one leg] we knew from the traces.	[رَقَدَ قَال نایے ایتیر-یت] تونہ ایمیاتی نیکن.
Been'uginuufi [hamshukiini-yeet] toona rhitiniya?	Do you see [that it is breathing through (LIT from) the nose]?	بین اُغْنُوْفے [ھَمَشُکِیْنے-یت] تونہ رھتیہ؟
[Kak rhisi-yeet] toona igam.	He didn't know [how to show it].	[کک رھسے-یت] تونہ اقم.
Laakiin [mhayt s'aati dabaay iikti-yeet] toona kak tikana?	But [that it was 3 hours ago], how do you know that?	لاکین [مھت ساتے ذباي ایکے-یت] تونہ کک تکہ؟
Naatka w'aakhariib [ishbuub tindi-yeet] toona kana!	You can be sure (LIT know the thing) [that everything will be OK at last]!	ناتکہ وَاخْرِب [اِشْبُوْب تیدے-یت] تونہ کنہ!
[Suur sakiyaan-eet] toona oond'aabhan sakiya.	[What he had done before] he did now.	[سور سکیان-یت] تونہ وندا بہن سکیہ.
Umii'at [umhiinooh bihasamay-eet] toona akteen.	I know [that the shadow does not pass this place]	اُمیأت [اُمھینوہ بہسامے-یت] تونہ اکتین.
Uutak [tamnagwir ihiriw-eet] toona ikan.	The man understood [that he (the boy) wanted eleven].	اُوْتَاک [تَمْنَقْوِر اِھِرْو-یت] تونہ اکن.
Areeh, uudehay kassa uun'ulhana [ti'aateyoooh yam hooy iid'i-yeet] toona iiktiinna.	So then, all the people knew the thing [that the milkman put water in his milk].	اَرِہ، اُو دھي کسہ اُون اُلھنہ [تَاْتِيْوَه يَم هُوِي اِيْدَا-یت] تونہ ایکتیہ.
Gaat [tuliiliitiyyu shuumti-yeet / shuumi tidiy-eet] toona arikwi.	I was afraid [one would go into my eye.]	قات [تُلِيلِيْتِي شُوْمْتے-یت] / شُوْمے تِيْدِي-یت] تونہ اُرکُوے.
Umalik [ini-yeet] toona kastoooh sooyiya-heeb.	He told me [all the emperor had said].	اُمَلِک [اِنے-یت] تونہ کستوہ سوئیہ-ھیب.
W'oor tutakat yhindi [tun'eetiib tid'i-yeet] toona rhiya.	The boy saw [that the women put wood in the fire].	وُوْر تُوْتَاک يھندے [تُنْئِيْتِيْب تِيْدَا-یت] تونہ رھیہ.
Baruuk [sidkiib tikati-yeet] toona akan.	I realize [that you are right].	بَرُوک [سِدکِيْب تِکَاتے-یت] تونہ اکن.
Y'araah winneet areeyiin-eet] toona ikan.	He knew [that his children loved him very much].	يَاْرَاه وِنْنِيْت اَرِيِيْن-یت] تونہ اکن.
[Amas hook tu-marri-yeet] toona	[What happens to you at midnight]	[اَمَس هُوک ت-مَرے-یت]

oomha haay mhasaa!	do not bother about it (LIT let it rest) till the morning dawns!	تَوْنَه وَمَهه هَاي مَهْسَا!
[Uudehay eeyadn-eet] toona biimaasiwi!	Don't listen to (the thing) [what the people say]!	[أُوْدَهْي تِيْدن-تِيْت] تَوْنَه پِيْمَا سِيوِي!
[Imirn-eet] tuu-na kamhata.	[The thing they got] is not enough.	[إِمِرِن-تِيْت] تُو-نَه كَمَهْتَه.

Verb precedes the Indefinite Noun 'thing'

[Bak t'iit-ee] -na baad'iina!	Don't do a thing [which is similar to that]!	[بَك تَايْت-ئِي]-نَه بَادَايِنَه!
[Saki-yee] -na igam	He didn't know [what to do].	[سَكِي-يِي]-نَه اِقَم
[Tak t'iit-ee] -na tisiikw.	[Something like a man] followed.	[تَك تَايْت-ئِي]-نَه تِيْسِيِكُو.
[Tunariitu giigistini] -na amiru.	I found [something which drives away my sleep].	[تُنَرِيْتُ قِيْغِيْسْتِنِي]-نَه اَمِرُو.

Complications: S[O], Verb follows Noun

<480>

If the verb refers to the object of the relative clause and this noun is the subject of the main clause, the suffixes are -i for '(M)' and -eet for '(F)'.

S [O], Verb follows Noun

Uu-tak [ani adir-i] ashoooyoyu.	The man [whom I killed] is my enemy.	أُو-تَك [أَنِي اَدِير-إِي] أَشُووِيوِي.
Uu-tak [u-salaamiyaan-i] sanooyu.	The man [whom they greeted] is my brother.	أُو-تَك [أ-سَلَامِيَاان-إِي] سَنُووِي.
Tu-oor [tu-rhina-neet] daawriitu.	The girl [which (F) we saw] is pretty.	تُو-وَر [تُو-رَهْنَه-نِيْت] دَاوَرِيْتُ.
Tu-takat [baraakna salaamtaan-eet] naamhiinaanii eeta?	The woman [whom you (PL) greeted] from where did she come?	تُو-تَكْت [بَرَاكْنَه سَلَامْتَاان-ئِيْت] نَامْهِيْنَانِييِي عِيْتَه؟

Complications: O[S], Verb follows Noun

<481>

If the verb follows a noun which is the object of the main clause but subject of the relative clause, the gender-marking suffixes -b for '(M)' and -t '(F)' get attached to the object.

O [S], Verb follows Noun

Oo-tak [w-eeyaa-b] rhita?	You (M) saw the man [who came]?	و-تَك [و-ئِيَا-ب] رَهِيْتَه؟
Too-na [tu-tisb'ar-t] agam.	I didn't know the thing [which woke him up].	تُو-نَه [تُو-تِيْسَبَّار-ت] اَقَم.

Further Examples of Relative Clauses

Relative Verb refers to O[O]

O [O], Verb precedes Noun

[Salaaman-eeb] ootak rhitaa.	[Whom I greeted] the man, you (M) saw him	[سَلَامَان-ئِيْب] وَتَك رَهِيْتَا.
------------------------------	-------------------------------------------	------------------------------------

O [O], Verb precedes Noun

Hummadiin [timmi areey-i] kaam iibiri.	Hummad Diin had a camel [which he liked very much].	هُمَادِيْن [تَمَّعَ اَرِي-ي] كام ايبيرى.
[Tushibuub bitimheelay-eeb] ootak, whaafu, gay giigiimaanaabu!	[From the man whom your goodness does not cure], stay away from him, my soul!	[تُشْبُوْب بِيْتَمِهَيْلِي-تِيْب] وَتَاك, وَهَافُ, قِي قِيْمَانَاْب!

O [O], Verb follows Noun 1

Ootak [u-salaaman-eeb] rhitaa.	<u>The man [whom I greeted] you (M) saw him.</u>	وَتَاك [أ- سَلَامَن-تِيْب] رهِتَا.
Ootak [w-ani rhan-eeb] rhitaa.	The man [whom I saw] you (M) saw him.	وَتَاك [وُ-أَنِي رَهَن-تِيْب] رهِتَا.
Ootak [ooktaab ahi-yeeb] timfaraada.	The man [whom I gave the book] you (M) talked to (him).	وَتَاك [وُكْتَاْب أَهِي-تِيْب] تِمْفَرَاَدَا.
Eenda [i-salaaman-eeb] rhitaa.	The men [whom I greeted] you saw them.	يِنْدَا [إ- سَلَامَن-تِيْب] رهِتَا.
Eenda [yi-hinin nidirir-eeb] rhitaa.	The men [whom we served-dinner] you saw them.	يِنْدَا [ي-يِنْدَا نِيْدِرِر-تِيْب] رهِتَا.
Tutakat [tu-salaamnaan-eet] rhitaa.	The woman [whom we greeted] you (M) saw her.	تُتَاكَاَت [ت- سَلَامْنَان-تِيْت] رهِتَا.

O [O], Verb follows Noun 2

Oomhiin [w-iibi-yeeb] agam.	I did not recognize the place [I had gone to].	وَمُهِيْن [و- ايبى-تِيْب] اَقَم.
Oon'utakook [u-rhitini-yeeb] daayiib abiki!	Hold on to your husband [whom you see].	وَنُتَاكُوُك [أ- رهِتِنِي-تِيْب] دَايِيْب اَبِيكِي!
Y'awi [usikkaayi geediya-n-eeb] ihariw.	He looked for the stones [which he had thrown on the way].	يَاوِي [اُسِيكَايِي قِيْدِيَه-ن- تِيْب] اِهَرُو.
Ugariimi [baruuk harriiw-eeb] kiiki, w'Allaayi hook eeshwiyeebu.	The enemy [whom you would select (LIT whom you want)] is not the one God gives you.	اُقَرِيْمِي [بُرُوُك هَرِّيُو-تِيْب] كِيكِي, وَاَلَايِي هُوُك يَشْوِيْعِي.
Ani tujaziira [B. idiin-eet] daayiiwwa libaabi haash hiisan.	I had thought the island [which was called B.] was a peaceful and happy one.	اَنِي تُجَازِيْرَا [ب. اِيْدِيْن- تِيْت] دَايِيُوُوَا لِيْبَاَبِي هَاش هِيْسَن.
Kastooh tutluustu [tu-aktiin-eet] rhisan.	I showed all the funny tricks [I could think of].	كَاَسْتُوُوَا تُتْلُوُسُوُت [ت- اَكْتِيْن-تِيْت] رهِسَن.

O [O], Verb follows Temporal Noun

titamna-fadhig tiina [ti-hasamiyaan-t]	the 14 days [which have passed] (i.e. last week)	تِيْتَامْنَا-فَاذِيْغ تِيْنَا [تِي- هَاسَمِيْيَاْن-ت]
ootrig [w-hasamiyaa-b]	the month (OBJ) [which has passed] (i.e. last month)	وُتْرِغ [و- هَاسَمِيْيَا-ب]
whawil [w-hasamiyaa-b]	the year (OBJ) [which has passed] (i.e. last year) (AR)	وُهْوَل [و- هَاسَمِيْيَا-ب]

tumassi [tu-hasamtaa-t]	the year (OBJ) [which has passed] (i.e. last year)	تُمَسَّسَ [ت-هَسَمَتَا-ت]
maloot asarama titamna-fadhig tiina ti-y'een-t	the week (OBJ) [which comes] (i.e. next week)	مَلُوْتُ اَسْرَمَه تِيْتَمْنَه-فَادْحِيْق تِيْنَه تَي-يِيْن-ت
ootrig [w-ayiinii-b]	the month (OBJ) [which comes] (i.e. next month)	وُتْرِق [و-اَيِيْنِي-ب]
whawil [w-ayiinii-b]	the year (OBJ) [which comes] (i.e. next year) (AR)	وُهْوَل [و-اَيِيْنِي-ب]
tumassi [tu-eetini-t]	the year (OBJ) [which comes] (i.e. next year)	تُمَسَّسَ [ت-يِيْنِي-ت]

S [O], Verb precedes Noun

[Salaaman-eeb] uutak winu.	[Whom (M) I greeted] the man is tall.	[سَلَامَن-يَب] اُوْتَك وُنْ.
[Iru baraaah salaamiyaan-eeb / duuriyaan-eeb] uutak sanooyu.	[Whom (M) they visited yesterday] the man is my brother.	[اِرُ / اُرَه بَرَاه سَلَامِيَاَن-يَب / دُوْرِيَاَن-يَب] اُوْتَك سَنُوْيُ.
[Iru salaaman-eeb] uutak winu.	[Whom (M) I visited yesterday] the man is tall.	[اِرُ / اُرَه سَلَامَن-يَب] اُوْتَك وُنْ.
[Iru duuran-eeb] ootak, oosmooh aab eeyadna?	[Whom (M) I visited yesterday] the man, what do they call his name? (More elegant phrasing than above)	[اِرُ / اُرَه دُوْرَن-يَب] وُتَك، نِ سَمُوْه اَب يِيْدْنَه؟

Relative Verb Refers to S[S]

S [S], The noun is implied: Paradigm Weak Verb

<482>

(Concerning this paradigm, see the explanatory note under Relative Verb refers to 'thing', above)

[U-geediya-] aneeb kiiki.	It is not I (M) [who threw (REP)].	[أ-قِيْدِيَه-] اُنْيَب كِيِكِي.
[U-geediya-] barook kiiki.	It is not you (M) [who threw (REP)].	[أ-قِيْدِيَه-] بَرُوْك كِيِكِي.
[U-geediya-] barooh kiiki.	It is not he [who threw (REP)].	[أ-قِيْدِيَه-] بَرُوْه كِيِكِي.
[I-geediyaan-] hinin kiikeen.	It is not us [who threw (REP)].	[إ-قِيْدِيَاَن-] هِيْن كِيِكِيْن.
[I-geediyaan-] bareekna kiikeen.	It is not you (PL) [who threw (REP)].	[إ-قِيْدِيَاَن-] بَرِيْكْنَه / بَرِيْك كِيِكِيْن.
[I-geediyaan-] bareeh kiikeen.	It is not them (M) [who threw (REP)].	[إ-قِيْدِيَاَن-] بَرِيْه كِيِكِيْن.

S [S], The noun is implied: Paradigm Strong Verb

[W-igid-] aneeb kiiki.	It is not I [who threw (sth.)].	[و-اِقْد-] اُنْيَب كِيِكِي.
[W-igid-] barook kiiki.	It is not you (M) [who threw (sth.)].	[و-اِقْد-] بَرُوْك كِيِكِي.
[W-igid-] barooh kiiki.	It is not he [who threw (sth.)].	[و-اِقْد-] بَرُوْه كِيِكِي.
[Yi-igid-] hinin kiikeen.	It is not us [who threw (sth.)].	[ي-اِقْد-] هِيْن كِيِكِيْن.
[Yi-igid-] bareekna kiikeen.	It is not you (PL) [who threw (sth.)].	[ي-اِقْد-] بَرِيْكْنَه كِيِكِيْن.

[Yi-igid-] bareeh kiikeen.	It is not them (M) [who threw (sth.)].	[يے-اقد-] برتہ کیکین.
----------------------------	----------------------------------------	-----------------------

S [S], Verb follows Indefinite Noun

Mhay da [kitaab agriiyiin] iifiin.	There were three men [who were reading a book].	مہی ده [کتاب اگرییین] ایفین.
Balad gaal naayi saalhi tak [Allaayoooh iriikw] iifi.	In one country there was a man, a devout man, [who feared God].	بَلَدِ قَالِ نَايِي سَالِهِي تَاك [اَللَايُوهُ اِرِيكُو] اِيفِي.
Jaa'ir malik [Allaayoooh baarakwi] iifi.	There was a bad king [who does not fear his God].	جَااِرِ مَلِيك [اَللَايُوهُ بَارَكُو] اِيفِي.

S [S], Verb follows Definite Noun

Uu-tak [w-eeya, eeyiya] winu.	<u>The man [who (M) came] is tall.</u>	اُو- تَاك [وِي-يِيه / يِيه] وِنُو.
Uu-tak [w-hadha idir] aneebu.	The man [who (M) killed the lion] is me.	اُو- تَاك [وِي-هَدَه اِدِر] اَنِيبُو.
Uu-tak [hadhaab idir] aneebu.	The man [who (M) killed a lion] is me.	اُو- تَاك [هَدَااب اِدِر] اَنِيبُو.
Tu-takat [tu-eetaa-t] wintu.	The woman [who (F) came] is tall.	تُو- تَاك [تُو-يِيه-ت] وِنْتُو.
Tu-takat [w-hadha tidir-t] aneebtu.	The woman [who (F) killed the lion] is me.	تُو- تَاك [وِي-هَدَه تِيْدِر-ت] اَنِيبْتُو.
Tu-takat [hadhaab tidir-t] aneebtu.	The woman [who (F) killed a lion] is me.	تُو- تَاك [هَدَااب تِيْدِر-ت] اَنِيبْتُو.
Tu-takat [bariiyoooh oo-meek tigwhar-t] afraytu.	The woman [who (F) stole his donkey] is a bad one.	تُو- تَاك [بَارِييُووه اُو-مِيك تِيغْوَار-ت] اَفْرَايْتُو.
Aa-nda [yi-eeyaan] wawina.	The men [who (PL) came] are tall.	آ- نَدِه [يِي-يِيان] وَوِيه.
Aa-nda [yi-hinin nidir-i] ashooyeena.	The men [whom (PL) we killed] are our enemies.	آ- نَدِه [يِي-هِيْن نِيْدِر-ي] اَشُوِيِيْنِه.

S [S], Verb precedes Indefinite Noun

[Bahadiiday-] tak eefi.	There is a man [who doesn't talk].	[بَهَادِيْدِي-] تَاك اِيفِي.
[Bahadiiday-t] takat teefi.	There is a woman [who doesn't talk].	[بَهَادِيْدِي-ت] تَاك تِيْفِي.
[Bahadiiday-] da eefeen.	There are people [who don't talk].	[بَهَادِيْدِي-] ده اِيفِيْن.
[Naat baadii-(yay)] tak eefi.	There is a man [who doesn't say anything].	[نَات بَادِي-يِي] تَاك اِيفِي.
[Naat baadii-(yay)t] takat teefi.	There is a woman [who doesn't say anything].	[نَات بَادِي-يِي] ت [تَاك تِيْفِي].
[Naat baadiin-(ay)] da eefeen.	There are people [who don't say anything].	[نَات بَادِيْن-يِي] ده اِيفِيْن.

S [S], Verb precedes Indefinite Noun

[W'ayiiisoooh baa-tam-ay] tak, kagabiya.	A man [who doesn't eat with his own hand] is not satisfied.	[وَأْيِيْسُووه بَا-تَم-اِي] تَاك، كَاغَابِيَا.
Tu'ootu [bak t'iiti] tak kahadiidsamta.	My daughter doesn't talk with [such a man].	تُوُوْتُ [بَاك تِيْتِي] تَاك كَاهَادِيْدِسْمَتَا.

[Oottu'ootu bhaliisamiini] tak kihay.	There is nobody [who makes my daughter talk].	[وَتُوْتُوتُ بَهْلِيْسَامِيْنِي] تَاك كِيْهَي .
[Ayiini] hadhaayiika, [sanni-t] b'ashu hanyiis.	Better than a lion [which comes is a fox which waits].	[اَيِيْنِي] هَدَّاهِيْكَه, [سَنِّي-ت] بَاشُ هَنْيِيْس .

O [S], Verb precedes Indefinite Noun

[Naat baa-sakay] b'adhadha yakisiya.	He took the swords [which could do nothing].	[نَات-بَا-سَاكِي] بَادَّدَه يَكِيْسِيَه .
Uun'uuleema [oon'ubharii tikwi] tak-ka kwidhi id'i!	This crocodile would let disappear any man [who moved at the sea]!	[وُونُوْلِيْمَه [وُونُؤْبَهْرِي تِكْوِي] تَاك-كَا كْوِيْدِي اِيْدِي! تَاك-كَه كُوْدِي اِيْدِي. تَوَالِي!
[Mar mhiin eefi] malik beena!	Go to a king [who is in such and such a place]!	[مَر مِهِيْن عِفِي] مَلِيْكَ بِيْنَه!
[Oon'urabeeyooh dehaay isgw'ad] mhay da imiru.	[For watching these goods], he found three men.	[وُونُؤْرَبِيْوَه دِهَاهِي اِسْغُوَاد] مَهِي دِه اِمْرُ .
[Uun'whadhaayiida yak-i] tak-ka whadha aameeh id'i.	Each man [who approached this lion], the lion would eat it.	[وُونُؤْهَدَّاهِيْدَه يَاك-اِي] تَاك-كَه وَهَدَّه اَمِيَه اِيْدِي.
[Naat ikteen] tak hiisiini-hook.	He assumes you are a man [who knows something] .	[نَات اِكْتِيْن] تَاك هِيْسِيْنِي-هَوَاك .
[Iist'a] tak rhiya.	He saw a man [sitting there],.	[اِيْسْتَاه] تَاك رِهِيَه .
[Tunariitu giigistini] na oond'aab amiru.	Now I found something [which makes my tiredness go away].	[تُنْرِيْتُ قِيْغِيْسْتِيْنِي] نَه وَنْدَاب اِمْرُ .

Complications: S[O], Verb follows Definite Noun

<483>

Note that examples such as those given below are considered not elegant, if not awkward. The reason is that the verb follows - rather than precedes - the noun which it modifies.

S [O], Verb follows Noun

Uutak [u-salaaman-i] winu.	The man [whom (M) I greeted] is tall.	اُوْتَاك [ا-سَلَامَن-اِي] وِيْنُو .
Uutak [ani w-adir-i] ashoooyouy.	The man [whom (M) I killed] is my enemy.	اُوْتَاك [اَنِي وَاْدِيْر-اِي] اَشُوُوِيْوِي .
Uutak [w-iru ani salaaman-i] winu.	The man [whom (M) I greeted yesterday] is tall.	اُوْتَاك [وَاِيْر اَنِي سَلَامَن-اِي] وِيْنُو .
Uutak [u-salaamiyaan-i] sanooyu.	The man [whom (M) they greeted] is my brother.	اُوْتَاك [ا-سَلَامِيَاَن-اِي] سَنُوِي .
Uutak [iru duuran-i], oosmooh aab eeyadna?	The man [whom I visited yesterday] what do they call him (his name)?	اُوْتَاك [اِيْر دُوْرَان-اِي], وُ سَمُوَه اَب يِيْدَنَه?
Aanda [i-salaaman-i] wawina.	The men [whom I greeted] are tall.	اَنْدَه [ا-سَلَامَن-اِي] وَوِيْنَه .
Tutakat [tu-ani adir-eet] ashootootu.	The woman [whom (F) I killed] is my enemy.	تُوْتَاكَت [ت-اَنِي اَدِيْر-اِيْت] اَشُوُوُوُوْتُو .
Tutakat [tu-salaamaan-eet] wintu.	The woman [whom (F) we greeted] is tall.	تُوْتَاكَت [ت-سَلَامَانَ-اِيْت] وِيْنْتُ .
Tu'oor [tu-rhinaan-eet] daawriitu.	The girl [which (F) we saw] is pretty.	تُوُوْر [ت-رِهِيَاَن-اِيْت]

		داوریت .
Tutakat [baraakna salaamtaan-eet] naamhiinaanii eeta? ²⁹	The woman [whom (F) you (PL) greeted] from where did she come?	تُكَّتْ [بِرَاكْنَه سَلَامْتَان- بِتْ] نَامْهِنَانِي تِيه؟
Taam'a [ti-baraakna tidirn-eet] shingiraat m'ata.	The women (F) [whom you (PL) killed] are bad women.	تَامَاهُ [تِيه-بِرَاكْنَه تِيدِرْن- بِتْ] شِنْغِرَات مَاتَه .
Uun'uukaam [baruuk 'missaabu' tindi-yi] dhhaniibu.	The camel [which you say is dead] is alive.	أُوؤُوكَام [بُرُوكْ 'مِسَابْ' تِنْدِيه-بِيه] دَهْنِيْب .
Ootak [iru lingwuumna-ni] ba'iid'ur.	The man [whom we sent yesterday] should marry her.	وَتَاكْ [إِرُ لِنْغُوومْنَه-نِيه] بَايْدُر .
Uunbatuuh [tu-tiibiri-yi] kastehootu.	[What you had] this is all.	أُوْنَبْتُوه [تُ-تِيْبِيْرِيه-بِيه] كَسْتَهْوُت .

Complications: O[S], Verb follows Definite Noun

O [S], Verb follows Noun

Ootak [umsajaliib hadiidiyaa-b] rhan.	I saw the man [who talked on the tape].	وَتَاكْ [أُمْسَجَالِيْب هَادِيْدِيَا- ب] رَهْن .
Ootak [w-eeyaa-b] rhita?	You (M) saw the man [who came]?	وَتَاكْ [و-يَا -ب] رَهْتَه؟
Uusuug [u-duurna-yi] sagiibuhan, sagiib kiiki?	Is the market [which we visited] far or not?	أُوْسُوُق [أ-دُوْرْنَه-بِيه] سَغِيْبُهَنْ سَغِيْب كِيِكِيه؟
Naanhooy ootak [hineeda w-eeyiinee-b] geedteena?	Why did you (PL) beat, throw (REP) the man [who came for us]?	نَانْهَوِي وِتَاكْ [هِنِيْدَه و- يِيْنِي-ب] قِيْدْتِيْنَه؟
Naanhooy ootak [hineeda ayiinii-b / eeyiinii-b] geedteena?	Why did you (PL) beat, throw (REP) the man [who came for us]?	نَانْهَوِي وِتَاكْ [هِنِيْدَه أُيِيْنِي- ب / يِيْنِي-ب] قِيْدْتِيْنَه؟
Tutakat [ti-eetaa-t] rhita.	You (M) saw the woman [who came].	تُكَّتْ [تِيه-تِيَات] رَهْتَه .
Tutakat [ti-eetaa-t] timfaraada.	You (M) talked to the woman [who came].	تُكَّتْ [تِيه-تِيَات] تِمْفَرَادَه .
Eenda [yi-eeyaan-] rhita.	You (M) saw the men [who came].	يِنْدَه [بِيه-تِيَان-] رَهْتَه .
Ooslif [u-sannii-yook] rama!	The custom [which awaits you], follow it!	وَسْلِفْ [أ-سَنِّي-يُوكْ] رَمَه!
Ootak [Allaayoooh iriikwi] usaalhi ibeen.	They went to the devout man [who feared his God].	وَتَاكْ [أَلَايُوَه اِرِيكُوِيه] أَسَالِهِي اِيْبِن .
Teem'a [tum'ari tikwiyyaa-t] araatiyaan.	They asked the women [who prepared the food].	تِيْمَاهُ [تُمَارِيه تِكُوِيَات- أَرَاتِيَان .
Toottunaasiibi [dehoon timmaraay-t] kak weertiit yakisnay?	This relationship [which we found], what can we do to get rid of it (LIT lift it from us)?	تُوْتُنَاْسِيْبِي [دَهْوُون تِمْرَاي- ت] كَاكْ وِيْرْتِيْت يَكِسْنِيه؟
Batuuh win hadhi [yhadhiyeeyoon maloob iiktiin] gaal door uyafiiyoooh tid'i.	She would put a piece of bread [which is as big as two of our loaves] in her mouth at once.	بَتُوَه وَنْ هَدْدِيه [بِهَادِيْبِيُون مَلُوْب اِيَكِيْن] قَال دُوْر أَفِيْيُوَه تِدَا .

Conversation 22: 'Who Do You Think I Am?' (Examples of Relative Clauses)

<484>

B: husband, A: wife

#1	
B: Batuuk aneeb taajir hiistiniheebhan?	batuuk aneeb taajir hiis-tinii-heeb-han
B: Do you think I am a merchant?	SG2F OBJSG1 merchant think-IMPFSG2F-OBJSG1-also
#2	
B: Ani miskiin taku.	ani miskiin tak-u
B: I am a poor man.	SG1 poor man-IDSG13M
#3	
B: Ushanhiiyu [tu-amarri-yi], batiyook gwad tamani.	u-shanh-ii-yu tu a-marri yi batiyook gwad tam-ani
B: What I get (find) from my work, I eat together with you (F).	ARTSGM-work-CASGEN-POSSSG1 ARTSGFREL IMPFSG1PF-find ARTPLMREL PossSG2F with eat-IMPFSG1
#4	
A: Whaallook akteen, laakiin uudehay:	w-haal-ook a-kteen laakiin uu-dehay
A: I know your way of life, but the people,	ARTSGM-condition-POSSSG2 IMPFSG1PF-know but ARTSGMSUBJ-people
#5	
"Ukwoojaayiit takat, utaajiriit takat halak kitbaru (eeyadna),	u-kwoojaa-yiit takat u-taajir-iit takat halak kit-baru
(that they say) "The teacher's wife doesn't have a dress.	ARTSGM-teacher-CASGEN woman ARTSGM-merchant-CASGEN woman clothes NEGIMPFSG3FPF-have
#6	
yhalakaayaah shatatamaaba" [eeyadneet] toona hanyiis?'	yi-halakaa-yaah shatatam-aab-a ZERO-eeyad-n-eet too-na ZERO-hanyiis
Her clothes are torn" - is that better?	ARTPLM-clothes-POSSSG3 be.torn-PTCPAST-IDPL13M IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing IMPFSG3FPF-be.better
#7	
B: Yaa takatay!	yaa takat-ay
B: Oh you woman!	helloSG2F woman-VOCAT
#8	
[Uudehay eeyadneet] toona biimaasiwi!	uu-dehay ZERO-eeyad-n-eet too-na bii-maasiw-i
Don't listen to the people saying that!	ARTSGMSUBJ-people IMPFPL3PF-say-IMPFPL3-WH ARTSGFOBJ-thing NEGIMPVFPF-hear-NEGIMPVF

#9	
[Aakna naan ibariin] tikteeni?	aa-kna naan i-bari-in ti-kteen-i
They themselves, what do they have? Do you (F) know?	ARTPLMSUBJ-owner what PERFPL3PF-have-PERFPL3 IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#10	
[Tu-tameen-i] tikteeni?	tu tam-een ti-kteen-i
Do you know what they eat?	ARTSGFREL eat-IMPFPL3 IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#11	
[Tu-gw'een-i] tikteeni?	tu gw'-een ti-kteen-i
Do you know what they drink?	ARTSGFREL drink-IMPFPL3 IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#12	
[Tu-eetkwiin-i] tikteeni?	tu ZERO-eetkwi-in ti-kteen-i
Do you know what they wear?	ARTSGFREL IMPFPL3PF-wear-IMPFPL3 IMPFSG2FPF-know-IMPFSG2F
#13	
Naat kiibaruun!	naat kii-baruu-n
They have nothing!	thing NEGIMPFPL3PF-have-NEGIMPFPL3
#14	
Baraah hineeka amagkaaba.'	baraah hin-ee-ka amag-kaab-a
They (M) are worse (off) than we.	PL3M we-CASGEN-than bad-than-IDPL13M

<485>

۱ بُتُوكْ اُنْتِيبْ تاجِرْ هِيسْتِيهِيهِيَهْنْ؟ ۲ اُنْءِ مِسْكِيْنْ تَكْ. ۳ اُسْنَهِيْءِ، بِيْبِيْوَكْ قُوْدْ تَمْنِءِ. ۴ ' اُوْهَالُوْكَ اَكْتِيْنْ. لَاكِيْنْ اُوْدَهِيْ: ۵ ' اُوْجُوْجَايِيْتْ نَكْتِ، اُتَاچِرِيْتْ نَكْتِ هَلَكْ كِيْبُرْ، ۶ يَهْلَكَايَاهْ شَتَمَاهْ ' [يِيْدِنِيْتْ] تُوْنَهْ هَنْبِيْسْ؟ ۷ ' يَا نَكْتِيْ! ۸ [اُوْدَهِيْ يِيْدِنِيْتْ] تُوْنَهْ يِيْمَايِيْوِيْءِ! ۹ [اَكْنَهْ نَانْ اِيْرِيْنْ] يَكْتِيْنِءِ؟ ۱۰ [تَمْنِيْنِءِ] يَكْتِيْنِءِ؟ ۱۱ [تُقُوْنِيْنِءِ] يَكْتِيْنِءِ؟ ۱۲ [تِيْبِكُوْنِيْنِءِ] يَكْتِيْنِءِ؟ ۱۳ نَاتْ كِيْبُرُوْنْ! ۱۴ نَرَاهْ هِيْبِيْكَهْ اَمَقَاَبَهْ. '

Other Subordinate Clauses

<486>

There are other subordinate clauses such as conditional or temporal clauses. Normally these clauses come before the main clause. Different types of subordinate clauses will be presented in the examples below, including conditional, purpose, and temporal clauses.

Conditional Clauses

<487>

The suffix which indicates conditions is -eek / -yeek 'if'. As usual, the form -eek is found after consonants, and the form -yeek after vowels.

<488>

This suffix can be attached to different tenses without further complications. But if the person suffix ends in -a, the -a will be replaced by the -eek. This is indicated by asterisks (*) in the paradigm here below.

Table 42: Condition Paradigm

<u>Indicative:</u>	Condition:
--------------------	------------

abari	I have	اُترے	iibri-yeek	if I had	اِیبرے-ینک
tibariya	you (M) have	تیرہ	tiibri*-yeek	if you (M) had	تِیبرے-ینک
tibarii, tibariyi	you (F) have	تیری	tiibrii-yeek	if you (F) had	تِیبری-ینک
ibari	he has	اُترے	iibri-yeek	if he had	اِیبرے-ینک
nibari	we have	تیرے	niibri-yeek	if we had	نِیبرے-ینک
tibariina	you (PL) have	تیرہ	tiibriin*-eek	if you (PL) had	تِیبرین-ینک
ibariin	they have	اُترین	iibriin-eek	if they had	اِیبرین-ینک

Three Common Forms of Conditionals

<489>

There are different ways in which conditional clauses connect with main clauses. The three most common ones are listed here below. In English, these three types can be exemplified as follows: (First) 'If I do, you do', (Second) 'If I did, you would', and (third) 'If I would have, you would have'.

<490>

In the following examples, the conditional subordinate clause always precedes the main clause, and this is indicated by '>>'.>

First Type: 'If I do, you do'

Weak verbs:		
Tamaniyeek, >> baruuk tami tindiya.	If I eat, >> you (M) will eat.	تَمَیْنِک, << بَرُوک تَمے تَندِیہ.
Tamtiniyeek, >> gabi tindiya.	If you eat, >> you (M) will be full.	تَمْتِیْنِک, << قَمے تَندِیہ.
Shagaamtiniyeek, >> anjhi tindiya.	If you work, >> you will succeed.	شَقَامْتِیْنِک, << اُنْجھے تَندِیہ.
Strong verbs:		
Ani tukwoosha anliiweek, >> baruukehan iiliw tindiya.	If I burn the garbage, >> you (M) will burn (sth.).	اُنے نُکُوْشہ اَنلیوَنک, << بَرُوکھن ایلو تَندِیہ.
Urabi danbiileek, >> idaag tindiya.	If you pile up the luggage, >> you will bring it back.	اُرے دَنبیلِک, << اِداق تَندِیہ.
Urabi adanbiileek, >> iidbil tindiya.	If I gather the luggage, >> you (M) will gather (sth.).	اُرے اَدَنبیلِک, << اِدبیل تَندِیہ.
Adangiyeek, >> idaag tindiya.	If I return (sth.), >> you (M) will return (sth.).	اَدَنقِیْک, << اِداق تَندِیہ.
Tukwoosha anliiweek, >> w'eega gwuudi indi.	If I burn the garbage, >> the smoke will increase.	نُکُوْشہ اَنلیوَنک, << وئِقہ قُوودے اِندے.
Negative weak and strong verbs:		
Tukwoosha baaliweek, >> w'eega gwuudi kiidi.	If I don't burn (sth.), >> the smoke won't increase.	نُکُوْشہ بالیوَنک, << وئِقہ قُوودے کِیدے.
Baatamayeek, >> gabi kaadi.	If I don't eat >> I won't be full.	باَتَمَیْنِک, << قَمے کادے.

Second Type: 'If I did, you would'

Weak verbs:		
Tamiyeek, > > baruuk tamtiya.	If I would eat, >> you (M) would eat.	تَمِيْتِك, < < بَرُوْك تَمْتِيَه.
Tamiyeek, > > gabi.	If I would eat, >> I would be full.	تَمِيْتِك, < < قَمِيَه.
Shagaamtiyeek, > > anjhatiya.	If you would work, >> you would succeed.	شَقَامْتِيْتِك, < < اَنْجَهْتِيَه.
Strong verbs:		
Ani tukwoosha iiliweek, > > baruukehan tiiliwa.	If I would burn the garbage, >> you (M) would burn (sth.).	اَنْع تَكُوُوْشَه اِيْلُوْتِك, < < بَرُوْكَهْن تِيْلُوَه.
Urabi tiidbileek, > > tidiiga.	If you would gather the luggage, >> you would bring it back.	اُرْبِيَه تِيْدِيْلِيْك, < < تِيْدِيْقَه.
Urabi iidbileek, > > tiidbila.	If I would gather the luggage >> you (M) would gather (sth.).	اُرْبِيَه اِيْدِيْلِيْك, < < تِيْدِيْلَه.
Idiigeek, > > tidiiga.	If I would return (sth.), >> you (M) will return (sth.).	اِيْدِيْقِيْك, < < تِيْدِيْقَه.
Tukwoosha iiliweek, > > w'eega gwuudi.	If I would burn the garbage, >> The smoke would increase.	تَكُوُوْشَه اِيْلُوْتِك, < < وِئِيْقَه قُوُوْدِيَه.
Negative weak and strong verbs:		
Tukwoosha baaliweek, > > w'eega kagwuudiya.	If I would not burn (sth.), >> the smoke would not increase.	تَكُوُوْشَه بَالِيُوْتِك, < < وِئِيْقَه كَقُوُوْدِيَه.
Baatamayeek, > > kagaban.	If I would not eat, >> I would not be full.	بَاتَمِيْتِك, < < كَقَمِيَه.

Third Type: 'If A would (not) have, B would (not) have'

Weak verbs:		
Tamaab iiktiyeek, > > baruuk tami tiiyida.	If I would have eaten, >> you (M) would have eaten.	تَمَاب اِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < بَرُوْك تَمِيَه تِيِيْدَه.
Tamaab iiktiyeek, > > gabi iiyid.	If he would have eaten, >> he would have been full.	تَمَاب اِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < قَمِيَه اِيِيْد.
Tamaab tiiktiyeek, > > gabi tiiyida.	If you (M) would have eaten, >> you (M) would have been full.	تَمَاب تِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < قَمِيَه تِيِيْدَه.
Shagaamaab tiiktiyeek, > > anjhi tiiyida.	If you would have worked, >> you would have succeeded.	شَقَامَاب تِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < اَنْجَهِيَه تِيِيْدَه.
Strong verbs:		
Tukwoosha liwaab iiktiyeek, > > baruukehan iiliw tiiyida.	If I would have burned the garbage, >> you (M) also would have burned (sth.).	تَكُوُوْشَه لِيْوَاب اِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < بَرُوْكَهْن اِيْلُو تِيِيْدَه.
Urabi diblaab tiiktiyeek, > > idaag tiiyida.	If you had gathered the luggage, >> you would have brought it back.	اُرْبِيَه دِيْلَاب تِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < اِدَاق تِيِيْدَه.
Urabi diblaab iiktiyeek, > > iidbil tiiyida.	If I would have gathered the luggage, >> you (M) would have gathered (sth.).	اُرْبِيَه دِيْلَاب اِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < اِيْدِيْل تِيِيْدَه.
Digiyaab iiktiyeek, > > idaag tiiyida.	If I would have returned (sth.), >> you (M) would have returned (sth.).	دِيْقِيَاب اِيْكِيْتِيْك, < < اِدَاق تِيِيْدَه.

Tukwoosha liwaab iiktiyeek, > > w'eega gwuudi iiyid.	If I would have burned the garbage, >> the smoke would have increased.	تُكْوُوشَه لِيوَابِ اِيكْتِييَك, < < وَتَيَقَه قُوُودَه اِيِيْد.
Negative weak and strong verbs:		
Tukwoosha liwaab baakaayeek, > > w'eega gwuudi kiidi.	If I would not have burned (sth.), >> the smoke would not have increased.	تُكْوُوشَه لِيوَابِ بَاكَايِيَك, < < وَتَيَقَه قُوُودَه كِيِيْد.
Tamaab baakaayeek, > > gabi kaadi.	If I would not have eaten, >> I would not have been full.	تَمَابِ بَاكَايِيَك, < < قَمِي كَاد.

More Examples: Conditions Real and Irrealis

<491>

Some conditions are real, others just imagined and known not to be real, i.e. irrealis.

Imhallagaayeek tiniwu, dehook adaag andi, idaag andi.	If you (M) give me your money(s), I will return it to, for you.	اِمَهَلْقَايِيَك تِيِيُو, دَهْوَك اِدَاق اُنْدَه, اِدَاق اُنْدَه.
Imhallagaayeek tiiyiyu, dehook idiig, adaag iiyid.	If you (M) would give me your money, I would return it to, for you (M)	اِمَهَلْقَايِيَك تِيِيُو, دَهْوَك اِدِيِق, اِدَاق اِيِيْد.
Imhallagaayeek hiyaayu tiiktiyeek, dehook idaag iiyid.	If you (M) would have given me your money, I would have returned it to, for you (M).	اِمَهَلْقَايِيَك هِيَايُ تِيِكْتِيِيَك, دَهْوَك اِدَاق اِيِيْد.
Rhitiniyu (NOT-yeek), sooyiheeb tindiya.	If you (M) see me, you will tell, inform (me).	رَهْتِيِيُو, سُوِيَهِيْب تِنْدِيَه
Rhitiyu (NOT-yeek), sootiyaheeb.	If you (M) would have seen (saw) me, you would have told me.	رَهْتِيِيُو, سُوْتِيَهِيْب
Rhaayu tiiktiyeek, sooyiheeb tiiyida.	If you (M) had seen me, you had told me.	رَهَايُ تِيِكْتِيِيَك, سُوِيَهِيْب تِيِيِدَه.
Ushanhook faayistiniyeek, y'ihook andi.	If you (M) finish your work, I will come to, for you.	اَشْنَهْوَك فَايِسْتِيِيَك, يَاهْوَك اُنْدَه.
Ushanhook faayistiyeek, y'ihook.	If you (M) had finished your work, I would come to you.	اَشْنَهْوَك فَايِسْتِيِيَك, يَاهْوَك.
Ani barook iiktiyeek, indhiwaayi iibi.	If I were you (M), I would go home (i.e. to my family).	اُنِي بَرُوَك اِيِكْتِيِيَك, اِنْدُوَايِي اِيِي.
Baruuh aneeb rhaaheeb indiyeeek, y'i andi.	If he wants to see me, (and not someone else), I will come.	بَرُوَه اَنْيَب رَهَايِب اِنْدِيِيَك, يَا اُنْدَه.
Tamna malooyeeh ayt tiniineek, naaka ingadiin?	If from 12 you take 5, how many remain (PL)?	تَمْنَه مَلُوِيَه اَيْت تِيِيِيَك, نَاكَه اِنْقَادِيْن?

Conditions

Sakanaab tibariyeek, sooyaahoon!	If you (M) have news, tell, inform (M) us!	سَكْنَاب تَبْرِيِيَك, سُوِيَاهُوْن!
Baruuk naat tibariyeek, hadiidaa!	If you (M) have something, speak	بَرُوَك نَات تَبْرِيِيَك, هَدِيْدَا!

	(M)!	
Batuuk naat tibarriyeek, hadiidii!	If you (F) have something, speak (F)!	بَتُّوكْ نَات تَبَرِييِيَكْ، هَدِيدِي!
Baraakna naat tibiineek, hadiidaana.	If you (PL) have something, speak (PL)!	بَرَاكْنَه نَات تَبَرِييِيَكْ، هَدِيدَانَه.

Condition Irrealis 1

<492>

There are conditions which don't apply - they are called irrealis, since they are only thought but not real. For these, the Past Continuous (also called Pluperfect) is used, to express that the events are not real. This is similar to the use of past in English 'if I had'.

Baruuh hamashaay ikatiyeet toona ...	The fact that he is blind ... ,	بَرُوْه هَمَشَاي اِكْتِييْت تَوْنَه ...
iiktiineek, baamooth'iyu.	if I had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	اِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايُ.
tiiktiineek, baamooth'iyuwa.	if you (M) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايُوْه.
tiiktiineek, baamooth'ituwi.	if you (F) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايُوْوَي.
iiktiineek, baamooth'iyu.	if he had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	اِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايُ.
tiiktiineek, baamooth'itu.	if she had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايُتْ.
niiktiinneek, baamooth'iya.	if we had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	نِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايَه.
tiiktiinneek, baamooth'iyaana.	if you (M PL) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايَانَه.
tiiktiinneek, baamooth'itaana.	if you (F PL) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايَاتَانَه.
iiktiinneek, baamooth'iya.	if they (M) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	اِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايَه.
iiktiinneek, baamooth'iya.	if they (F) had known (sth.), I wouldn't have fought.	اِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَامُوْثَايَه.

<493>

In the following examples, more non-real (irrealis) and real conditions are presented.

Condition Irrealis 2

Bak iiwra tiyidinet toona iiktiineek, baabookna sooyi.	If I had known the fact that you (M) wanted to do like that, I would have told your father.	بَك اِيْوَرَه تِييِيْدِيْنِيْت تَوْنَه اِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَابُوْكَنَه سُوْيِيَه.
Bak iiwra iiyideet toona tiiktiineek, baabu sootiya.	If you (M) had known the fact that he wanted to do like that, you (M) would have told my father.	بَك اِيْوَرَه اِيْيِيْدِيْت تَوْنَه تِيكْتِييِيَكْ، بَابُ سُوْتِيَه.
Shaawi shijaaraat gw'atiniyeek, baabook sooni	If you (M) smoke a cigarette again, we will tell, inform your father.	شَاوْمِي شِيْجَارَات قُوْأْتِييِيَكْ، بَابُوْكَ سُوْنِيَه.

neeyad.		نڀيد .
---------	--	--------

Condition Negative: Weak Verbs

Ushanhu baadaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaawheeb kiidi.	If I do not do my work, he won't give me money.	أشهنه بادائيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهيب كيدے.
Ushanhook biddaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaawhook kiidi.	If you (M) do not do your (M) work, he won't give you (M) money.	أشهنوك بدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهوك كيدے.
Ushanhook biddaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaawhook kiidi.	If you (F) do not do your (F) work, he won't give you (F) money.	أشهنوك بدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهوك كيدے.
Ushanhooh biidaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaaw kiidi.	If he does not do his work, he won't give him money.	أشهنوه بيدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياو كيدے.
Ushanhooh biddaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaaw kiidi.	If she does not do her work, he won't give her money.	أشهنوه بدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياو كيدے.
Ushanhoon bindaayayeeek, mhallagaab iyaawhoon kiidi.	If we do not do our work, he won't give us money.	أشهنون بندائيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهون كيدے.
Ushanhookna biddaayayneek, mhallagaab iyaawhookna kiidi.	If you (PL) do not do your (PL) work, he won't give you (PL) money.	أشهنوكنه بدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهوكنه كيدے.
Ushanhooh biidaayayneek, mhallagaab iyaaw kiidi.	If they do not do their work, he won't give them money.	أشهنوه بيدائيتيك, مهلقاب اياو كيدے.

Condition Negative: Strong Verbs

Ushanhu baafaayisayeeek, naat iyaawheeb kiidi.	If I do not finish my work, he won't give me anything.	أشهنه بافايسيتيك, نات اياوهيب كيدے.
Ushanhook bitfaayisayeeek, naat iyaawhook kiidi.	If you (M) do not finish your (M) work, he won't give you (M) anything.	أشهنوك بتفايسيتيك, نات اياوهوك كيدے.
Ushanhook bitfaayisayeeek, naat iyaawhook kiidi.	If you (F) do not finish your (F) work, he won't give you (F) anything.	أشهنوك بتفايسيتيك, نات اياوهوك كيدے.
Ushanhooh biifaayisayeeek, naat iyaaw kiidi.	If he does not finish his work, he won't give him anything.	أشهنوه بيتفايسيتيك, نات اياو كيدے.
Ushanhooh bitfaayisayeeek, naat iyaaw kiidi.	If she does not finish her work, he won't give her anything.	أشهنوه بتفايسيتيك, نات اياو كيدے.
Ushanhoon binfaayisayeeek, naat iyaawhoon kiidi.	If we do not finish our work, he won't give us anything.	أشهنون بتفايسيتيك, نات اياوهون كيدے.
Ushanhookna bitfaayisayneek, naat iyaawhookna kiidi.	If you (PL) do not finish your (PL) work, he won't give you (PL) anything.	أشهنوكنه بتفايسيتيك, نات اياوهوكنه كيدے.
Ushanhooh biifaayisayneek, naat iyaaw kiidi.	If they do not finish their work, he won't give them anything.	أشهنوه بيتفايسيتيك, نات اياو كيدے.

Condition: More Examples

W'ayuuh dawilu, hangiiteek.	His arrival is close, if you wait.	وأيوه دول, هنتيتيك .
Agriitniyeeek, anjhi tindiya.	If you study, you will have success.	أقريتيتيك, أنجهه تدييه .
Anjhatniyeeek, mhallagaab iyaawhook	If you have success, I'll give	أنجهتيتيك, مهلقاب اياوهوك

andi.	you money.	أندے .
Giiganiyeek, shaawi y'i kaadi.	If I go, I won't come again.	قِيَقْنِيَتِك, شاوے يا كادے .
Maasiwaab iiktiyeek, y'ihookna iiyid.	If I had heard (PTCP), I would have come to you.	ماسوااب اِيكْتِيَتِك, يَاهُوْكَنْه اِيْد .
Rhaayookna iiktiyeek, dabaaysalaamihookna iiyid.	If I had seen you (PL), I would have greeted you (PL).	رهايوْكَنْه اِيكْتِيَتِك, ذبايسلاامهوْكَنْه اِيْد .
Barook iiktiyeek, indhiwaayi iibi.	If I were you (M), I would go home (to my family).	بروْكَ اِيكْتِيَتِك, اِنْدُوَايْه اِيْبِي .
Agwoordaat sagiit tikatiyeekehan, whireeriida fagaramaa!	Even if Aqordat (F) is far, be (M) strong for the journey.	اَقُوْرْدَات سَقِيْت تِكْتِيَكْهَنْ, وُهْرِيْرِيْدَه فَقْرَمَا!
Jarrabtiniyeek, dehook madaatu / teemadi.	If you (M) try, it (F) is easy for you (M).	جَرَبْتِيَتِك, دهوْكَ مَدَاتُ / تِيْمَدے .
Jarrabteeneek, dehookna madaatu / teemadi.	If you (PL) try, it (F) is easy for you (PL).	جَرَبْتِيَتِك, دهوْكَنْه مَدَاتُ / تِيْمَدے .

Condition: Paradigm 'see if'

Baadaayayeek shibibaheeb!	See (M) if I don't do it!	باداَيِيَتِك شِيْبِيْبِيْب!
Biddaayayeek niishbib(hook)!	Let's see if you (M) don't do it!	بِدَاَيِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوك)!
Biddaayayeek niishbib(hook) / shibibtook eenay!	Let's see if you (F) don't do it!	بِدَاَيِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوك) / شِيْبِيْبْتُوْكَ اِيْنِي!
Biidaayayeek shibiba!	See (M) if he doesn't do it!	بِيْدَاَيِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب!
Biddaayayeek shibiba!	See (M) if she doesn't do it!	بِدَاَيِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب!
Bindaayayeek shibiba(hoon)!	See (M) if we don't do it!	بِنْدَاَيِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب (هون)!
Biddaayayneek niishbib(hookna)!	Let's see if you (PL) don't do it!	بِدَاَيِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوكنه)!
Biidaayayneek shibiba!	See (M) if they don't do it!	بِيْدَاَيِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب!

Condition: Paradigm 'see if not'

Baatamayeek shibiba(heeb)!	See (M) if I don't eat!	باَتَمِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب (هيب)!
Bittamayeek niishbib(hook)!	Let's see if you (M) don't eat!	بِيْتَمِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوك)!
Bittamayeek niishbib(hook)!	Let's see if you (F) don't eat!	بِيْتَمِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوك)!
Biitamayeek shibiba!	See (M) if he doesn't eat!	بِيْتَمِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب!
Bittamayeek shibiba!	See (M) if she doesn't eat!	بِيْتَمِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب!
Bintamayeek shibiba(hoon)!	See (M) if we don't eat!	بِنْتَمِيَتِك شِيْبِيْب (هون)!
Bittamayneek niishbib(hookna) /	Let's see if you (PL)	بِيْتَمِيَتِك نِيْشِيْب (هوكنه) /

shibibtookna eenay!	don't eat!	شِبِيبْتُو كَنه يَتِي!
Biitamayneek shibiba!	See (M) if they don't eat!	بِيْتَامَيْنِيك شِبِيبَه!

Purpose Clauses

Interrogative Adverbs: Purpose

Naanhooy?	Why?	نَانهَوِي؟
Naanaatii?	Why, what from?	نَانَاتِي؟

Paradigm: 'In order that'

Rayhamani-kaabu.	In order that I may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَنِي - كَابُ.
Rayhamtini-kaawa.	In order that you (M) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِي - كَاوَه.
Rayhamtini-kaatuwi.	In order that you (F) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِي - كَاتُوِي.
Rayhamiini-kaabu.	In order that he may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمِينِي - كَابُ.
Rayhamtini-kaatu.	In order that she may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِي - كَاتُ.
Rayhamnay-kaaba.	In order that we may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَنِي - كَابَه.
Rayhamteena-kaabaana.	In order that you (M PL) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِيَه - كَابَانَه.
Rayhamteena-kaataana / rayhamteen-kaataana.	In order that you (F PL) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِيَه - كَاتَانَه / رَيَهَمَتْنِيَه - كَاتَانَه.
Rayhameen-kaaba.	In order that they (M) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِي - كَابَه.
Rayhameen-kaata.	In order that they (F) may be satisfied.	رَيَهَمَتْنِي - كَاتَه.

Temporal and Other Clauses

Interrogative Adverbs: Temporal

Naahoob?	When, what moment?	نَاهُوْب؟
Naadoor?	When, what time?	نَادُوْر؟
Naamha?	When, what day?	نَامَهَه؟

<494>

Before the suffix -hoob / -nhoob 'when', vowels may be deleted just as they would be deleted before -eek / -yeek 'if'. Note that this suffix has two alternative forms: After strong verbs it is -hoob, and after weak verbs it is -nhoob.

Temporal Suffix: 'when'

Halak dilbi tiniinhoob, tirig gaal haay kitihagiti?	When you buy a dress, doesn't it last (even) one month?	هَلَك دِلْبِي تِينِهْوُوب. تِرِيغ غَال هَاي كِيْتِهَاقِيْتِي؟
Nimmarari door haddiit	I wait until the time we meet again.	نِيْمَرَرِي دُوْر هَدِّيْت اَهْتَقِيْتِي.

ahangiit.		
Ushanhook faayistiniyeeb haddiit isanhook andi.	Until you (M) finish your work, I will wait for you (M).	أَشْهَوْكُ فَايْسْتِينِيْب هَدِّيْت إِسَانْهَوْكُ أَنْدَعِ .
Aharagwhoob, ab'ar.	When I was hungry, I woke up.	أَهْرَقُوْهَوْب, أَبَار .
Ayiwayhoob, ab'ar.	When I was thirsty, I woke up.	أَيُوِيْهَوْب, أَبَار .
Karan nidwilhoob, utambiiluun ikt'a.	When we came close to Keren, our car broke down	كَرَن نِدْوِلْهَوْب, أْتَمْبِيلُون إِكْتَاهُ / أَفْرِيْه .
Baruuk waliiktanhoob, ani tami.	When you (M) called, I was eating.	بَرُوْكَ وَليْكَتْنَهَوْب, أَنْعِ تَمَعِ .
Ugawooh shuumanhoob, Haamid tu'argin ihirid.	When I came to his house, Hamid was slaughtering the sheep.	أَقُوْوَه شُوْمَنْهَوْب, هَامِيْد تَارَقْن إِهْرِيْد .

'When, if': More Examples

Baabu rhanihoob, asi angadi.	When I see my father, I stand up.	بَابُ رَهْنِهَوْب, أَسَعِ أَنْقَدَعِ .
Ustaaz eeyiinihoob, asi ningadi.	When a teacher comes, we stand up.	أُسْتَاْز تِيْبِيْنِهَوْب, أَسَعِ يَنْقَدَعِ .
Bitsh'asayu, iibdhan andi.	If you (M) don't remind me, I will forget.	بِيْتَشْأَسِيْ, إِي بَدَّنْ أَنْدَعِ .
Sh'astiniyu, iibdhan kaadi.	If you (F) remind me, I will not forget.	شْأَسْتِيْ, إِي بَدَّنْ كَادَعِ .
Baraah faayisiyaaneek, araata andi.	If (when) they have finished, I want to ask (them).	بَرَاه فَايْسِيْأَانِيْكَ, أَرَاتَه أَنْدَعِ .
Ibhaliyeek faayistaayeek, gaana araatihook andi.	If (when) you (M) have finished your speech (LIT words), I will ask you something.	إِبْهَالِيْيِيْكَ فَايْسْتَاْيِيْكَ, قَانَه أَرَاتِهَوْكُ أَنْدَعِ .

Conversation 23: 'Selling Things' (Examples of Conditional Clauses)

<495>

S: seller, B: buyer

#1	
S: Oon'umsajal dilbi tiniina?	oon-'u-msajal dilbi ti-niin-a
S: Will you buy this recorder?	NEARSGMOBJPF-ARTSGM-recorder buying IMPFSG2MPF-take-IMPFSG2M
#2	
B: Awooh, dilbi aniin.	awooh dilbi a-niin
B: Yes, I will buy it.	yes buying IMPFSG1PF-take
#3	
B: Naakaaba?	naakaab-a
B: How much is it (i.e. the price) (LIT are they)?	how.many-IDPL13M
#4	

S: Malu sheeya.	malu shee-ya
S: Two hundred it is (LIT they are).	two hundred-IDPL13M
#5	
B: Rhasaabu.	rhas-aab-u
B: That is cheap.	be.cheap-PTCPAST-IDSG13M
#6	
Laakiin ani d'a gwadu mhallagaab kaabaru.	laakiin ani d'a gwad-u mhallagaab kaa-baru
But now I don't have the money with me.	but 1SG now with-POSSSG1 money NEGIMPFSG1PF-have
#7	
Lhayt baakaayt hangiiiteek, hook dilbi ayaay andi.	lhayt baa-ka-ayt ZERO-hangii-t-eek hook dilbi ayaay a-ndi
If you wait till after tomorrow, I will trade it.	tomorrow NEGPTCPPF-be-NEGPTCPF IMPFSG2MPF-wait-IMPFSG2M-ADV+if SG2 trade take.FUTSG IMPFSG1PF-say
#8	
S: Aaw iddamiinhook?	aaw i-ddamiin-hook
S: Who will guarantee for you?	who IMPFSG3MPF-guarantee-OBJSG2
#9	
B: Yaa takay!	yaa tak-ay
B: Oh you man!	helloSG2M man-VOCAT
#10	
Baruuk biddamiinu, aaw iddamiinheeb?	baruuk biddamiinu aaw i-ddamiin-heeb
If you don't guarantee for me, who will guarantee for me?	SG2M NEG-guarantee-OBJSG1 who IMPFSG3MPF-guarantee-OBJSG1
#11	
Masi anii gwisir (haraab) rhaawa?	masi an-ii gwisir haraab rh-aa-wa
Have you ever heard (LIT seen) a lie from me?	yet 1SG-ADV+off lie wrong see-PTCPAST-IDSG2M
#12	
S: Bariisook gwisir eeneenaaka rhaab kaaki.	bariisook gwisir eeneenaaka rh-aab kaa-ki
S: I haven't seen any lie from you.	off.SG2M lie any see-PTCPAST NEGIMPFSG1PF-be
#13	
Laakiin ani mhallagaayeeda shanahu!	laakiin ani mhallag-aa-yee-da shanah-u

But I need the money!	but 1SG money-CASGEN-PL-ADVGEN+for needy-IdSG13M
#14	
Lhayt ooriitu simaaya abari.	lhayt oor-iit-u simaaya a-bari
Tomorrow I have a naming ceremony for my boy (child).	tomorrow boy-CASGEN-POSSSG1 naming.ceremony PERFSG1PF-have
#15	
B: Bak ikatiyeek, weer dehay shibiba!	bak i-kati-yeek weer dehay shibib-a
B: If that is so, look for other people!	so IMPFSG3MPF-be-ADV+if other people look-IMPVM
#16	
S: Daayiib tidiya.	daayiib ti-di-ya
S: Well spoken.	good PERFSG2MPF-say-PERFSG2M

<496>

۱ وُنْ مَسْجَلْ دِلْبِي تَبِينَه؟ ۲ اُوْوَه. دِلْبِي اَيْن. ۳ نَاكَاہ؟ ۴ مَلْ شِيہ. ۵ رَهْسَاہ. ۶ لَاكِيْن اُنْ دَاہ قُوْدُ مَهْلَقَابْ كَابُرُ. ۷ لَهَيْتْ بَاكَايْتْ هَنْقِيْتِيكْ. هُوَكْ دِلْبِي اَبَايْ اُنْدَع. ۸ اُو اِدْمِيْنَهْوَكْ؟ ۹ يَا تَكِي! ۱۰ بَرُوَكْ بَدْمِيْنُ. اَو اِدْمِيْنَهَيْبْ؟ ۱۱ مَسْرَ اُنِي قُوْسِرْ (هَرَاب) رِهَاوَه؟ ۱۲ بَرِيْسُوَكْ قُوْسِرْ تَبِيْنَاكَه رِهَابْ كَاكْرَ. ۱۳ لَاكِيْن اُنْ مَهْلَقَايْنِدَه سَنَاہ. ۱۴ لَهَيْتْ وُرِيْتُ سِمَايَه اُبْرَع. ۱۵ تَكْ اِكْتِيْتِكْ. وِتْرْ دَهِي شِيہ! ۱۶ دَايِيْبْ تَدِيہ.

Annex

Strong Verbs and Their Stems

<497>

This section lists the 7 basic stems of strong verbs. All frequent verbs have been included, and they are given in the alphabetical order of the main stem. A key to the English glosses follows below.

<498>

In Afro-Asiatic languages, verbs tend to have a consonantal skeleton of two, three or four radicals - usually three. The flesh, so to speak, is supplied by the vowels between them. The vowels may change, but the radicals don't.

<499>

The tri-radical pattern of CiCiC- Beja verbs is the most frequent, normal pattern - as in other Afro-Asiatic languages. For verbs of this pattern, all forms can be predicted. But there are many variations of this pattern. Some verbs don't have the first radical (e.g. CiC- like riba 'to refuse'), others start with a 'glottal sound' (e.g. HaCiC- like hariwa 'to look for'), others again end in 'y' (e.g. bariya 'to have').

<500>

All of these deviations from the 'normal' CiCiC- pattern lead to regular changes, but the interplay of these changes is difficult to predict. For this reason, all stems have been included. They are numbered from 1 to 7. The numbers refer to the seven different stems as follows:

1. Imperative, Past / Perfect, Participle, Negative Present
2. Negative Imperative, Negative Participle
3. Present / Imperfect Singular
4. Present / Imperfect Plural

5. Future
6. Past Continuous / Pluperfect
7. Action Noun

<501>

Where any of these stems have not been listed, the form either does not exist, or it has not been found as part of the active data base. An English key to this verb list is provided at the end of this list. The abbreviations 'e.o.' and 'w.e.o.' stand for 'each other' and 'with each other'. The abbreviation REP stands for repetitive actions and actions which involve more than one object (This includes activities such as laughing, which is considered repetitive).

have (very frequent)	-(bariy-), 2 bariiy, 3 bari, 4 ibari, 5 iibra, 6 iibiri, 7 tu-baraay
be (very frequent)	-(fay-), 2 -, 3 eefi, 4 eefi, 5 -, 6 iifi, 7 tu-fayaay
be (very frequent)	-(hay-), 2 hay, 3 -, 4 -, 5 -, 6 iheeyi haay, 7 -
consult w.e.o. (frequent)	-(makakir-), 2 makakiir, 3 -, 4 immakakiir, 5 -, 6 -, 7 -
meet w.e.o. (frequent)	-(mararay-), 2 maraarayin, 3 -, 4 immarari, 5 -, 6 -, 7 -
spend the day (REP) (frequent)	aayim, 2 ayim, 3 ee'eeyim, 4 ee'eeyim tee'eeyimna, 5 iiyam, 6 iiyim, 7 -
seize (frequent)	abik, 2 abiik, 3 'anbiik, 4 'abik / n'abiik, 5 y'ibik, 6 y'ibik, 7 -
hobble, divide (frequent)	adhidh, 2 adhiidh, 3 'andhiidh, 4 'adhidh, 5 y'idhidh, 6 -, 7 w-'adhuudh
return (sth.) (frequent)	agir, 2 agiir, 3 'angiir, 4 'agir, 5 y'igir, 6 -, 7 t-'aguur / w'aguur
take (very frequent)	ah, 2 haay, 3 niin, 4 eeyay, 5 ayaay / iyaay, 6 ihi / iheeyi, 7 u-myaay
ride (infrequent)	am, 2 aam, 3 eed'iim, 4 eed'iim, 5 iid'am, 6 -, 7 -
quarrel once (frequent)	amooth', 2 mooth'iy, 3 mooth'i, 4 imooth'i, 5 imuuth'a, 6 imuuth'i, 7 t-'amooth'ooy
respect, tolerate (frequent)	amtaraam, 2 mtariim, 3 mtarriim, 4 imtarriim, 5 imtirim, 6 imtirriim, 7 t-'amtarmuum
be organized, in order (frequent)	arariw, 2, 3 'aarariiw, 4 'aarariiw, 5 i'irriiw, 6 -, 7 -
help (frequent)	away, 2 awaay, 3 t'awi, 4 it'awi, 5 iit'iw, 6 -, 7 t-'awyaay
forget (frequent)	baadhin, 2 dhiin, 3 eebdhiin, 4 eebdhiin, 5 iibdhan, 6 -, 7 -
go to (very frequent)	baay, 2 baay, 3 eebi, 4 eebi, 5 iiba, 6 iibi, 7 i-miibi
fear (frequent)	b'an, 2 b'iin, 3 ban'i / b'ani, 4 iban'a / nib'an, 5 -, 6 iib'in, 7 -
wake up, get up oneself (frequent)	b'ar, 2 b'iir, 3 tb'iir, 4 eetb'ir, 5 iitb'ar, 6 -, 7 oo-mb'ar
decide (frequent)	bisir, 2 -, 3 bansiir, 4 ibasir, 5 iibsir, 6 iibsir, 7 -
separate, be between (frequent)	bitik, 2 batiik, 3 bantiik, 4 ibatik, 5 iibtik, 6 iibtik, 7 oo-btuuk
kill (REP) (frequent)	daar, 2 daar, 3 eedri, 4 eedri, 5 iidra, 6 -, 7 uu-madar
count once (frequent)	dhigwi, 2 dhagwi, 3 dhangwi, 4 idheegw, 5 idhaagw, 6 -, 7

	oo-dhgwuuy
go away (frequent)	dif, 2 diif, 3 ndiif, 4 eedif, 5 iidif, 6 iidif, 7 i-madaf
return (INTR) (less frequent)	digay, 2 dgaay, 3 ddagi, 4 iddagi, 5 iddig, 6 iiddigi, 7 too-dgwooy / tu-midgwooy
return (sth.) (frequent)	digiy, 2 dagiyy, 3 dangi, 4 ideeg, 5 idaag, 6 idiig, 7 oo-dgwuuy
crouch (less frequent)	digwagw, 2 digwaagw, 3 ddagwiigw, 4 iddagwiigw, 5 iddigwigw, 6 -, 7 too-dgwuugw / tuu-midgwaygw
trade (frequent)	dilib, 2 daliib, 3 dalliib, 4 idalib, 5 iidlib, 6 iidlib, 7 oo-dluub
kill (frequent)	dir, 2 dariy, 3 ndiir / adarri, 4 eedir, 5 idaar, 6 -, 7 -
do, put (very frequent)	d'iy, 2 d'iiy, 3 dan'i, 4 id'i / eed'i, 5 iid'a / ad'a, 6 iid'i, 7 oo-d'uuy / i-miid'i
say, mean (very frequent)	diy, 2 diiy, 3 ndi, 4 eeyad, 5 iyyad, 6 iyyid, 7 u-miyaad
get married (frequent)	d'ur, 2 d'iir, 3 nd'iir, 4 eed'ur, 5 iid'ur, 6 iid'ur, 7 i-m'ad'ar
laugh (frequent)	faayid, 2 faaiid, 3 eefyiid, 4 eefyiid, 5 iifyad, 6 -, 7 ee-fyad
open, untie (frequent)	fidig, 2 fadiig, 3 fandiig, 4 ifadig, 5 iifdig, 6 iifdig, 7 oo-fduug
get out (sth.) (frequent)	fir', 2 far', 3 farr'i, 4 ifar'a, 5 iifir'a, 6 iifir'a, 7 too-fr'ooy / i-mifir'i
get out (INTR) (infrequent)	fir', 2 tfar', 3 tfar'i, 4 itfar'i, 5 itfir'a, 6 itfir'a, 7 i-mifir'i / too-fr'ooy
dig (less frequent)	firik, 2 fariik, 3 farriik, 4 ifarik, 5 iifrik, 6 iifrik, 7 oo-fruuk
give birth (frequent)	firiyy, 2 fariiy, 3 farri, 4 ifeer, 5 ifaar, 6 -, 7 u-fraay
lift (less frequent)	fitik, 2 fatiik, 3 fantiik, 4 ifatik, 5 iiftik, 6 iifrik, 7 oo-ftuuk
eat breakfast (less frequent)	fitir, 2 fatiir, 3 fantiir, 4 ifatir, 5 iiftir, 6 iiftir, 7 oo-ftuur
comb (less frequent)	fitit, 2 fatiit, 3 fantiit, 4 ifatit, 5 iiftit, 6 iiftit, 7 oo-ftuut
carry, take care of (frequent)	fiyak, 2 fiyaak, 3 tfayiik, 4 itfayiik, 5 itfiyak, 6 itfiyik, 7 tu-mifyeek
stand (frequent)	gad, 2 ngaad, 3 ngadi, 4 ingadi, 5 iingida, 6 iingidi, 7 i-mingid
ignore, be ignorant (frequent)	gam, 2 gaam, 3 eedgiim, 4 eegami, 5 iigam, 6 iigam, 7 tu-gamaam
throw (frequent)	gid, 2 giid, 3 ngiid, 4 eegid, 5 iigid, 6 -, 7 oo-gaad
move (sth.) (less frequent)	gwishish, 2 gwashiish, 3 gwanshiish, 4 igwashish, 5 iigwshish, 6 iigwshish, 7 -
forbid (frequent)	habiy, 2 habiyy, 3 hanbi, 4 heeb / nhabi, 5 ihaab, 6 ihiib, 7 w-habuuy
wait (frequent)	hagit, 2 hagiit, 3 hangiit, 4 hagit, 5 ihigit, 6 -, 7 te-haguut
close, tie (frequent)	hakwir, 2 hakwiir, 3 hankwiir, 4 hakwir, 5 ihikwir, 6 -, 7 -
thank, praise (frequent)	hamid, 2 hamiid, 3 hammiid, 4 hamid, 5 ihmid, 6 -, 7 w-hamuud
be bitter, be serious	hamiy, 2 hamaay, 3 tehami, 4 itehami, 5 ihaam, 6 ihiim, 7 te-

(infrequent)	hamuuy
be hungry (frequent)	haragw, 2 haraagw, 3 tehariigw, 4 itehariigw, 5 itehirigw, 6 itehirigw, 7 te-hargwooy
slaughter (less frequent)	harid, 2 hariid, 3 harriid, 4 harid, 5 ihrid, 6 -, 7 w-haruud
watch (less frequent)	harifa , 2 hariif, 3 harriif, 4 harif, 5 ihrif, 6 -, 7 w-haruuf
try to find (very frequent)	hariw, 2 hariiw, 3 harriiw, 4 hariw, 5 ihriw, 6 ihriw, 7 w-haruuw
be angry, worry (frequent)	hasay, 2 hasaay, 3 tehasi, 4 itehasi, 5 itehis, 6 iitehas, 7 tu-hasyaay
think (frequent)	hasib, 2 hasiib, 3 hansiiib, 4 hasib, 5 ihisib, 6 -, 7 w-hasuub
spend evening (frequent)	hawid, 2 hawiid, 3 hanwiid, 4 hawid, 5 ihiwid, 6 ihiwid, 7 w-hawuud
sew once (infrequent)	hayid, 2 haayiid, 3 hanyiid, 4 hayid, 5 ihyid, 6 ihiiyad, 7 -
be better (frequent)	hayis, 2 hayiis, 3 hanyiis, 4 hayis, 5 ihiyis, 6 -, 7 tu-mhayas / tu-mhayis
give (very frequent)	hiy, 2 hiiw, 3 niw, 4 eeyaaw, 5 iyaaw, 6 iiyiw, 7 u-miyaaw
cover (less frequent)	humiy, 2 humiyy, 3 hummi, 4 heem, 5 ihum, 6 -, 7 w-humuuy
know (very frequent)	kan, 2 kaan, 3 kteen, 4 ikteen, 5 iikan, 6 iktiin, 7 tu-kanaan
be, become (very frequent)	kay / ak, 2 kaay, 3 kati, 4 ikati, 5 iikta, 6 iikti, 7 i-miiki / tu-kayaan
build a dam (less frequent)	kirir, 2 kariir, 3 karriir, 4 ikarir, 5 iikrir, 6 iikrir, 7 oo-kruur
break (frequent)	kit', 2 kat'iy, 3 kant'i, 4 ikat'a, 5 iikt'a, 6 -, 7 too-kt'ooy / oo-kt'uuy
be written (less frequent)	kitab, 2 ktaab, 3 tkatiib, 4 itkatiib, 5 itkitib, 6 iitkitib, 7 tuumikteeb
write (frequent)	kitib, 2 katiib, 3 kantiib, 4 ikatib, 5 iiktib, 6 iiktib, 7 oo-ktuub
arrive (frequent)	kitim, 2 katiim, 3 kantiim, 4 ikatim, 5 iiktim, 6 iiktim, 7 tu-katmooy
do with, make (REP) (frequent)	kwaas, 2 kwaasiy, 3 eekwsi, 4 eekwsi, 5 iikwsa, 6 -, 7 too-kwas
dress oneself (less frequent)	kwaay, 2 kwaaya, 3 eetkwi, 4 eetkwi, 5 iitkwa, 6 -, 7 -
create (frequent)	kwas, 2 kwasiy, 3 kwasi, 4 ikwasi, 5 iikwsa, 6 -, 7 -
have in mind (frequent)	kwin, 2 kwiin, 3 nkwiin, 4 eekwin, 5 iikwin, 6 -, 7 -
pay debts (less frequent)	kwisiy, 2 kwasiyy, 3 kwansi, 4 ikwees, 5 ikwaas, 6 -, 7 oo-kwsuuy
hear (REP) (frequent)	maasiw, 2 maasiw, 3 eemsiw, 4 eemsiw, 5 iimsaw, 6 iimsaw, 7 tu-meesswooy
be bad (frequent)	mag, 2 maag, 3 eetmiig, 4 eetmiig, 5 iitmag, 6 -, 7 oo-maag
get ready (frequent)	mar, 2 maar, 3 eetmiir, 4 eetmiir, 5 iitmar, 6 -, 7 too-mruuy
remain (less frequent)	mhiy, 2 mhiyy, 3 manhi, 4 imhi, 5 iimha, 6 -, 7 tu-mhiyooy

advise (infrequent)	mikir, 2 makiir, 3 mankiir / eemkiir, 4 imakir, 5 iimkir, 6 iimkir, 7 oo-mkwuur
find (very frequent)	miriy, 2 mariiy, 3 marri, 4 imeer, 5 imaar, 6 imiir, 7 oo-mraay / u-miryaay
miss (frequent)	naw, 2 naaw, 3 eetniiw, 4 eetniiw, 5 iitnaw, 6 iitniw, 7 oo-naaw
be thin (infrequent)	nhaw, 2 nhaaw, 3 eetnhiw / eenhawi, 4 eetnhiw, 5 iitnhaw, 6 -, 7 tu-nhawooy
milk animals (infrequent)	niiy, 2 -, 3 nanyi, 4 ineeyi / ninayi, 5 -, 6 iini, 7 -
be cured (less frequent)	n'ur, 2 n'iira kaan'ur, 3 n'iir, 4 een'ur, 5 iin'ur, 6 ii'nur, 7 tu-n'urooy
accompany (frequent)	ram, 2 raam, 3 eetriim, 4 eetriim, 5 iitram, 6 -, 7 tu-ramaam / i-ramaam / tu-marmooy
refuse (very frequent)	rib, 2 riib, 3 rriib, 4 eerib, 5 iirib, 6 iirib, 7 i-marab / oo-raab
stretch, drive (frequent)	rigig, 2 rariig, 3 rangiig, 4 iragig, 5 iirigig, 6 iirigig, 7 oo-rguug
be afraid (frequent)	rikwi, 2 rakwi, 3 rankwi, 4 ireekw, 5 irakw, 6 -, 7 u-mirkwaay
sit (frequent)	s'a, 2 si', 3 eest'i, 4 eest'i, 5 iist'a, 6 iist'a, 7 i-miis'a
organize, put in order (frequent)	s'arariw, 2, 3 s'arariw, 4 is'arariw, 5 -, 6 is'iririw, 7 -
to age, get old (frequent)	sh'a, 2 sh', 3 eesht'i, 4 eesht'i, 5 iisht'a, 6 -, 7 -
add (very frequent)	shaaw, 2 shaawiy, 3 eeshwi, 4 eeshwi, 5 iishwa, 6 iishwi, 7 tu-shawaw
gather (REP) (frequent)	shaawawiy, 2 shaawawiy, 3 eeshiwawi, 4 eeshiwawi, 5 iishwiwa, 6 iishwiwi, 7 tu-shaawawiyoo
look (very frequent)	shibib, 2 shabiib, 3 shanbiib, 4 ishabib, 5 iishbib, 6 iishbib, 7 oo-shbuub
wash (less frequent)	shigwidh, 2 shagwiidh, 3 shangwiidh, 4 ishagwidh / neeshgwidh, 5 iishgwidh, 6 iishgwidh, 7 tu-mishgweedh / oo-shgwuudh
scratch (less frequent)	shikidh, 2 shakiidh, 3 shankiidh, 4 ishakidh, 5 iishkidh, 6 iishkidh, 7 -
be needy, worry (frequent)	shinh, 2 shinah, 3 shtanhi, 4 ishtanhi, 5 ishtinha, 6 ishtinhi / shinaah, 7 too-shnhooy
multiply, let quarrel (frequent)	shooth'ath', 2, 3 shooth'ath'i, 4, 5 -, 6 iishuth'ith'i, 7 -
be far (frequent)	sigiy, 2 sagi, 3 sangi, 4 iseeg, 5 isaag, 6 -, 7 too-sgwuuy
run after (frequent)	sikwi, 2 sakwi, 3 sankwi, 4 iseekw, 5 isaakw, 6 iiskwi, 7 too-skwooy / oo-skwooy
to name (frequent)	sim, 2 siim, 3 nsiim, 4 eesim, 5 iisim / iisiim, 6 -, 7 tu-simoom
listen (frequent)	sinaakir, 2 snaakiir, 3 snaakiir, 4 isneekiir tisneekiirna, 5 isniikar, 6 isniikar, 7 tu-snaakrooy

subtract (frequent)	sinakwis, 2 -, 3 snakwiis, 4 isnakwiis, 5 -, 6 isniikwis, 7 -
make clean (less frequent)	sinhas, 2 snhiis, 3 snhiis, 4 isnhiis, 5 isnhis, 6 -, 7 -
wait, stay (frequent)	siniy, 2 saniy, 3 sanni, 4 iseen, 5 isaan, 6 -, 7 u-misnaay
take to, bring to (less frequent)	sitoob, 2 sitoobi, 3 stoobi, 4 istoobi, 5 istub, 6 -, 7 tu-stoobooy
cause to be ready, prepare (less frequent)	soomir, 2 soomiir, 3 soomiir, 4 isoomiir, 5 isuumir, 6 -, 7 -
beat, knock (frequent)	tha', 2 th', 3 nth'i, 4 eeth'i, 5 iith'a, 6 iith'a, 7 oo-th'a
fill (frequent)	tib, 2 tiib, 3 ntiib, 4 eetib, 5 iitib, 6 iitib, 7 oo-taab
prepare, produce (less frequent)	tikwikw, 2 takwiikw, 3 tankwiikw, 4 itakwikw, 5 iitkwikw, 6 iitkwikw, 7 oo-tkwuukw
cook (frequent)	tikwi, 2 takwi, 3 tankwi, 4 iteekw, 5 itaakw, 6 -, 7 oo-tkwuuy
divide (less frequent)	tirib, 2 tariib, 3 tarriib, 4 itarib, 5 iitrib, 6 iitrib, 7 oo-truub
be similar (very frequent)	t'iy, 2 t'iiy, 3 tan'i, 4 it'i, 5 it'a, 6 iit'i, 7 i-miit'i
let, leave (less frequent)	ush, 2 iish, 3 n'iish, 4 ee'ush, 5 ii'ush, 6 -, 7 ee-m'ish
do, make (less frequent)	weer, 2 weeri, 3 eewri, 4 eewri / neewari, 5 iiwra, 6 iiwiri, 7 tu-weerooy
blame (frequent)	yaay, 2 yaay, 3 eetyi, 4 eetyi, 5 iityay, 6 iityay tiityaya, 7 oo-yaay
die (less frequent)	yay, 2 yaay, 3 yaayi, 4 iyaayi, 5 iiyya, 6 iiyiy, 7 too-yat

English Key: Strong Verb Stems

accompany (frequent)	ram
add (very frequent)	shaaw
advise (infrequent)	mikir
arrive (frequent)	kitim
be (very frequent)	-(fay-)
be (very frequent)	-(hay-)
be afraid (frequent)	rikwi
be angry, worry (frequent)	hasay
be bad (frequent)	mag
be better (frequent)	hayis
be bitter, be serious (infrequent)	hamiy
be cured (less frequent)	n'ur
be far (frequent)	sigiy
be hungry (frequent)	haragw
be needy, worry (frequent)	shinh

be organized, in order (frequent)	arariw
be similar (very frequent)	t'iy
be thin (infrequent)	nhaw
be written (less frequent)	kitab
be, become (very frequent)	kay / ak
beat, knock (frequent)	tha'
become old (frequent)	sh'a
blame (frequent)	yaay
break (frequent)	kit'
carry, take care of (frequent)	fiyak
close, tie (frequent)	hakwir
comb (less frequent)	fitit
consult w.e.o. (frequent)	-(makakir-)
cook (frequent)	tikwiy
count, once (frequent)	dhigwiy
cover (less frequent)	humiy
create (frequent)	kwas
crouch (less frequent)	digwagw
decide (frequent)	bisir
die (less frequent)	yay
dig (less frequent)	firik
divide (less frequent)	tirib
do with, make (REP) (frequent)	kwaas
do, make (less frequent)	weer
do, put (very frequent)	d'iy
dress oneself (less frequent)	kwaay
eat breakfast (less frequent)	fitir
fear (frequent)	b'an
fill (frequent)	tib
find (very frequent)	miriy
forbid (frequent)	habiy
forget (frequent)	baadhin
gather (REP) (frequent)	shaawawiy
get married (frequent)	d'ur
get out, (INTR) (infrequent)	fir'
get out (sth.) (frequent)	fir'

get ready (frequent)	mar
give (very frequent)	hiy
give a name (frequent)	sim
give birth (frequent)	firy
go away (frequent)	dif
go to (very frequent)	baay
have (very frequent)	-(baryy-)
have in mind (frequent)	kwin
hear (REP) (frequent)	maasiw
help (frequent)	away
hobble, divide (frequent)	adhidh
ignore, be ignorant (frequent)	gam
kill (frequent)	dir
kill (REP) (frequent)	daar
know (very frequent)	kan
laugh (frequent)	faayid
let be ready (less frequent)	soomir
let, leave (less frequent)	ush
lift (less frequent)	fitik
listen (frequent)	sinaakir
look (very frequent)	shibib
build a dam (less frequent)	kirir
make clean (less frequent)	sinhas
meet w.e.o. (frequent)	-(mararay-)
milk animals (infrequent)	niiy
miss (frequent)	naw
move (sth.) (less frequent)	gwishish
multiply, cause to quarrel (frequent)	shooth'ath'
open, untie (frequent)	fidig
organize, put in order (frequent)	s'arariw
pay debts (less frequent)	kwisiy
prepare, produce (less frequent)	tikwikw
quarrel once (frequent)	amooth'
refuse (very frequent)	rib
remain (less frequent)	mhiy
respect, tolerate (frequent)	amtaraam

return (INTR), come back (less frequent)	digay
return (sth.), give back (frequent)	agir
return (sth.), do again (frequent)	digiy
return (INTR), come back (infrequent)	digay
ride (infrequent)	am
run after (frequent)	sikwiy
say, mean (very frequent)	diy
scratch (less frequent)	shikidh
seize (frequent)	abik
separate, be between (frequent)	bitik
sew, once (infrequent)	hayid
sit (frequent)	s'a
slaughter (less frequent)	harid
spend the evening (frequent)	hawid
spend the day (REP) (frequent)	aayim
stand (frequent)	gad
stretch, drive (frequent)	rigig
subtract (frequent)	sinakwis
take (very frequent)	ah
take to (less frequent)	sitoob
thank, praise (frequent)	hamid
think (frequent)	hasib
throw (frequent)	gid
trade (frequent)	dilib
try to find (very frequent)	hariw
wait (frequent)	hagit
wait, stay (frequent)	siniy
wake up, get up oneself (frequent)	b'ar
wash (less frequent)	shigwidh
watch (less frequent)	harifa
write (frequent)	kitib

¹ Note that the VV always indicates one long vowel - not a sequence of two different vowels. Beja has no so-called diphthongs like ia or ua. Such vowel sequences would always be split up by y or w, as in *tidiya*, *timiruwa* 'you said, you found'.

² The abbreviation as 'H' was proposed by Hudson (Hudson 1976).

³ The numbering is based on Hudson's analysis of 1976, but some modifications were necessary.

⁴ LIT 'Red'. A nickname used for any Beja.

⁵ Jabanaat, tujabana refers both to the coffee pot as well as the ceremony of having several cups of coffee together.

⁶ Note that sequences like b-w often change to (w)-w. The difference between bw and ww and ww is minimal.

⁷ Even words which have three consonants are usually considered as having only one syllable, provided the first vowel is an unstressed i, such as in nifis 'appetite'. This applies even with words that have three consonants because of affixes, like sim-ooḥ 'his name (LIT name-his)'. The reason is that the i between the first two consonants may disappear when the article is attached; so nifis becomes oo-nfis, and sim-ooḥ becomes oo-sm-ooḥ.

⁸ The Hadendowa dialect uses i- /ti- instead of u- / tu-. Therefore, SG and PL cannot be distinguished.

⁹ Both pronunciations are found, ani and ani.

¹⁰ Both forms are found: tarabeeza and tarabeeda.

¹¹ An alternative currency.

¹² Some dialects prefer forms with a prefixed n- for words which start with a d or g.

¹³ To avoid ambiguity with 'come!', in the Bishari dialect a suffix -t is added.

¹⁴ Alternative forms would be Hoon eefi?, etc., where the verb faya 'to be' is used rather than the verb haya 'to be'.

¹⁵ In N.E. Africa, this is common for imperatives of 'take' and 'come'.

¹⁶ The Hadendowa are the largest Beja subgroup.

¹⁷ A mhuud is the quantity of grain which fills one shovel.

¹⁸ A gwilḥa is the length of one ulna.

¹⁹ The first two verbs glossed as 'put' are close synonyms.

²⁰ The naming of a child requires a special ceremony called simaayaat.

²¹ In different areas, and for different kinds of teachers, different terms are being used. The term kwooja is used by very few speakers only.

²² The two verbs glossed as 'to be tired' seem to be dialect variants.

²³ Note that wooh is used to call people who are far away or more distant than people close by, in which case yaa would be used.

²⁴ This seems to be a mild insult.

²⁵ In the English glosses, the objects ('it', 'her') will not always be translated even where they are clearly understood in the Beja original.

²⁶ This verb implies a destination, not just the movement itself.

²⁷ Hidaarab is the term used by Eritreans to refer to the Beja.

²⁸ Adverbs behave just like objects. The only difference is that a postposition may be added.

²⁹ This construction is considered awkward, because the verb 'to greet' follows the noun which it modifies.